

Emmanuel Bricard

# STRATEGIC CHESS EXERCISES



The title is composed of three words stacked vertically. Each word is preceded by a red arrow pointing to the right. The first arrow contains a knight chess piece icon. The second arrow contains a pawn chess piece icon. The third arrow contains a king chess piece icon.

*Find the Right Plan  
to Outplay  
Your Opponent*

NEW IN CHESS

# Contents

Title page

Explanation of symbols

Introduction

## **Chapter 1** The middlegame exercises

Exercises 1-8

Exercises 9-16

Exercises 17-24

Exercises 25-31

Exercises 32-39

Exercises 40-47

Exercises 48-55

Exercises 56-63

## **Chapter 2** The endgame exercises

Exercises 64-71

Exercises 72-77

Exercises 78-84

Exercises 85-90

Index of themes

Index of players

By way of a bibliography

**Swipe left for next chapter**

**Emmanuel Bricard**

## **Strategic Chess Exercises**

**Find the Right Way to Outplay Your Opponent**

**New In Chess 2018**

© 2018 New In Chess

Published by New In Chess, Alkmaar, The Netherlands

[www.newinches.com](http://www.newinches.com)

Translated from *Exercices de Stratégie* by Emmanuel Bricard (Olibris 2016).

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying, recording or otherwise, without the prior written permission from the publisher.

Cover design: Volken Beck

Supervision: Peter Boel

Editing and typesetting: Frank Erwich

Translation: Tony Kosten

Production: Anton Schermer

Have you found any errors in this book?

Please send your remarks to [editors@newinches.com](mailto:editors@newinches.com). We will collect all relevant corrections on the Errata page of our website [www.newinches.com](http://www.newinches.com) and implement them in a possible next edition.

ISBN: 978-90-5691-760-9

# Introduction

## What is strategy?

Strategy includes the knowledge of themes, the development of plans, the evaluation of positions and differentiating between what has to be calculated and what is optional. By contrast, tactics involves the calculation of variations.

## Who is this book aimed at?

To players familiar with some basic strategic themes such as ‘passed pawn’, ‘opposite-coloured bishops’, ‘blockade’, etc.

It contains exercises of varying difficulty. Some are relatively easy to solve, while others are more complex and can be considered to be food for thought. Strong players may understand such positions better than less strong players, but the challenge is not just to find the solution. Therefore the study of each suggested position will benefit players of different levels.

## How to use this book?

Each exercise is linked to one or more questions. They are not restrictive and if I suggest you find a plan for White, it is also useful to see what Black can do and to understand the position in general.

Just as the games are not grouped into thematic chapters, the questions do not give any indication of the actual themes or plans. In fact, your first task is to discover them yourself and decide on their importance. I would prefer to only write ‘White to move’ under each exercise, but in this case experience shows that the search often loses steam before reaching a tangible result. This is why I give some guidance on the judgement of the position or what to look for. There is an index of the topics addressed at the end of the book.

If you work as a pair or are a chess teacher, it is a good idea, in my opinion, to first indicate who is to move and only then give the clues which you feel are necessary to your partner or to your students. In the text you will also find many other possible exercises to propose on top of the ones I’ve chosen.

By the way, the method of working which is ‘imposed’ to come as closely as possible to simulating an actual game situation is to give no information whatsoever.

## The material

In this book you will find 90 exercises taken from 80 games or fragments, and one study. They are presented in two parts: ‘middlegame’ and ‘endgame’. I listed as ‘endgames’ those positions without queens or with the queens and, at most, a minor piece for each side.

The exercises have a clear strategic content, but are not necessarily bereft of tactics. While themes and plans have an objective reality, the evaluation of a position remains a matter of opinion, even if it is refined as progress is made. There will be no ‘demonstration’, therefore, but the games are chosen so that the ‘solutions’ to the exercises appear as consensual as possible. To enhance the reader’s understanding of the position, I give some analysis of possible alternatives first, before presenting the moves played in the game. I also give the moves leading up to the exercise diagram every time, as I think this may help the solver to discover certain themes and motifs.

The choice of exercises is based on my teaching practice. I have presented them at the courses I have taught during the past fifteen years. This experience was a great help in writing the book.

Good reading!

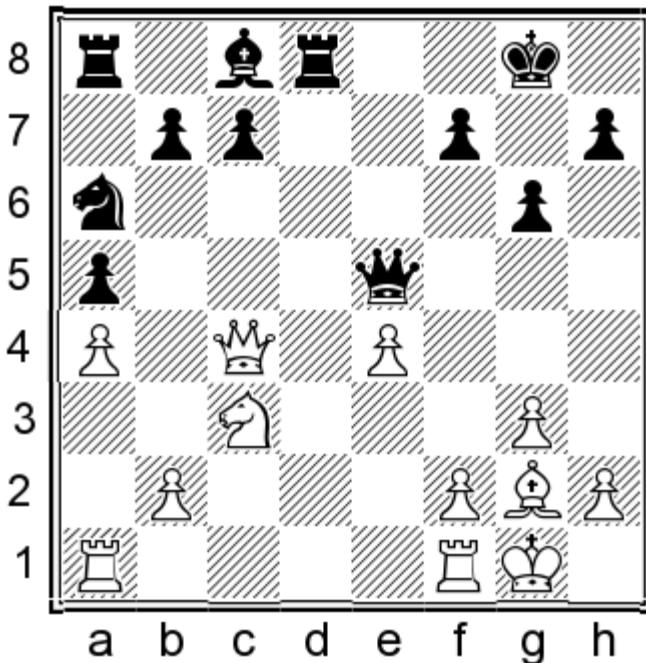
Emmanuel Bricard  
Montpellier, France,  
June 2016

Show in Quiz Mode

## Chapter 1

### The middlegame exercises

1



Black to move

What plan leads to a large black advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

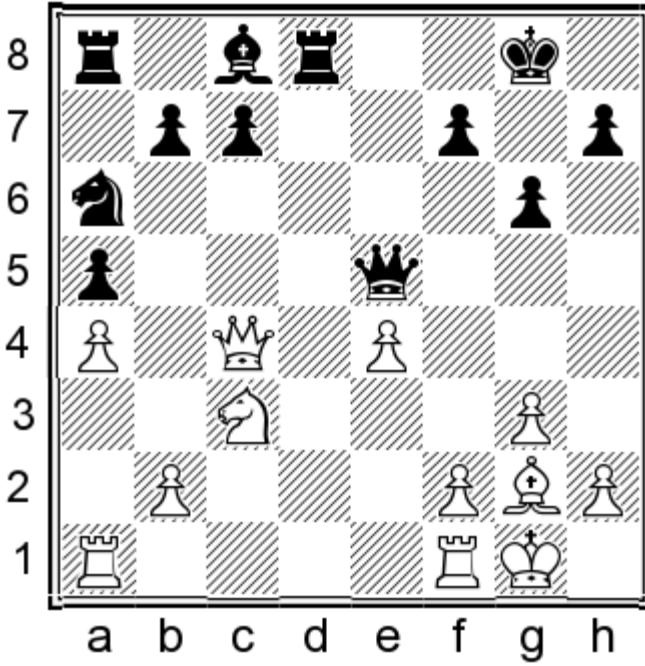
1

**Hein Donner**

**Vasily Smyslov**

Havana 1967 (5)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 g6 3.g3  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  d5 5.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  6.e4  $\mathbb{Q}b6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  0-0 8.0-0 e6 9.a4 a5 10. $\mathbb{Q}a3$   $\mathbb{W}e7$  11. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  12. $\mathbb{W}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  13. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  14. $\mathbb{W}xc4$  e5 15.dxe5  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  16. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{W}xe5$  17. $\mathbb{Q}c3$



*Black to move*

The white queenside pawn structure is very weak and the b3- and b4-squares are particularly vulnerable. This promises Black good piece play, and he also controls the d-file for the moment. On the other hand, he cannot mobilize his pawn majority.

White would like to play f2-f4 followed by e4-e5 or f4-f5, depending on circumstances, but he may not have enough time for this. His first task is to fight for the d-file.

Black's main plan is to play ... $\mathbb{Q}c8-e6-b3$  to gain control of the d1-square and therefore the d-file. 17...c6! followed by 18... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  is the most precise move order, as we shall see.

17... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  may also be good, but this allows 18. $\mathbb{W}b5!$ ? when after 18... $\mathbb{W}xb5$ ?! 19.axb5  $\mathbb{Q}c5$  20.e5 the b5-pawn is not as weak as it was on a4 and the black queenside pawns are exposed.

The right move is 18... $\mathbb{W}c5$ ! (which must be foreseen when playing 17... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ ) with a choice:

- A) 19. $\mathbb{W}xb7$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}db8$  loses the queen;
- B) 19. $\mathbb{Q}d5$  c6 20. $\mathbb{W}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  21. $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{E}ac8$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  fxe6 and Black should win a pawn under reasonable conditions;
- C) 19.e5 (renewing the threat to the b7-pawn) 19... $\mathbb{Q}c4$  20. $\mathbb{W}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  21. $\mathbb{Q}fe1$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}d2$  22. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  23. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  and now 23... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  24. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  25. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  26. $\mathbb{Q}d1$  gives White too much play, but 23... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  24.b4 c6 preserves the black advantage.

These variations are not exhaustive, but do give an indication of the white resources. One can also note that after 17... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  18. $\mathbb{W}e2$  the most accurate move is 18...c6!, transposing into the game after 19. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$ , rather than 18... $\mathbb{Q}b3$  which again makes it possible to complicate the game by 19. $\mathbb{W}b5$ !.

### 17...c6!

A useful move that limits the activity of the white minor pieces while taking the b5-square away from the queen. The delay in manoeuvring the bishop towards b3 will not prevent it from occurring.

### 18. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$

A) 18.  $\mathbb{W}e2$  first, to prevent the c8-bishop from going to g4, restricted Black's choice;

B) 18. f4?! sets an interesting trap:

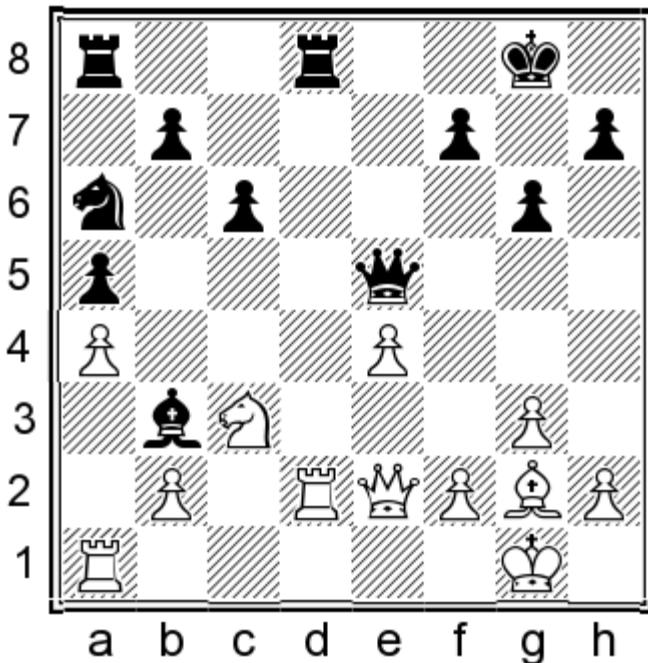
B1) 18...  $\mathbb{W}c5+?$  19.  $\mathbb{W}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  20. f5! encloses the c8-bishop and significantly improves the white position;

B2) 18...  $\mathbb{Q}e6!$  19.  $\mathbb{W}e2$  (19. fxe5  $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  is hopeless) 19...  $\mathbb{W}c5+$  20.  $\mathbb{W}f2$  (20.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$  and 20.  $\mathbb{W}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  loses immediately) 20...  $\mathbb{W}d2$  21.  $\mathbb{W}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  and Black is much better.

## 18... $\mathbb{Q}e6$

18...  $\mathbb{Q}g4+?$  deserves attention, because after 19. f3?!  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  20.  $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}b3!$  the f2-f3 move, which could be useful in the endgame, only weakens the king position here. Instead of 19. f3 it is better to play 19.  $\mathbb{W}xd8+$   $\mathbb{W}xd8$  20. h3  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  21.  $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}b3!$ , which resembles the game.

## 19. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}b3!$ 20. $\mathbb{W}d2$



The plan has been carried out and the a1-rook is excluded from the struggle for the d-file. It just remains, however, for Black to seize it completely.

## 20... $\mathbb{W}d4!$

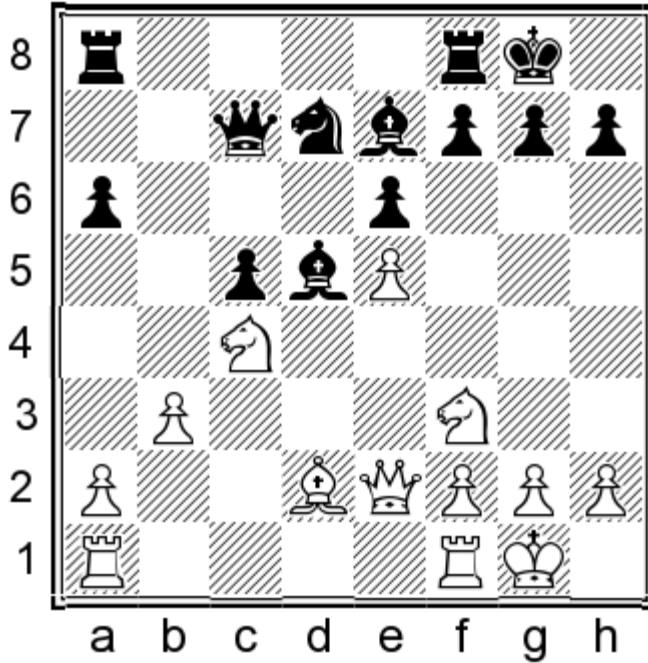
Now it's done. By this precise move Smyslov stabilizes his great advantage.

## 21. $\mathbb{W}xd4$ $\mathbb{W}xd4$ 22. e5 $\mathbb{Q}c5$ 23. $\mathbb{Q}e4?$

Keeping the e5-pawn is important in order to resist. This mistake ends the game.

## 23... $\mathbb{W}xe5$

The a4-pawn is in a very bad way and this is on top of the material deficit, so White chose to resign.



Black to move

What plan allows Black to get a slight but lasting advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

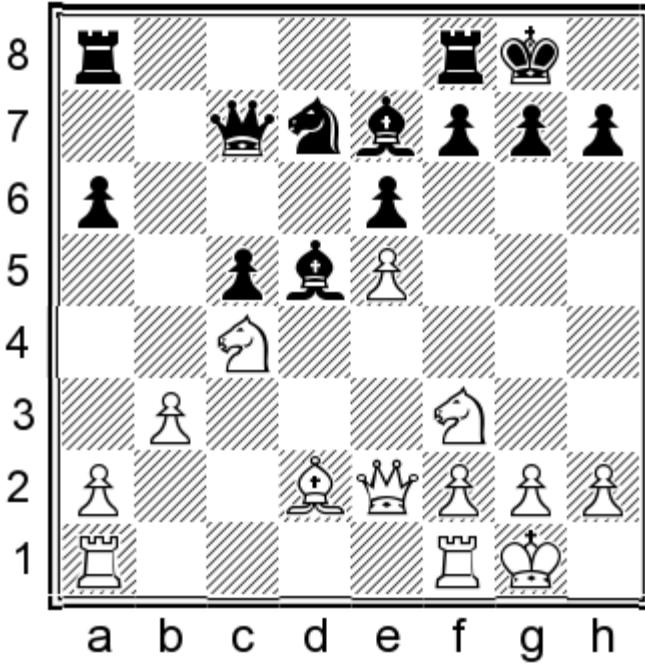
2

Julio Bolbochan

Carlos Guimard

Mar del Plata 1941 (9)

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.♘d2 c5 4.♗gf3 ♘c6 5.♗b5 a6 6.♗xc6+ bxc6 7.0-0 ♘f6 8.♕e2 cxd4 9.e5 ♘d7 10.♗xd4 c5 11.♗4f3 ♘e7 12.c4 ♘b7 13.cxd5 ♘xd5 14.♗c4 0-0 15.♗d2 ♕c7 16.b3



*Black to move*

Black has the bishop pair, and the light-squared one, which has no counterpart, is especially powerful. His queenside pawns are not weak at the moment, but their isolation gives bases for the white pieces on the a- and c files. The pressure on the e5-pawn limits the freedom of the white pieces.

White does not have much to do, but he can hope to maintain a solid position.

A) 16... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  would be worth considering if 17.gxf3 was forced (to keep the e5-pawn), although even this sequence is not that promising because exchanging the d5-bishop is an important concession. However, 17. $\mathbb{W}xf3!$  is even stronger, when White is better after 17... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  18. $\mathbb{W}g3$  f6 19. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  20. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{W}xd6$  21. $\mathbb{Q}ad1$ ;

B) 16... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ , to exchange the knight on c4 and damage the white pawn structure, allows 17. $\mathbb{Q}a5!$ . After 17... $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  18.bxc4 Black has a solid position, but the d5-bishop has disappeared and he cannot be better;

C) 16...f6 17.exf6  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  activates the black pieces, but his pawn structure is further weakened. One possible continuation is 18. $\mathbb{Q}ad1$   $\mathbb{W}c6$  19. $\mathbb{Q}fe1$  with equal chances, but Black must now avoid 19... $\mathbb{Q}xf3?$  20. $\mathbb{W}xf3$   $\mathbb{W}xf3$  21.gxf3 as by giving the d5-bishop (we talk about nothing else!) he exposes his entire position.

### 16...a5!

A minority attack.

### 17.a4

Fixing the black pawn on a5, where it is exposed, but the same goes for the b3-pawn.

After 17. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  a4 18. $\mathbb{Q}fd2$   $\mathbb{Q}a7!?$  Black has a favourable queenside pawn structure and will be able to play on the a- and b-files. He has a lasting advantage, but it is only slight because the white position is compact and the weak pawns on e5 and b3 (after a timely ...a4xb3 exchange) are well covered.

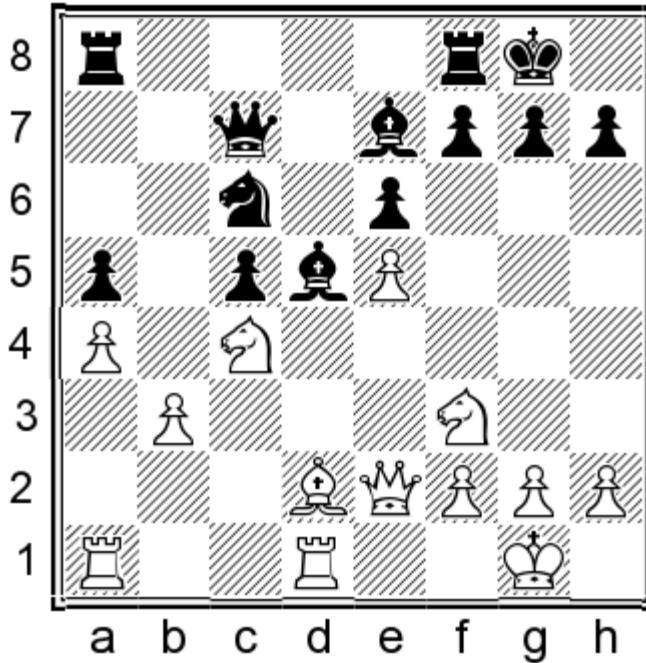
### 17... $\mathbb{Q}b8!$

The manoeuvre initiated by this move can be delayed, but it is normally important to play the essential moves first so as

to keep more choices for future plans.

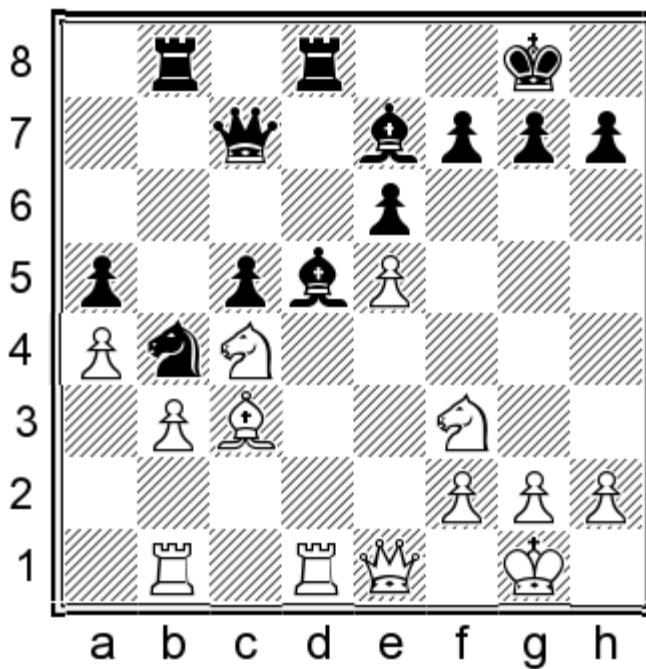
17...f6 18.exf6  $\mathbb{E}xf6$  (or 18... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ ) enhances the black pieces' prospects, but weakens the pawn structure a little more and gives White counterchances, which is a shame.

**18. $\mathbb{E}fd1 \mathbb{Q}c6$**



Black has carried out his plan. The knight defends the a5-pawn, attacks the e5-pawn and can go to b4 or d4 depending on circumstances.

**19. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{E}ab8$  20. $\mathbb{E}ab1 \mathbb{E}fd8$  21. $\mathbb{W}e1 \mathbb{Q}b4$**



**22. $\mathbb{W}e3?$**

A tactical error. 22... $\mathbb{Q}fd2$  provides support for the b3-pawn and c4-knight and keeps the white position solid, albeit with no prospects of active play. Black can take his time and put pressure on the d-file and the a8-h1 diagonal.

22... $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  23.bxc4

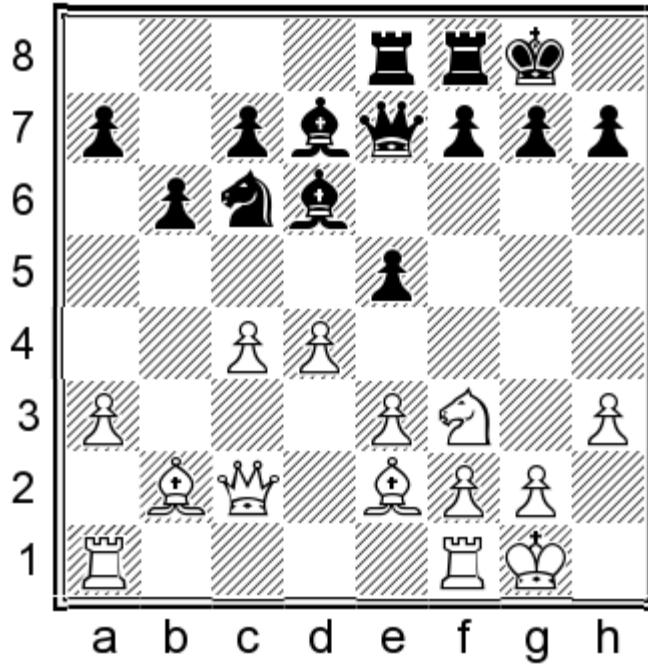
After 23. $\mathbb{B}xd8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  24.bxc4  $\mathbb{Q}d5!$  25. $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{B}xb1+$  26. $\mathbb{W}xb1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  27. $\mathbb{W}c2$ , Black has the choice between 27... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  28.cxd5 exd5 and 27... $\mathbb{W}d7$  28. $\mathbb{W}xc3$   $\mathbb{W}xa4$  with a decisive advantage in both cases.

23... $\mathbb{B}xd1+$  24. $\mathbb{B}xd1$   $\mathbb{W}c6$

White cannot defend the a4-pawn by 25. $\mathbb{B}a1$  because of 25... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ . So it is lost, and the game too.

25.h4 h6 26. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{B}a8$  27. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$  axb4 28. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{W}xa4$  29. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{W}c6$  30.h5  $\mathbb{B}a2$  31. $\mathbb{B}d2$   $\mathbb{B}xd2$  32. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$   $\mathbb{W}a4$  33. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{W}a2$  34. $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{W}xf2$  0-1

3



White to move

How can White gain the advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

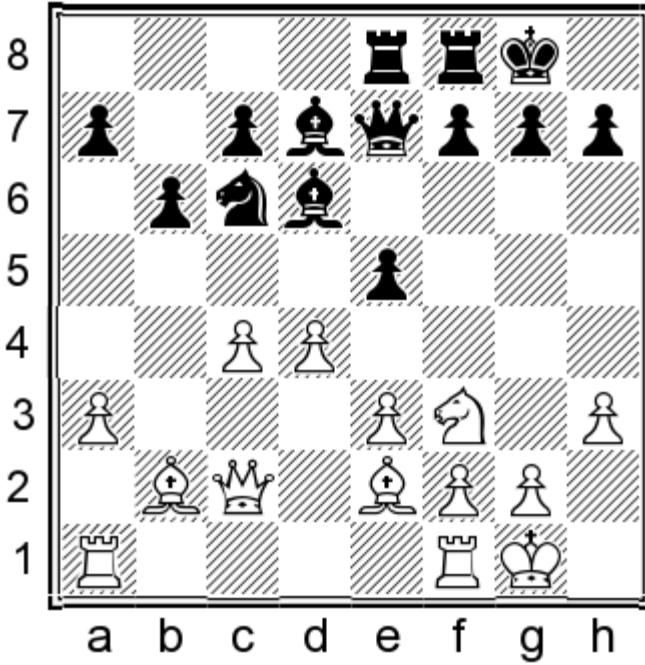
3

Salo Flohr

Salo Landau

Kemerri 1937 (9)

1.c4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  e5 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  4.e3 d5 5.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  6. $\mathbb{W}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  7.a3  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  8.bxc3 0-0 9.d4  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  10. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{W}e7$  11.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}g4$  12.h3  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  13.c4 b6 14. $\mathbb{Q}b2$   $\mathbb{B}ae8$ ??!



*White to move*

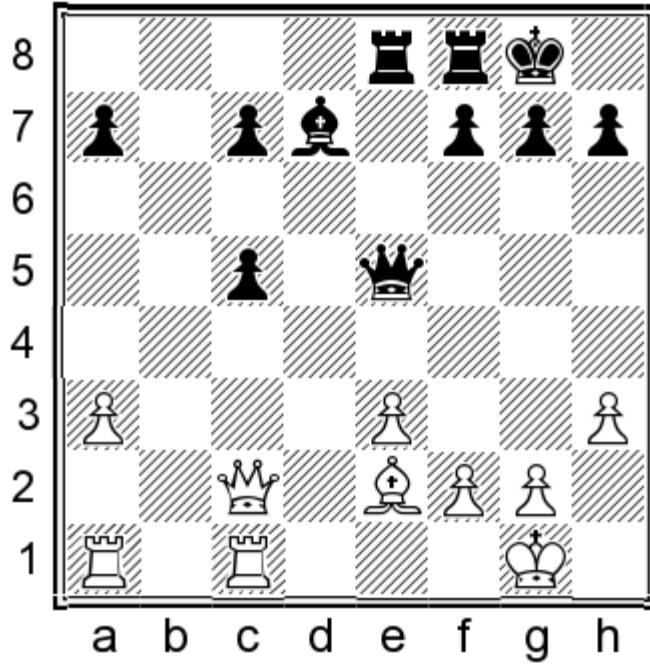
Black has two main plans at his disposal: play ...e5-e4 and then advance the f-pawn as far as possible, or else take on d4, which would now be very strong as recapturing with the pawn would lose the e2-bishop. The idea of Black's last move is to defer the choice of one of these two plans, and while the intention is good we shall see that there is a problem.

White has a strong pawn centre, but how can he progress? After 15.d5 ♜d8, the black knight will go to c5, and sacrificing a pawn to prevent this (while weakening the opposing structure) by 16.c5 bxc5 (16...♜xe5? loses the e5-pawn) is not promising because Black is active on the kingside.

**15.c5! bxc5 16.dxe5 ♜xe5 17.♗xe5 ♜xe5 18.♗xe5 ♛xe5**

Thanks to this breakthrough White has altered the queenside pawn structure in his favour – both the a7- and c7-pawns are exposed.

**19.♗fc1!**



Freeing the f1-square for the bishop in order to defend the kingside.

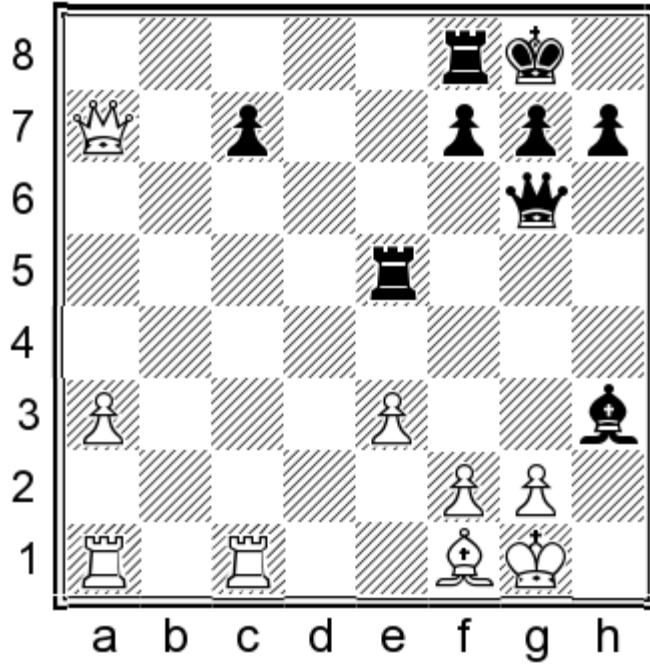
**19...♝g5?!**

Landau is ready to sacrifice the a7-pawn in search of counterplay. His attack is dangerous, but ultimately insufficient. His best option was to go into the endgame with 19...c6! 20.♛xc5 ♛xc5 21.♜xc5 ♜c8 followed by 22...♜c7 to cover the c6-pawn and the seventh rank. White has the general plan of advancing his majority while tying the opposing pieces to the defence of the various weaknesses. He has a slight but lasting advantage, which was very much to Flohr's liking.

**20.♛xc5 ♜e5 21.♛xa7 ♜xh3 22.♝f1**

The bishop is safer here than on f3.

**22...♝g6**



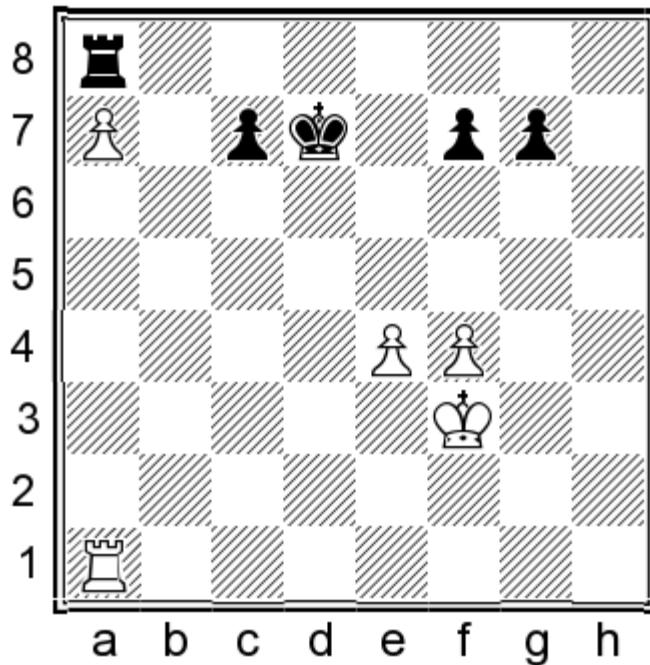
**23.  $\mathbb{R}c5!?$**

The plan of advancing the outside passed pawn is strong enough to ensure a very large advantage, therefore Flohr ignores the harmless c7-pawn for the moment and takes the time to secure the position of his king by offering an exchange of rooks.

23.  $\mathbb{W}xc7 \mathbb{R}g5$  24.  $\mathbb{W}c6$  was also good.

**23...  $\mathbb{R}xc5$  24.  $\mathbb{W}xc5$   $\mathbb{R}c8$  25. a4 h5 26. a5 h4 27.  $\mathbb{W}d5$**

After 27.a6 Black can go into the rook endgame, even if it appears that this does not save him: 27...  $\mathbb{Q}xg2!$  28.  $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  h3 29.  $\mathbb{W}d5$   $\mathbb{W}xg2+$  30.  $\mathbb{W}xg2$  hxg2 31.  $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  32. a7  $\mathbb{R}a8$  33. e4  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  34. f4  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  35.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$



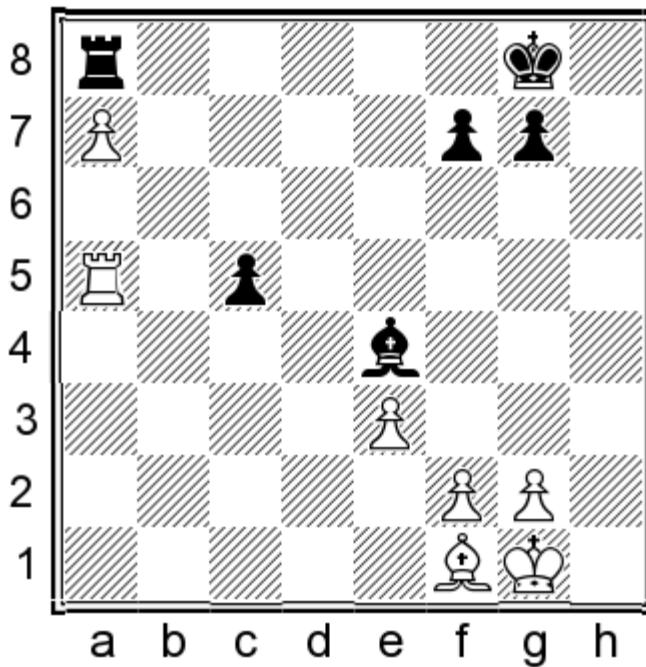
## *analysis diagram*

White's idea is to create a passed pawn on the e-file in order to keep the a7-pawn. The variations are instructive and I will give some of them:

A) 35... $\mathbb{Q}c6$  36.e5 g6 (if 36... $\mathbb{Q}b7$  37.f5 wins) 37. $\mathbb{Q}g4$  (en route for the newly weakened f6-square) 37... $\mathbb{Q}b7$  38. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}xa7$  39. $\mathbb{Q}xa7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xa7$  40. $\mathbb{Q}f6$  c5 41. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  c4 42.e6 c3 43.e7 c2 44.e8= $\mathbb{W}$  c1= $\mathbb{W}$  45. $\mathbb{W}e4$  is a long forced variation that also wins;

B) 35...c5 (looking for counterplay, but the pawn becomes exposed) 36.e5  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  (after 36...g6 37. $\mathbb{Q}a6!$  the king is cut off from the c5-pawn and the white rook can possibly go to f6) 37.f5! (the creation of a new passed pawn is guaranteed; after 37. $\mathbb{Q}e4$  g6! it was still necessary to find a way to get through) 37... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  38. $\mathbb{Q}f4$  c4 39. $\mathbb{Q}a5+$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  40. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$  (the black pawn had to be neutralized; 40.e6?  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  41. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  c3 42.e7 c2 43. $\mathbb{Q}a1$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  only draws) 40... $\mathbb{Q}d3$  (or 40...c3 41. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$  42.e6) 41. $\mathbb{Q}d5+!$   $\mathbb{Q}c2$  42. $\mathbb{Q}d7$  c3 43. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$   $\mathbb{Q}b2$  44. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  c2 45. $\mathbb{Q}b7+$   $\mathbb{Q}a2$  46. $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}b2$  47.e6  $\mathbb{Q}xa7$  48. $\mathbb{Q}xc2+$   $\mathbb{Q}xc2$  49. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$  and White wins. On the last move 49.f6 was also sufficient, but that allowed 49... $\mathbb{Q}a6$  when it will be necessary to win with queen against rook.

**27... $\mathbb{Q}f5$  28.a6  $\mathbb{Q}e4$  29. $\mathbb{W}d7$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  30. $\mathbb{W}e7$  h3 31.a7  $\mathbb{Q}e4$  32. $\mathbb{W}d7$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  33. $\mathbb{W}xh3$  c5 34. $\mathbb{W}d7$   $\mathbb{W}c6$  35. $\mathbb{W}xc6$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  36. $\mathbb{Q}a5$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$**



### **37.f3**

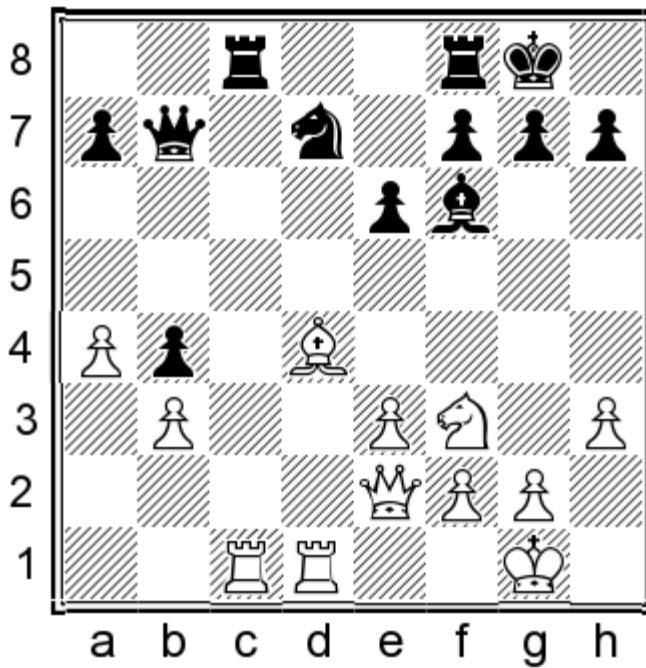
An elegant win: the bishop is chased to b7 where it will be decisively pinned. If it went to d5 or c6 then the c5-pawn would be taken with gain of tempo.

**37... $\mathbb{Q}b7$  38. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}xa7$  39. $\mathbb{Q}c7$  f6 40. $\mathbb{Q}h2$**

No rush. After 40. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  41. $\mathbb{Q}d5?$   $\mathbb{Q}a1+$  the white bishop is lost.

**40... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  41. $\mathbb{Q}b5$**

The threat of 42. $\mathbb{Q}c6$  is unstoppable, so Black resigned.



*White to move*

How can White gain a large advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

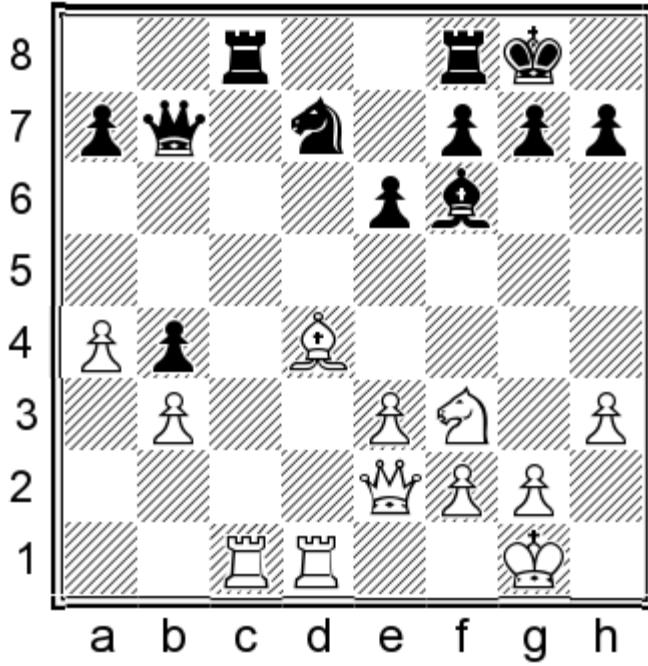
4

Gennadi Sosonko 2530

Manfred Hermann

Bad Lauterberg 1977 (12)

1.d4 d5 2.c4 c6 3.♘f3 ♘f6 4.♘c3 dxc4 5.e3 b5 6.a4 b4 7.♗b1 ♗a6 8.♗c2 e6 9.♗xc4 ♗xc4 10.♗xc4 ♗d5 11.♗bd2  
 ♗bd7 12.♗e2 ♗e4 13.♗xe4 ♗xe4 14.0-0 ♗e7 15.b3 0-0 16.♗b2 c5 17.♗ac1 ♗ac8 18.♗fd1 ♗b7 19.h3 cxd4 20.♗xd4  
 ♗f6



*White to move*

The pawn structure gives Black a queenside space advantage. This could be an asset, but here White is a bit better developed and the black pawns, together with the c4-, c5- and c6-squares (left permanently defenceless by the advance of the pawn to b4) and also the c7-square, could prove to be exposed.

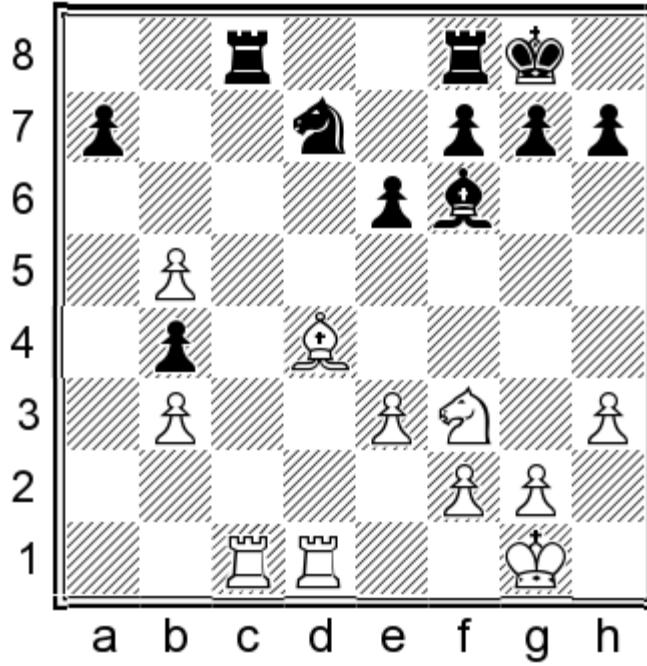
**21.Qb5!**

The black queen is influential on the queenside, defending the two black pawns and the d7-knight in particular. The only route to a big advantage is to exchange it.

**21...Qxb5!**

- A) 21...Rc7 22.Rxc7! (White no longer has a strategic reason to seek – or avoid – the exchange of queens if his is tolerated on b5) 22...Qxc7 23.Qxa7 wins a pawn;
- B) 21...Rb8 22.Qa5! (with the threats of 23.Qxa7 and 23.Rc7; this is better than 22.Qxb7 which is enough for a substantial advantage) 22...Rxd4 23.Qxd4 when the knight can go to b5 or c6 and Black is much worse;
- C) 21...Rxc1 22.Qxb7 (22.Rxc1 also deserves attention with, in particular, the variation 22...Qxb5 23.axb5 Rb8? 24.Qxa7 Rxb5 25.Rc8+ Qf8 26.Qc5) 22...Rxd1+ 23.Qh2 the queenside pawns are still just as vulnerable, and after the illustrative line 23...a5 24.Qxd7 e5 25.Qc7 exd4 26.Qc2! Ra1 27.Qxd4 it is doubtful that Black can save himself.

**22.axb5**

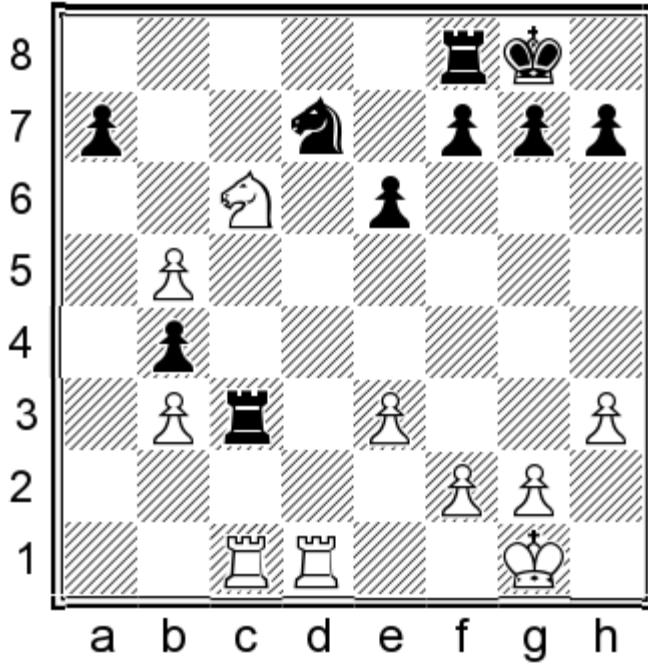


**22...♝xd4**

22...♝b8 is natural, to try to regain the b5-pawn, and after 23.♝c7 ♝b6 (23...♝fd8? 24.♝xa7) 24.♝xf6 gxf6 25.e4!?, in order to dominate the black knight, there are two possibilities:

- A) 25...♝fc8 26.♝xa7 ♜c5 27.♝d4 (27.♝a5 is also good) 27...♝d8 28.♝aa1 and Black cannot recover the lost pawn because 28...e5? 29.♝f5 is too dangerous;
- B) 25...♝c8 26.♝dd7 ♜xb5 27.♝d4 White is getting ready to play 28.♝xe6! or 28.♝c6 followed by 29.♝xc8! and is much better after 27...♝h5 (leaving the b6-square free for the knight, which would not be the case after 27...♝b6) 28.♝c6 ♝b6 29.♝d6.

**23.♝xd4 ♜c3 24.♝c6**



**24...♜a8?**

The rook will have to move again and the loss of time will prove fatal.

After 24...♝f6 there could follow 25.♜xc3 bxc3 26.♝c1 ♝e4 27.f3 ♝d6 28.♝xa7 with a big advantage.

**25.♜a1**

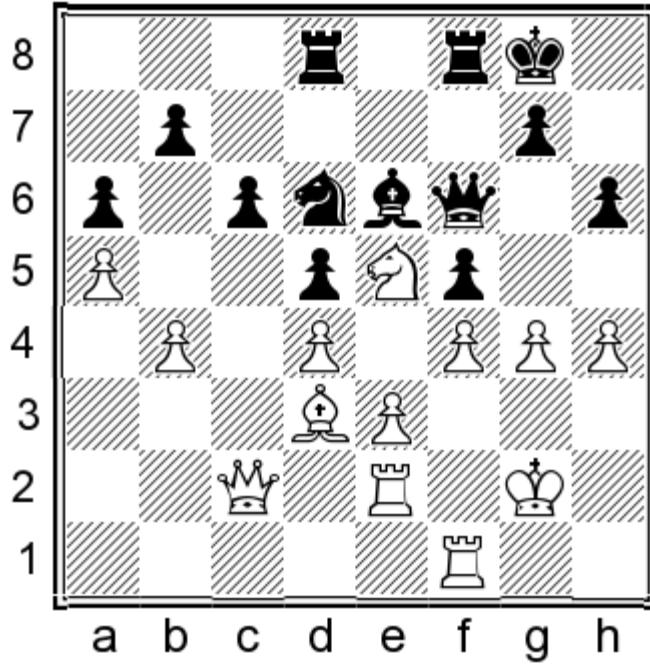
And not 25.♜xc3? bxc3 26.♜xd7? c2 27.♝e7+ ♛f8 28.♜c7 ♜d8! 29.♜xc2 ♜d1+ 30.♝h2 ♜xe7 when the white superiority has almost entirely evaporated.

**25...♝f6 26.♜xa7 ♜e8**

26...♜xa7? 27.♜d8+

**27.♜c7 ♜d5 28.♜xd5! exd5 29.b6**

Black resigned.



*Black to move*

What do you think of 30...fxg4 ?

Show/Hide Solution

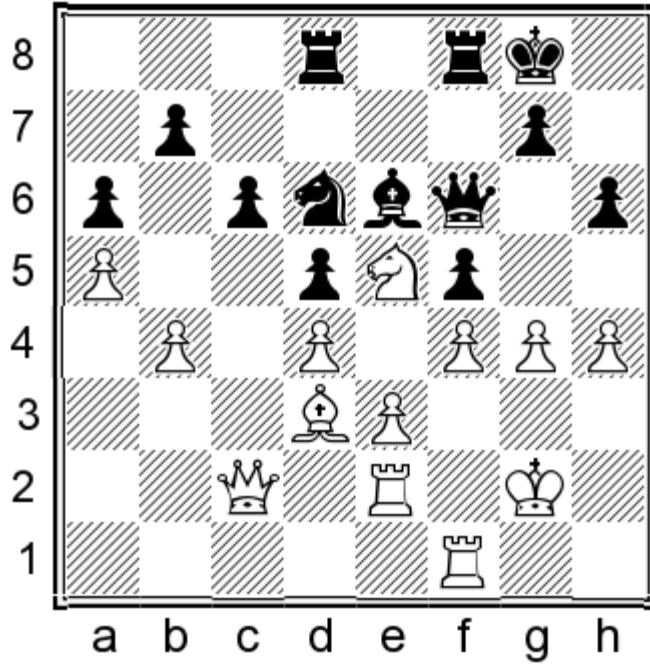
5

Luis Piazzini

Carlos Guimard

Necochea ch-ARG m 1938 (2)

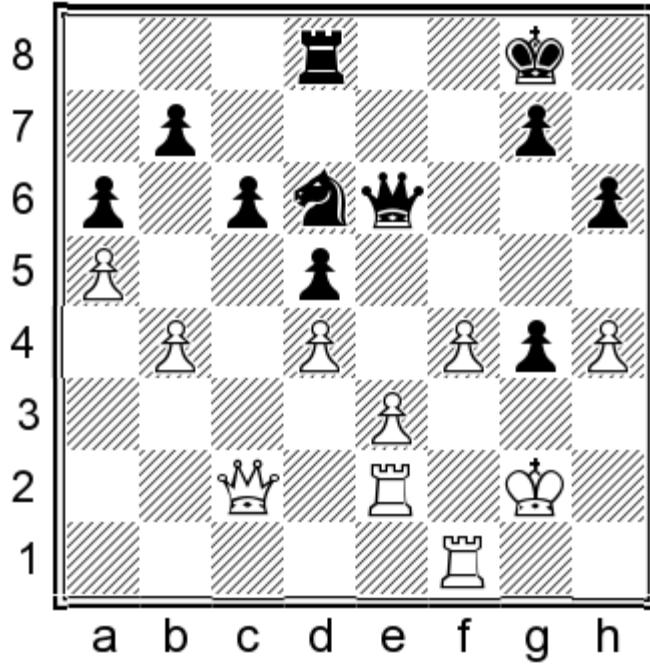
1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5.e3 0-0 6. $\mathbb{B}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}bd7$  7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  a6 8.cxd5 exd5 9. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  c6 10.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  11. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{W}xe7$  12. $\mathbb{W}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}df6$  13. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  14. $\mathbb{Q}a4$  h6 15.b4  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  16. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{B}ad8$  17.a4  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  18. $\mathbb{B}b1$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  19.a5  $\mathbb{W}e7$  20. $\mathbb{B}fe1$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  21. $\mathbb{Q}bx d7$   $\mathbb{Q}xd7$  22.f3  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  23. $\mathbb{B}e2$   $\mathbb{W}g5$  24. $\mathbb{B}f1$  f5 25.f4  $\mathbb{W}f6$  26.g3  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  27.g4  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  28.h3  $\mathbb{W}h4$  29. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}f6$  30.h4



*Black to move*

White has just played 30.h4? with the likely intention of continuing 31.g5 when he would gain a large space advantage and lasting pressure. This involves calculating a simple variation that gains an exchange for a pawn and evaluating the resulting position.

30...fxg4! 31.Qh7+ Qh8 32.Qg6+ Qxh7 33.Qxf8+ Qg8 34.Qxe6 Qxe6



White has an exposed king, his rooks lack prospects and he has weak pawns on e3 and h4, or elsewhere in case of a modification of the structure. The black knight has excellent squares on e4 and f5 and the g4-pawn is annoying.

Without calculating anything we can see that White cannot be better and is probably much worse. Thus, to have played

30.h4 in a superior position was a big strategic mistake.

### 35.f5

Or 35.h5  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  (Black has some choice) 36. $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{E}e8$  37. $\mathbb{B}fe1$  (defending the e3-pawn, but also preparing e3-e4 – to help the rooks) 37... $\mathbb{W}f6$  (with the idea of ... $\mathbb{E}e8$ -e4, among others, to free the queen from the defence of the knight, followed by ... $\mathbb{W}f6$ -h4) 38.e4!? (after 38. $\mathbb{B}h1$   $\mathbb{E}e4$  39. $\mathbb{W}d2$ , one way to win is 39...g6!? followed by the advance of the g- and h-pawns) 38... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  39.exd5 (39. $\mathbb{E}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$ ) 39... $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  40. $\mathbb{B}xe2$   $\mathbb{E}xe2+$  41. $\mathbb{W}xe2$   $\mathbb{W}xf4!$  42.dxc6  $\mathbb{W}f3+!$  43. $\mathbb{W}xf3$   $\mathbb{G}xf3+$  44. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  bxc6 and the pawn ending is winning.

**35... $\mathbb{W}f6$  36. $\mathbb{Q}g3$  h5 37. $\mathbb{B}f4$   $\mathbb{E}e8$**

Threatening a check on e4. 37... $\mathbb{Q}e4+?$  immediately is no good because of 38. $\mathbb{B}xe4$ .

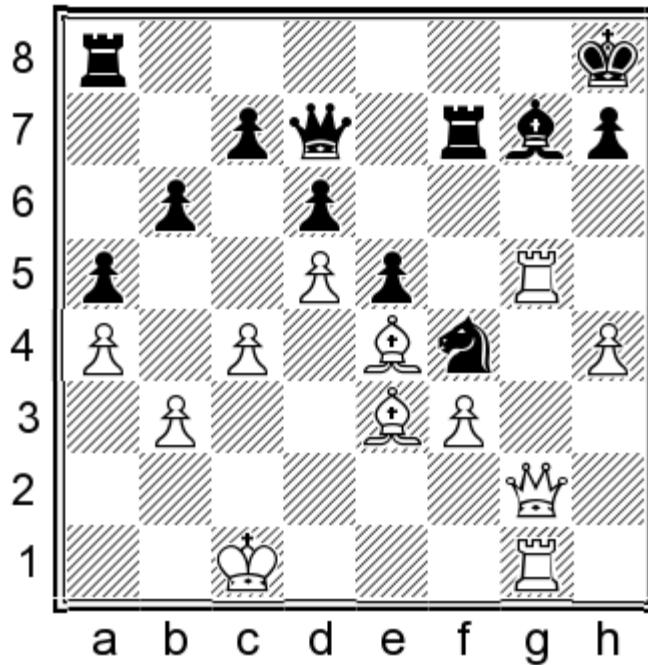
**38.e4!?**  $\mathbb{W}xd4!$

The simplest.

**39.exd5  $\mathbb{W}g1+$**

White gave up without asking to see 40. $\mathbb{B}g2$   $\mathbb{E}e3+$  followed by mate.

6



*White to move*

What is the winning plan for White?

Show/Hide Solution

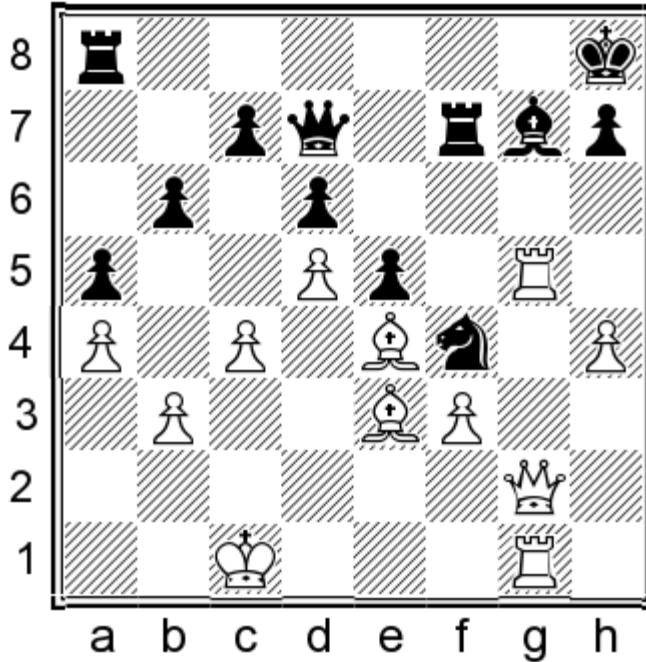
6

Igor Kan

## Nikolay Riumin

Leningrad ch-URS 1933

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 g6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.e4 d6 5.f3 0-0 6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}bd7$  7. $\mathbb{W}d2$  e5 8. $\mathbb{Q}ge2$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  9.b3  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  10. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{W}e7$  11.d5 a5  
12.a4  $\mathbb{W}e8$  13.g4  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  14. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  15. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  f6 16. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  17.h4 b6 18.0-0-0  $\mathbb{Q}ce7$  19. $\mathbb{Q}dg1$  f5 20.gxf5 gxf5 21.exf5  
 $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$   $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  23. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  24. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  25. $\mathbb{Q}f6$  26. $\mathbb{Q}hg1$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  27. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  28. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$



*White to move*

We have a typical King's Indian position with opposite-side castling. The white queen is attacked and it is tactically possible to move it away by playing 29. $\mathbb{W}c2$  (29... $\mathbb{Q}h3$ ? is refuted by 30. $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  31. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ ), but, nevertheless, this is not a good idea because after 29... $\mathbb{Q}h6$  the black position is solid.

**29. $\mathbb{Q}xf4!$  exf4**

Transposing into a position with opposite-coloured bishops is an important technical method to exploit an advantage. The initiative, or the attack, will play a dominant role and we must evaluate each side's prospects from this viewpoint.

The white major pieces are clearly the more active, but the black bishop is powerful and if his queen could get to f6 Black would obtain some counterplay.

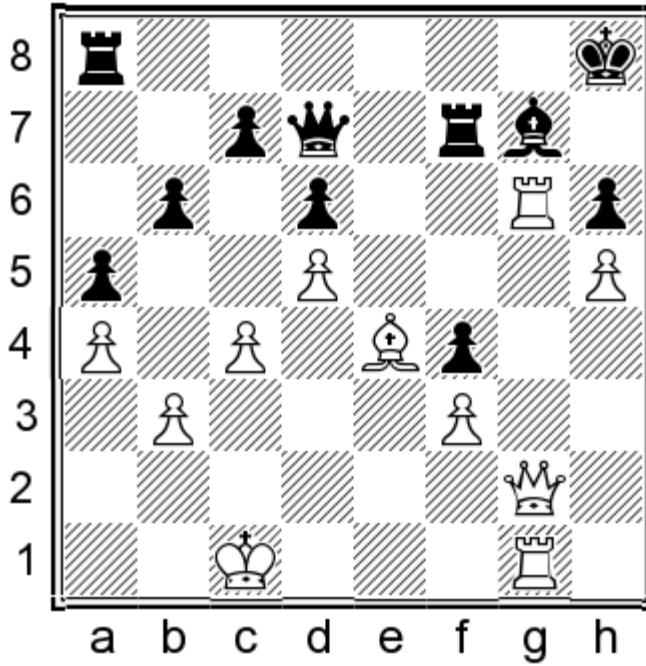
**30.h5!**

This move initiates a manoeuvre that will prevent the black queen from becoming active. The threat is 31.h6, winning the bishop.

A) 30. $\mathbb{Q}f5$ ?  $\mathbb{W}e7$  31. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ ? (31. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{W}f6$  32. $\mathbb{Q}a2$  retains some winning chances) 31... $\mathbb{W}f6$  illustrates Black's possibilities, he threatens to give a perpetual check;

B) After 30. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}d4$ ! 31. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$ ! the chances are even.

**30...h6 31. $\mathbb{Q}g6$**



**31... $\mathbb{E}e8$**

After 31... $\mathbb{W}e7$ , 32. $\mathbb{E}e6$  completes the white manoeuvre and prohibits the black queen from using the f6- and e5-squares for a long time. There could follow 32... $\mathbb{W}g5$  (to avoid 33. $\mathbb{W}g6$ ) 33. $\mathbb{W}h2$   $\mathbb{W}d8$  34. $\mathbb{Q}b1!$  with the idea of  $\mathbb{W}h2-c2$  and White is winning.

**32. $\mathbb{Q}b1!$**

Again aiming to put the queen on c2, in front of the bishop.

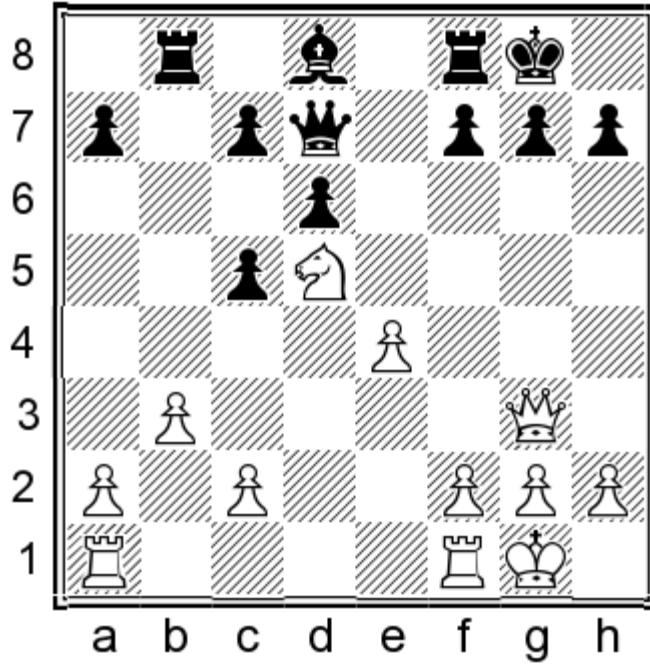
**32... $\mathbb{E}g8??$**

Black resigned without waiting for 33. $\mathbb{E}xh6+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  34. $\mathbb{W}xg8\#$ .

After 32... $\mathbb{E}fe7$ , the most resistant move, some precision is required:

A) 33. $\mathbb{W}c2?$   $\mathbb{E}e1+$  34. $\mathbb{E}xe1$   $\mathbb{E}xe1+$  35. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{E}h1$  with the threat of 36... $\mathbb{E}h2+$  lets the win slip away. There is no way to move the rook with gain of tempo in order to mate on h7, for example: 36. $\mathbb{E}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  or 36. $\mathbb{E}xd6$   $\mathbb{E}h2+$  37. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{E}h1+!$ ;

B) 33. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$  (the simplest) 33... $\mathbb{E}e2$  34. $\mathbb{W}xe2$   $\mathbb{E}xe2$  35. $\mathbb{E}xg7$  (35. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  is a little more complicated) 35... $\mathbb{W}xg7$  36. $\mathbb{E}xg7$   $\mathbb{E}b2$  when both white pieces are attacked, but 37. $\mathbb{E}xc7$   $\mathbb{E}xb1+$  38. $\mathbb{Q}c2$  wins easily and 37. $\mathbb{E}h7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  38. $\mathbb{Q}e4$  is even better.



*White to move*

Which plan provides a lasting advantage for White?

Show/Hide Solution

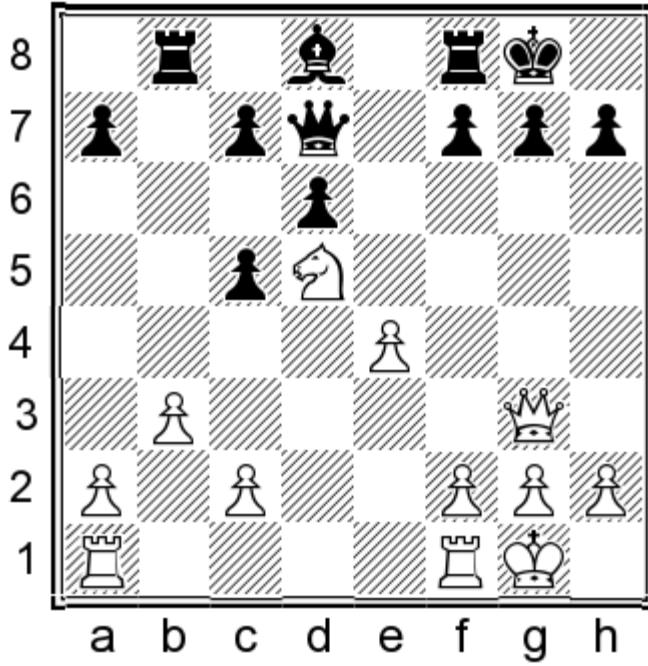
7

Grigory Levenfish

Pjotr Dubinin

Leningrad ch-URS 1934 (3)

1.e4 e5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}b5$  d6 5.d4 exd4 6. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  bxc6 8. $\mathbb{W}f3$  c5 9. $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  10. $\mathbb{W}xf5$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  11. $\mathbb{W}f3$   $\mathbb{E}b8$  12.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  13.b3 0-0 14. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  15. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xg5$  16. $\mathbb{W}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$



*White to move*

Black has a cramped position but is ready to chase the d5-knight and regain ground in the centre by ...c7-c6 or ...f7-f5.

### 17. $\mathbb{Q}ad1!$

By putting pressure on the d-file, and in particular the d6-pawn, White is trying to stabilize the position of his knight and thus obtain a big advantage.

An immediate attack on the kingside by 17.f4 would allow 17...f5!, for example: 18.e5 c6 (18...dxe5 19.  $\mathbb{Q}ad1$  exf4 also seems OK) 19.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$  d5 20.c4 d4 21.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$  (with the idea of installing this knight on d3) 21...a5!, obtaining queenside counterplay.

### 17... $f5$

A) After 17...c6 18.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  19.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  f6! (defending g7 and controlling the e5-square to prevent 20.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6?$  because of 20... $\mathbb{Q}bd8$ ) 20.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$  (20.h4?! is interesting, to secure the position of the knight by h4-h5) 20... $\mathbb{Q}bd8$  21.  $\mathbb{Q}fd1$  d5 22.  $\mathbb{W}f3$  White has strong pressure on the d-file;

B) Deferring this central commitment by 17... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  is possible, but it does not solve the problems after 18.  $\mathbb{Q}fe1$ .

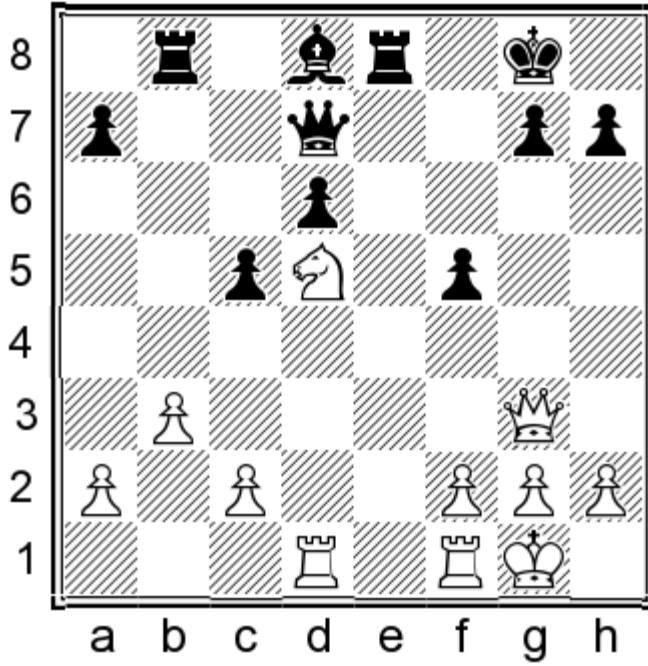
### 18. $e5!$ $\mathbb{Q}e8$

18...dxe5? 19.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$  and 18...c6? 19.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  20.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  are both losing.

### 19. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ $cxd6$

The Levenfish plan has succeeded and his knight is permanently installed on d5.

After 19... $\mathbb{W}xd6$  White also has the advantage thanks to the activity of his pieces and the weaknesses (of both pawns and squares) in the opposing camp.



**20. Rfe1**

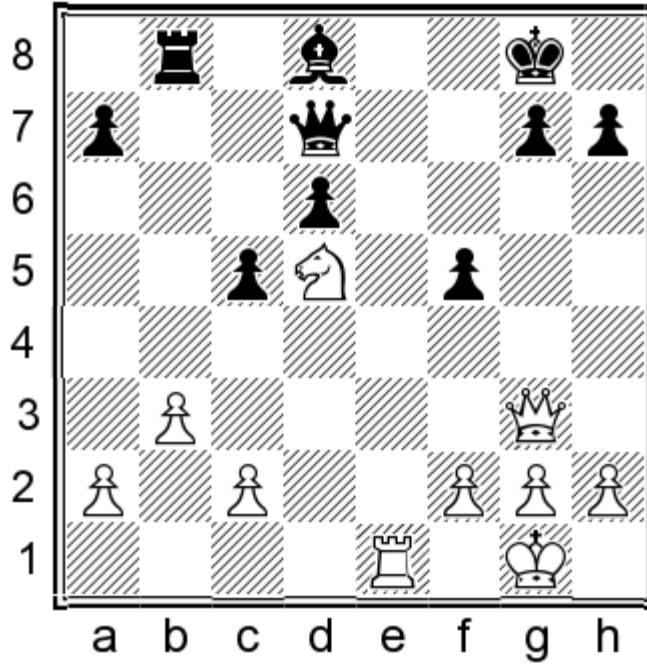
To exchange the most active black piece. Playing on the d-file by 20. Qe3! (20. Rd3?! c4!? gives the black pieces some prospects) 20... Qc7 21. Rd5 Rf8 22. Qc4 followed by Rf1-d1 and Rg3-d3 is also strong.

**20... Re6 21. Qf4 Rx e1+ 22. Rx e1 Ra5**

To make way for the rook. 22... Rf6 to strengthen the kingside seems more natural, but after, for example, 23. Rd3 Re8 24. Rd5+ Rh8 25. Rx e8+ Rx e8 26. Qe6! (26. Rx d6? Re1#), White is much better.

**23. Qd5 Rd8**

23... Re8? allows 24. Rx e8+ Rx e8 25. Qf6+.



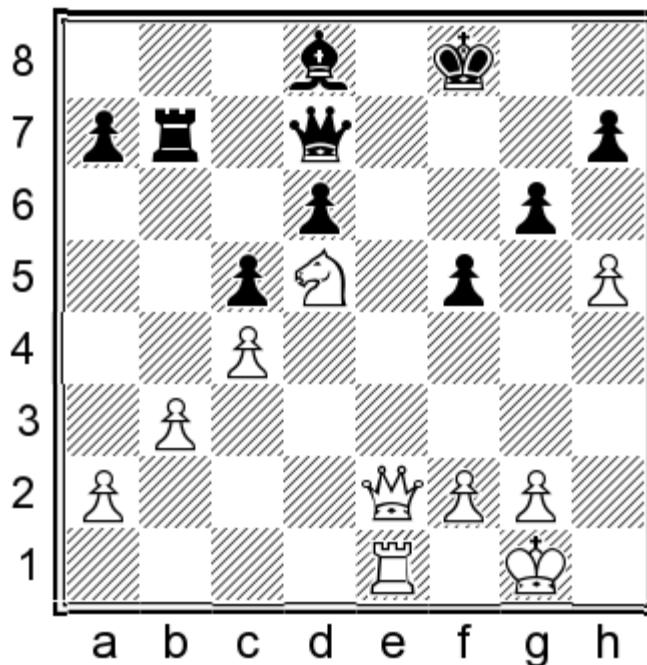
**24.h4!**

The white pieces are already well placed and this move is useful to create weaknesses around the black king as well as to avoid a possible back-rank mate.

**24... $\mathbb{E}b7$  25.c4  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  26. $\mathbb{W}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  27. $\mathbb{W}e2$  g6?**

This weakening move is not necessary. 27... $\mathbb{Q}xh4?$  loses to 28. $\mathbb{W}h5$ , but 27... $\mathbb{Q}a5!$  slightly eases the pressure on the e-file and gives some chance of survival.

**28.h5  $\mathbb{Q}f8$**



## 29.h6?

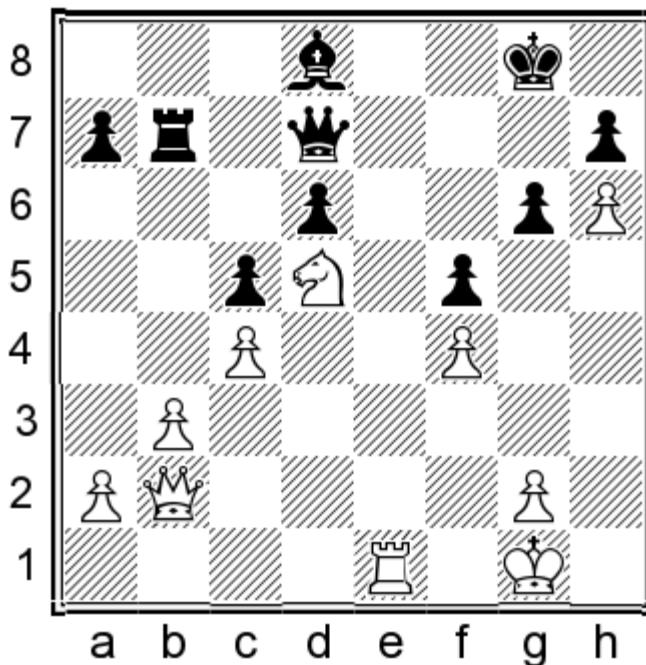
The direct attack on the g6-pawn was more accurate: 29.hxg6! hxg6 30. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  31. $\mathbb{W}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  32. $\mathbb{W}g3$   $\mathbb{W}f7$  33. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ , winning the d6-pawn and the game.

## 29... $\mathbb{Q}g5?$

It is tempting to get rid of the h6-pawn, but the bishop will eventually have to return to d8 while having lost time.

29... $\mathbb{W}f7!$ , with the idea of 30. $\mathbb{W}b2$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$ , defends the entry points into the black position for the moment.

## 30. $\mathbb{W}b2$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 31.f4 $\mathbb{Q}d8$



## 32. $\mathbb{Q}f6+!$

A typical scenario: the presence of the ‘bad’ bishop has made the black pieces passive throughout, but it is still useful to exchange it at some point in order to terminate the game.

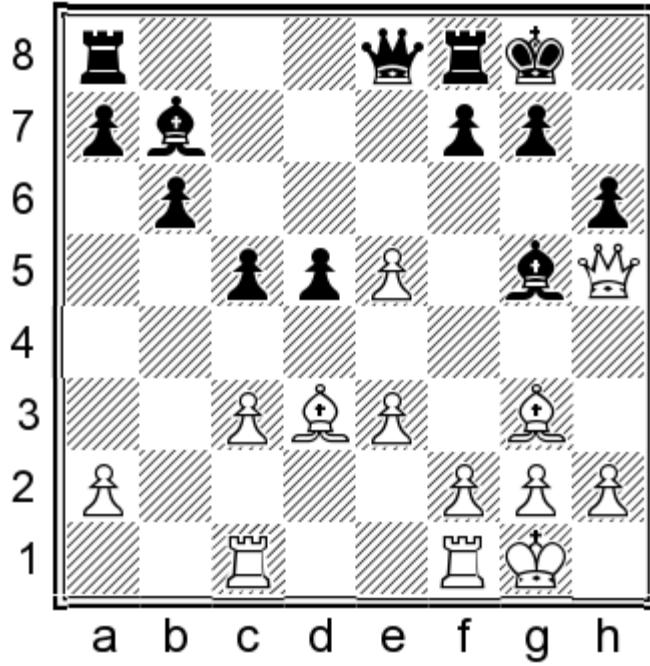
32. $\mathbb{R}e7!$   $\mathbb{W}xe7$  33. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{R}xe7$  34. $\mathbb{W}d2$  also wins easily, as Black has too many weaknesses to defend and cannot hope to build a fortress.

## 32... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ 33. $\mathbb{W}xf6$

Threatening 34. $\mathbb{R}e6$ .

## 33...d5 34.cxd5

Black resigned.



*White to move*

What is White's main plan and how can you implement it?

Show/Hide Solution

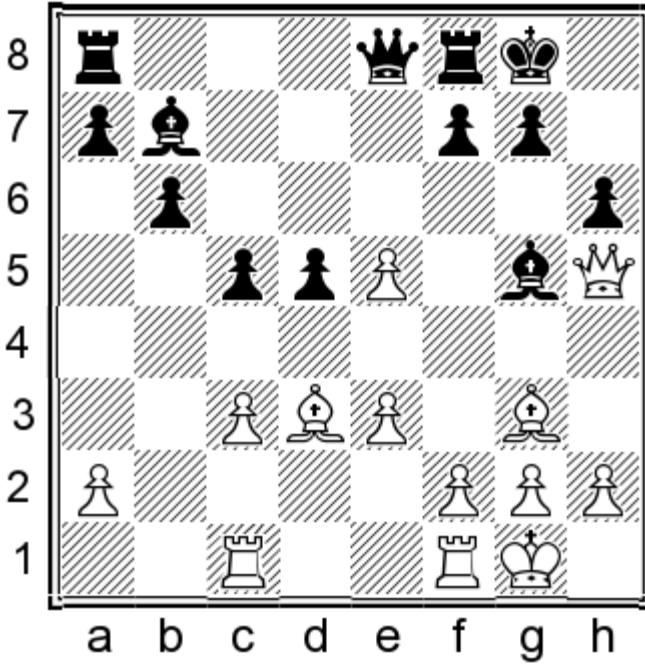
8

**Isaac Kashdan**

**Israel-Albert Horowitz**

New York ch-USA m 1938 (7)

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.♘c3 ♘f6 4.♗g5 ♘bd7 5.e3 ♘e7 6.♗f3 0-0 7.♘c1 h6 8.♗f4 c5 9.cxd5 exd5 10.♗d3 b6 11.0-0 ♗b7  
12.♗e5 ♘xe5 13.dxe5 ♘e4 14.♔h5 ♘xc3 15.bxc3 ♘g5 16.♗g3 ♔e8



*White to move*

White has active pieces and a four vs three pawn majority on the kingside (the e3-pawn is neutralized by the d5-pawn and is not included). His main plan is to advance his f-pawn to gain space and improve the f1-rook's prospects. The g3-bishop defends the e5-pawn, which will allow White to carry out the f4-f5 thrust without losing it, and if f5-f6 is also possible then the black king's pawn cover would be decisively damaged. Black does not have an active plan available to him at the moment and will strive to block the white f-pawn.

**17.f4 ♕e7 18.♕f5!**

A very strong move that provokes a weakening of the black kingside before opening the position.

A) 18.f5?! is tempting, with the deadly threat of 19.f6, but does not bring anything special after 18...f6!, for example:

A1) 19.♕xe8! ♜fxe8 20.e6 – without exchanging queens it was not possible to advance the pawn to e6, but the chances of an attack have disappeared and White is only a little better;

A2) 19.♕g4 fxe5 20.♕xe5 ♕g5! (20...♕f6 is also good, but there is some white pressure after 21.♕f4 ♜h8 22.♕f3 and the position is double-edged) 21.♕f4 (the sacrifice 21.♕xg7? loses after 21...♕xg7 22.h4 ♔xe3+ 23.♔h1 ♔xd3 24.hxg5 h5! 25.♕f4 ♔e4, which keeps lines sufficiently closed) 21...♕xf4 22.♕xf4 ♔e7 when Black is no longer afraid of an attack and has a slight advantage thanks to his good pawn structure.

B) The f4-f5 advance can be effectively prepared by 18.♕g4! with the idea of 19.f5 f6 20.e6, obtaining the structure that we have just seen, but with the queens still on the chessboard. The black king thus remains exposed and White is much better.

**18...g6 19.♕h3 ♔h7?**

Black had a curious defence, involving the sacrifice of the h6-pawn: 19...f5! 20.♕xh6 (20.exf6? ♜xf6 would be strong if 21.♕xh6? wasn't refuted by 21...♔xe3+) 20...♔f7! (with the idea of winning the queen by 21...♔h8) 21.♕h7+ ♔e6 (now the threat is to repeat moves, starting with 22...♔h8) 22.♔h4! ♔f7 23.♕xf7 ♜xf7 24.♕xe7 ♜xe7 – now White has an extra pawn and a decent advantage, but the win is far from assured.

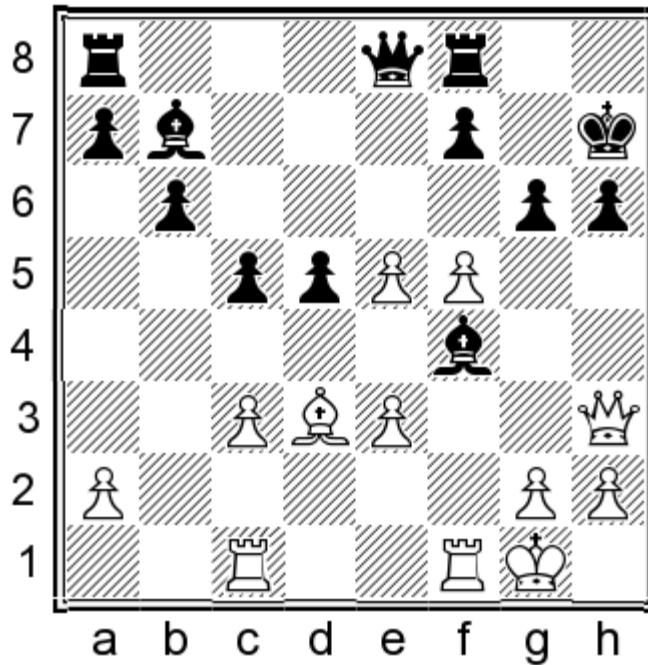
**20.f5**

With the threats of 21.♗f4 and 21.f6 among others. The white advantage is decisive.

**20...♝g5! 21.♝f4!**

To exchange the best black piece.

**21...♝xf4**



*White to move*

**22.♜xf4**

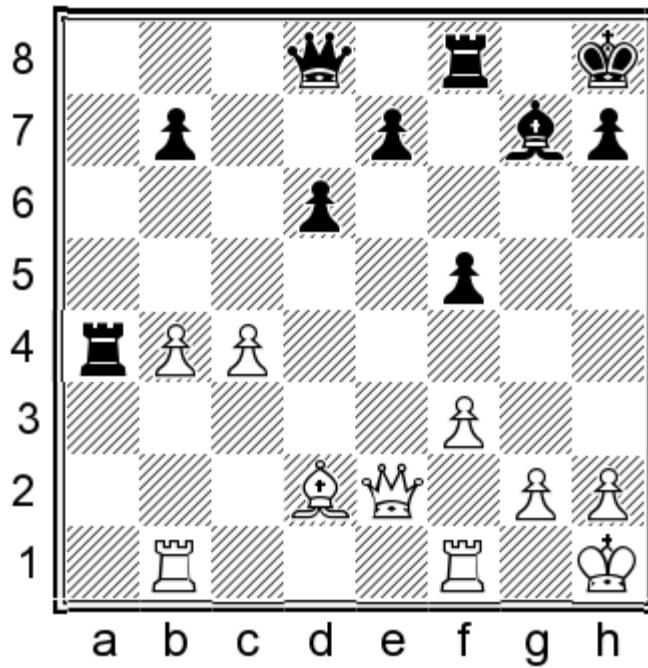
Kashdan sacrifices the e5-pawn to quickly get his rooks into play. 22.exf4, with the idea of taking on g6 and playing f4-f5 again in order to permanently eliminate the black pawns on g6, was also strong.

**22...♛xe5 23.♜cf1 ♔g8 24.fxg6 fxg6 25.♜xh6 ♛xe3+ 26.♔h1 ♜xf4 27.♜xg6+ ♔f8 28.♜d6+ ♔g8 29.♜xf4 ♛e1+ 30.♔f1 ♛e8 31.♜g6+ ♔h8 32.♜h6+ ♔g8 33.♜g4+**

Black resigned.

Show in Quiz Mode

9



White to move

White has the advantage and can continue in various ways. What plan is connected to the move 22. ♘g5 ?

Show/Hide Solution

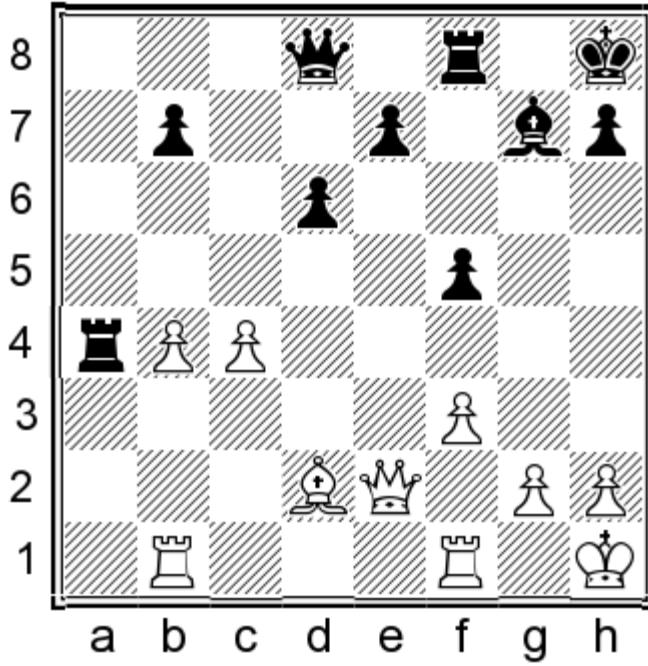
9

Vlastimil Hort 2510

Bent Larsen 2515

Bad Homburg 1998 (2)

1. ♘f3 ♘f6 2. c4 c5 3. ♘c3 g6 4. d4 cxd4 5. ♘xd4 ♘c6 6. e4 ♘g7 7. ♘c2 d6 8. ♘e2 ♘d7 9. ♘d2 0-0 10. 0-0 ♘c5 11. b3 a5 12. f3 f5 13. exf5 ♘xf5 14. ♘e3 a4 15. ♘xf5 gxf5 16. ♘b1 axb3 17. axb3 ♘h8 18. ♘h1 ♘d4 19. b4 ♘a4 20. ♘xa4 ♘xe2 21. ♘xe2 ♘xa4



*White to move*

The black pawns are vulnerable and there is no counterplay to compensate.

- A) One idea is to play 22.  $\mathbb{W}e6$  to fix the e7-pawn before attacking it and prevent ...  $\mathbb{Q}g7-f6$ , which would lose the f5-pawn. This obstruction of the f8-rook by the bishop also plays a role in other variations;
- B) 22.  $\mathbb{B}fe1$  is also possible. After 22...e5 White will concentrate on the d6-pawn while keeping the best minor piece, whereas after 22...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  23.  $\mathbb{W}d3$  he would prepare  $\mathbb{Q}d2-c3$  with the idea of exchanging bishops as in the game.

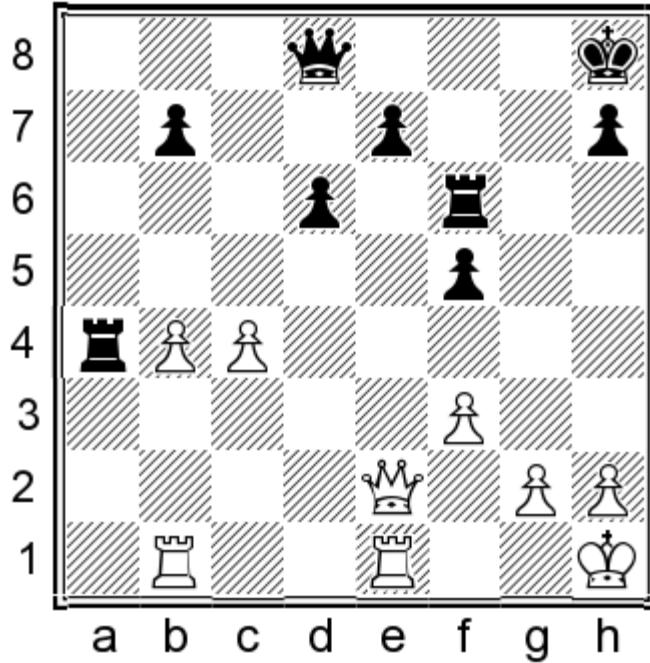
**22.  $\mathbb{Q}g5!?$**

The exchange of dark-squared bishops sought by this move is intended to weaken the defence of the black king, but in return the weak pawns will be easier to defend against direct pressure. White's plan is to attack the king and to consequently open lines by c4-c5.

**22...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$**

22...  $\mathbb{Q}e5$  23. f4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  also leads to the exchange of bishops.

**23.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{B}xf6$  24.  $\mathbb{B}fe1$**



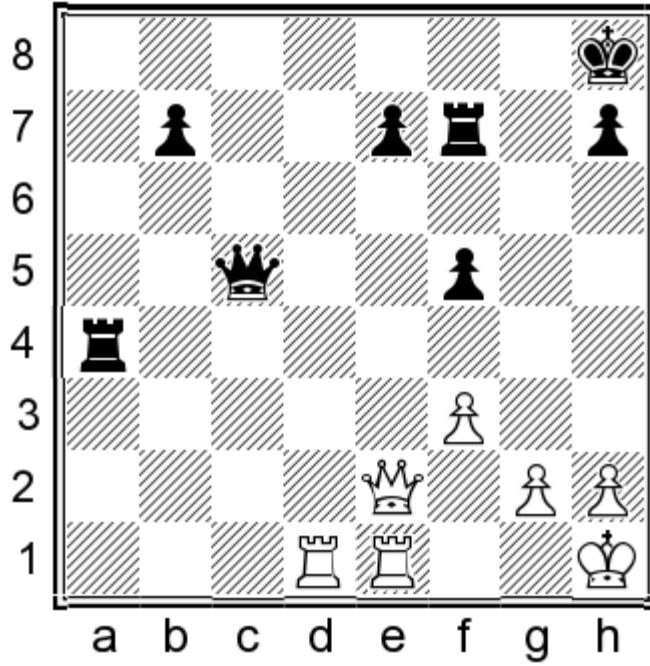
**24...Rf7**

The black king is exposed and the a4-rook is offside, but in the case of a transposition into an endgame this would look very different. This suggests the idea 24...Bg7!? 25.Rxe7+ Rxе7 26.Rxe7+ Rf7, which gives Black some compensation for the sacrificed pawn in the rook endgame due to his active pieces. Staying with a lasting initiative in the middlegame by 25.c5!? instead certainly deserves attention.

**25.c5! dxс5 26.bxc5 Rd4**

There is no doubt that White is better and, in fact, he has several interesting ways to play. The position requires energetic play on his behalf in order to avoid giving the black pieces time to coordinate.

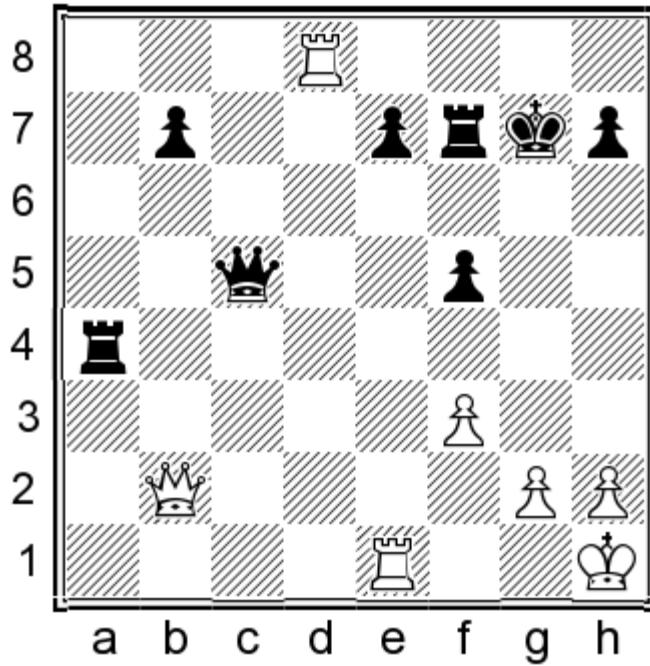
**27.Rbd1!? Rxс5**



**28.♖d8+?**

The play becomes tactical. This check weakens the first rank and allows Black to save himself. 28.♗b2+! first was the right move order, and after 28...♔g8 (28...♕f6? 29.♖d7 loses immediately) 29.♖d8+ ♕f8 30.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 31.♗h8+ ♔f7 32.♗xh7+ ♔f6 33.h4! the pawn participates in the play and a back-rank mate is avoided; on the further 33...♗b4, which attacks the rook and the h4-pawn, a convincing reply is 34.♗h6+ ♔f7 35.♗h5+ ♔f6 36.♗g5+ ♔f7 37.♗xf5+.

**28...♔g7 29.♗b2+**



**29...♔h6?**

After 29...e5! 30.♗xe5 Black has some choice, considering the weak back rank, and at least one clear draw: 30...♗b4! 31.♗c1 ♗f4! 32.♗e1 ♗e4! 33.♗xe4 fxe4 (even the f7-rook participates in the mate threats!) 34.♗d4 (one last try) 34...♗c7! 35.fxe4 ♗c1 36.♗d1 ♗xd1 37.♗xd1 ♗xe4

### 30.♗e6+ ♗h5

Or 30...♗g5 31.♗d2+ f4 32.♗d5+. After 30...♗f6 31.♗xf6+ exf6 32.♗xf6+ ♗h5 the simplest win is 33.♗f7+ ♗h6 34.♗e6+ ♗h5 35.♗e8+ ♗h6 36.♗xa4 and there is no back-rank mate.

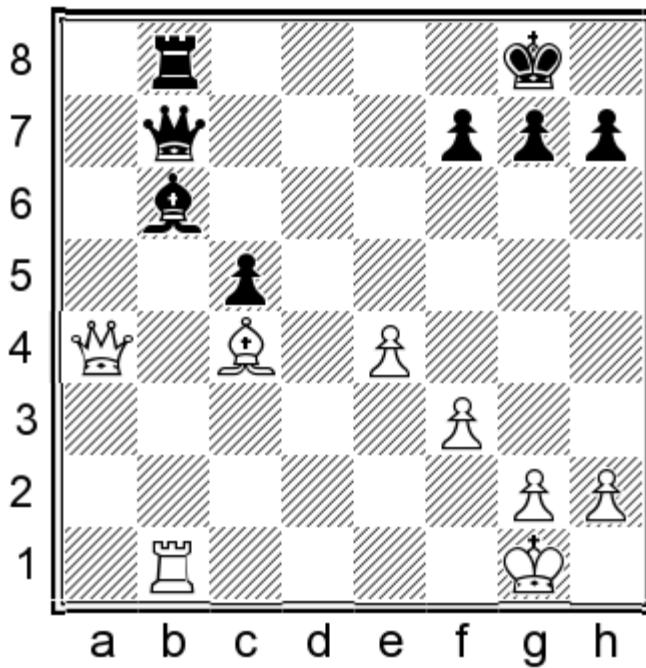
### 31.g4+ ♗h4

31...fxg4 32.♗e5+

### 32.♗h6+ ♗g5 33.♗d2+

Black resigned.

10



White to move

What do you think of this position?

Show/Hide Solution

10

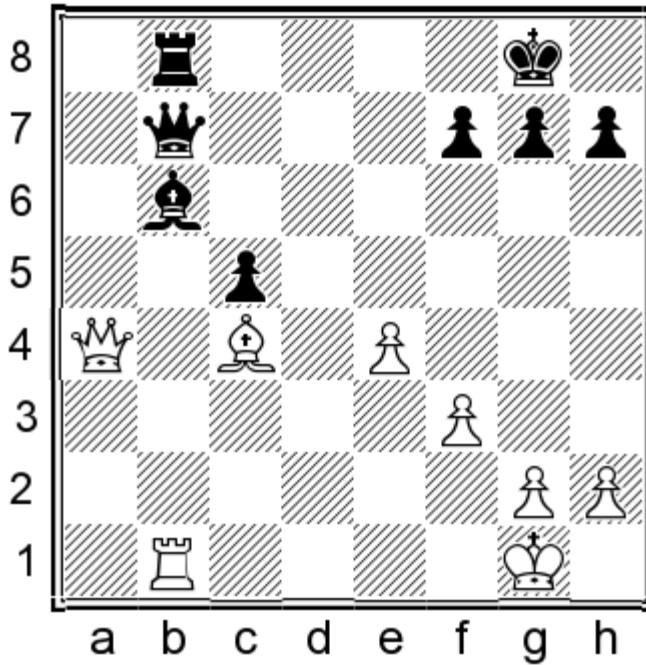
Isaak Boleslavsky

Olof Sterner

Stockholm tt 1954 (1)

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4 e6 5.♘b5 d6 6.c4 a6 7.♘c3 ♘f6 8.♗e2 ♘e7 9.0-0 ♗c7 10.♗e3 b6 11.♘a3 ♘b7

12.  $\mathbb{E}c1$  0-0 13. f3  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  exd5 15. cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}c5$  16. dxc6  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  17. b4  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  18.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{E}ab8$  19.  $\mathbb{W}e1$   $\mathbb{W}d8$  20.  $\mathbb{W}f2$  b5  
 21.  $\mathbb{Q}a5$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  22.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  23.  $\mathbb{E}xc6$  a5 24. a4 bxa4 25. b5  $\mathbb{W}d7$  26.  $\mathbb{E}fc1$   $\mathbb{E}fc8$  27.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  28.  $\mathbb{E}xc8+$   $\mathbb{E}xc8$  29.  $\mathbb{W}a2$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$   
 30.  $\mathbb{E}b1$   $\mathbb{E}b8$  31.  $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  32.  $\mathbb{W}d5$   $\mathbb{E}b6$  33.  $\mathbb{W}a8+$   $\mathbb{E}b8$  34. b6  $\mathbb{W}b7$  35.  $\mathbb{W}xa5$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  36.  $\mathbb{E}xc5$  dxc5 37.  $\mathbb{W}xa4$   $\mathbb{Q}xb6$



White to move

A typical opposite-coloured bishops position where the initiative plays an important role. For now the white pieces are the most active, but energetic play is required to exploit this. White will initially try to put pressure on the f7-pawn, to tie the opposing pieces to its defence, and then use his pawns to create a breach in the black kingside. The advance of the e-pawn to e6 is one way of opening lines, but it implies the exchange of the f7-pawn and should therefore not occur too early. The c4-bishop is an ideal blockader: it participates in the main plan while being difficult to attack.

Black will avoid passive defence as much as possible and will quickly seek to install his bishop on d4 to obtain counterplay against the white king. In this regard it should be noted that the f2-f3 advance can prove to be very weakening for the king position. Restricting the mobility of this bishop is therefore also part of White's objectives.

**38.  $\mathbb{E}d1!$**

With the threat of 39.  $\mathbb{E}d7$  while taking advantage of the fact that 39...  $\mathbb{E}d8??$  leads to mate after the exchange of rooks. 38. e5 lacks energy, and after 38...  $\mathbb{W}e7$  39. f4 (39.  $\mathbb{W}c6?$   $\mathbb{W}xe5$  40.  $\mathbb{E}xb6$  does not work because of 41...  $\mathbb{W}d4+)$  39...  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  Black is ready to answer 40.  $\mathbb{E}d1$  with 40...  $\mathbb{E}d8$  and has improved his position.

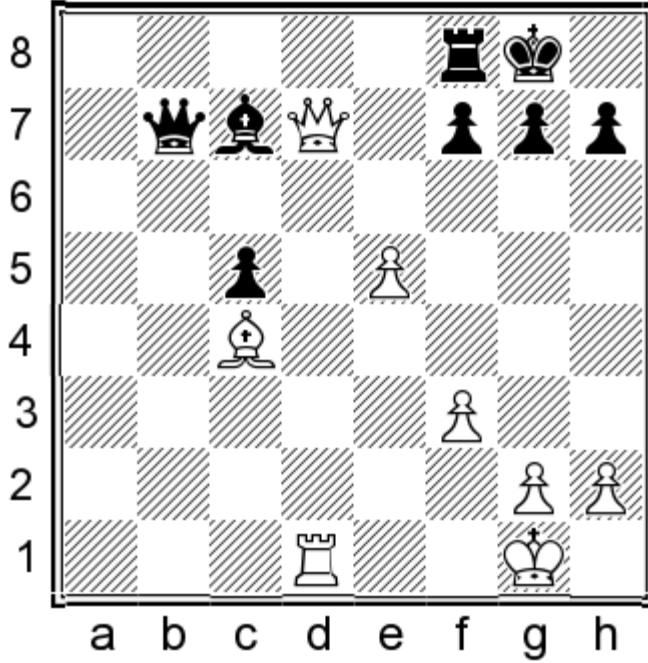
**38...  $\mathbb{Q}c7!$**

The bishop heads for the d4-square and 39.  $\mathbb{E}d7$  is prevented because of 39...  $\mathbb{W}b1+$ .

**39.  $\mathbb{W}d7$   $\mathbb{E}f8$**

Sternher had to accept the immobilization of his rook. He is ready to play 40...  $\mathbb{W}b8$ , unpinning the bishop and gaining a tempo on the h2-pawn.

**40. e5!**



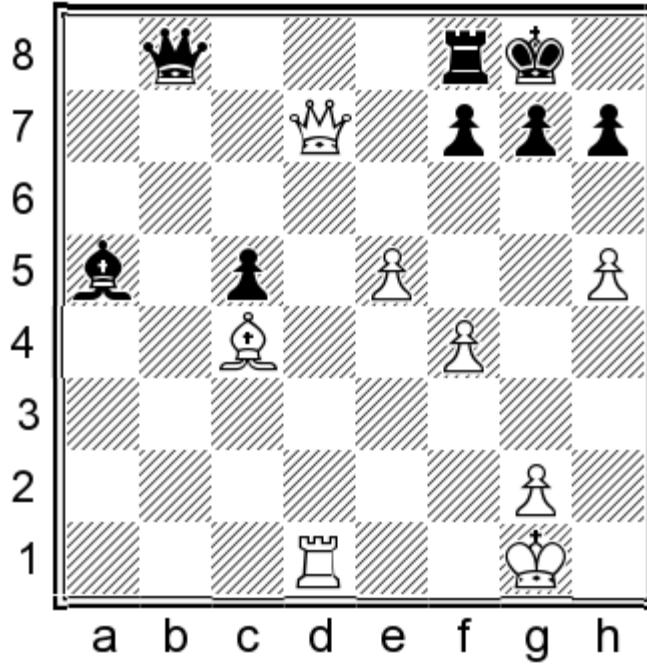
Both limiting the scope of the black bishop and introducing the theme of the e5-e6 breakthrough.

#### **40... $\mathbb{W}b6?$**

'The last move before the time control. This is a fatal loss of time. Black only keeps drawing chances after 40... $\mathbb{W}b8$  41.f4  $\mathbb{Q}a5$ , rushing to transfer the bishop to d4.' (Boleslavsky) There could follow:

- A) 42. $\mathbb{W}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}c3$  43. $\mathbb{E}d7$   $\mathbb{Q}d4+$  44. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{W}a8!$  (in addition to being desperately passive, 44... $\mathbb{W}e8?$  45. $\mathbb{E}a7$  allows the combination, if correctly prepared, of  $\mathbb{W}f5-e4$  followed by  $\mathbb{Q}c4xf7+$  and  $\mathbb{E}a7-a8$ , which wins the queen) 45.h4 ( $45.\mathbb{Q}xf7+\mathbb{Q}h8$  46. $\mathbb{W}b1$  wins a pawn while parrying the direct threats, but leaves a lot of counterplay after 46... $\mathbb{E}b8$ ) 45... $\mathbb{W}a1+$  46. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{W}g1+$  47. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{W}e1+$  – this variation, which leads to a draw by perpetual check, clearly illustrates Black's chances;
- B) 42.h4!  $\mathbb{W}b4!$  (after 42... $\mathbb{Q}c3$  43. $\mathbb{E}d6!$   $\mathbb{Q}d4+$  44. $\mathbb{Q}h2$  Black cannot obtain activity by 44... $\mathbb{W}b1?$  on account of 45. $\mathbb{W}xf7+!\mathbb{E}xf7$  46. $\mathbb{E}d8\#$  and is therefore lost) 43. $\mathbb{W}d5$  there is no immediate win and the queen has to retreat to ensure the position of the c4-bishop, however, the black bishop no longer has quick access to the d4-square. Each side tries to get organized, but White is much better.

**41.f4  $\mathbb{W}b8$  42.h4!  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  43.h5**

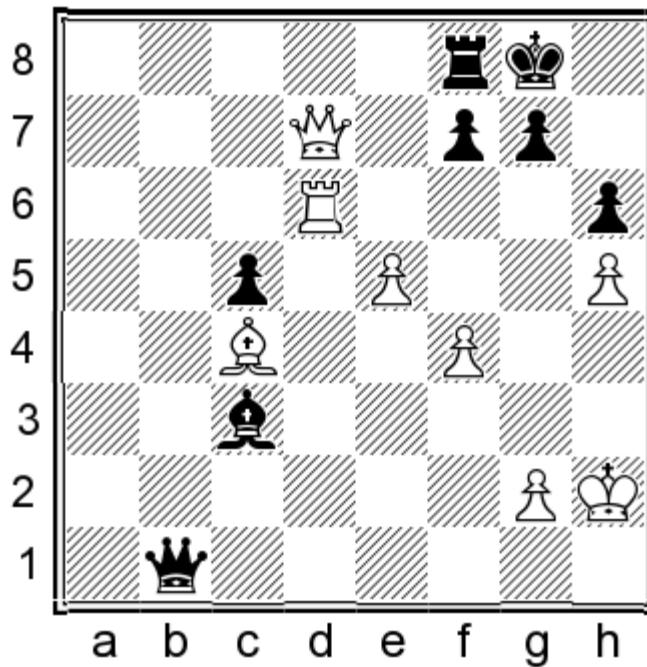


**43...♝c3**

A) After 43...♝b4 (we saw this position with the pawn still on h4 in the previous comment) White can win by 44.e6! (44.♝d5 is enough for a big advantage) 44...fxe6 (if 44...♝xc4 45.e7 wins the exchange and the game, with a little care) 45.♝xe6+ (the bishop stays on c4 to keep the black queen away) 45...♚h8 46.♝e7 ♛b8 (or 46...♜b8 47.h6! ♜c3 48.♜d7) 47.h6! (combined with the e5-e6 break this move will open the entire seventh rank) 47...♝c3 48.♜d7 ♜d4+ 49.♜xd4 (these variations are given by Boleslavsky, who includes more detail);

B) 43...h6 also deserves attention, to block the h5-pawn, but after 44.♝f5 threats appear on the b1-h7 diagonal.

**44.♜d6! ♛b1+ 45.♝h2 h6**



Parrying the threat of 46.  $\mathbb{W}xf7+$   $\mathbb{B}xf7$  47.  $\mathbb{B}d8\#$ .

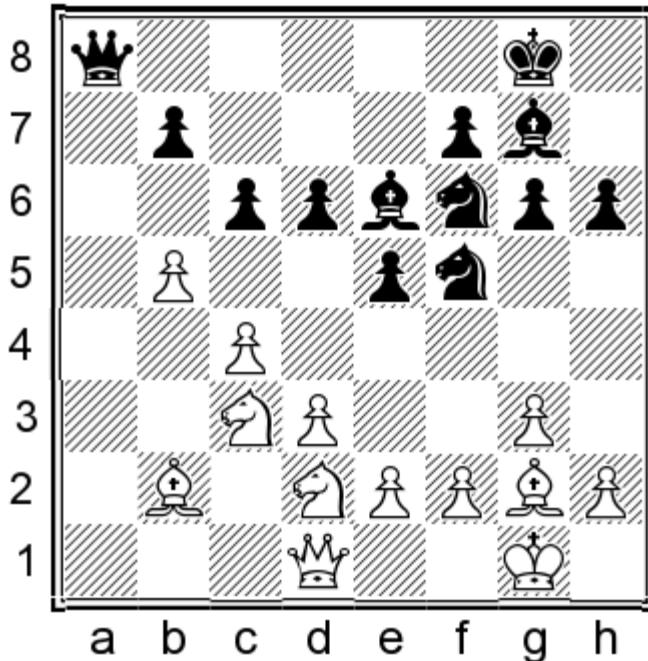
**46.  $\mathbb{W}xf7+!$**

Anyway! This is more elegant than 46.e6 fxe6 47.  $\mathbb{B}xe6$ , which also wins.

**46...  $\mathbb{B}xf7$  47.  $\mathbb{B}d8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  48.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$**

Black resigned. After 48...g5 49.hxg6+ he must give up his queen to avoid 49... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  50.  $\mathbb{B}g8\#$ .

**11**



White to move

How can White obtain the advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

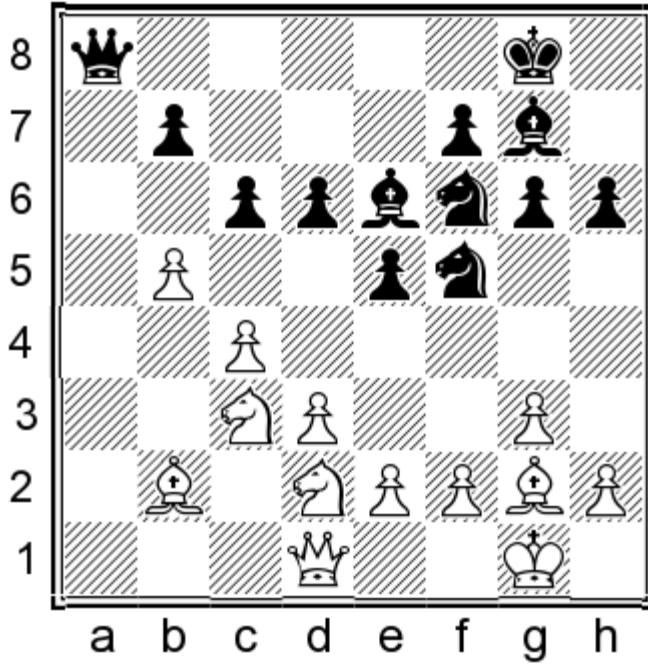
**11**

**Ulf Andersson 2585**

**Boris Gulko 2530**

Biel izt 1976 (15)

1.c4 e5 2.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3.g3 g6 4.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.d3 d6 6.  $\mathbb{B}b1$  a5 7.a3  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$  0-0 9.0-0 h6 10.b4 axb4 11.axb4  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  12.b5  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  13.  $\mathbb{B}b2$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$  c6 15.  $\mathbb{B}a1$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  16.  $\mathbb{W}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  17.  $\mathbb{B}fc1$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  18.  $\mathbb{W}d1$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  19.  $\mathbb{B}xa8$   $\mathbb{B}xa8$  20.  $\mathbb{B}a1$   $\mathbb{W}c8$  21.  $\mathbb{B}xa8$   $\mathbb{W}xa8$



*White to move*

White exerts strong pressure on the long light-squared diagonal that leads to the c6- and b7-pawns, but Black contests the control of the d5-square and if he could play ...d6-d5 under good conditions his problems would be solved. The black kingside space advantage is difficult to exploit because of the distant position of the queen on a8.

The immediate exchange on c6 would be a mistake as it would get rid of the weak b7-pawn. After, for example, 22.bxc6 bxc6 23.Wa4 Wxa4 24.Qxa4 c5 the white advantage would be very slight.

**22.Wa4!**

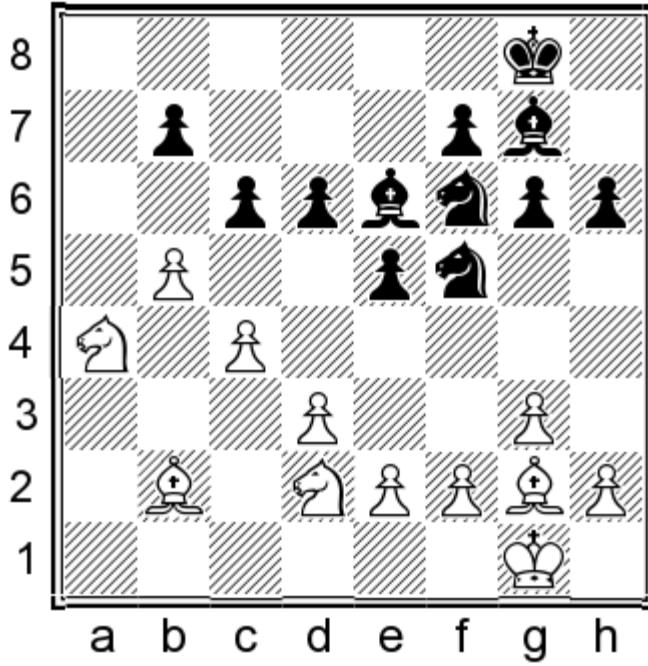
Both looking to exchange queens and also to put pressure on the c6-pawn in order to be more ‘persuasive’. An important general point: the exchange of queens often makes it possible to exploit any defects in the opposing pawn structure more easily.

22.Qb3 is also interesting, because 22...d5?! 23.Qc5 favours White, who can exchange the e6-bishop at the right time, and 22...Qd4 23.Qxd4 exd4 24.Wa4! (again this offer to exchange queens) gives White some initiative.

**22...Wxa4**

After 22...Wb8 23.bxc6? bxc6 the c6-pawn is indirectly defended because the b2-bishop is hanging and Black will play ...c6-c5 with a reasonable position. Instead of 23.bxc6?, 23.Qa3 c5 24.b6! wins the b7-pawn and the game, for example, after 24...Qd7 25.Wa7 Wd8 26.Qa4.

**23.Qxa4**



The importance of the b2-bishop is now plain to see: by putting pressure on the e5-pawn it fixes the d6-pawn to its defence and therefore participates in the attack on the light squares. This combined action of the two bishops is often seen in games with a double fianchetto. In the game and notes we will also see this bishop exchanged for both the f6-knight and a future d4-knight, again participating in the fight for the light squares.

### 23...Bd7

- A) 23...cxb5 24.cxb5 Bd7 is an interesting idea, to trade the b7-pawn for the b5-pawn, but it does not work: 25.Qc3 Qd4 26.Qc4 Bxb5 27.Qxd6 Qc6 28.Qxb7 with an extra pawn for White;
- B) The best defence is 23...Be7 24.bxc6 and now:
  - B1) 24...Qxc6 accepts a structurally inferior position due to the two weak pawns on b7 and d6;
  - B2) 24...bxc6 25.c5! Qe8 26.cxd6 Qxd6 27.Qa3! Qdc8 – this time Black has only one weak pawn, but his pieces are passive and White has a long-lasting initiative.

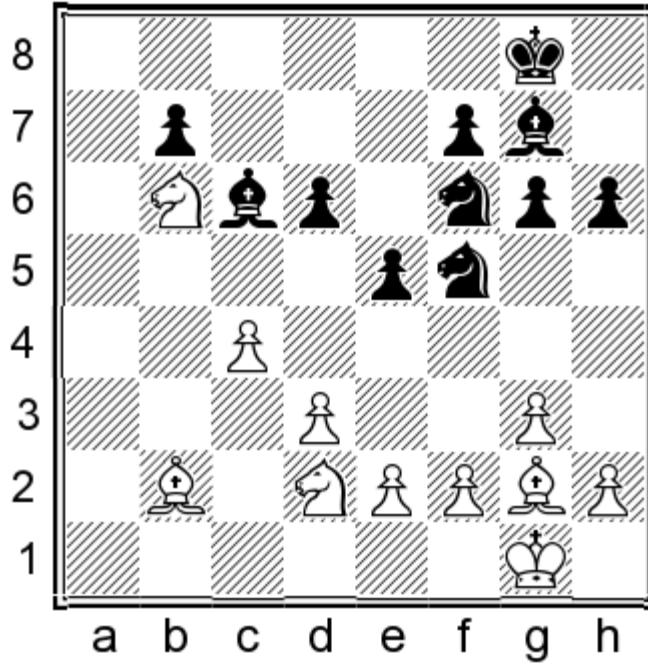
### 24.Qb6 Qe8

In order to keep the main light-squared defender.

- A) 24...cxb5 should lose after 25.Qxd7 Qxd7 26.cxb5 Qc5 27.Qc4 possibly followed by Qb2-a3;
- B) After 24...Qd4 25.Qxd7 Qxd7 26.Qxd4 exd4 27.bxc6 bxc6 28.Qxc6 White wins a pawn;
- C) On 24...Be7, 25.Qa3! is strong, as 25...c5 loses the b7-pawn.

### 25.bxc6 Qxc6

25...bxc6 26.c5! dxc5 27.Qxe5 leads to a large white advantage.



**26.♘b3!**

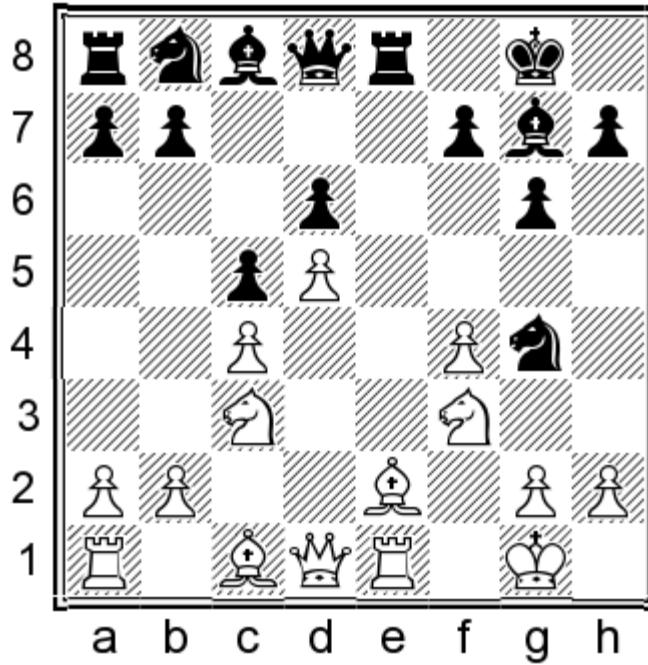
The knight heads for the a5-square and a pawn is lost.

**26...e4 27.♗xf6 ♗xf6 28.♗xe4 ♘d4 29.♗xc6 bxc6 30.♗xd4 ♗xd4 31.♗c8**

The double threat of taking the d6-pawn and giving a check on e7 wins a second pawn.

**31...♗c5 32.♗e7+ 1-0**

12



*Black to move*

Can you calculate the combination initiated by 11... $\mathbb{Q}d4+$ , without forgetting to evaluate it?

Show/Hide Solution

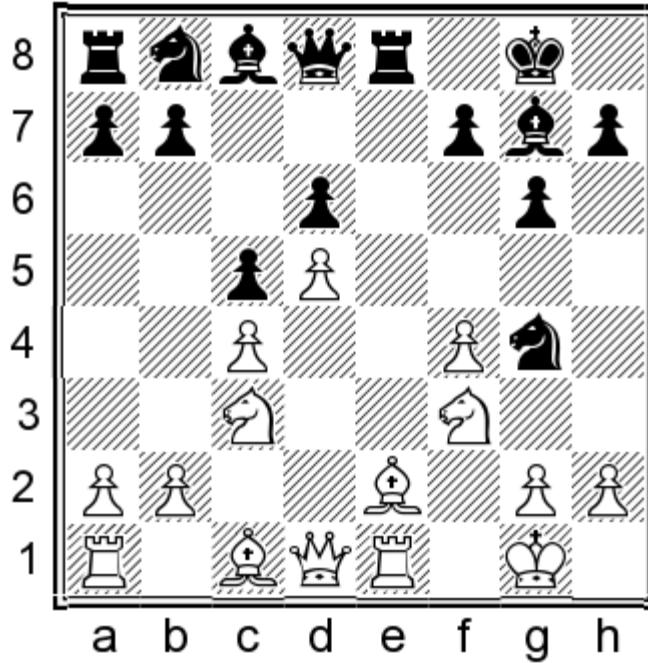
12

Miroslav Filip

Laszlo Szabo

Amsterdam ct 1956

1.c4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  g6 3.e4 d6 4.d4  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5.f4 c5 6.d5 0-0 7. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  e6 8. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  exd5 9.exd5  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  10.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}g4$  11. $\mathbb{Q}e1$



*Black to move*

White has a space advantage but certain squares in his camp are vulnerable and Black will try to exploit this in a direct manner.

**11... $\mathbb{Q}d4+?$  12. $\mathbb{Q}xd4!$**

12. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  loses after 12... $\mathbb{W}h4!$  (or 12... $\mathbb{Q}xh2+!$  13. $\mathbb{Q}xh2$   $\mathbb{W}h4) 13.\mathbb{W}xd4$  (13. $\mathbb{Q}xh4$   $\mathbb{Q}xh2\#)$  13... $\mathbb{Q}xh2+!$  14. $\mathbb{Q}xh2$  cxd4.

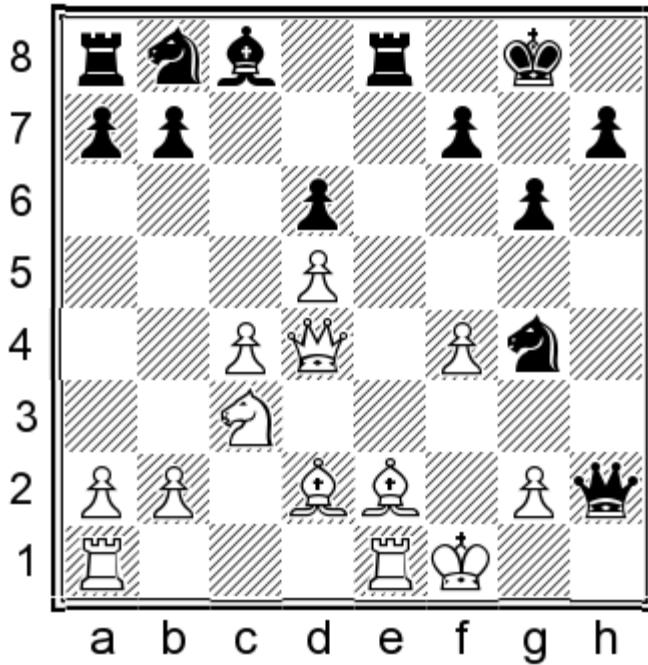
**12...cxd4 13. $\mathbb{W}xd4!$**

The g4-knight is menacing and it is tempting to eliminate it, but 13. $\mathbb{Q}xg4?$  comes up against 13... $\mathbb{Q}xg4!$  as 14. $\mathbb{Q}xe8+?$  (14. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  is a lesser evil, with a black advantage) 14... $\mathbb{W}xe8$  15. $\mathbb{W}xg4?$  allows 15... $\mathbb{W}e1\#$ .

**13... $\mathbb{W}h4$**

Attacking the e1-rook and thus winning the h2-pawn.

**14.♕d2 ♕xh2+ 15.♔f1**



After a brilliant combination, without even sacrificing material, Black has dismantled his opponent's kingside and the white king has to contend with the dangerous queen and knight duo. It is reasonable to assume that Szabo had calculated up to here (we don't know) and that he judged his position to be satisfactory.

However, there is another side to the coin: Black no longer has any centre, his queenside is undeveloped and the dark squares around his king are very weak. And as it turns out that there is no way to continue the attack or give a perpetual check, White is simply winning.

It is not uncommon for an attack on the king, whether correct or not, to be accompanied by a weakening of the central position. It is then interesting to liken it to a sacrificial attack, even if it involves no material investment.

**15...♝a6**

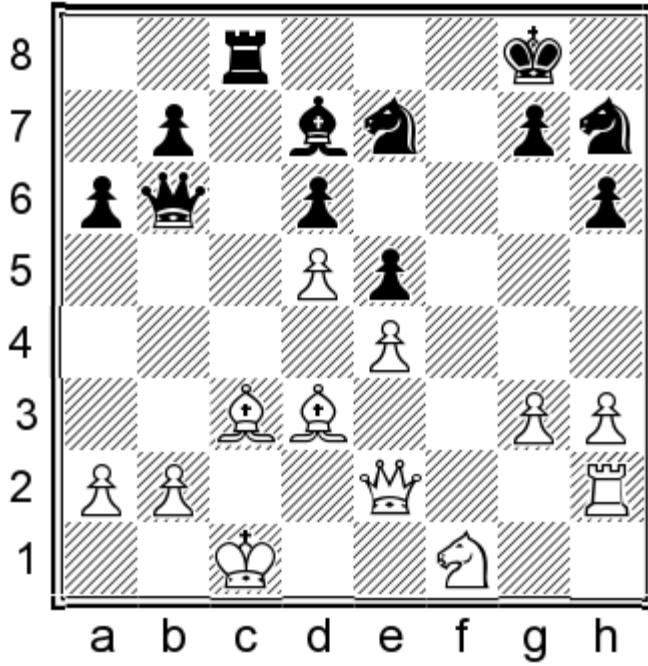
Or 15...♛h1+ 16.♝g1 with two possibilities:

A) 16...♛h4 (16...♞h2+ 17.♔f2 ♞g4+ 18.♕xg4 ♛h4+ 19.♔f1 amounts to the same) 17.♕xg4 ♜xe1+ 18.♜xe1 ♛xg4 19.♜e8+ ♔g7 20.♛d4+ is hopeless;

B) 16...♛xg1+ 17.♔xg1 ♜a6 18.♕xg4 ♛xg4 19.♝e4 when the threats of 20.♝xd6 and 20.♝f6+ are decisive.

**16.♕xg4 ♛xg4 17.♝e4 ♜xe4 18.♜xe4 ♜c5 19.♝e3**

Black resigned. 19...♛h1+ 20.♔f2 ♛xa1 21.♝c3 leads to mate.



*Black to move*

Which plan gives Black the advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

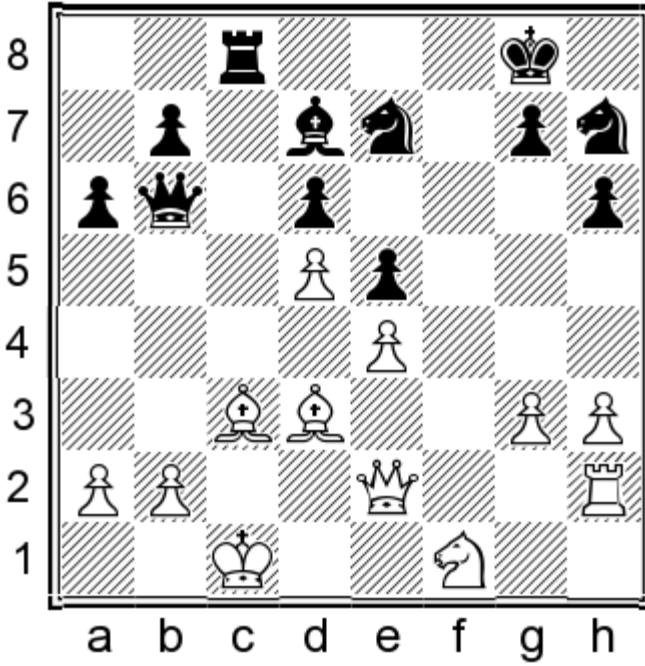
**13**

Sergey Kalinitschew 2491

Erik van den Doel 2582

Germany Bundesliga 2005/06 (6)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  4. $\mathbb{W}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  d6 6. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  h6 7. $\mathbb{Q}d2$  e5 8.d5  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  10.e4 0-0 11. $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  12.g3 f5 13.f3 fxe4 14.fxe4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  15.h3  $\mathbb{Q}h5$  16. $\mathbb{W}h2$  c6 17. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  18. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{W}b6$  19. $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  20. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  cxd5 21.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  22.0-0-0  $\mathbb{E}ac8$  23. $\mathbb{E}df1$  a6 24. $\mathbb{E}h2$   $\mathbb{E}f7$  25. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{E}xf1+$  26. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$



*Black to move*

Black has active pieces with prospects on both wings and chances of an attack on the king. Some white pawns are exposed and require protection: h3 is already under attack and this could soon be the case for e4 and g3. White has a space advantage and the bishop pair, which will give him good long-term prospects if he manages to properly coordinate his pieces. It is therefore desirable that Black plays dynamically, if possible.

A) After 26... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  27. $\mathbb{W}e3$  White gains time with the threat of exchanging queens and prepares to bring his rook into play on c2 to defend his king, if necessary;

B) 26... $\mathbb{W}g1$  27. $\mathbb{W}e3$  isn't dangerous either.

**26... $\mathbb{Q}b5!$**

The exchange of light-squared bishops aims to put pressure on the e4-pawn, which is not easy to defend. An important point is that the 'good' white bishop on c3 does not participate in its defence. This should appear to be a promising plan without any calculation and, in fact, it is the only way to gain an advantage. Lets now see the variations:

A) 27. $\mathbb{Q}d2?$   $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  28. $\mathbb{W}xd3$   $\mathbb{W}g1+$  29. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  loses after 29... $\mathbb{E}f8$ ;

B) 27. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}f6!$  (27... $\mathbb{E}xc3$  28. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  gives nothing) 28. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  (preparing  $\mathbb{Q}c3-e1$  while keeping the queen on e2; after 28. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{W}c5!$  29.a3? – desirable in principle – 29... $\mathbb{Q}xd3+$  30. $\mathbb{W}xd3$   $\mathbb{W}c1+$  the bishop is lost) 28... $\mathbb{A}xb5$  29. $\mathbb{Q}e1$  (the bishop blocks the first rank and leaves the d2-square free for the knight but gives up control of the d4-square) 29... $\mathbb{W}c5!$  (there are other ways to gain the advantage, but this precise move forces the a-pawn to advance due to the threat of mate on c1) 30.a3  $\mathbb{W}d4!$  31. $\mathbb{Q}d2$  (the protection of the e4-pawn mobilizes two white pieces and hinders the others) and now 31...b4? loses the queen after 32. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$ , while 31... $\mathbb{W}a4!$ , with the threat of 32...b4 33. $\mathbb{A}xb4$   $\mathbb{W}c2+$  34. $\mathbb{Q}a2$   $\mathbb{E}a8+$ , is decisive;

C) 27. $\mathbb{E}g2$  (defending the g1-square and keeping control of the second rank, but deserting the h3-pawn, which Black can immediately take advantage of to gain a tempo) 27... $\mathbb{Q}g5!$  (the best for White is probably to give up the h3-pawn in order to limit the damage) 28.h4 (28. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$   $\mathbb{A}xb5$  29.h4  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  30. $\mathbb{W}xe4$  b4 – the fall of the e4-pawn improves the e7-knight's prospects and the white king is very exposed) 28... $\mathbb{W}d4!$  29. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$  30. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  31.bxc3 clearly favours Black who can get three pawns for his piece while retaining an attack. Nevertheless, there is also a forced win after

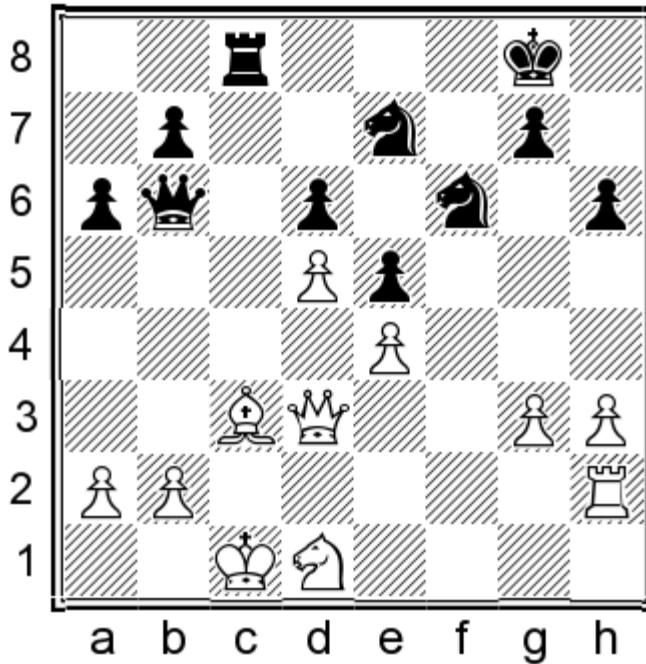
31... $\mathbb{W}xc3+$  32. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{W}a1+$  33. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}f5!$  34. $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}xc2+!$  and now 35. $\mathbb{W}xc2$   $\mathbb{W}xf1$  36. $\mathbb{E}e2$   $\mathbb{W}xe2+$  37. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$   $\mathbb{Q}d4+$  or 35. $\mathbb{Q}xc2$   $\mathbb{Q}d4+!$  36. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{W}xa2+;$

D) 27. $\mathbb{E}h1$  (defending both the g1-square and the h3-pawn) 27... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  28. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}h5!$  White is struggling to cover all his weaknesses and is clearly worse after 29. $\mathbb{W}xh5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  or 29. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  30. $\mathbb{W}xd3$   $\mathbb{W}f2.$

**27. $\mathbb{Q}e3?$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  28. $\mathbb{Q}d1$**

The king is now out of danger, but the position collapses elsewhere.

**28... $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  29. $\mathbb{W}xd3$**

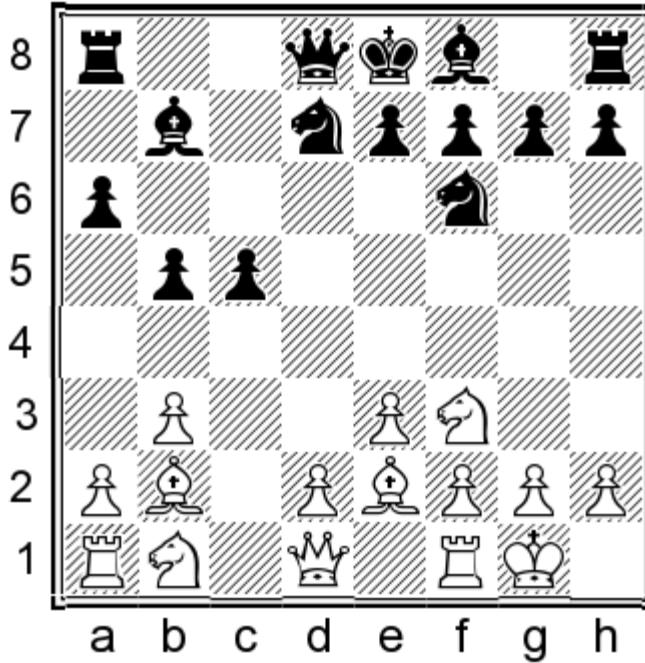


**29... $\mathbb{W}d4!$**

Winning the e4-pawn and the game.

**30. $\mathbb{E}d2$   $\mathbb{W}xe4$  31. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $b5$  32.a3  $\mathbb{W}f3$**

White resigned.



*White to move*

What is the only way to play that allows White to hope for some advantage? What do you think of Black's various replies?

Show/Hide Solution

**14**

**Paul Keres**

**Max Euwe**

the Netherlands m 1939/40 (12)

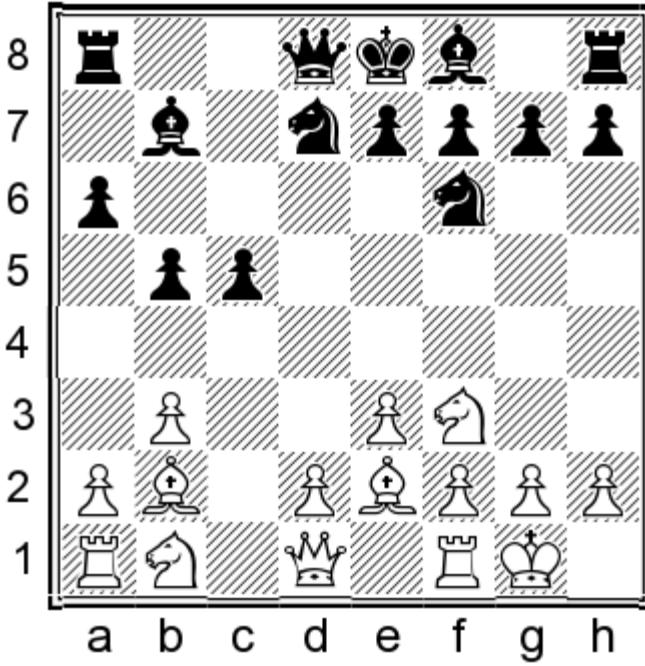
**1.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$  d5 2. c4 dx $c$ 4 3. e3 c5 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  5. 0-0 a6**

5...e6 is more flexible.

**6. b3!?**

An interesting idea: if Black plays ...b7-b5 his b-pawn will be exposed, as we will see in the game, and otherwise the ...a7-a6 move will lose its usefulness.

**6...b5?! 7.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}b2$   $\mathbb{Q}bd7$**



*White to move*

White is timidly installed in the centre and his only asset is his advance in development. To get any value from this he needs to find an object of attack: this will be the b5-pawn and, by the problems that its defence will cause, the queenside in general.

### 9.a4!

It is important to play this necessary move immediately in order to adapt to Black's chosen defence.

### 9... $\mathbb{W}b6?$

The choice to protect the b5-pawn is obviously risky but it avoids the emergence of new weaknesses and only precise calculation can allow a proper assessment of it.

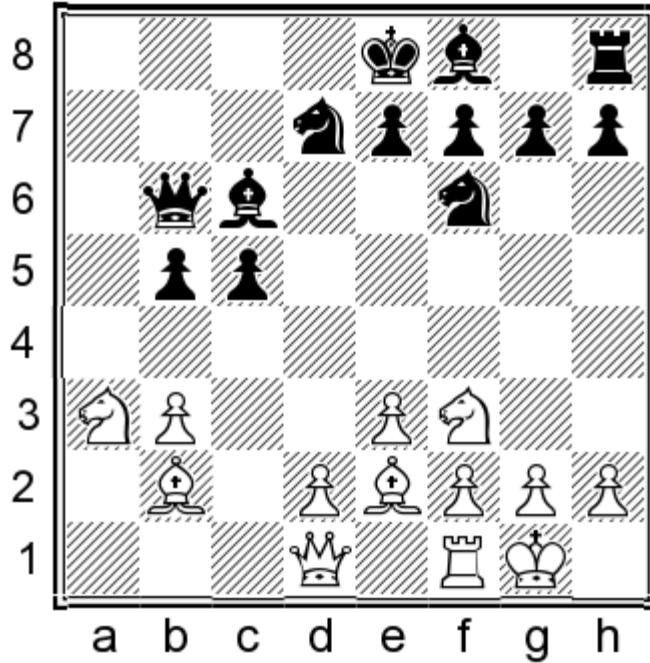
A) 9...bxa4?! 10. $\mathbb{B}xa4$  clearly favours White, who has support squares for his pieces on the a- and c-files as a result of the isolated black pawns, whereas he himself only has one isolated pawn on the area of the board where he has the initiative;

B) After 9...b4!, the best defence, White has the choice between 10.d4 e6 11. $\mathbb{Q}bd2$ , to play on the weakness of the black queenside, and 10.d3 e6 11. $\mathbb{Q}bd2$ , which is a bit compact, but leaves the c5-pawn in play, backward on an open file; in both cases he is a bit better.

### 10.axb5 axb5 11. $\mathbb{B}xa8$ $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}a3!$ $\mathbb{Q}c6$

This move keeps the b5-pawn in place, but it doesn't help bringing new pieces into play and the development lag increases.

12...b4 13. $\mathbb{Q}c4$  followed by 14. $\mathbb{W}a1$  doesn't improve the black position.



**13.d4!**

In order to gain the d4-square for the f3-knight and continue the attack on the b5-pawn. There is no longer any point in deferring this move.

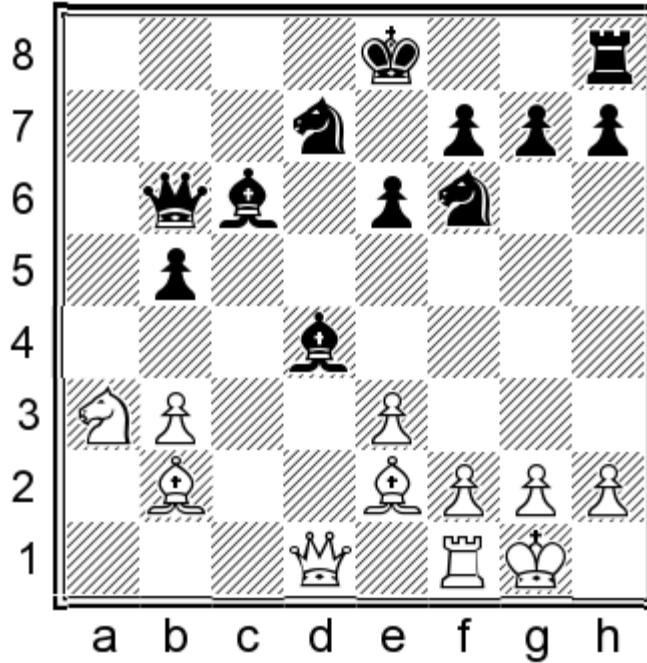
**13...e6 14.dxc5 ♜xc5**

14...♜xc5? 15.♝e5! leads to the exchange of the c6-bishop.

**15.♝d4 ♜xd4**

A) 15...b4 16.♝c4 ♜c7 17.♝xc6 ♜xc6 18.♞f3 ♜c7 19.♛a1 0-0 20.♜c1 gives White a big advantage;

B) After 15...♜xa3 16.♜xa3 b4 (to try to castle) 17.♝xc6! (17.♝xb4 ♜xg2! gives Black more chances) 17...bx a3 18.♝d6! ♜c5 19.♝xc5 ♜xc5 20.♜a1, the a3-pawn falls (20...♝xb3? loses to 21.♜xa3, which attacks the knight and threatens 22.♜a8+ – the lack of development still plays a role).



**16.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4!$**

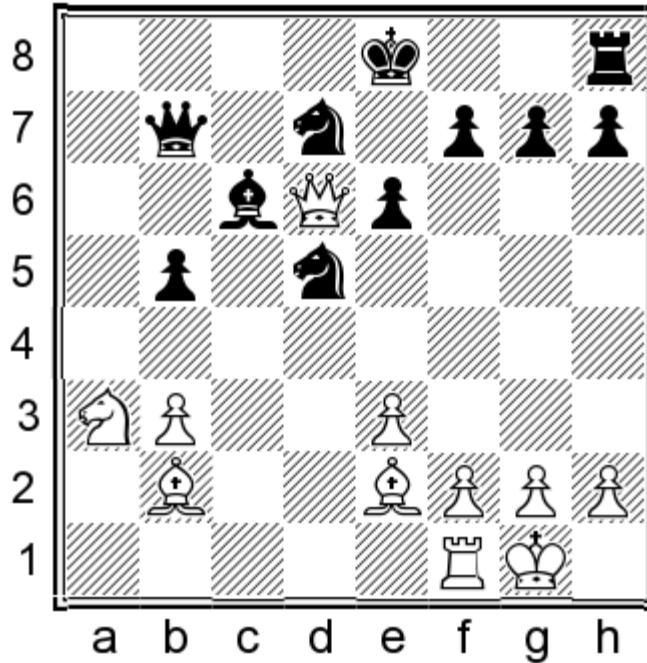
Not fearing the exchange of queens, which would further weaken the b5-pawn, Keres prepares to bring his rook into play.

16.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4 \mathbb{Q}b7$  gives no more than a slight advantage.

**16...  $\mathbb{Q}b7$**

After 16...  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  b4 18.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$  the b4-pawn is likely to be lost, but Black can still resist a bit.

**17.  $\mathbb{Q}b4 \mathbb{Q}d5$  18.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$**



Black has problems castling and the c6-bishop is exposed. There is no more hope.

**18... $\mathbb{Q}e7$**

Or 18... $\mathbb{W}c7$  19. $\mathbb{W}xc7$   $\mathbb{Q}xc7$  20. $\mathbb{E}c1!$  (an intermediate move which frees the f1-square for the king before taking on g7) 20... $\mathbb{Q}b8$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$   $\mathbb{E}g8$  22. $\mathbb{Q}e5$  with a white win.

**19. $\mathbb{E}c1$**

And not 19. $\mathbb{Q}xg7?$   $\mathbb{E}g8$  and the g7-bishop is lost.

**19... $b4$**

To deny the b4-square to the white queen before attacking it.

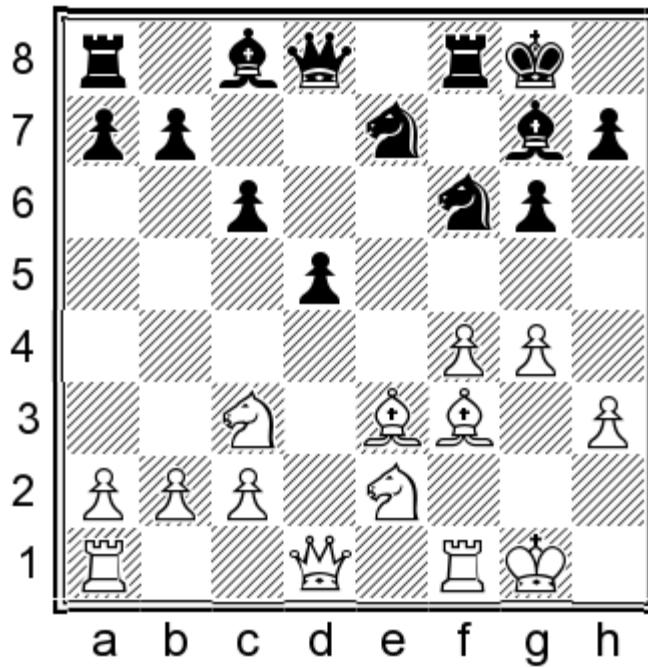
**20. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  21. $\mathbb{W}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2$**

Castling is finally possible but saves nothing: 21...0-0 22. $\mathbb{Q}a5$

**22. $\mathbb{Q}d6+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  23. $\mathbb{W}xd6$**

Threatening, for example, 24. $\mathbb{E}c7$ . Black resigned.

15



*Black to move*

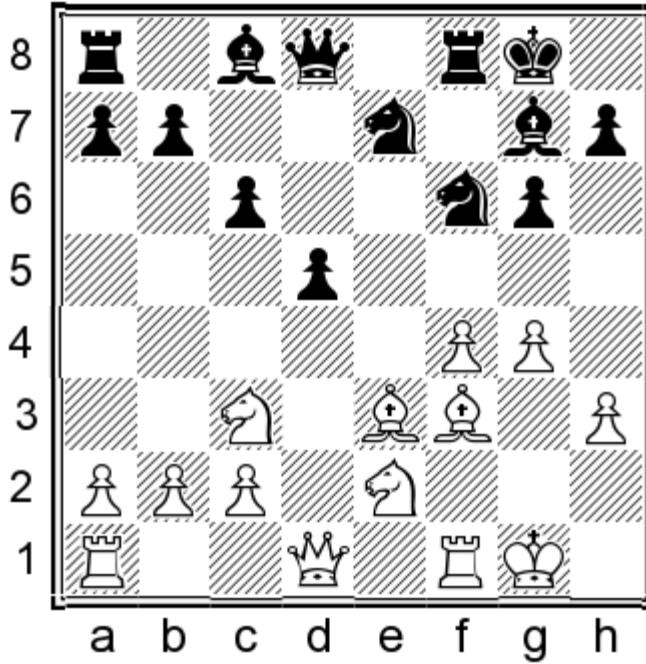
What plan leads to a large black advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

15

George Mackenzie  
Wilhelm Steinitz  
New York m 1883 (3)

1.e4 e5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  g6 4.d4 exd4 5. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  0-0 8.0-0 d6 9.f4  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  10. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  c6 11.h3 d5 12.e5  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  13. $\mathbb{Q}de2$  f6 14.exf6  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  15.g4



*Black to move*

Black has a strong central pawn on d5 which limits the action of the f3-bishop and c3-knight. He also has a mobile majority, and while its mobilization by ...b7-b6 followed by ...c6-c5 cannot be played quickly it is an important long-term plan.

The f4 and g4 duo does not promise White any attack at the moment, but it hinders the movements of the opposing pieces.

**15...h5!**

Steinitz uses a pawn in front of his king to attack the g4-pawn before it can be supported or before it can be used to force a dangerous opening of lines on the kingside.

**16.g5**

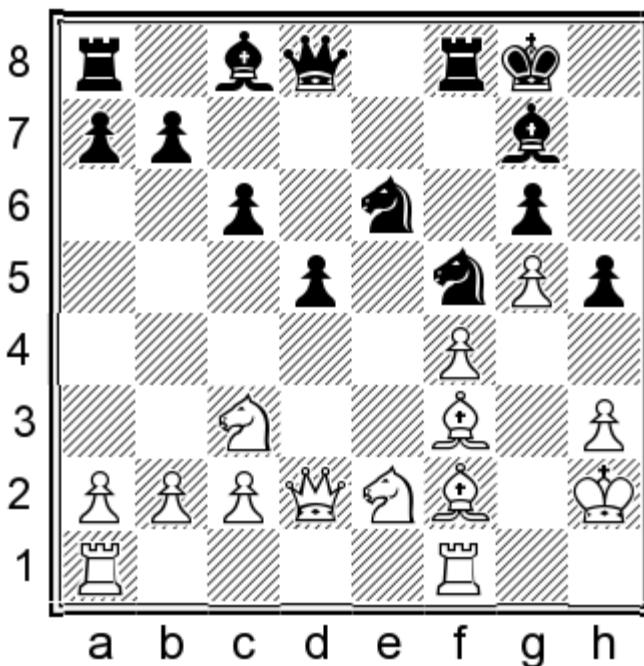
- A) 16.gxh5  $\mathbb{Q}xh3$  loses a pawn and
- B) 16. $\mathbb{Q}d4$  c5 allows a fork on d4;
- C) After 16. $\mathbb{Q}g3$  a clear path to an advantage is to continue to put pressure on the g4-pawn by 16... $\mathbb{W}d7$  17. $\mathbb{Q}c5$  and now:
  - C1) 17... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  18. $\mathbb{W}d3$  (18. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  is a dead end) 18...hxg4 19.hxg4  $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  20. $\mathbb{Q}ae1$  (and not 20. $\mathbb{Q}xe7?$   $\mathbb{W}xe7$  21. $\mathbb{W}xg6$   $\mathbb{W}h4$ ) 20... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  Black has won a pawn under good conditions, but still has to be careful because of his opponent's good development;

C2) 17...b6! 18. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{W}xe7$  White no longer has his important dark-squared bishop and cannot move his queen without losing the g4-pawn. He is doing very badly.

D) 16. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  (the last white move hampers his development and invites the combination 16...hxg4 17.hxg4  $\mathbb{Q}xg4!$  18. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  d4 with a big black advantage) 17. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  hxg4 18. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{W}e6$  19.hxg4 White has saved the g4-pawn with his knight manoeuvre, but he will lose another one after 19... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ .

These few variations illustrate Black's perspectives, but others are also interesting.

**16... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  17. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  18. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  19. $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$**



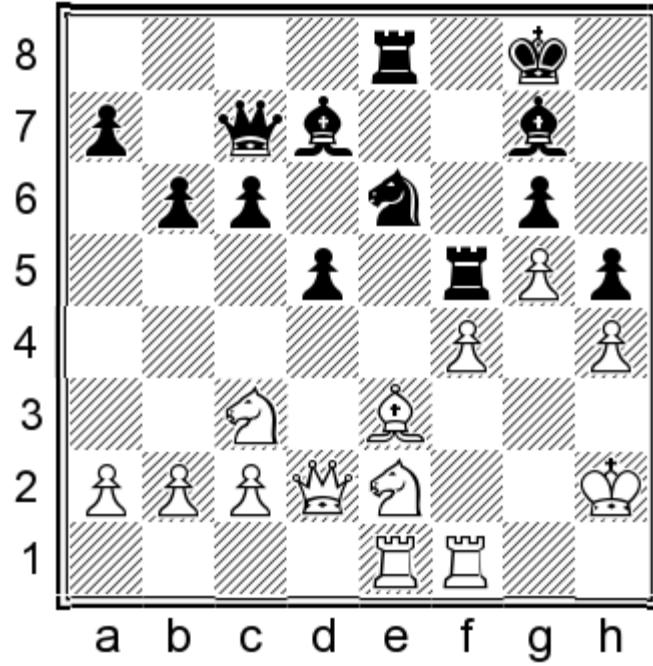
Because of the pawn structure Black firmly controls the d5- and e4-squares, and thanks to his knights and g7-bishop he has a good grip on the d4- and e3-squares. By adding that his majority is mobile while White's is devalued, with a weak pawn on f4, we can say that Black has a decisive advantage.

**20. $\mathbb{E}ae1$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  21.h4  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  22. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{E}ae8$  23. $\mathbb{Q}h3$  b6 24. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$**

To loosen the grip on the dark squares Mackenzie concedes his light-squared bishop, which is not without its drawbacks...

**24... $\mathbb{E}xf5$  25. $\mathbb{Q}e3$**

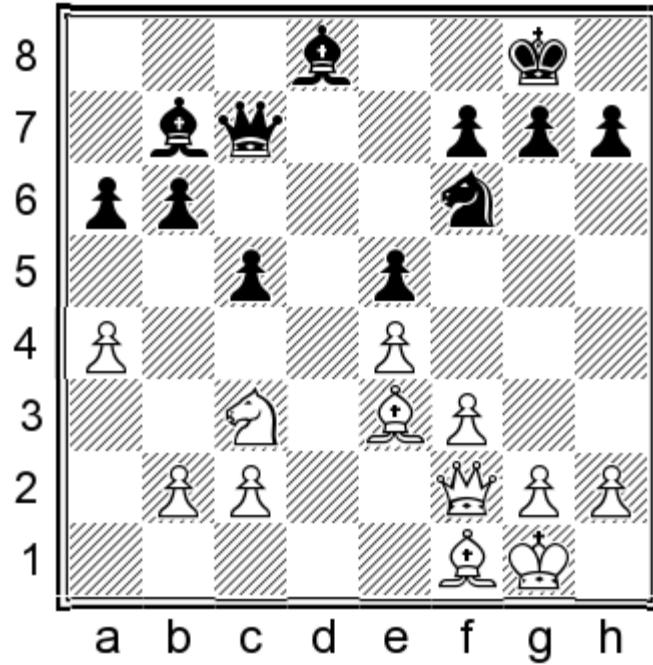
A tactical error which loses a piece. 25. $\mathbb{Q}g3$  preserves material equality, but after 25...d4 26. $\mathbb{Q}e4$  c5 Black will get to the long light-squared diagonal with devastating effect.



25...d4! 26.Qxd4 Qxd4 27.Bxd4 Rxe1

White resigned. After 28.Rxe1 Rxf4 the d4-bishop is attacked and there is the threat of a discovered check.

16

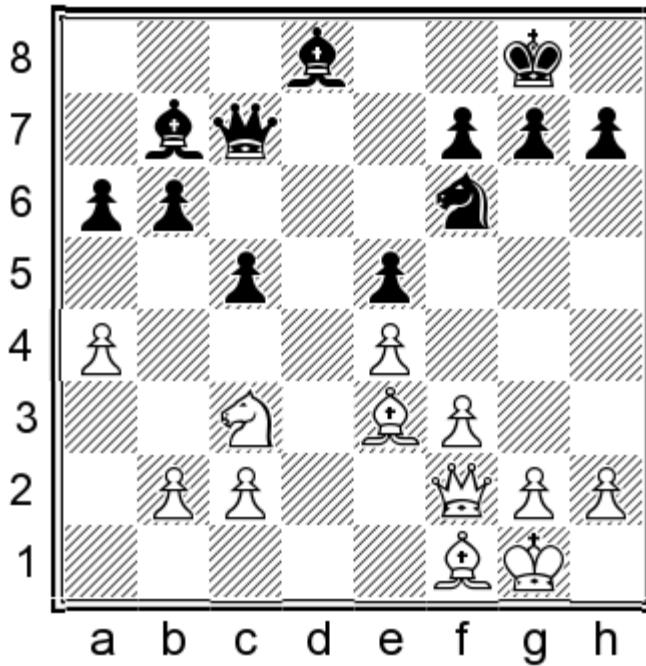


White to move

What is White's best plan?

Show/Hide Solution

1.e4 c5 2.♗f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♗xd4 ♗f6 5.♗c3 a6 6.♗e2 e5 7.♗b3 ♗e7 8.0-0 0-0 9.♗e3 ♖c7 10.♘d2 ♗bd7 11.a4 b6 12.♖fd1 ♗b7 13.f3 ♖fd8 14.♗f1 ♗c5 15.♗xc5 dxc5 16.♘f2 ♖xd1 17.♖xd1 ♖d8 18.♖xd8+ ♗xd8



*White to move*

The d5-square and the a6-pawn are exposed and this limits the mobility of the b7-bishop and f6-knight. The other black pieces can move, but have nothing interesting to undertake. The thematic first stage of the white plan is to put maximum pressure on these two weaknesses in order to make the black position a little more rigid and then to look for new objects of attack.

**19.♗c4!**

An ideal position for this bishop, from where it keeps an eye on the d5- and a6-squares while preventing a possible advance of the c5-pawn.

A) 19.♗g5?!, with the idea of playing on the light squares by 20.♗xf6 ♗xf6 21.♗c4, is strategically interesting but in this precise position allows 19...c4! 20.♗e2 b5! with a good game for Black as the b5-pawn is invulnerable (21.axb5 axb5 22.♗xb5? ♗c5+ loses the knight);

B) 19.a5?!, to attack the c5-pawn, gives nothing after 19...b5 20.♗xc5 ♖xa5.

**19...♗e7**

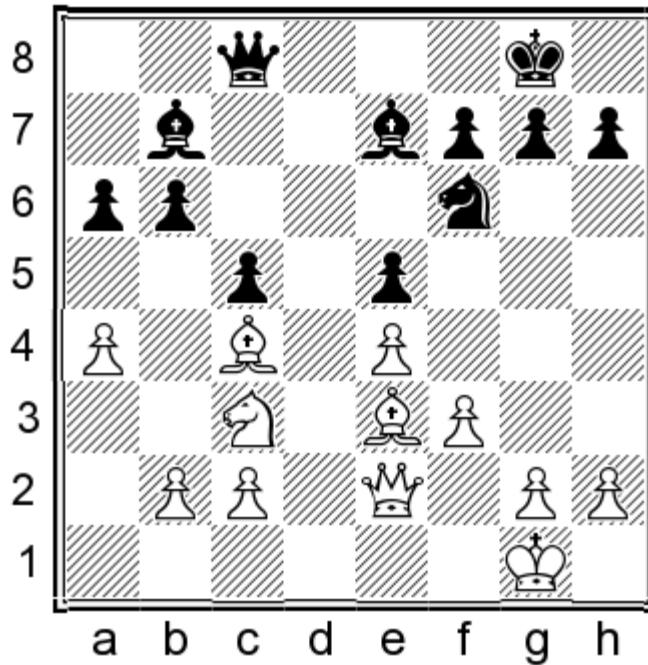
19...h6 was possible, to prevent ♗c1-g5, and should transpose into the game.

**20.♗e2!**

Geller pursues his main plan by attacking the a6-pawn.

**20... $\mathbb{Q}c8$**

The queen in turn sees its mobility decrease. The best defence was 20...a5!?, which further weakens the light squares, but leaves the black pieces their freedom. Then 21. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ ?! is not convincing because after 21... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ ! the bishop will have to waste time retreating, but 21. $\mathbb{W}d3$ ! increases the pressure on the d5-square, and the d-file in general, and gives White a lasting advantage after 21... $\mathbb{W}d8$  22. $\mathbb{W}xd8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$ ; the exchange of queens will avoid certain dangers for Black, but an invasion of the white king via the c4-square will be a new theme to watch out for.



**21. $\mathbb{W}d3$ !**

Continuing the overall plan is very strong.

21. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ ?! h6 22. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  23. $\mathbb{Q}d5$  is especially interesting now, because with his queen on c8 Black is forced to exchange the light-squared bishops. We must then reckon with the tactical follow-up 23... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  24. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  c4! 25. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$   $\mathbb{W}c5+$ ! (so that the white queen no longer attacks the c4-pawn) 26. $\mathbb{W}f2$   $\mathbb{W}c6$  and the bishop is about to come back into the game while the white pieces and the a4-pawn are awkwardly placed. Instead of 23. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ , preparation is possible by 23. $\mathbb{W}d3$  and after 23... $\mathbb{Q}g5$  White is better. But the game continuation is much more convincing.

**21...h6 22. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ ?**

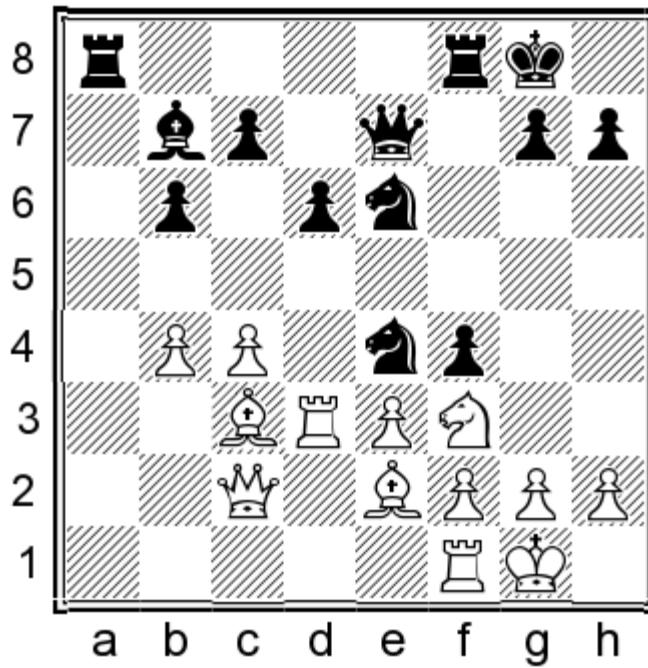
A slow move that emphasizes the passivity of the black position. Perhaps Geller wished to centralize his king with the aim of a possible transposition into the endgame.

**22... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  23. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$**

(continuation and solution 57)

Show in Quiz Mode

17



Black to move

What is Black's best plan?

Show/Hide Solution

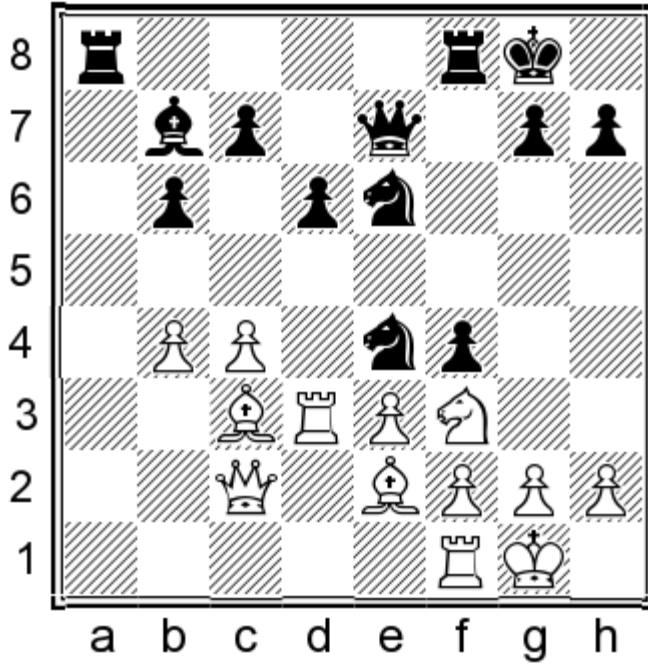
17

Leho Laurine

Paul Keres

Tallinn 1936

1.d4 e6 2.c4  $\mathbb{Q}b4+$  3. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{W}e7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  f5 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  6. $\mathbb{W}b3$  b6 7.e3  $\mathbb{Q}b7$  8. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  0-0 9.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  10. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  11.d5  $\mathbb{Q}a6$  12. $\mathbb{E}ad1$  d6 13.dxe6  $\mathbb{Q}ac5$  14. $\mathbb{W}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  15.b4 a5 16.a3 f4 17. $\mathbb{E}d3$  axb4 18.axb4



*Black to move*

Black has a good grip on the centre and the b7-bishop is powerful, which allows him to launch an attack against the white king, whose main weak points are the light squares f3, g2 and h3.

The c3-bishop, the only piece on the chessboard that cannot control the light squares, is useless for the king's defence and does not help get any counterplay for the time being, which is why the ... $\mathbb{Q}e4xc3$  exchange is not desirable without a very good reason. The e4-knight is an excellent piece, but it is currently misplaced because it only controls dark squares and hinders the action of the b7-bishop.

The move in the game, 18... $\mathbb{Q}4g5!$ , is very strong because it frees the b7-bishop's diagonal while accentuating the pressure on the f3- and h3-squares. It is also important to leave the e6-knight where it is in order to respond to e3xf4 (to get the d3-rook into play) by ... $\mathbb{Q}e6xf4$ .

Let's analyse the other black possibilities:

A) 18... $\mathbb{Q}6g5$  19.exf4!  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  (19... $\mathbb{R}xf4$  20. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$   $\mathbb{W}xg5$  21. $\mathbb{Q}b2?$ ?, with the idea of f2-f3, is favourable to White because 21... $\mathbb{Q}xf2?$ , attacking g2, is refuted by 22. $\mathbb{R}g3$ ) 20. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{R}xf4$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$   $\mathbb{W}xg5$  22. $\mathbb{R}g3$  leads to equality;

B) 18...fxe3 19. $\mathbb{R}xe3$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  Here Black has allowed the activation of the white rook to install a knight on f4, but gets nothing special after 20. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  (and not 20. $\mathbb{Q}d2?$   $\mathbb{W}g5$  with a black win).

### 18... $\mathbb{Q}4g5!$

The implementation of the attack and the understanding of the relevant themes (sacrifices on the light squares) is strategic, but we also need to calculate some variations...

### 19.exf4?

In order to place the rook on e3, but the black attack is going to be too fast. A good idea is to retreat with 19. $\mathbb{W}d1!$  to strengthen the f3-square, even though Black stays on top by playing, for example, 19... $\mathbb{R}a2?$  with the threat of 20... $\mathbb{R}xe2$  to eliminate a defender of the light squares. There could follow:

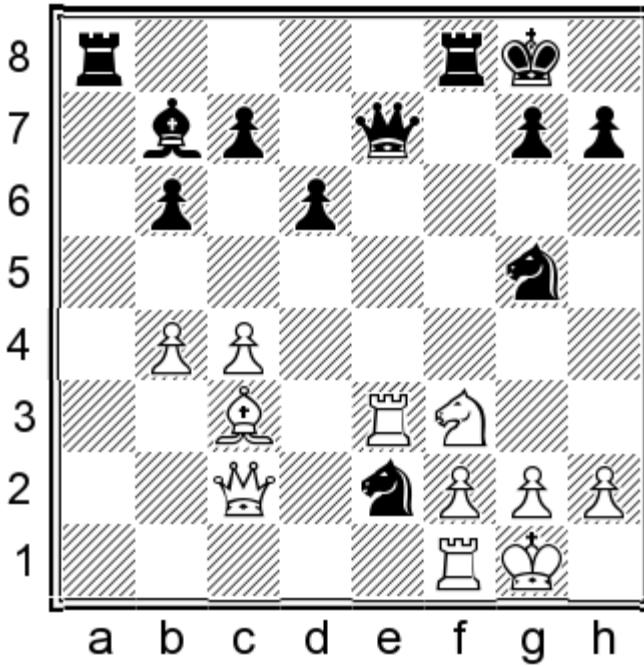
A) 20. $\mathbb{R}e1?$   $\mathbb{R}xe2!$  with a black advantage, for example: 21. $\mathbb{W}xe2$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$  22.gxf3  $\mathbb{W}g5+$  23. $\mathbb{Q}h1$  fxe3 24. $\mathbb{W}xe3!$

(24.  $\mathbb{E}xe3$  loses after 24...  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  25.  $\mathbb{E}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}xe2!$  26.  $\mathbb{E}xg5$   $\mathbb{E}xf3!$ ) 24...  $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$  25.  $\mathbb{W}xf3$   $\mathbb{E}xf3$  26.  $\mathbb{E}xf3$   $\mathbb{W}g4!$  27.  $\mathbb{E}g3$   $\mathbb{W}xc4$  28.  $\mathbb{E}xg7!$  when the white position is precarious, but there is still some hope;

B) 20.  $\mathbb{E}d2!$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  21.  $\mathbb{E}xa2$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  22.  $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xa2$  23.  $\mathbb{W}xa2$   $fxe3$  24.  $fxe3$  and White has protected his king from a direct attack, but remains worse because of the lasting weakness of the e3-pawn.

**19...  $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  20.  $\mathbb{E}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe2+?$**

A normal way to continue the attack, but a clear and rapid win could have been obtained by 20...  $\mathbb{Q}gh3+!$  21.  $gxh3$  (21.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$ , winning the e3-rook) 21...  $\mathbb{Q}xh3+$  22.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}g5+$  23.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$  (23.  $\mathbb{Q}xh3$   $\mathbb{Q}c8+$ ) 23...  $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$ .



**21.  $\mathbb{W}xe2?$**

The surprising move 21.  $\mathbb{Q}h1!$  allowed more resistance; the black queen is hanging and the desirable 21...  $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  move is not possible because there is no gain of tempo with check. Let's analyse:

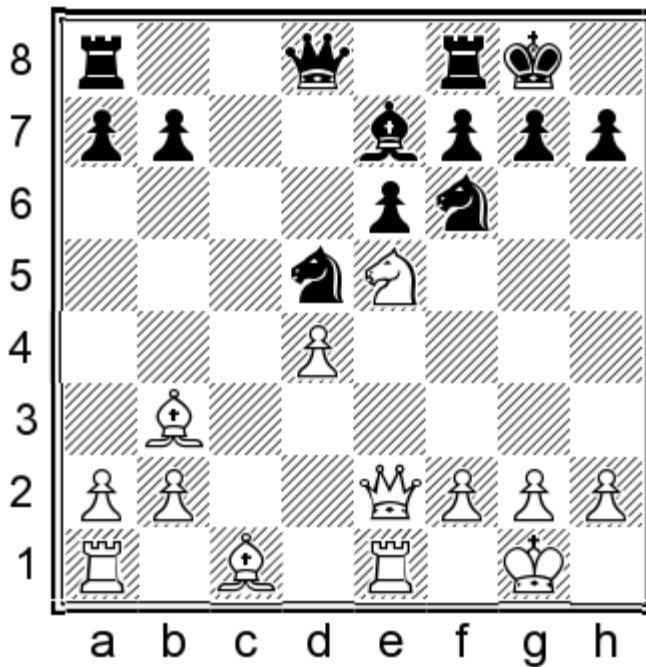
A) 21...  $\mathbb{W}d8$  (hindering the a8-rook from coming into play) 22.  $\mathbb{W}xe2$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  23.  $gxf3$   $\mathbb{E}xf3!$  24.  $\mathbb{E}xf3$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  25.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$  (with the ideas of 26.  $\mathbb{E}e1$  or 26.  $\mathbb{E}g1$  to evacuate the king to f1) 25...  $\mathbb{E}e8$  26.  $\mathbb{Q}g3!$  (26.  $\mathbb{W}d1?$   $\mathbb{E}e6$  is losing) 26...  $\mathbb{E}xe2$  27.  $\mathbb{E}xf8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  and the game is not yet over;

B) The surprising move 21...  $\mathbb{Q}e4!$  seems to relieve the pressure on the light squares, but this is not the case as 22.  $\mathbb{W}xe2?$  loses to 22...  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  23.  $\mathbb{E}xe7$   $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  24.  $\mathbb{E}xe2$   $\mathbb{E}xf3!$ . It is therefore necessary to play 22.  $\mathbb{E}xe2$   $\mathbb{E}xf3!$  23.  $gxf3$   $\mathbb{Q}g5!$  24.  $\mathbb{E}e3$  (24.  $\mathbb{E}xe7?$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$  25.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}h3\#$ ) when the white rook and black knight have each lost two tempi but Black has been able to sacrifice the exchange on f3 without needing to move his queen beforehand, and he is now winning after 24...  $\mathbb{W}f7$ .

**21...  $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$  22.  $gxf3$**

If 22.  $\mathbb{W}xf3$  then 22...  $\mathbb{E}xf3!$  23.  $\mathbb{E}xe7$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3$ .

**22...  $\mathbb{W}g5+$  23.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{E}xf3!$  24.  $\mathbb{E}xf3$   $\mathbb{W}g4$  0-1**



*White to move*

What do you think of this position? What do you think of the continuation 15.♕g5 ♜c8 ?

Show/Hide Solution

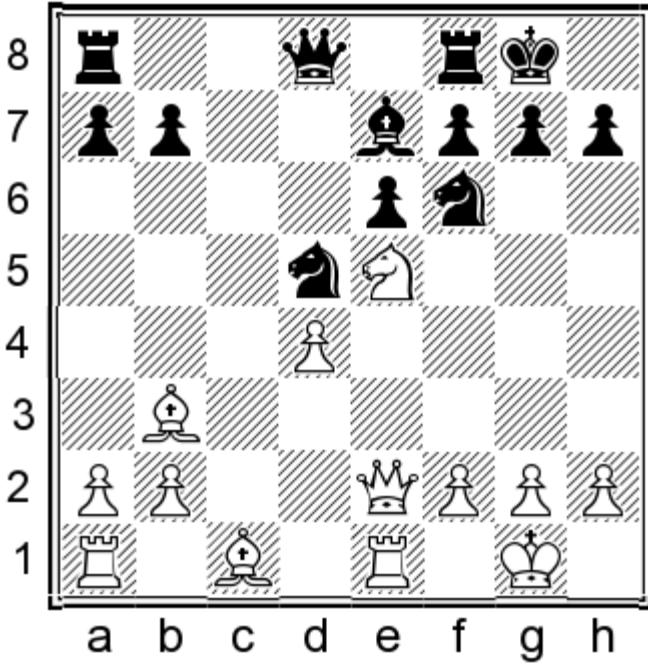
### 18

Akiba Rubinstein

Amos Burn

Ostend 1906

1.d4 d5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.c4 e6 4.♘c3 ♘bd7 5.e3 ♘e7 6.♗e2 0-0 7.0-0 dxc4 8.♘xc4 c5 9.♔e2 ♘b6 10.♘b3 cxd4 11.exd4 ♘d7 12.♗e1 ♘c6 13.♘e5 ♘d5 14.♘xd5 ♘bx d5



*White to move*

Black has chosen to block the isolated pawn on d4, which is therefore safe for now. The e5-knight is not worried either and, in the case of a manoeuvring phase, White will try to exploit his space advantage and bishop pair to threaten the opposing king. The black position is solid, but as he doesn't attack the d4-pawn his long-term chances are mostly connected to piece exchanges, however these are not in view at the moment. He will therefore have to be patient.

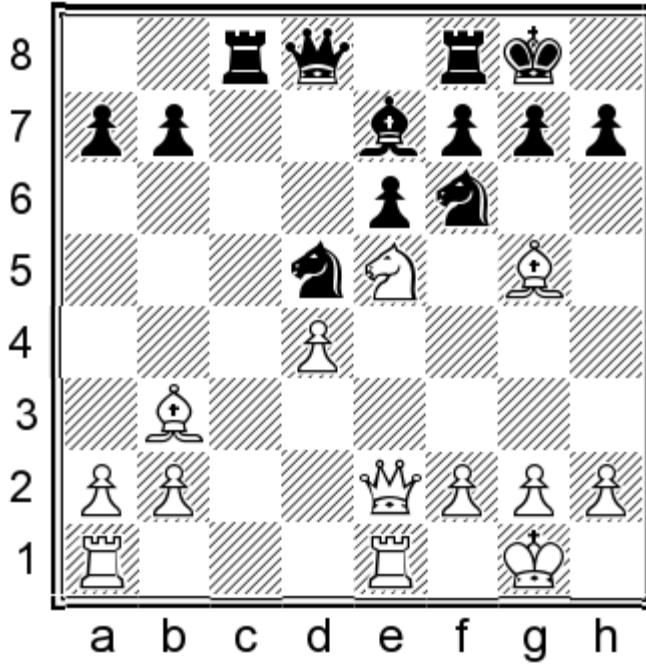
An important theme in this position is the knight sacrifice on f7 to open the a2-g8 diagonal and the e-file. Let's have a look at it now: 15.♘xf7 ♘xf7 16.♗xe6 ♖d6! (the presence of the d5-knight and its good support ensures the defence for Black, who now seeks an exchange of queens) 17.♗xd6 ♖xd6 18.♗g5! (to open the diagonal for the b3-bishop) 18...♔f8 19.♗xf6 ♘xf6 20.♗xf7 ♔xf7 In an endgame two minor pieces are normally worth a rook and pawn, but here the d4-pawn is not at all dangerous and the black minor pieces are active, especially with the d5-square for the knight. Chances are equal.

**15.♗g5!**

The bishop puts pressure on the f6-knight and 16.♘xf7 becomes a threat.

**15...♖c8?**

15...♖d6! defends the e6-pawn and averts any immediate danger. After 16.♖ad1 ♕ac8 White is very slightly better. He can swing the rook, or possibly the queen, to the third rank. An interesting idea is 17.♖f1!?, to support the advance of the f-pawn, even if it involves a waste of time.



Burn probably considered the variation 16.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7?$   $\mathbb{B}xf7$  17.  $\mathbb{W}xe6$   $\mathbb{B}c6!$  18.  $\mathbb{W}f5$   $\mathbb{B}d6!$ , which makes it possible to hold the position and justifies his last move.

### 16. $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$

With this move, which aims to eliminate the d5-knight's support, Rubinstein rules out the possibility of ... $\mathbb{B}c8-c6$ . The positional nature of the exchange on f6 must be emphasized, even if it is the prelude to a combination: the weaknesses in the black camp are on light squares so White exchanges his dark-squared bishop, which does not attack them, for a knight which defends them. Moreover, the timely exchange of a bishop against a knight is one way to capitalize on the bishop pair.

### 16... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$

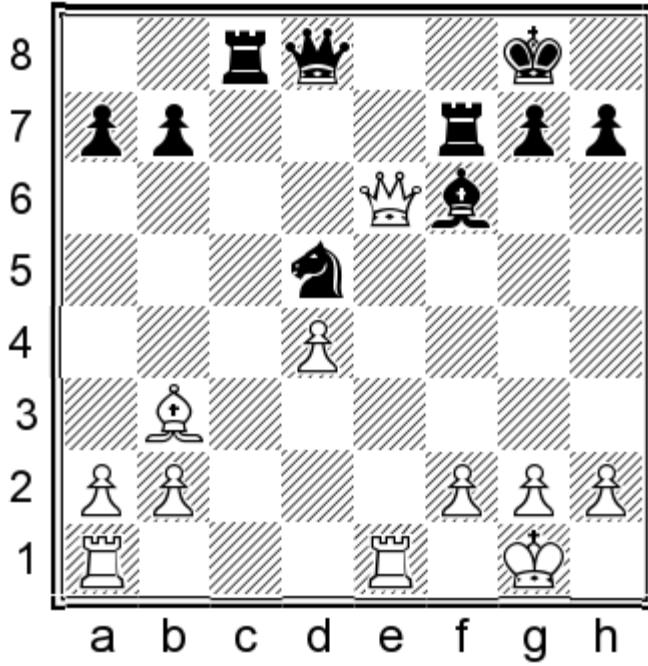
16...  $\mathbb{Q}xf6?$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$   $\mathbb{B}xf7$  18.  $\mathbb{W}xe6$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  19.  $\mathbb{W}xe7$  loses immediately.

### 17. $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$ $\mathbb{B}xf7?$

17...  $\mathbb{W}b6$  gave some practical saving chances:

- A) 18.  $\mathbb{W}xe6?$   $\mathbb{W}xe6$  19.  $\mathbb{B}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  20.  $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  21.  $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  when Black will regain one of the two missing pawns and profit from the exchange of queens, taking into account the presence of opposite-coloured bishops;
- B) 18.  $\mathbb{Q}e5!$  Black is doing very badly in any case and the critical continuation, if not the best one, is 18...  $\mathbb{W}xd4$  19.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{W}b6$  20.  $\mathbb{W}xe6+$   $\mathbb{W}xe6$  21.  $\mathbb{B}xe6$ . Once again we see an exchange of queens, but this time the alignment of the d5-knight with the king is going to be fatal: 21...  $\mathbb{B}fd8$  22.  $\mathbb{B}d1$   $\mathbb{B}c5$  23.  $\mathbb{B}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  (or else 23...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  24.  $\mathbb{B}ed2$ , one pin replaces another) 24.  $\mathbb{B}ed2$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$ , the pin on the black knight is decisive and White will win it by attacking it with his own knight.

### 18. $\mathbb{W}xe6$

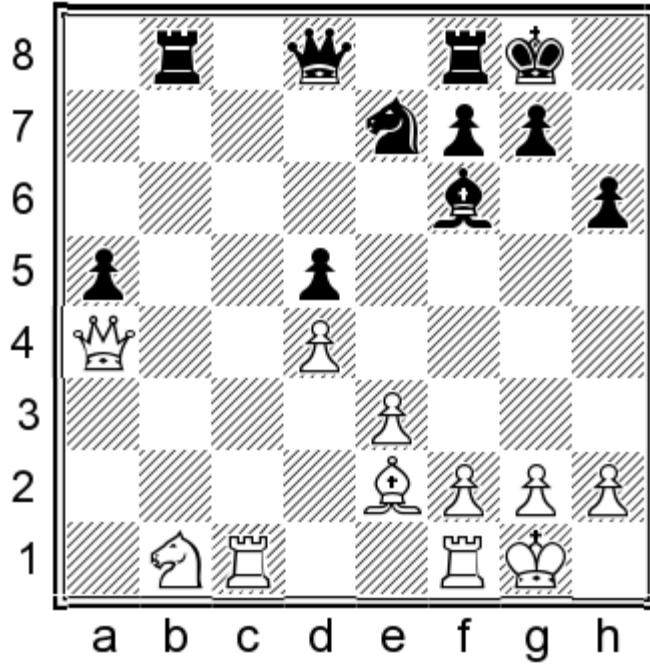


**18...♝xd4**

18...♝f8 19.♝xd5 ♜cc7 puts up more resistance, but does not save the game as the opposite-coloured bishops now favour White due to the presence of queens and the precarious situation of the black king. A simple way to win is 20.♛e4 ♜fe7 21.♝e6, which keeps both extra pawns, and another, more tactical, is 20.♝ac1 ♜cd7 (20...♜ce7 21.♛d6! ♜xd6 22.♝c8+) 21.♛h3! ♜fe7 (21...♜xd5 22.♝c8) 22.♝e6 ♜xd4 23.♛xh7 (and not 23.♝c8? ♜xc8!).

**19.♝xd5 ♜xf2+ 20.♝h1 ♜f8 21.♝f1 ♜c2 22.♝ac1 ♜xc1 23.♝xc1**

Black resigned.



Black to move

What do you think of this position and how would you evaluate it?

Show/Hide Solution

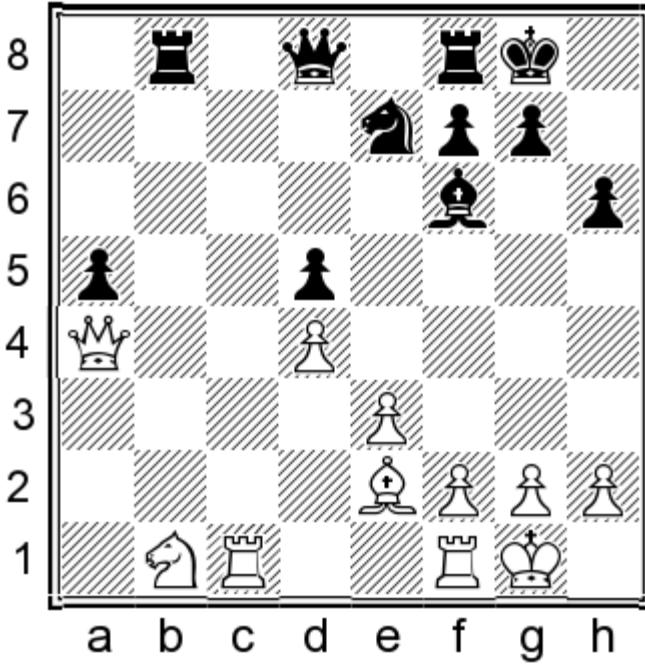
19

Uwe Bönsch 2450

Hans-Ulrich Grünberg 2450

Cottbus ch-GDR 1983 (9)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  e6 3.c4 d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  7.cxd5 exd5 8.e3 0-0 9. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  10.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  11. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  12.b4 c6 13. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  14. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  15. $\mathbb{W}xd3$  b5 16. $\mathbb{Q}b1$  a5 17.a4 bxa4 18.b5 cxb5 19. $\mathbb{W}xb5$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  20. $\mathbb{W}xa4$



*Black to move*

We have an opposite-coloured bishops position. The white pawn structure is compact, with no weak points. The d5-pawn is isolated and fixed on a light square and is very exposed. Its defence, which may not always be possible, requires the presence of the knight on e7, which leaves the f6-bishop offside with no task to fulfil. To compensate for this, Black must play dynamically and exploit the passed a5-pawn, whose safety is, however, endangered by the passivity of his minor pieces. White has a big advantage.

20... $\mathbb{W}b6$  21. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{E}fd8?$  22. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{W}b4$  23. $\mathbb{W}a2$  is one variation that illustrates the problems facing Black: he will lose one of his isolated pawns without getting any counterplay in return. Instead of 21... $\mathbb{E}fd8$ , 21... $\mathbb{W}b4!$  is more resilient:

A) 22. $\mathbb{W}a2$   $\mathbb{E}fc8!$  23. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  24. $\mathbb{W}xd5$   $\mathbb{E}xc1$  25. $\mathbb{E}xc1$   $\mathbb{W}d2$  26. $\mathbb{W}c4$   $\mathbb{E}b2$  27. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  illustrates Black's chances this time – he has tied the white pieces to the defence of the e2-bishop and is ready to advance his passed pawn. Note that the win of the pawn on d5 has led to an exchange of knights and therefore to the release of the black bishop, which means that in some cases it may be interesting not to take it too quickly;

B) 22. $\mathbb{W}a1!$   $\mathbb{E}fc8$  and now the normal move 23. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  is strong, but more direct is 23. $\mathbb{E}b1!$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  (23... $\mathbb{W}xc3?$  24. $\mathbb{W}xc3$  is losing) 24. $\mathbb{E}xb8$   $\mathbb{W}xb8$  25. $\mathbb{Q}a6!$  (and not immediately 25. $\mathbb{W}xa5?$  because of 25... $\mathbb{W}b2!)$  25... $\mathbb{E}c6$  26. $\mathbb{W}xa5$  and White has taken the pawn which offered Black some play and has every chance of winning the d5-pawn as well in due course.

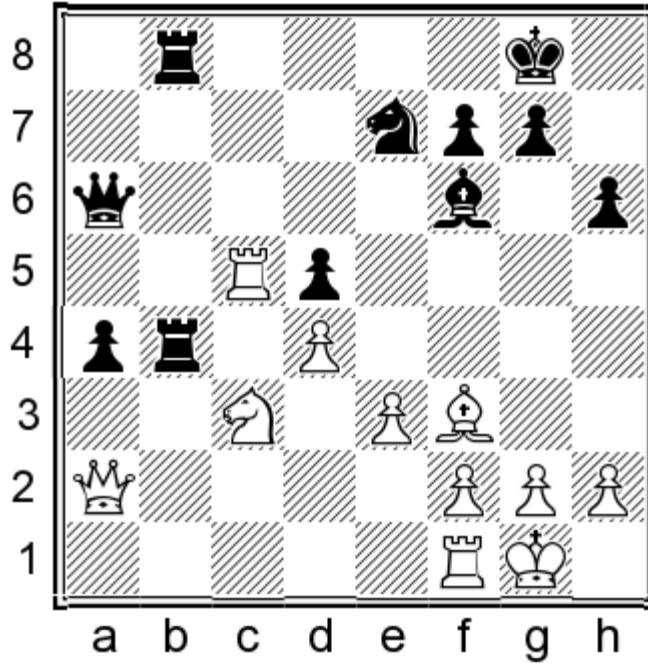
**20... $\mathbb{E}b4!$**

To prepare the advance of the a5-pawn and a doubling (or possibly even tripling) of the major pieces on the b-file.

**21. $\mathbb{W}a2$   $\mathbb{W}b6$**

21...a4 deserves attention, and after 22. $\mathbb{Q}c3?!$   $\mathbb{W}a5$  23. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ , 23...a3! abandons the central pawn for sufficient activity, while 23... $\mathbb{E}d8?$  comes up against 24. $\mathbb{Q}a1!$  with pressure on the two black pawns.

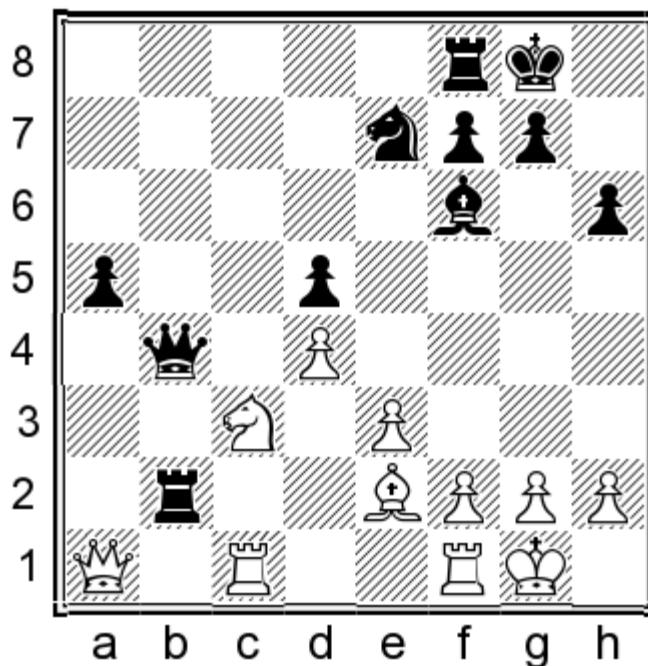
After 21...a4 the best is probably 22. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$  (to leave the way open for the c1-rook) 22... $\mathbb{W}a5$  23. $\mathbb{E}c5!$   $\mathbb{W}a6$  24. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{E}fb8!$  (24...a3 25. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$  leads to the loss of the pawn after 25... $\mathbb{W}a8$  26. $\mathbb{Q}a1$  or 25... $\mathbb{W}a7$  26. $\mathbb{Q}b5)$  and we come to a position where White must be vigilant:



*analysis diagram*

- A) 25.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5 \mathbb{B}b2$  26.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6+ gxf6$  27.  $\mathbb{W}a3 \mathbb{B}8b3$  28.  $\mathbb{W}a1$  a3 with good play for the pawn;
- B) 25.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5 \mathbb{Q}xd5$  26.  $\mathbb{W}xd5 \mathbb{B}c8!$  (26...a3? 27.  $\mathbb{B}a5$ ) with again a good game for Black; 27.  $\mathbb{B}a5?$  doesn't work because of 27...  $\mathbb{W}d3!$  and if 28.  $\mathbb{Q}xa4?$   $\mathbb{B}b1!$  and Black wins;
- C) 25. g3! a3 26.  $\mathbb{B}a1 \mathbb{B}a8$  27.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$ , with the idea of 27...  $\mathbb{B}b2?$  28.  $\mathbb{W}xb2$ , is a reasonable improvement of the white position that avoids back-rank mates and checks to the king before playing more actively. The paralysis of the black minor pieces plays an important role and White has every chance of capturing the a3-pawn after good preparation.

22.  $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{B}b2$  23.  $\mathbb{W}a1 \mathbb{W}b4$



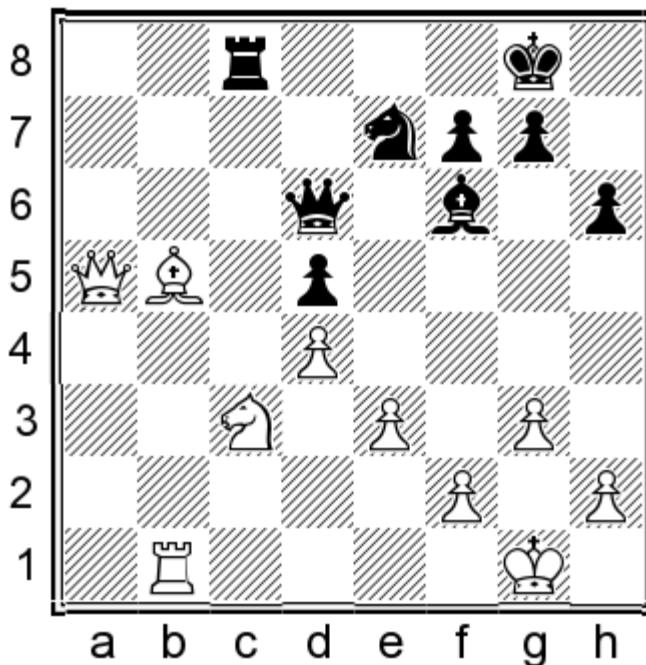
**24.♗b1!**

Whenever certain opposing pieces do not participate in the play, exchanging the other pieces is a normal way to progress.

**24...♝b8 25.♛b5 ♜xb1**

25...♜b3 poses slightly more problems: 26.♜xb3 ♛xb3 27.♜b1 ♛c2 28.♜c1 ♛b3 29.♛xa5 ♜c8! (threatening 30...♛b2) 30.♝d3! with the intention of answering 30...♛b2 with 31.♜c2 when White will consolidate his position.

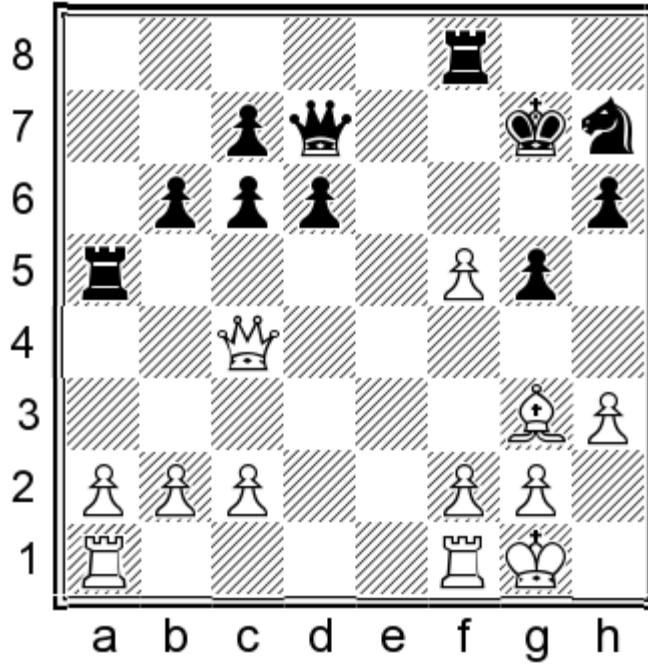
**26.♜xb1 ♛d6 27.♛xa5 ♜c8 28.g3**



**28...♛c7??!**

In the endgame Black will quickly lose the d5-pawn without getting any counterplay in return. That said, with queens on the board the chances of escaping are also very meagre.

**29.♛xc7 ♜xc7 30.♜b3 g5 31.♝e2 ♛g7 32.♝f3 ♛f8 33.♝f1 ♛g7 34.♝e2 f5 35.♝d3 ♜a7 36.♜b5 ♜a3 37.♝c2 ♜a1 38.♝xd5 ♜xd5 39.♜xd5 ♜h1 40.♜xf5 ♜xh2 41.e4 1-0**



*White to move*

Which plan gives White the advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

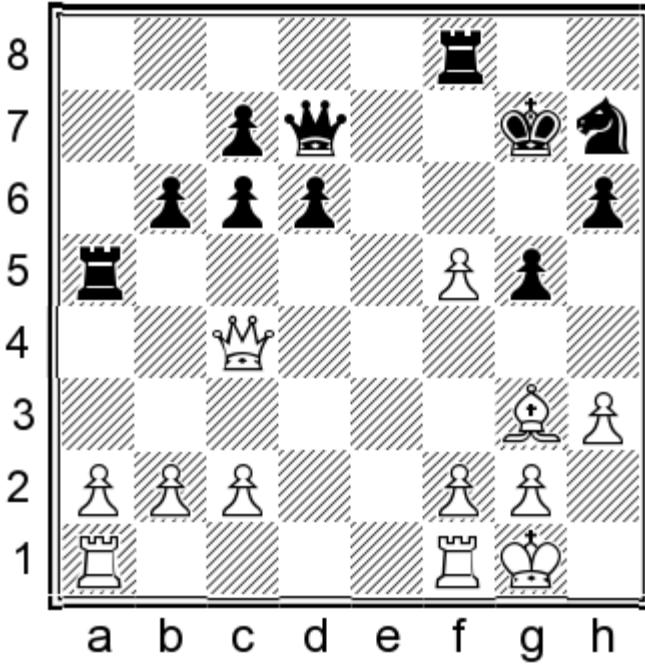
**20**

Vasily Smyslov

Andreas Dückstein

Zagreb 1955 (18)

1.e4 e5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}c5$  5.d3 d6 6. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  0-0 7. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  h6 8. $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  9. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  bxc6 10.h3  $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  11. $\mathbb{W}xf3$  g5 12. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  13. $\mathbb{Q}a4$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  14. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  axb6 15.d4 exd4 16. $\mathbb{W}d3$  f5 17.exf5  $\mathbb{E}a5$  18. $\mathbb{W}xd4$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  19. $\mathbb{W}c4+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$



*White to move*

Black has active pieces and good central control, but his king is exposed and the white queenside majority is dangerous.

Let's analyse:

A) 20.f4, in order to open lines and bring the bishop into play (a goal that 20.h4 would not achieve), is interesting: 20... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  21. $\mathbb{Q}e1!$  d5 22. $\mathbb{Q}c3+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  23. $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}xf4!$  (23... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  24.g4!  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  25. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  c5 26. $\mathbb{Q}af1$  d4 27. $\mathbb{Q}d2$  drives the bishop from the long diagonal, but White has pressure on the f-file and is better) 24. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$   $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  25. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$  (25. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  is worse because 26. $\mathbb{W}f5?$  allows 26...d4) 25... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$  White can no longer actively use the f-file and neither 26. $\mathbb{Q}e1$  nor 26. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  allow him to hope for an advantage;

B) 20. $\mathbb{Q}ae1$  takes lasting control of the e-file, but after, for example, 20... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  21. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xe8$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  23. $\mathbb{W}c3+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  24. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  there are not enough open lines to worry the black king.

## 20.b4!

Smyslov prepares the creation of a passed pawn on the a-file. The black king will be less directly threatened than in the previous variations, but the need to defend on two fronts will cause Black's loss.

### 20... $\mathbb{Q}axf5$

20... $\mathbb{Q}a3$  is reasonable, to block both the a-pawn and the f-pawn (by attacking the g3-bishop). There could follow 21. $\mathbb{W}d4+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  22. $\mathbb{W}b2$  and now:

A) 22... $\mathbb{Q}fa8$  23. $\mathbb{Q}fe1!$  (threatening 24. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ ) 23... $\mathbb{W}xf5$  24. $\mathbb{Q}e7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  25. $\mathbb{Q}xc7$  with advantage to White;

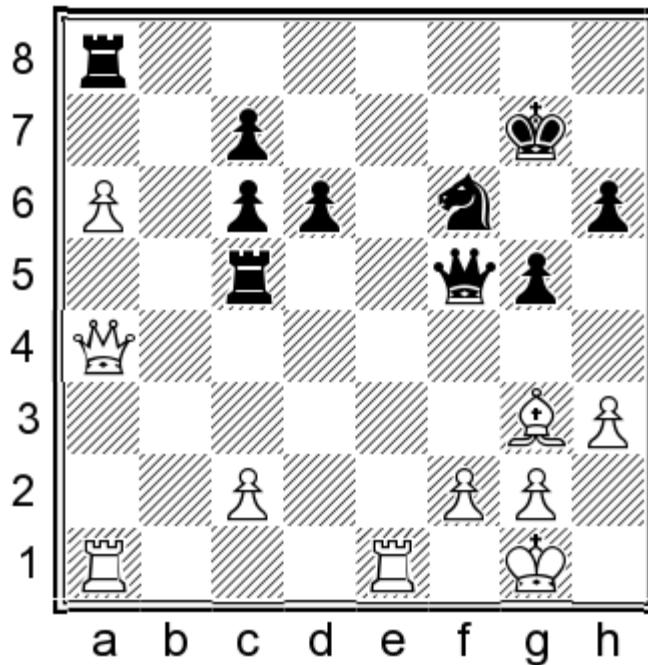
B) After 22... $\mathbb{Q}aa8$ , Black is better placed to counter the advance of the a-pawn than in the game and is not doing so badly after 23.a4  $\mathbb{W}xf5$ , but the a8-rook is exiled to the queenside and the continuation 23.f4!  $\mathbb{W}xf5$  24.fxg5  $\mathbb{W}xg5$  clearly puts him under pressure.

### 21.a4 $\mathbb{Q}f6$

21...c5 22.a5 b5 23. $\mathbb{W}c3+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  24.a6 cxb4 25. $\mathbb{W}xb4$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  has the merit of giving vitality to the queenside pawns, but after

26.f4! White is much better. The a8-rook must stay in place while the a1-rook may abandon the a6-pawn at the right time to participate in an attack on the king.

**22.a5 bxa5 23.bxa5 ♜c5 24.♔a4 ♜a8 25.a6 ♜f5 26.♕fe1**



Smyslov's plan has succeeded and the position is an ideal illustration of how to play on both wings.

**26...♝f8**

26...♜xc2!? has some merit since it wins a pawn without the king being exposed to any real danger. It is then necessary to go into the endgame: 27.♛xc2 ♜xc2 28.♝e7+ ♚g6 29.♝xc7 ♜e4! 30.a7 ♜xg3 31.fxg3 ♜c5!, in order to respond to 32.♝b7 with 32...♜b5. Black must prevent a white rook from coming to b8 while avoiding losing too many pawns. It remains to be shown that he is lost, even though it is likely.

**27.c4!**

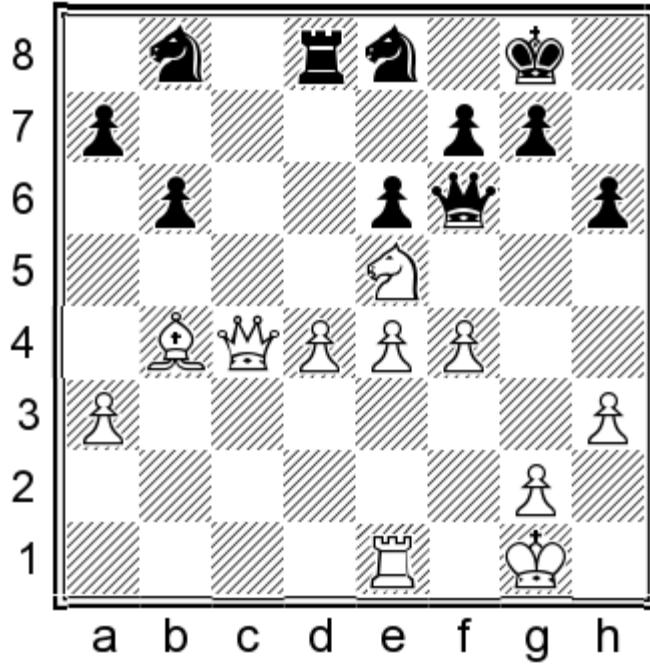
Depriving the rook of the b5-square so that he can infiltrate on the b-file.

**27...♝d7 28.♛b4 ♜b6**

After 28...♜a7 or 28...♜f6 (to return to d8), 29.♛a3 is decisive.

**29.♝xd6+! cxd6 30.♛xb6**

Black resigned.



*White to move*

Which plan gives White a very big advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

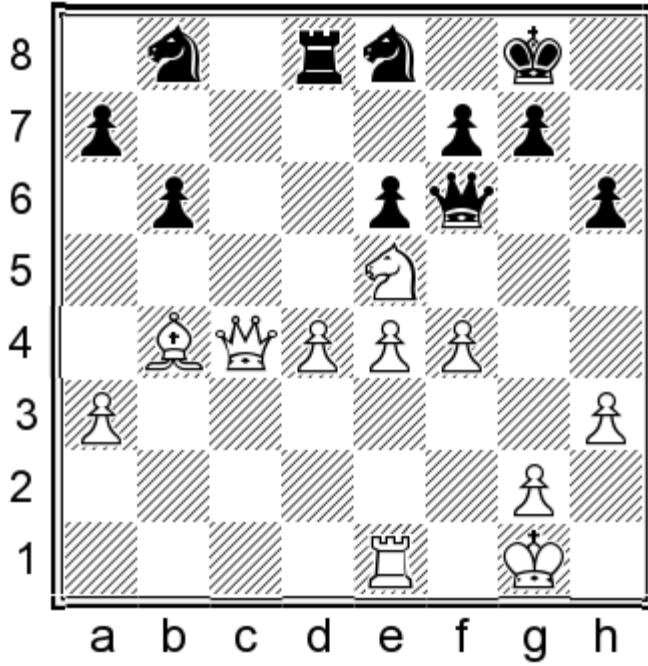
**21**

**Samuel Reshevsky**

**Jacob Levin**

New York ch-USA 1942 (2)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  4.a3  $\mathbb{Q}xc3+$  5.bxc3 c5 6.e3 0-0 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  d5 8.cxd5  $\mathbb{W}xd5$  9. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  b6 10. $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  11.e4  $\mathbb{W}h5$  12.h3 cxd4 13.cxd4  $\mathbb{Q}a6$  14. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  15. $\mathbb{W}xd3$   $\mathbb{Q}bd7$  16.0-0  $\mathbb{E}fc8$  17. $\mathbb{E}ac1$   $\mathbb{W}g6$  18. $\mathbb{E}fe1$  h6 19. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{E}xc1$  20. $\mathbb{Q}xc1$   $\mathbb{E}c8$  21. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{E}d8$  22. $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  23. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{W}h5$  24. $\mathbb{W}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  25. $\mathbb{Q}b4$   $\mathbb{W}g5$  26.f4  $\mathbb{W}f6$



*White to move*

White has a large space advantage and active pieces. As the f4-pawn is not hanging (27... $\mathbb{W}xf4?$  allows 28. $\mathbb{Q}e7$ ) there are various promising continuations. These include: 27. $\mathbb{B}f1$ , which threatens 28.f5, and 27.d5, taking advantage of the fact that this time 27... $\mathbb{W}xf4?$  loses to 28.dxe6! (and not 28. $\mathbb{Q}e7?$  exd5!). In all these variations an important defensive resource for Black is to play ...a7-a5 at the right moment to chase the b4-bishop from its dominant position, when he would have reasonable chances, although without actually equalizing.

**27.a4!**

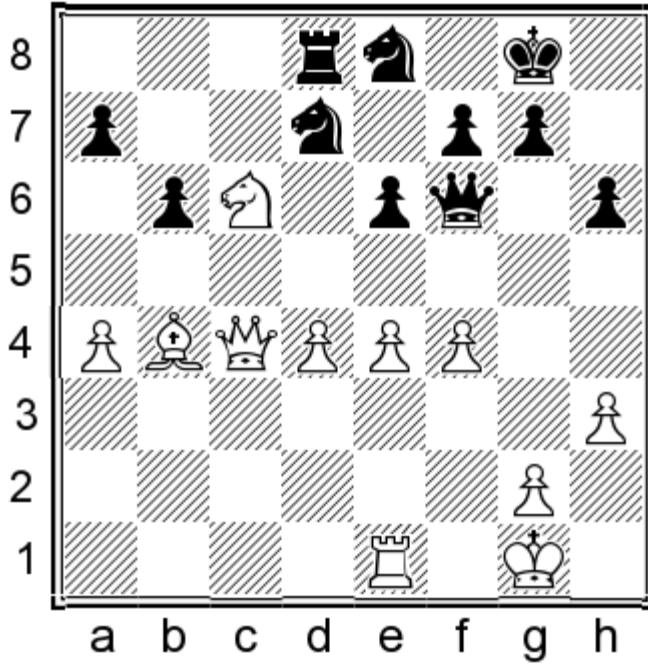
Reshevsky prepares to meet 27...a5 with 28. $\mathbb{Q}a3$ , keeping the bishop on its strong diagonal. Investing a tempo, therefore, to keep the situation as it is. This decision is based on the difficulty the black pieces have to move, which is not uncommon in confined positions.

**27... $\mathbb{Q}d7$**

The black rook has no squares.

- A) 27... $\mathbb{Q}d6$  is no good because of 28. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  29. $\mathbb{W}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  (29... $\mathbb{W}d8$  30. $\mathbb{W}xf7+$ ) 30. $\mathbb{W}xa7$  while
- B) 27... $\mathbb{W}h4$  28. $\mathbb{B}f1$  only postpones the problem as 28... $\mathbb{Q}f6?$  loses to 29. $\mathbb{W}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}fd7$  30. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{W}f6$  31.e5, among others;
- C) The most resilient is 27... $\mathbb{Q}h7!$  28. $\mathbb{B}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$ , which enables Black to answer 29. $\mathbb{Q}c6?$  with 29... $\mathbb{Q}c8!$  because the knight is pinned and cannot move with check. There is, however, little hope of escape after 29. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ :
  - C1) 29... $\mathbb{W}g6$  30. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  31.f5 exf5 32.exf5  $\mathbb{W}h5$  and now 33.d5  $\mathbb{Q}ef6$  34.d6 wins easily, but even quicker is 33. $\mathbb{W}c6!$   $\mathbb{Q}ef6$  34. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  35. $\mathbb{W}xf6!$   $\mathbb{W}xg4$  36. $\mathbb{W}d6!$  and Black can resign;
  - C2) 29... $\mathbb{W}h4$  30.e5! when the black pieces are still paralysed and the, possibly prepared, ideas of f4-f5 and d4-d5 give White a decisive advantage.

**28. $\mathbb{Q}c6$**



**28...♝a8**

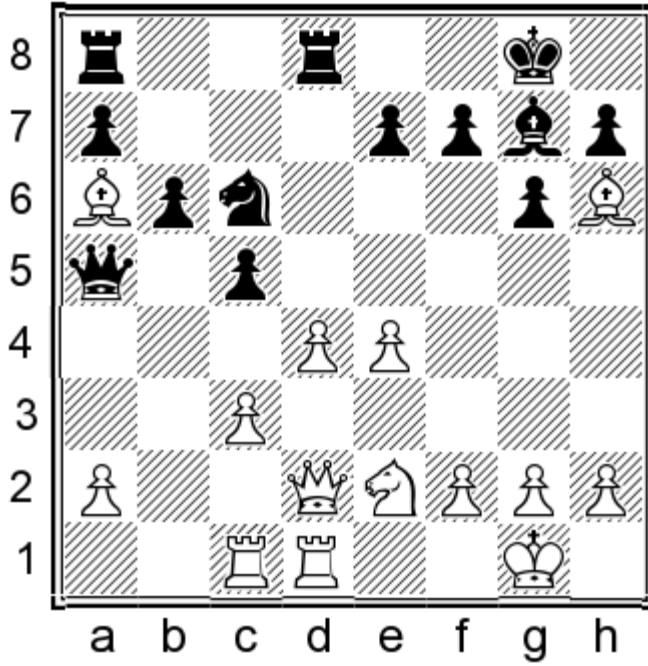
Or 28...♝c8 with a choice:

- A) 29.♗e7+ ♜xe7 30.♗xc8 ♜xb4 31.♗xe8+ ♜f8 32.♗d1 ♜b3 when White will have to give a pawn back and is not yet winning;
- B) 29.e5! ♜h4 (29...♜xf4? 30.♗e7+) 30.d5! a5 but the intention of chasing the bishop, which defends the rook, off the a3-f8 diagonal is insufficient and White blasts through with 31.dxe6! axb4 32.exf7+, which wins material while retaining an overwhelming position.

**29.f5!**

The most direct route to victory.

**29...exf5 30.e5 ♜h4 31.e6 fxe6 32.♗xe6+ ♜h8 33.♗xd7 ♜f6 34.♗xf5 a5 35.♗c3 ♜f8 36.♗e7 ♜g3 37.♗g6+ ♜g8 38.♗e6+ ♜f7 39.♗e5 1-0**



*Black to move*

Instead of the continuation 15... $\mathbb{W}xa6$  16. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ , which leaves him slightly worse,

Black played 15... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  16. $\mathbb{W}xh6$   $\mathbb{W}xa6$ . What is the idea of taking on h6 rather than letting the exchange take place on g7? What do you need to calculate to choose this sequence? Would you have played this way?

Show/Hide Solution

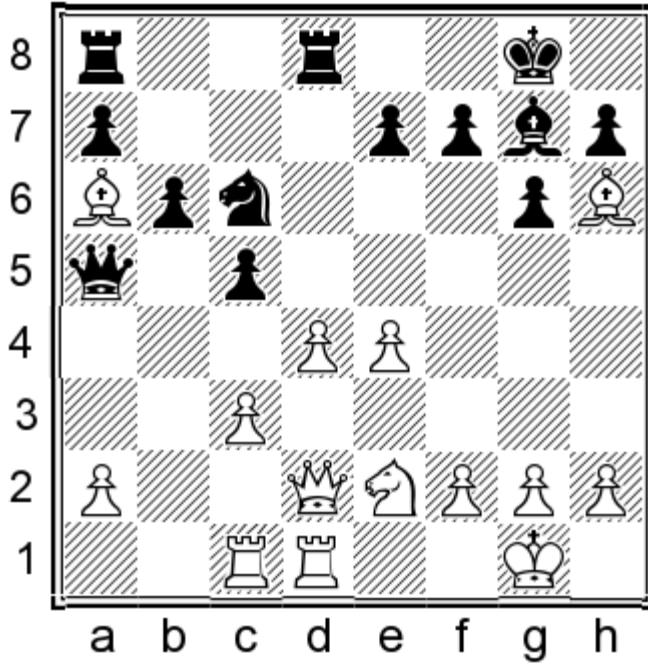
22

Svetozar Gligoric

Jan Smejkal

Milan 1975 (9)

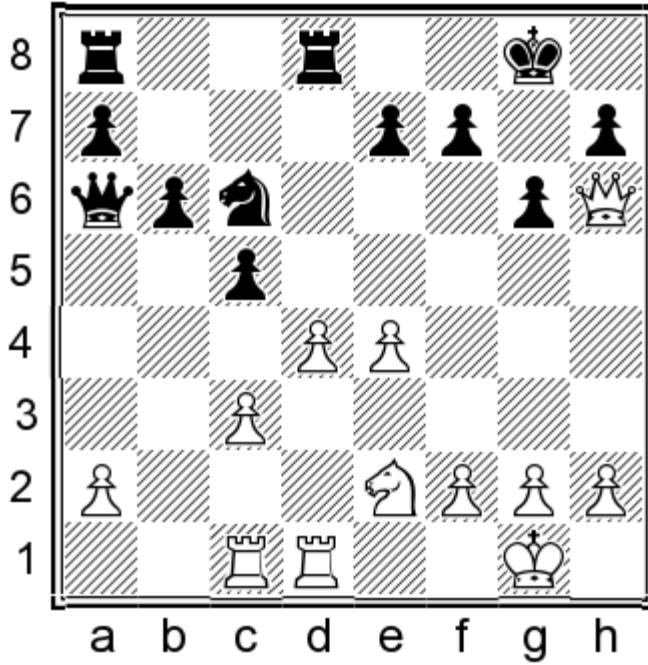
1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 g6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  d5 4.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  5.e4  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  6.bxc3  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  7. $\mathbb{Q}c4$  c5 8. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  0-0 9.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  10. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  11. $\mathbb{R}c1$   $\mathbb{R}d8$  12. $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{W}a5$  13. $\mathbb{R}fd1$  b6 14. $\mathbb{Q}h6$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  15. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$



*Black to move*

The natural continuation 15... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ ? 16. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  brings us to a position that is typical of the Grünfeld Defence, Exchange Variation, with, perhaps, a slight white advantage.

**15... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ ? 16. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$   $\mathbb{Q}xa6$**



The idea of capturing on h6, instead of allowing the exchange to occur on g7, is to decentralize the opposing queen, but its disadvantage is to expose his own king to an attack. When Black has castled kingside the exchange on h6 can often be described this way.

The white knight is now attacked and had it been necessary to defend it with the queen, or play 17. $\mathbb{R}d2$ , the black king

would be safe for the moment and the exchange on h6 would have been a success.

## 17. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$

Gligoric sacrifices his pawn centre in order to attack. The main idea is to play 18.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$  with the threats of 19.  $\mathbb{Q}h3$  and 19.  $\mathbb{Q}h5$ .

## 17... $cxd4$

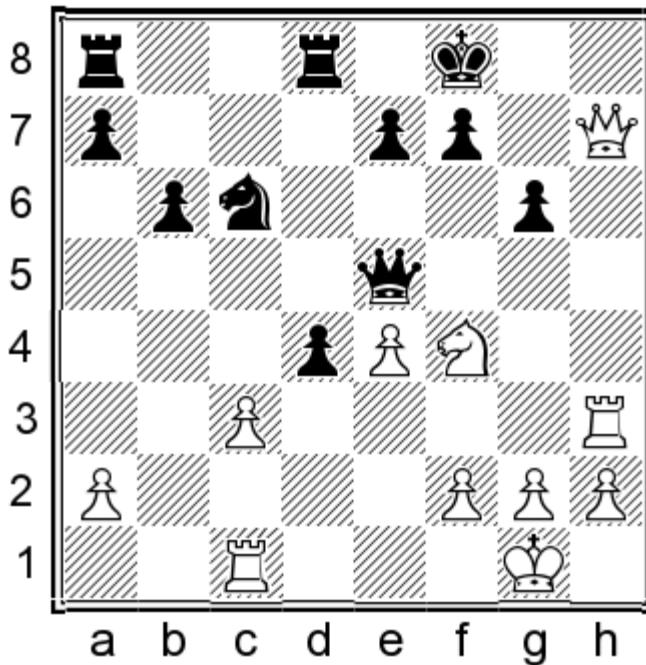
The complement to the previous move. As this loses, anything can be considered, for example 17...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  followed by ...  $\mathbb{Q}d8-g8-g7$ , but Black has then abandoned the centre and is clearly worse.

After 17...  $\mathbb{Q}a3$  White can easily get a big advantage by 18.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$ , which defends the c1-rook and renews the threat of 19.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$ . 18...  $e6?$  19.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$  is not possible and so the white knight enjoys a certain stability in the centre. Instead of 18.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$ , 18.  $\mathbb{Q}h3!$  wins, but it's more complicated: 18...  $f6$  19.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  (with the idea 20.  $d5?$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$ , which covers the e6-square) 20.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6!$   $hxg6$  21.  $\mathbb{W}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  22.  $\mathbb{W}h6+!$  The king is exposed, the a8-rook is misplaced, and the situation is desperate, but precision is still required.

## 18. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ $\mathbb{W}b5!$

Controlling the h5-square and returning the queen to the defence. 18...  $\mathbb{Q}a3?$  19.  $\mathbb{Q}h5!$  loses immediately.

## 19. $\mathbb{Q}h3$ $\mathbb{W}e5$ 20. $\mathbb{W}xh7+$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$



After playing 15...  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  it is reasonable to reach this position in one's calculation. It is quite a long variation, but linear. The black queen controls the h8-square and the 'normal' combination 21.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$   $fxg6$  22.  $\mathbb{W}xg6?$ , to stop the king from escaping before putting it in check, fails to 22...  $\mathbb{Q}d6$ . Moreover, the white pieces are decentralized and in the absence of a continuation of the attack Black would be better. For those who can calculate further, bravo, if not, one must at some point rely on one's judgement. In fact, several lines win:

A) 21.  $\mathbb{Q}xg6+$   $fxg6$  22.  $\mathbb{Q}f3+!$  (it is often a bad idea to push the king towards his pieces after sacrificing material, but here there is a neat tactical point) 22...  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  23.  $\mathbb{W}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  24.  $\mathbb{W}xc6+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  25.  $cxd4+$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  26.  $dxe5+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  and with a bit of technique White will win;

B) 21.  $\mathbb{Q}f3!$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  (21...  $\mathbb{W}g7$  22.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+$ ) 22.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  f6 23. cxd4  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  (23...  $\mathbb{W}xd4$  24.  $\mathbb{Q}c7+$ ) 24.  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  with threats to e7 and g8.

**21.  $\mathbb{Q}e6+!$  fxe6**

And not 21...  $\mathbb{W}xe6?$  22.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#.$

**22.  $\mathbb{W}xg6!$**

This time this ‘normal’ move works because the e6-pawn prevents the 22...  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  defence.

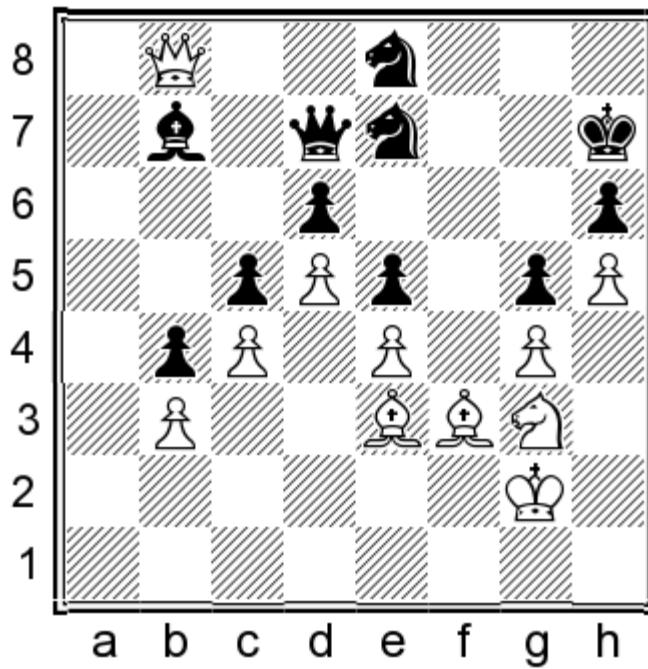
**22...  $\mathbb{W}f6$**

22...  $\mathbb{W}g7$  23.  $\mathbb{Q}f3+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  24.  $\mathbb{W}xe6+$  does not save the queen.

**23.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{W}xf3$  24. gxf3 d3 25.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$**

Black resigned. After 25...d2 there is 26.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$  followed by mate.

23



*White to move*

How can White obtain the advantage? What defensive resources do you then think Black has?

Show/Hide Solution

23

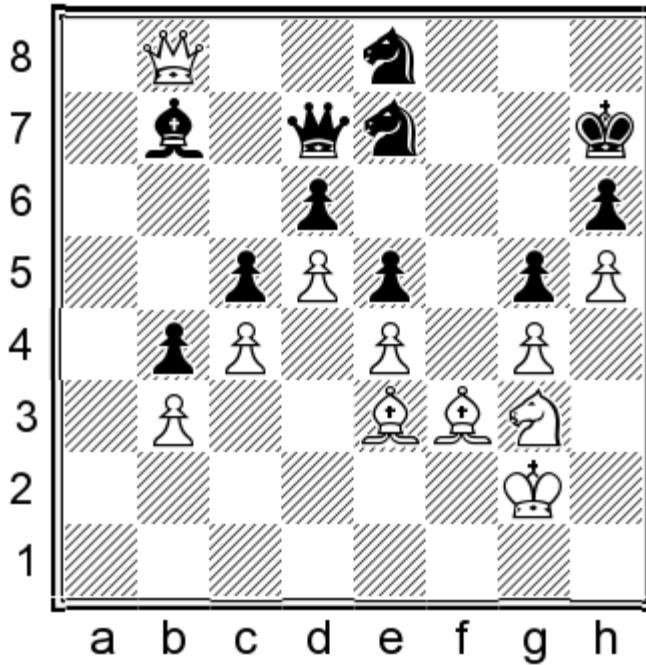
Boris Spassky

Jonathan Penrose

Palma de Mallorca 1969 (11)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 g6 3.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4.e4 d6 5.f3 c6 6.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$  a6 7.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}bd7$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}ge2$  b5 9.  $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  10.0-0 0-0 11.b3 e5 12.d5

b4 13.♗d1 c5 14.g4 ♘h8 15.♗f2 ♘g8 16.♗g3 ♖h4 17.♗g2 h6 18.a3 a5 19.♖a2 ♗df6 20.♖fa1 ♗h7 21.axb4 axb4 22.♖xa8 ♖xa8 23.♖xa8 ♖xa8 24.♔a2 ♖b7 25.♔a7 ♖e7 26.♖e2 ♗hf6 27.f4 exf4 28.♖xf4 ♗e8 29.♖b8 ♖d4 30.♗d3 f6 31.♗f3 ♖d7 32.h4 ♘h7 33.h5 g5 34.♗d2 ♖e5 35.♗e3 ♗e7 36.♗xe5 fxe5



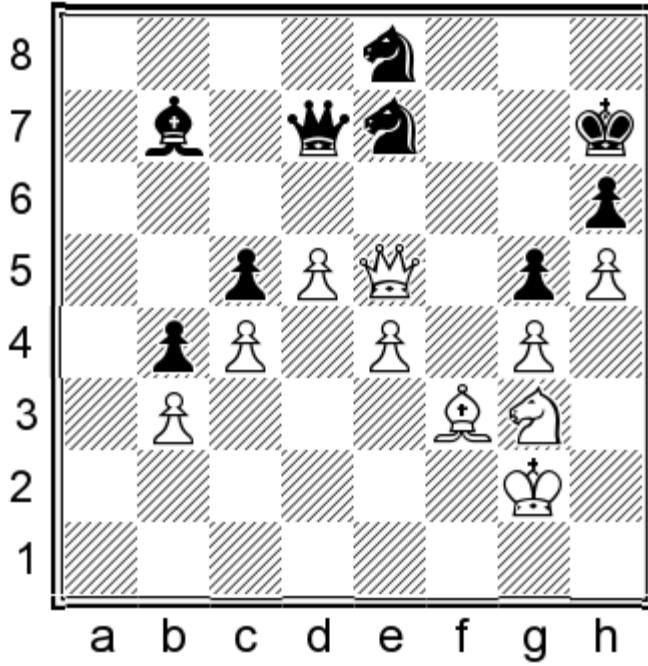
*White to move*

The pawns are blocked, limiting the action of the white bishops. 37.♗f5 ♗xf5 38.exf5 ♘g7 does not lead to anything and there is no other apparent way to infiltrate the black position. One strategic idea to consider for the side with a space advantage in this kind of position is the sacrifice of a piece for two pawns. The duo of mobile passed pawns will in many cases give reasonable compensation and sometimes, as here, an advantage.

**37.♗xc5!**

There is no time for any preparation as Black threatens to regroup by playing 37...♘c8 38.♔a7 ♘c7, consolidating the c5- and e5-squares.

**37...dxc5 38.♘xe5**



Black is clearly in difficulty: his king is exposed and his knights cannot move without giving up control of the f5- or f6-squares. Yet the position is tactically complicated and the win is far from assured. An important defensive resource is to respond to the e4-e5 thrust, which is White's main plan, with a piece sacrifice on d5. The exchange of queens would also generally relieve the black position by safeguarding the king and allowing it to head towards the centre.

### 38... $\mathbb{Q}g8$

38... $\mathbb{W}d6$  offers White a choice:

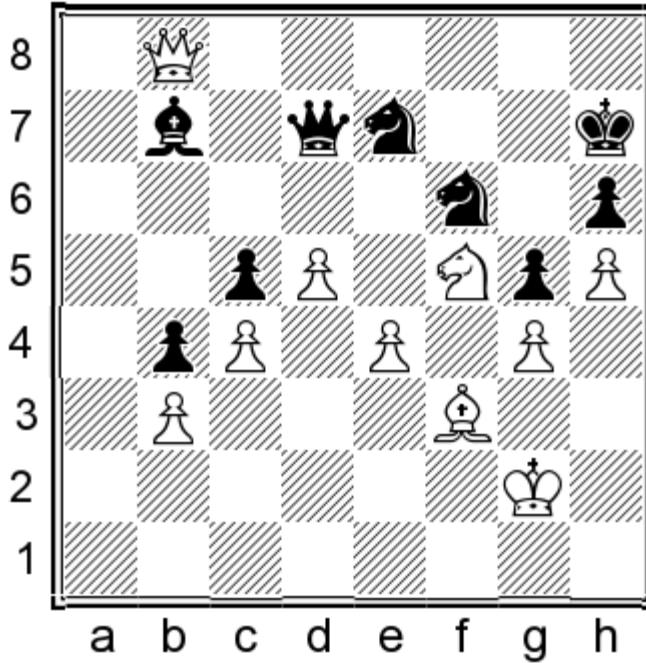
- A) 39. $\mathbb{W}xd6 \mathbb{Q}xd6$  40.e5  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  41.e6 (after 41.d6? it's necessary to avoid taking on f3, which would bring the white king closer, but rather play 41... $\mathbb{Q}c6!$ , which wins the e5-pawn) 41... $\mathbb{Q}d6$  42. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  (en route for d3) 42... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  43. $\mathbb{Q}c1 \mathbb{Q}a6$  – Black has a good position with the possibilities of sacrificing a piece on c4 or of defending the c5-pawn by ... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ -b7;
- B) 39. $\mathbb{W}a1!$  (threatening 40.e5 while thinking of infiltrating on the a-file) 39... $\mathbb{W}f4$  and now 40.e5? is refuted by 40... $\mathbb{W}d2+$  41. $\mathbb{Q}h3 \mathbb{Q}xd5!$  42.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  and Black survives (and even threatens mate), but after 40. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  (40... $\mathbb{W}e3?$  41. $\mathbb{W}e5!$ ) 41.e5 White is much better.

### 39. $\mathbb{W}b8 \mathbb{Q}ef6?$

A better line of defence is 39... $\mathbb{Q}gf6!$  (the e8-knight has to be defended to play the next move) 40. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{W}c7!$  41. $\mathbb{W}xc7$   $\mathbb{Q}xc7$  42. $\mathbb{Q}d6$  with two possibilities:

- A) 42... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ , with the intention of giving back the piece on d5, leads to a large white advantage after 43.e5  $\mathbb{Q}fxd5$  44.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  45. $\mathbb{Q}xd5 \mathbb{Q}xd5$  46. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ ;
- B) 42... $\mathbb{Q}a6$  43.e5  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  44.e6  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  45. $\mathbb{Q}e4+!$  (keeping control of the d5-square; 45. $\mathbb{Q}d1 \mathbb{Q}fxd5!$  is not so strong) 45... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  46. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  The h6-pawn is vulnerable, as well as, to a lesser extent, the c5-pawn, but the possibility of sacrificing a piece for two pawns gives Black saving chances.

### 40. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}e7$



#### 41. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$

41.  $\mathbb{Q}d6!$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  42. e5 was decisive:

A) 42...  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  43.  $\mathbb{Q}xe8$   $\mathbb{W}xe8$  44.  $\mathbb{W}c7$ ;

B) 42...  $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  43. e6 and the black knight is lost;

C) 42...  $\mathbb{Q}xh5!$  43.  $\mathbb{Q}e4+!$  (43. gxh5?  $\mathbb{W}h3+$  leads to a draw, and 43. e6?  $\mathbb{Q}f4+!$  followed by the sacrifice on e6 gives Black good chances to defend) 43...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  44.  $\mathbb{Q}f5!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  45.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  The e5-pawn is now ready to advance and the black bishop is attacked.

#### 41... $\mathbb{Q}exd5!$

41...  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  42.  $\mathbb{W}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  43.  $\mathbb{W}f7+!$ , to take the knight with check, is hopeless.

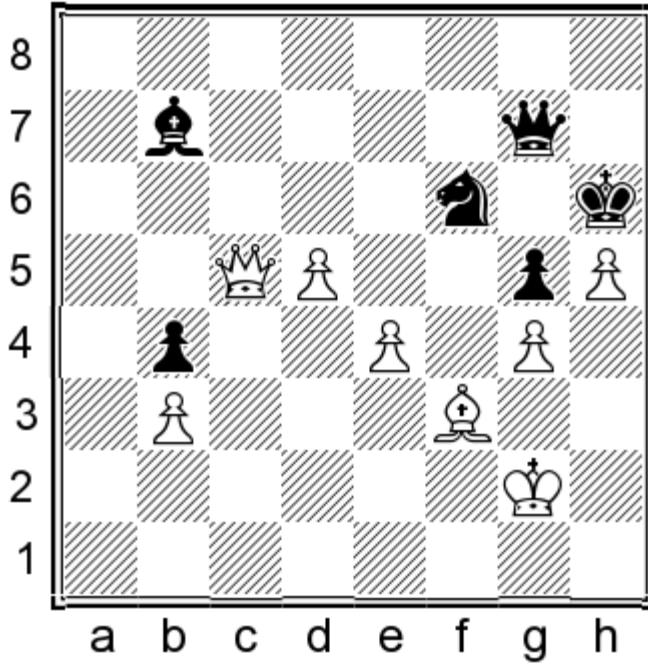
#### 42. cxd5!?

The dynamic path that prepares e4-e5.

42. exd5  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  43.  $\mathbb{W}f8+$   $\mathbb{W}g7$  44.  $\mathbb{W}xc5$  should have won without any problems.

#### 42... $\mathbb{Q}xh6$ 43. $\mathbb{W}f8+$ $\mathbb{W}g7$ 44. $\mathbb{W}xc5$

44.  $\mathbb{W}d6!?$  takes control of the d5- and e5-squares, which is important to advance the e4-pawn.



**44...Qd7?**

After 44...Qh7! White is still better, but it is not simple to progress:

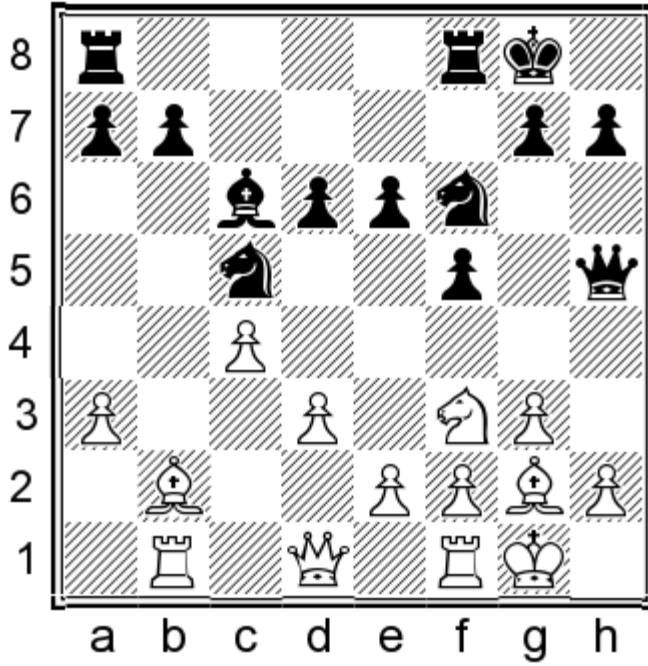
- A) 45.Qxb4 Qc7! when the queen occupies an important diagonal and the c-file (which was opened by 42.cxd5), and Black escapes thanks to the perpetual check possibilities;
- B) If 45.e5 Qxg4! 46.Qxg4 Qxe5 47.Qf3 g4! the d5-pawn will fall and the game is drawn.

**45.Qd6+ Qh7 46.e5! Qh8**

Or alternatively 46...Qxe5 47.Qe4+ Qg8 48.h6.

**47.h6 Qh7 48.e6 Qc2+ 49.Qg3**

Black resigned.



*White to move*

Can you find two interesting plans for White? By calculating variations can you tell which of the two leads to a large advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

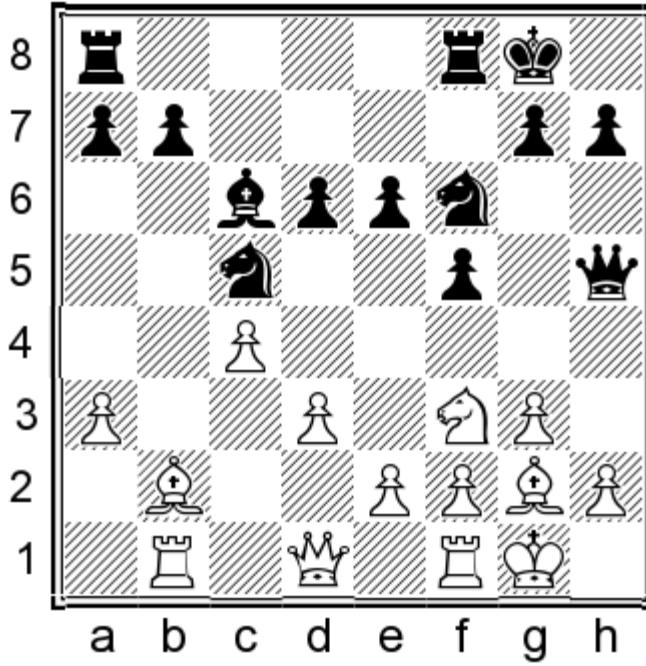
**24**

**Leonid Stein**

**Raul Sanguinetti**

Mar del Plata 1965 (3)

**1.c4 e6 2.♗c3 ♜b4 3.a3 ♜xc3 4.bxc3 f5 5.g3 ♜f6 6.♗g2 0-0 7.d3 d6 8.♗f3 ♜d7 9.c5 ♜a6 10.cxd6 cxd6 11.0-0 ♜c5 12.♗b1 ♜c6 13.c4 ♜e8 14.♗b2 ♜h5**



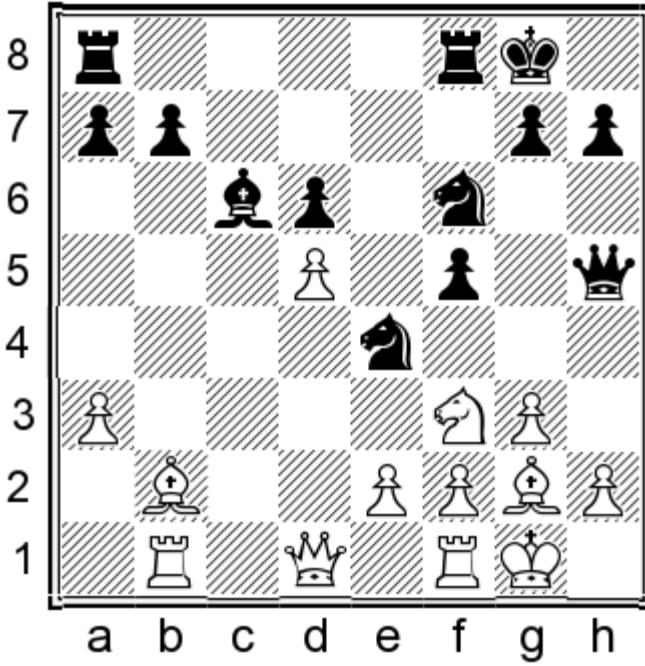
*White to move*

White has the bishop pair and in a position with a flexible pawn structure. This usually amplifies the advantage as knights are often frustrated in their search for stable support squares. He also has more pawns that can have a direct influence on the centre (c4 versus b7). Typical of Dutch Defence formations, the f5-pawn helps to control the centre and get dynamic play, but its advance has also weakened important squares. This assessment seems positive for White, but he still has to find a way to make progress.

15.d4  $\mathbb{Q}ce4$  (it is possible to avoid the following sacrifice by 15... $\mathbb{Q}a4$  16. $\mathbb{W}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}ce4$ , with the idea of meeting 17.d5?! by 17...e5, but then the bishop is offside and after 17. $\mathbb{Q}d2$  Black does not equalize) and now:

A) 16. $\mathbb{Q}d2$  promises nothing special after the natural reply 16... $\mathbb{Q}ac8$  but helps to illustrate the dynamic potential of the black position: 16... $\mathbb{Q}xg3$ !? 17.fxg3 (and not 17.hxg3?  $\mathbb{Q}g4$  with a quick mate) 17... $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  18. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  19. $\mathbb{W}e1$   $\mathbb{W}xh2+$  20. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  – Black has two pawns for the piece and excellent prospects;

B) 16.d5! exd5 17.cxd5



*analysis diagram*

A thematic pawn sacrifice that opens the game, especially the long dark-squared diagonal and the d-file, and reveals many weaknesses in the black camp. Compensation for the pawn is sufficient, but to see if there is an advantage you need to calculate. Let's look:

B1) After 17... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  18. $\mathbb{Q}h4!$  (threatening to win a piece by 19. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$ ) 18... $\mathbb{Q}c6$  19.f3  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  20. $\mathbb{W}xd6$ , the material balance is restored and the b2-bishop is very strong, which in particular hinders Black from solidly defending the f5-pawn by ...g7-g6; nevertheless, White is only a little better due to the activity of the opposing pieces;

B2) 17... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  18. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$  and now it is necessary to think about consolidating by playing, for example, 18... $\mathbb{W}f7$ , with mutual chances, as 18... $\mathbb{Q}ae8?$  19. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$   $\mathbb{B}xc6$  20. $\mathbb{Q}c1$  returns the pawn while keeping a bad position (if 20... $\mathbb{Q}c8$  then 21. $\mathbb{Q}xc6!$ ).

### 15. $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$

This exchange is intended to regain sufficient control of the light squares to be able to advance the d3-pawn to d5 without this entailing a sacrifice.

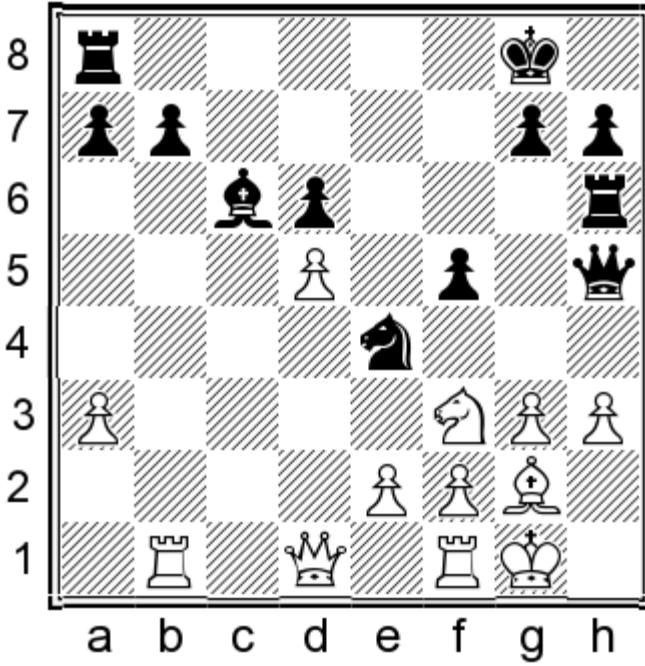
An important advantage of having the two bishops is to be able to part with one of them at the appropriate moment. In the heat of the action this can easily escape one's attention, even when it is well known...

### 15... $\mathbb{B}xf6$ 16.d4 $\mathbb{Q}h6$

Threatening 17... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ .

16... $\mathbb{Q}e4$  17.d5! resembles the game.

### 17.h3 $\mathbb{Q}e4$ 18.d5! $\mathbb{B}xd5$ 19.cxd5



Strategically White has managed to put an end to the black hegemony over the light squares, but he has made some concessions in exchange, such as abandoning the bishop pair and allowing the black knight to use the c5-square if necessary. It is good to think of this manoeuvre, but in order to judge whether it is favourable it is necessary, before exchanging the bishop on f6, to see the tactical points, namely that on a withdrawal of the black bishop the b7-pawn is lost, and that 19... $\mathbb{Q}c3?$  is bad (here seeing one of the reasons is enough), for example:

A) 20. $\mathbb{W}c2$  (to keep defending the e2-pawn) 20... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  (20... $\mathbb{Q}xb1?$  21. $dxc6$  loses the knight) 21. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$   $bxc6$  23. $\mathbb{B}b7$  is only promising;

B) 20. $\mathbb{W}b3!$  with a choice:

B1) After 20... $\mathbb{Q}xe2+$  21. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  22. $\mathbb{W}xb7!$  (to make the black pieces passive before attacking the knight; 22. $\mathbb{W}fe1$  f4! is less good) 22... $\mathbb{Q}d8$  23. $\mathbb{W}c7$   $\mathbb{W}e8$  24. $\mathbb{W}fe1$  White wins;

B2) If 20... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  21. $\mathbb{B}fd1!$  (after 21. $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{W}f7$  the d5-knight is unpinned) 21... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  (21... $\mathbb{W}f7$  22. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ ) 22. $\mathbb{B}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  23. $\mathbb{W}xd5$  the black pieces are decentralized and there is no more hope.

C) 20. $dxc6?$   $\mathbb{Q}xd1$  21. $cxb7$   $\mathbb{B}b8$  22. $\mathbb{B}fxd1$  – the b7-pawn is firmly supported and in the absence of counterplay it is doubtful that Black can save himself.

**19... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  20. $\mathbb{B}xb7$**

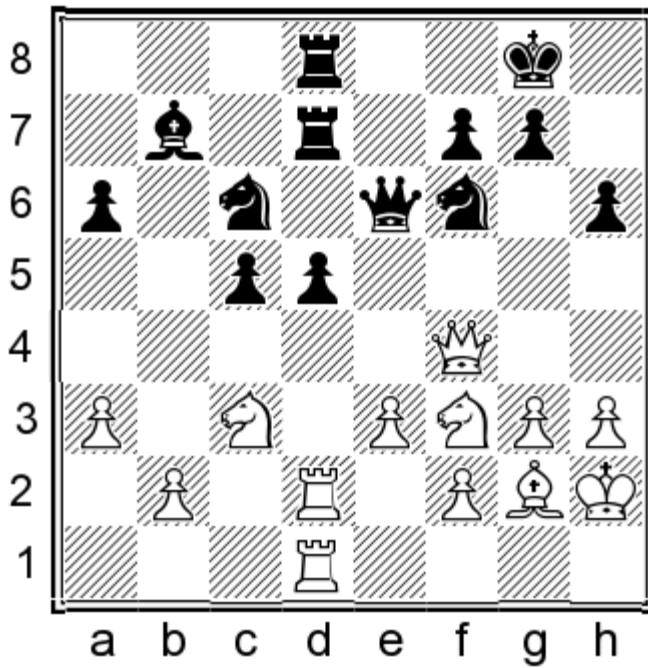
There is no compensation for the lost pawn.

**20... $\mathbb{W}e8$  21. $\mathbb{W}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  22. $\mathbb{B}b2$   $\mathbb{W}h5$  23. $\mathbb{B}fb1$   $\mathbb{B}f8$  24. $\mathbb{B}b8$   $\mathbb{B}hf6$  25. $\mathbb{B}xf8+$   $\mathbb{B}xf8$  26. $\mathbb{W}f4$   $\mathbb{W}g6$  27. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{W}f6$  28. $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  29. $dxe6$   $\mathbb{W}xe6$  30. $\mathbb{B}b7$**

Black resigned.

Show in Quiz Mode

25



Black to move

Can you make some general remarks about this position? After 28...Qa5? which plan gives White a clear advantage? It is necessary to calculate to verify this.

Show/Hide Solution

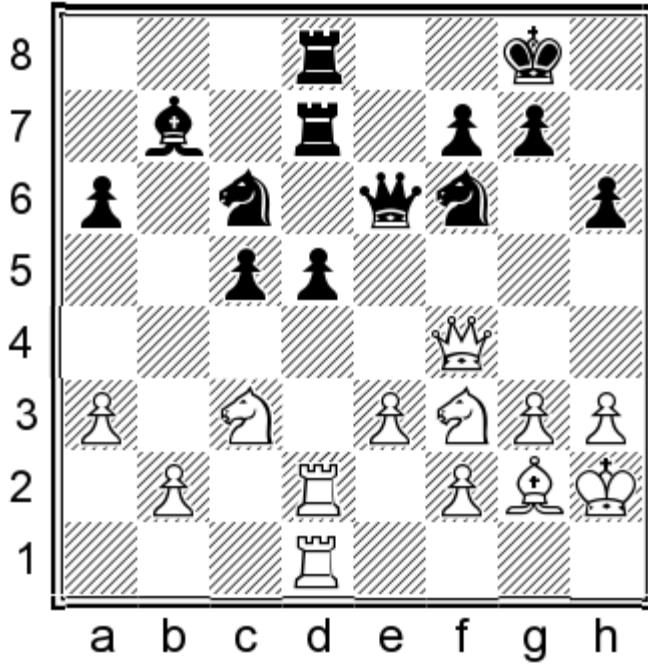
25

**Yasser Seirawan** 2570

**Nigel Short** 2575

Montpellier ct 1985 (8)

1.d4 Qf6 2.c4 e6 3.Qf3 b6 4.Qc3 Bb7 5.Qg5 h6 6.Qh4 Be7 7.Wc2 c5 8.dxc5 bxc5 9.e3 0-0 10.Qe2 d6 11.0-0 Qh5  
12.Qxe7 Wxe7 13.Bad1 Qf6 14.Bd2 Qc6 15.Bfd1 Bfd8 16.h3 Bd7 17.a3 B ad8 18.Wa4 d5 19.cxd5 exd5 20.Qb5 Bc7  
21.Wf4 Qa5 22.Wa4 Qc6 23.Qe2 Bcd7 24.Wf4 a6 25.Qf1 Wf8 26.g3 We7 27.Qg2 We6 28.Qh2



*Black to move*

The hanging pawns guarantee Black a space advantage. It is difficult to enforce the thematic ...d5-d4 thrust, but its possibility limits the freedom of the white pieces. On the other hand, playing ...c5-c4 is not, in principle, desirable. White would like to intensify the pressure on these pawns to weaken them, either with pieces or by playing b2-b4. He will also seek to exchange some pieces. For the moment both sides are struggling to progress and the last few moves have seen a period of manoeuvring.

**28...♞a5?!**

The knight targets the b3- and c4-squares. Earlier in the game Seirawan answered 21...♞a5 with 22.♘a4, but now this is no longer possible as after 29.♘a4? ♜c4 the d2-rook must leave the d-file and Black gains the initiative.

**29.♞e5!**

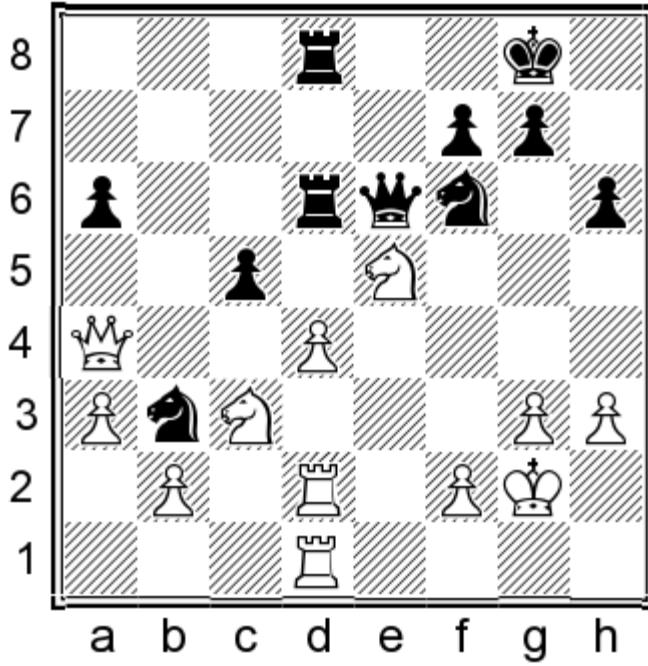
Opening the diagonal for the g2-bishop and taking the c4-square from the a5-knight.

29.♞a4 is interesting, with the promising idea 29...♝e7 30.♞xc5! ♖xc5 31.b4. The best defence is 29...♝b3! 30.♖d3 d4! (not 30...c4? 31.♖xb3! cxb3 32.♞c5), which defends the b3-knight, for example: 31.exd4 ♞xf3 32.♗xf3! (to force the knight to recapture on d4) 32...♝xd4 33.♗f4. White is very slightly better thanks to his bishop and better pawn structure, but not more since the black pieces are well placed.

**29...♜d6 30.♘a4! ♖xe5**

A) After 30...♞c6? 31.♞d3! the threats of 32.♞xc5 and 32.♞f4 are fatal for the black centre;

B) 30...d4?! 31.exd4 ♖xg2 32.♗xg2 ♜b3, attacking the d2-rook and the d4-pawn, is an interesting attempt to complicate the position, but it does not work well because of two rather long variations:

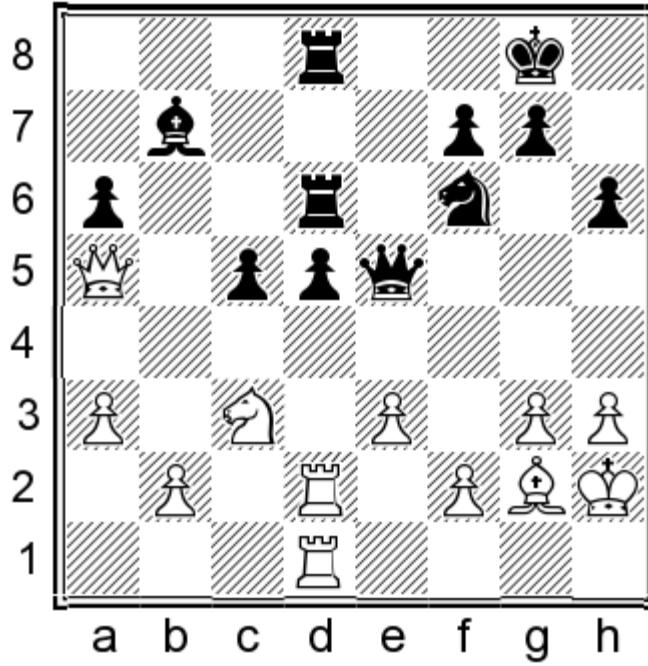


*analysis diagram*

B1) 33.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$  (threatening a discovered attack on the queen) 33...  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  34.  $\mathbb{Q}c6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  35.  $\mathbb{Q}xd8$   $\mathbb{W}e7!$  (after 35...  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  36.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $\mathbb{Q}xa4$  37.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $f\times e6$  38.  $b3$   $\mathbb{Q}c3$  39.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $a5$  40.  $\mathbb{Q}a6$  the knights struggle to deal with passed wing pawns and, moreover, White will soon have a material advantage; he is winning) 36.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{W}xd6$  37.  $\mathbb{Q}xe2$   $\mathbb{W}xd8$  38.  $\mathbb{W}xa6$   $\mathbb{W}d5+$  39.  $f3$   $\mathbb{W}b3$  40.  $\mathbb{W}c8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  41.  $\mathbb{W}xc5$   $\mathbb{W}xb2$  42.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$  – White has a pawn more and is much better;

B2) 33.  $\mathbb{Q}c6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  (33...  $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  34.  $\mathbb{Q}xd8$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  35.  $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  loses a pawn) 34.  $d5!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5?$  (the critical move... but losing; 34...  $\mathbb{W}c8!$  35.  $\mathbb{W}xb3$  is the last moment to only be one pawn down) 35.  $\mathbb{Q}e2!$  (35.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  36.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  leads nowhere, because the combination 37.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $c\times d4$  38.  $\mathbb{W}xc6?$  – 38.  $\mathbb{Q}e7+!$  saves the day – 38...  $\mathbb{W}xc6$  is no good, as the knight is pinned) 35...  $\mathbb{W}c8$  (if the queen goes to  $g6$  or  $f5$  the theme is the same) 36.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  and the threat of a triple attack on  $e7$  wins the exchange.

**31.  $\mathbb{W}xa5$**

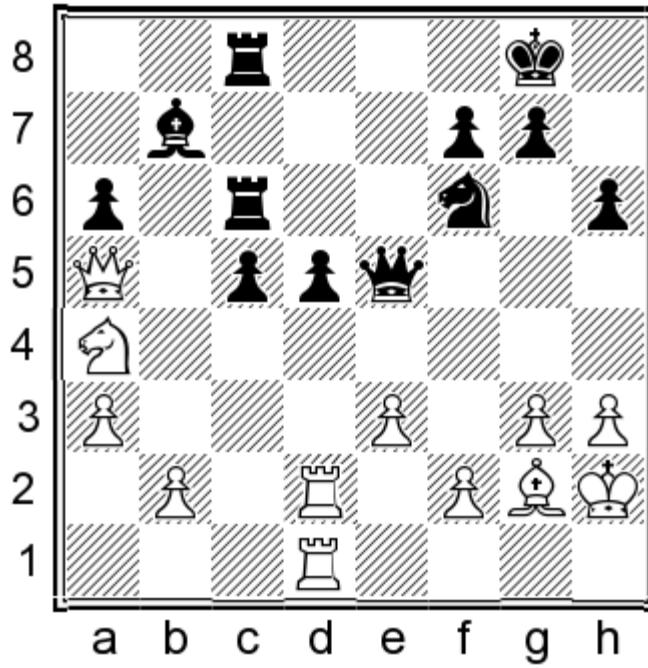


After the exchange of knights the hanging pawns come under heavy pressure and Black is unable to take advantage of the offside position of the white queen.

**31...♝c8**

31...h5 32.♛xc5 h4 33.♜d4 hxg3+ 34.fxg3 ♜e7 damages the white structure a little, but it is certainly not worth a pawn.

**32.♞a4 ♜dc6**



**33.♝c2?!**

White continues his general plan, but this is nevertheless a mistake which misses a favourable possibility. After 33.b4!,

33...c4 34.♗b6! loses the d5-pawn and 33...cxb4 34.axb4 leads to a large white advantage. On the other hand, 33.♕xd5? ♗xd5 34.♗xd5 ♜e4 weakens the light squares too much.

**33...♝e7 34.♗dc1 c4**

The black central pawn structure has become rigid and Seirawan will now direct his attention to the d5-pawn. After 34...♝e4!? 35.♔g1, White will play ♘a4-c3 and retain the initiative.

**35.♗d1 ♘d8 36.♗cd2 ♘cd6**

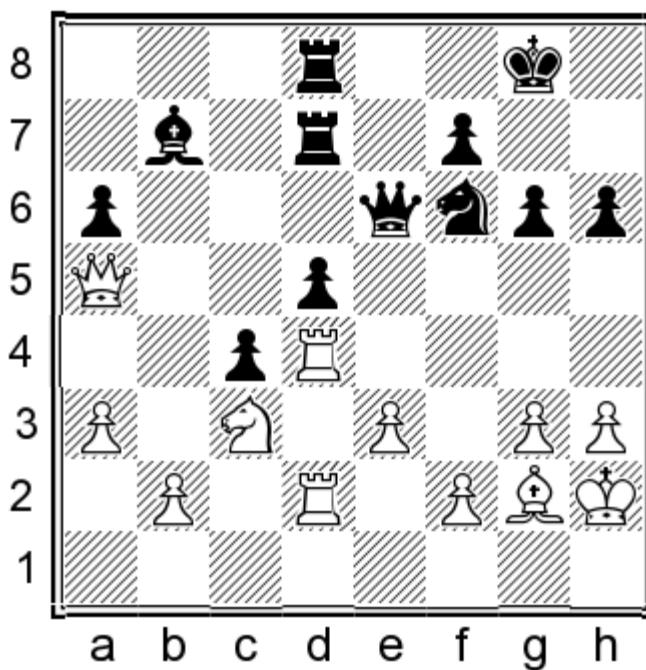
The white knight is well placed on a4 as from here it can directly attack the d5-pawn via c3 or b6, or indirectly through the c5-square to exchange the b7-bishop.

**37.♘c3**

37.♗d4!? slowly improves the position while keeping several options open for the knight.

**37...♝e6 38.♗d4 ♘6d7 39.♗1d2 g6?**

39...♗d6 avoids the loss of a pawn and keeps a tenable position.



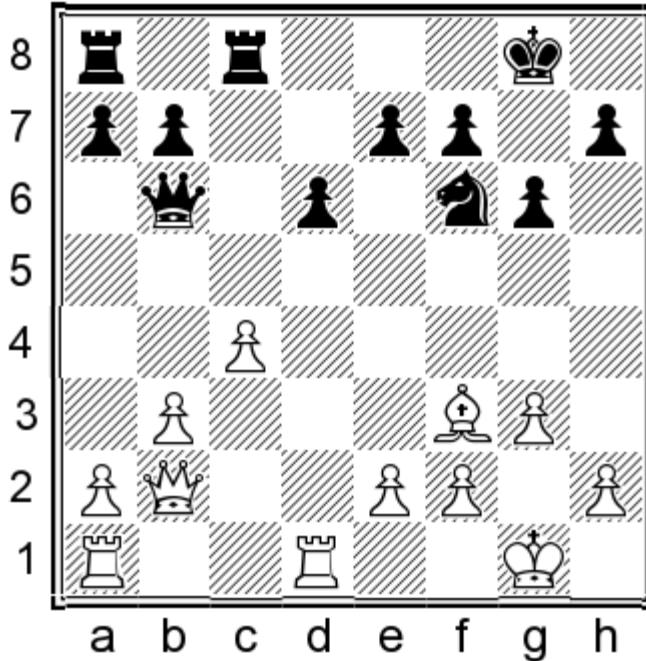
**40.♘a4!**

White will exchange the b7-bishop, which will leave the black pieces misplaced.

**40...♝e7 41.♘c5 ♘c7**

Or else 41...♗d6 42.♗xb7 ♜xb7 43.♗xc4, exploiting the pin on the d5-pawn.

**42.♗xb7 ♜xb7 43.♗xd5 ♘xd5 44.♗xd5 ♘xd5 45.♗xd5 ♘c7 46.♗a8+ ♔g7 47.♗xa6 c3 48.bxc3 ♘xc3 49.a4 ♜e4 50.♗b5 ♘c8 51.a5 h5 52.♗b2+ ♔h7 53.♗f6 ♘c4 54.♗d7 1-0**



*White to move*

Which plan allows White to take the initiative?

Show/Hide Solution

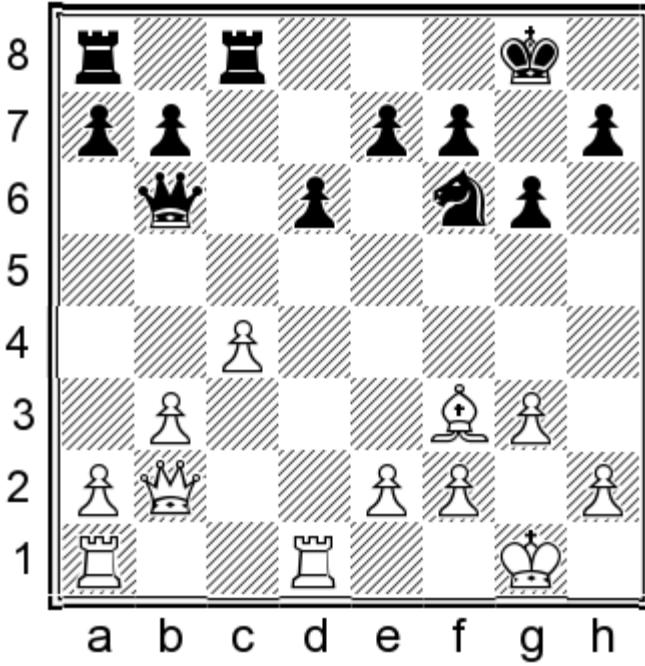
**26**

Max Euwe

Carl Carls

The Hague 1928 (14)

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2. c4 c5 3. g3  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$  g6 5. b3  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6.  $\mathbb{Q}b2$  d6 7. d4 cxd4 8.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  9. 0-0 0-0 10.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  11.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}xb2$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}fd1$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}fc8$



*White to move*

White has a stable space advantage, which gives him the possibility of playing on both wings. Note that for the moment the c4-pawn is attacked.

One idea is to advance the b3-pawn, but this would allow the black rooks to become active on the a- and c-files. For example, after 18... $\mathbb{R}ac1$  a5! 19.a3  $\mathbb{R}c7$  20.b4 axb4 21.axb4 the a4- and b4-pawns are vulnerable and Black can either stay put or play the annoying move 21... $\mathbb{R}a4!?$ , which forces White to seek complications that are not necessarily favourable by 22.c5!.

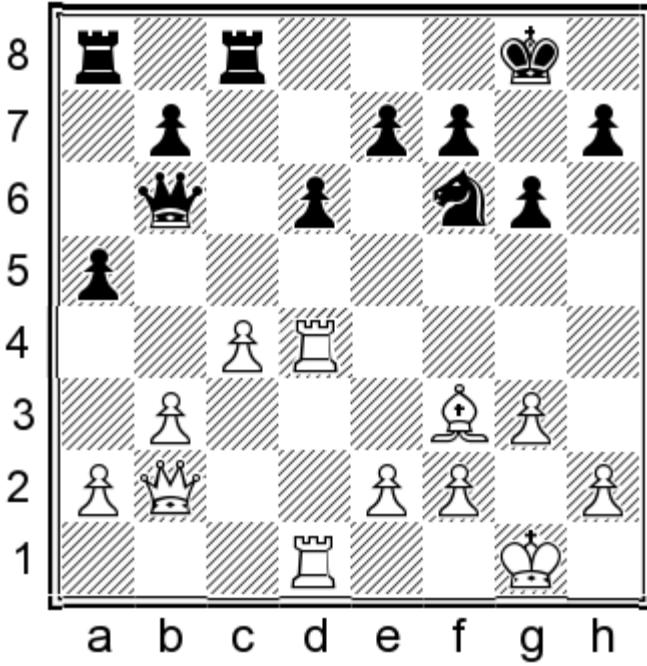
### **18... $\mathbb{R}d4!$**

A very strong move that defends the c4-pawn and prepares to double rooks on the d-file. The rook may sometimes also slide along the fourth rank.

### **18...a5!**

Strengthening control of the dark squares and preparing to open the queenside by ...a5-a4 whenever White cannot favourably reply with b3-b4.

### **19... $\mathbb{R}ad1$**



The rooks are ideally placed and White has the prospect of advancing his h-pawn and possibly also his g-pawn, but this will be more weakening. He may also consider a positional exchange sacrifice by capturing the d6-pawn; if Black wishes to prevent this by moving his f6-knight, then this king will be less well defended.

A) 19...a4?! 20.b4 isn't satisfactory since this allows the creation of the b4 and c4 duo without obtaining any real counterplay on the queenside;

B) 19...Rc5?!, to involve the rook in the defence of the kingside, is met by 20.Rxd6! exd6 21.Qxf6, for example: 21...Rd8 22.Qd5 Rd7 (and not 22...Rc7? 23.Qxf7+!) 23.Rd4! Rd8! (giving a pawn to relieve the pressure) 24.Qxf7+! Qf8 25.Qxd8+ Rxd8 26.Qd5 – with two pawns for the exchange, in a position that is unfavourable for the black rooks, White's advantage is not in doubt, even if it is difficult to assess exactly quite how significant it is;

C) 19...Qd7?! bets on active play to protect the king and, effectively, after 20.h4 Qe5 the threat of taking on c4 forces the exchange of the bishop and solves Black's problems. Instead of 20.h4, 20.Qc3 Qe5 21.Qg2 is possible, and now:

C1) 21...a4?! 22.b4 Qc6 23.Qh4 – Black has obtained a lot on the queenside, but his king is in danger and he is worse after 23...Rxb4 24.Rxb4 Qxb4 25.Qxb7;

C2) 21...Rc7 (preparing to double rooks and, by protecting the b7-pawn, play the ...a5-a4 thrust as well) 22.a3!? Rac8 23.Qh3 Rb8 when one idea for Black is to continue with ...Rb6-a7 and then to play on the queenside by ...a5-a4 or ...b7-b5. Chances are level.

### **19...Rc7**

Defending the b7-pawn, which allows the queen to go to c5 and participate in the defence of the kingside.

### **20.h4!?**

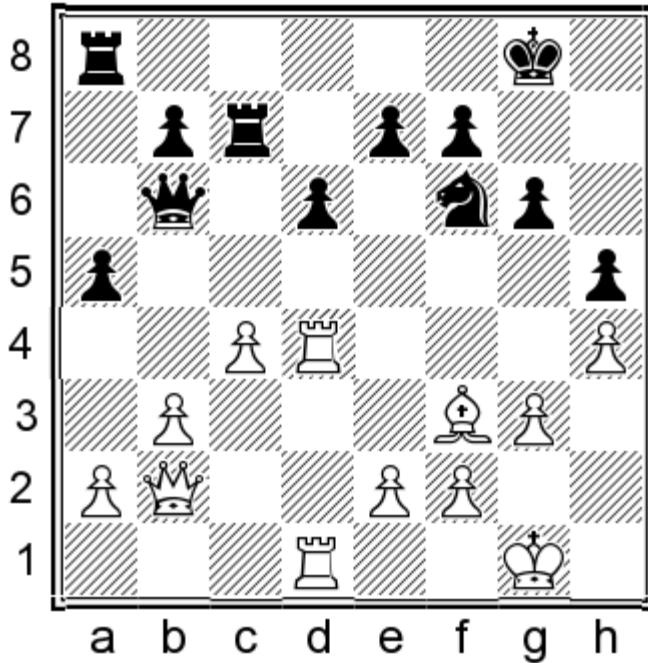
20.Rxd6!? exd6 21.Qxf6 Rd7 is a promising sacrifice for White, who can advance the h-pawn and place the rook or bishop on d5 depending on circumstances. After 22.Qg4 Black must avoid 22...Rdd8?!, which interferes with the queen's return to the defence as well as the participation of the a8-rook; 23.h4! is then strong, with the idea 23...h5? 24.Qe6! fxe6 25.Qxg6+ Qf8 26.Qf6+ Qg8 27.Qxe6+ followed by 28.Rd5 and an easy win. Instead of 22...Rdd8, 22...Rd8! 23.Qf4 f5! should allow Black to hold, even if his position remains uncomfortable.

**20...h5?**

20... $\mathbb{W}c5$  was better, and now:

A) 21.h5  $\mathbb{W}e5!$  gives Black a solid position, but 21...gxh5? is no good because of 22. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$  as 22... $\mathbb{Q}xd5?$  loses to 23. $\mathbb{R}xd5 \mathbb{W}b6$  24. $\mathbb{R}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  25. $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ ;

B) 21.g4!  $\mathbb{W}e5$  22. $\mathbb{W}d2$  White unpins the d4-rook and prepares to play 23.g5 to gain even more space. He has a lasting initiative.



With his last move Black has retained his share of space on the kingside, but due to the activity of the white pieces the respective weaknesses of the two king positions are not the same.

**21. $\mathbb{R}xd6!$  exd6 22. $\mathbb{W}xf6$**

The black h-pawn no longer defends its very vulnerable colleague on g6 and White can open the kingside by g3-g4. The end is near.

**22... $\mathbb{Q}f8$**

Protecting the d6-pawn is not possible. Let's see the variations Euwe suggested:

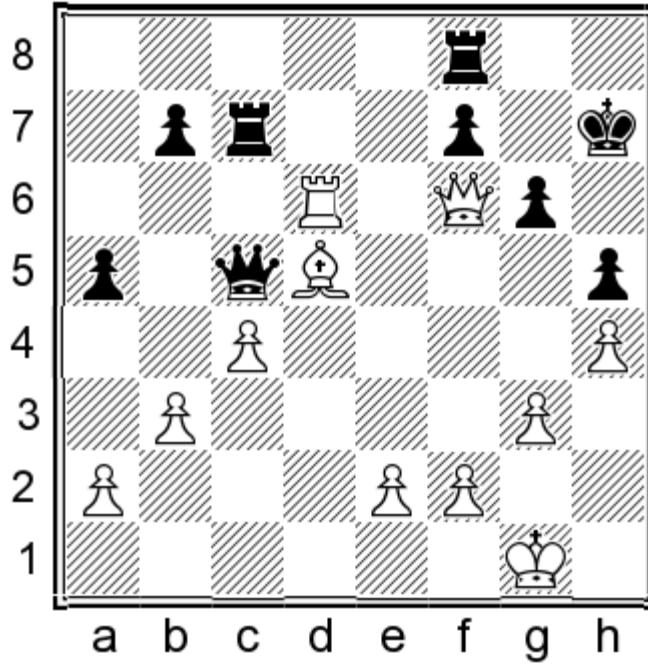
A) 22... $\mathbb{R}d7$  23. $\mathbb{Q}d5$  (threatening 24. $\mathbb{W}xg6+$ ) 23... $\mathbb{Q}h7$  (on 23... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ , 24. $\mathbb{W}h8+$  wins the a8-rook) 24. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  and White wins;

B) 22... $\mathbb{R}a6$  (now the rook is safe, but it is also offside) 23. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  24. $\mathbb{R}d3$  and the white rook decisively enters the fray.

**23. $\mathbb{R}xd6$   $\mathbb{W}c5$  24. $\mathbb{Q}d5$**

Threatening to capture the g6-pawn.

**24... $\mathbb{Q}h7$**



**25.g4!**

Simple and thematic.

**25... $\mathbb{W}a3$**

An ingenious way to return to the defence, even if it is too late.

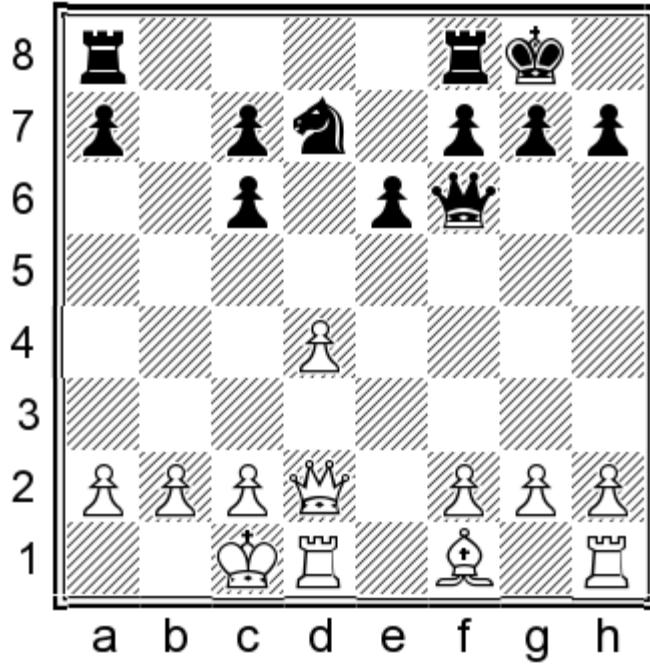
25...hxg4 26.h5 saves nothing.

**26.gxh5  $\mathbb{W}c1+$  27. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{W}h6$  28. $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$**

The most direct. After 28. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ , with three pawns for the exchange and a dominant position, White would also win.

**28... $\mathbb{W}g7$  29.hxg6+  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  30. $\mathbb{W}g5$**

Black resigned.



White to move

What is the point of 13.h4 ?

Show/Hide Solution

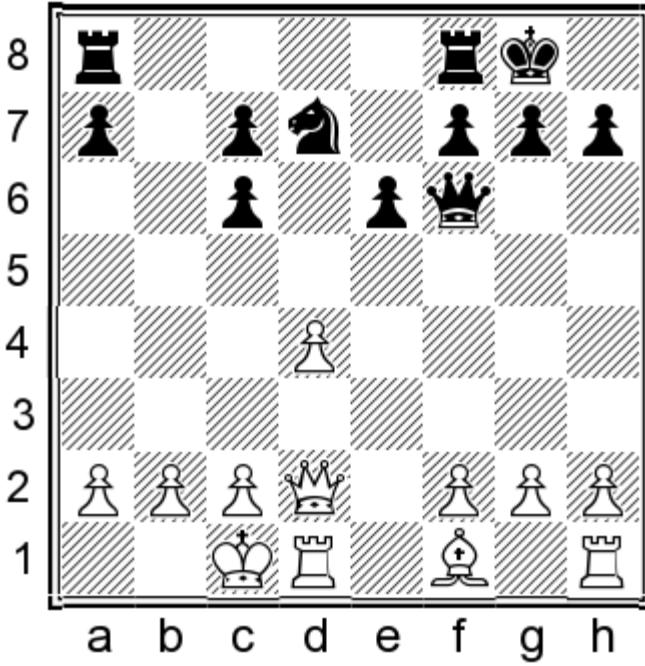
27

Boris Spassky

Tigran Petrosian

Moscow Wch m 1966 (23)

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.Qc3 Qf6 4.Qg5 dxе4 5.Qxe4 Qe7 6.Qxf6 Qxf6 7.Qf3 Qd7 8.Qd2 Qc6 9.Qxf6+ Qxf6 10.Qe5 0-0  
11.0-0-0 Qd7 12.Qxc6 bxc6



*White to move*

Black has a badly damaged pawn structure and must look for active play on the b- or d-files together with the ...c6-c5 or ...e6-e5 thrusts. It is also in his interest to keep the queens on.

White is not in a good position to launch an attack on the king, but he can try to control his opponent's play in order to subsequently exploit his better pawn structure as well as, in many cases, the superiority of his bishop over the knight.

### 13.h4!

An excellent move whose two main ideas are to develop the h1-rook on the third rank, from where it can act in the centre and on both wings (from which it will profit abundantly), and to prepare the exchange of queens by  $\mathbb{W}d2-g5$ , which would underline the weakness of the black queenside pawns. A kingside pawn storm may also be considered, but for the moment this would give nothing more than a double-edged game.

### 13... $\mathbb{E}ab8??$

The black pieces are not active enough to create threats against the white king and time is running out for play in the centre.

The most resilient is 13... $\mathbb{E}fd8!$  14. $\mathbb{E}h3$  (14. $\mathbb{W}g5?$   $\mathbb{W}xf2$ ) with a choice:

A) 14... $\mathbb{Q}b6??$  15. $\mathbb{W}g5!$   $\mathbb{E}xd4$  16. $\mathbb{E}xd4$   $\mathbb{W}xd4$  17. $\mathbb{E}d3$  and White regains the sacrificed pawn with a large advantage after 17... $\mathbb{W}f6$  18. $\mathbb{W}xf6$   $gxf6$  19. $\mathbb{E}c3$  or 17... $\mathbb{W}b4$  18. $\mathbb{E}d8+$   $\mathbb{E}xd8$  19. $\mathbb{W}xd8+$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  20. $\mathbb{W}xc7$ ;

B) 14...c5 15. $\mathbb{E}d3!$  (15. $\mathbb{W}g5?$   $cxd4$  16. $\mathbb{W}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  loses a pawn) 15...c4 16. $\mathbb{E}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  17. $\mathbb{W}g5!$  The chances of counterplay are now greatly reduced and a long defence awaits Black, for example: 17... $\mathbb{W}xg5+$  18. $hxg5$   $\mathbb{E}d5$  19. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  20. $\mathbb{E}xc4$   $\mathbb{E}xg5$  21.g3  $\mathbb{E}f5$  22. $\mathbb{Q}d2!?$   $\mathbb{E}xf2+$  23. $\mathbb{Q}e3$  followed by 24. $\mathbb{E}xc7$  and it is now the respective piece activity that determines White's advantage;

C) 14...e5! 15. $\mathbb{W}e3!$  (after 15. $\mathbb{E}d3!?$  e4 16. $\mathbb{E}e3$   $\mathbb{W}xh4$  17.g3  $\mathbb{W}e7$  18. $\mathbb{W}e2$  White will regain the sacrificed pawn and retain some chances of an advantage; after 15. $\mathbb{E}f3!?$   $\mathbb{W}xh4$ , 16. $\mathbb{Q}c4!?$  leads nowhere because of 16... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ , but 16. $\mathbb{W}e3$   $\mathbb{E}e8$  is difficult to judge) 15... $\mathbb{E}xd4$  16. $\mathbb{E}xd4$  (and not 16. $\mathbb{W}xd4?$   $\mathbb{Q}e5!$  followed by 17... $\mathbb{E}xd1+$  and the white king is exposed) 16...c5 17. $\mathbb{E}f4$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  18. $\mathbb{W}d2$  and with queens on the board Black has play in the centre and against the

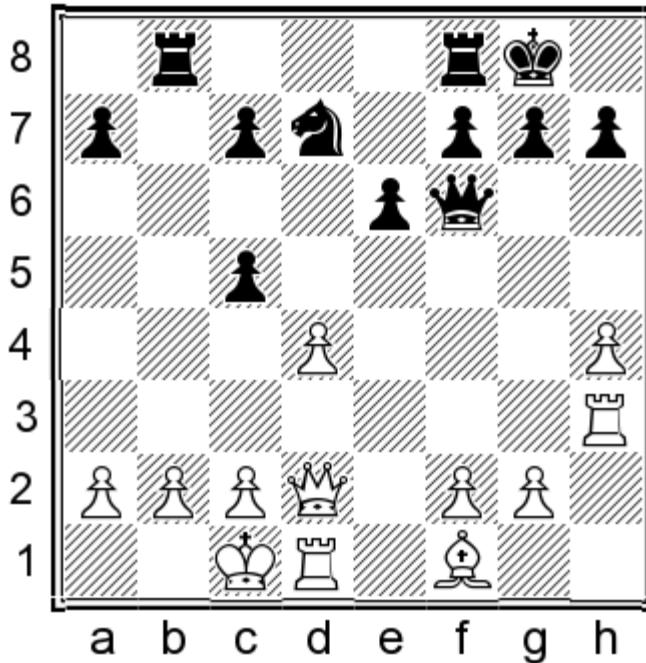
opposing king; he is only a little worse.

**14.♕h3!**

14.♗g5? ♗xf2

**14...c5**

14...h6, to keep the queens on, allows 15.g4! followed by 16.g5 with an opening of lines against the black king.



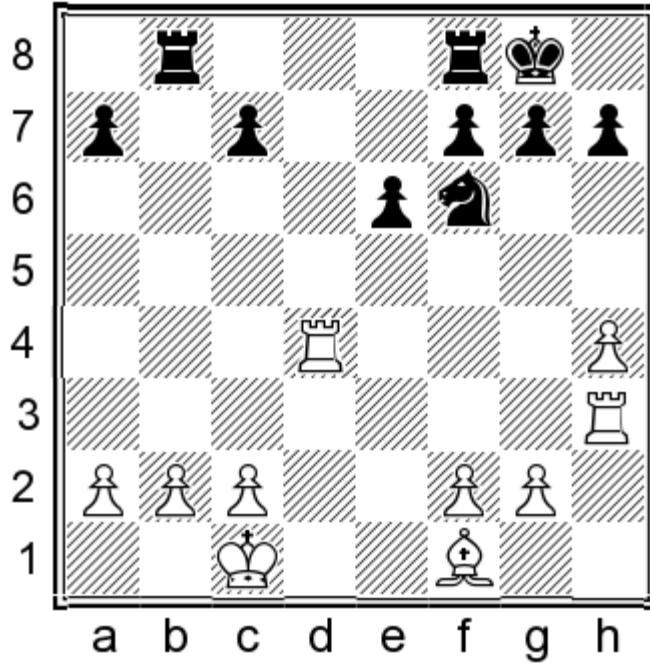
**15.♗g5!**

This is the key to Spassky's plan. The exchange of queens leaves the white king safe, while exposing the black queenside.

**15...cx<sub>d</sub>4**

15...♗xf2? loses after 16.♕f3 ♗g1 17.♗g3 with the idea of ♕f1-e2.

**16.♗xf6 ♔xf6 17.♕xd4**



The white rooks are well placed to attack the isolated black pawns.

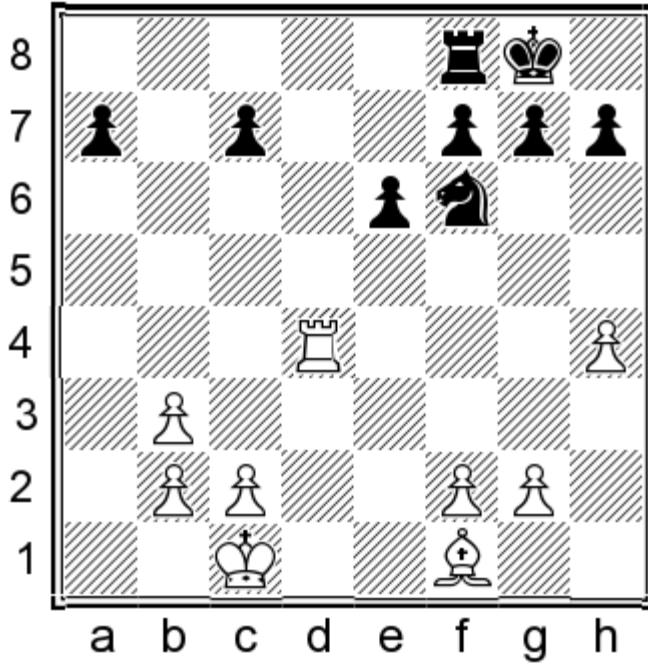
**17...Bb7?**

17...c6! blocks the long light-squared diagonal and frees the seventh rank, allowing the black rooks to defend the weak pawns, e.g.: 18.Ra3 Bb7 19.Rda4 Ra8 20.g3 Qf8 21.Qg2 Rc7 22.Ra6 Qd5 23.R3a4 (taking the b4-square from the knight in order to play c2-c4) 23...Qe8 24.c4 Qe7 when everything is defended in the black camp, but his pieces are passive and White has a significant advantage.

**18.Rb3! Rx b3**

And not 18...Rfb8? 19.Rxb7 Rxb7 20.Rd8+.

**19.axb3**



**19...♜a8**

After 19...c6 20.♜a4 ♜a8 21.g3! (21.♜a6 is less accurate because of 21...♝g4! 22.♜xc6 – 22.f3?! ♐e3 – 22...♝xf2 even if Black remains worse) 21...♝d5 22.c4 ♐e7 23.♜a6 White threatens 24.♝g2 and is probably winning.

**20.♝c4!?**

An elegant idea: Spassky draws the knight to e8 so as to then chase the a8-rook with the bishop.

**20...♝e8**

After 20...♝d5 21.g3 followed by 22.♝g2 Black will lose a pawn.

**21.♜a4! ♐d6**

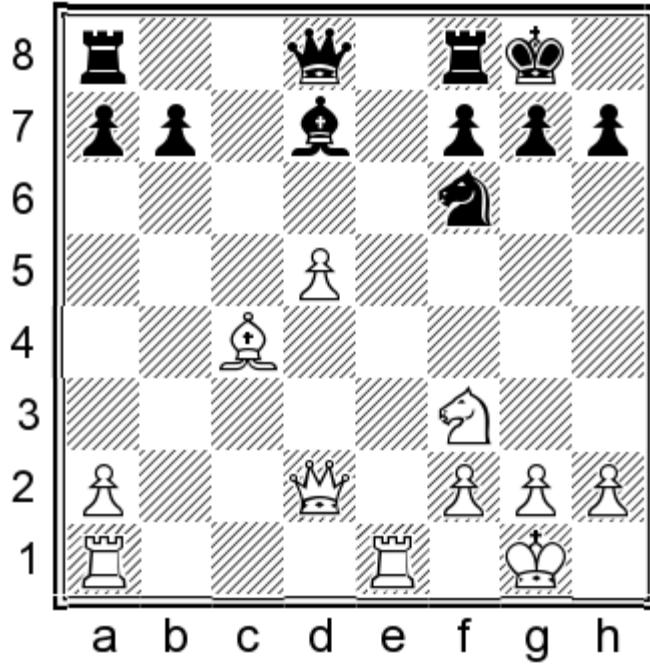
21...a5 22.b4 is worse.

**22.g3 ♔f8 23.♝g2 ♜c8 24.♜xa7**

White has a three-to-one majority on the queenside and active pieces. The win poses no problems.

**24...♝e7 25.♝d2 h6 26.c4 g5 27.hxg5 hxg5 28.♝c3 ♐d7 29.b4 ♜h8 30.b5 ♜h2 31.♝c6+ ♐d8**

Black resigned.



Black to move

What plan is connected with 15...Wc7, and what do you think of it?

Show/Hide Solution

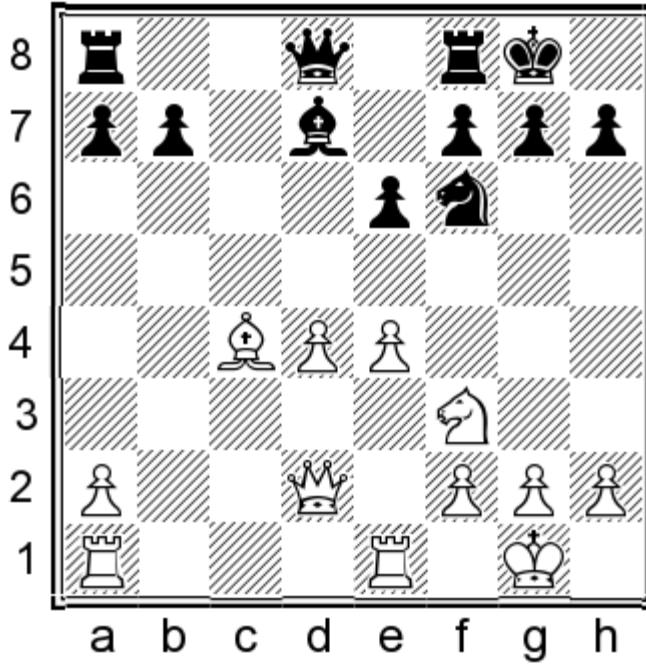
28

Vasily Smyslov 2550

Thomas Ernst 2465

Subotica izt 1987 (10)

1.d4 Wf6 2.Wf3 d5 3.c4 e6 4.Wc3 c5 5.cxd5 Wxd5 6.e4 Wxc3 cxd4 8.cxd4 Wb4+ 9.Wd2 Wxd2+ 10.Wxd2 0-0  
11.Wc4 Wd7 12.0-0 Wf6 13.Wfe1 Wd7



White has a space advantage and a central majority. His two main plans are to play d4-d5, in order to get a passed pawn, or to launch an attack on the black king, the key move in this case being e4-e5.

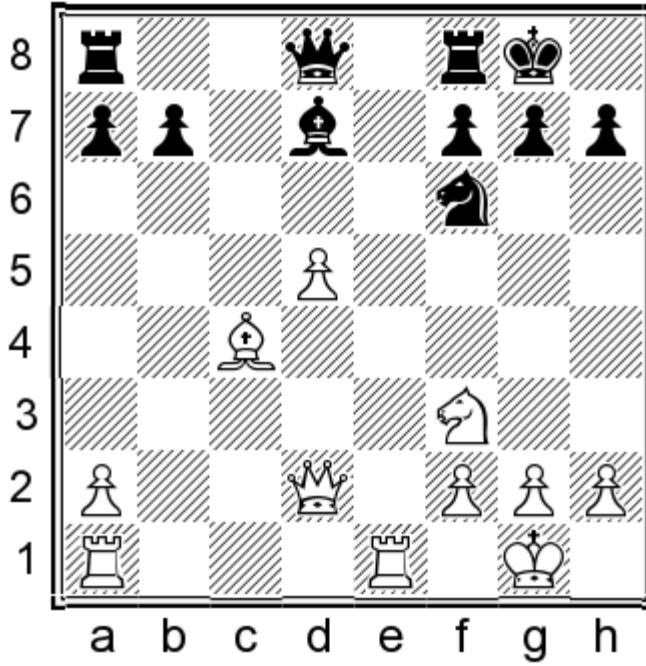
Black's counterchances are mainly tied to his queenside majority and play on the c-file. Piece exchanges are normally in his favour, because he lacks space.

As the immediate advance of one of the central pawns will lead to an opening of lines which could also benefit Black, White may wish to play some useful moves first.

A) 14.  $\mathbb{E}ad1$  is normal, but 14...  $\mathbb{Q}a4!$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}b3$  (in order to keep the rook on the d-file) 15...  $\mathbb{Q}xb3$  16.  $a\text{xb3}$   $\mathbb{W}b6$  eases the black defence thanks to the bishop exchange;

B) 14.  $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  (14...  $\mathbb{E}c8$  15.  $d5$  is complicated, but dangerous for Black) 15.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$   $b\text{xc6}$  gives a slight advantage to White who will now focus on the queenside more;

C) 14.  $d5$   $\text{exd5}$  15.  $\text{exd5}$ , with the threat of gaining a big advantage by 16.  $d6$ , is interesting:



*Black to move*

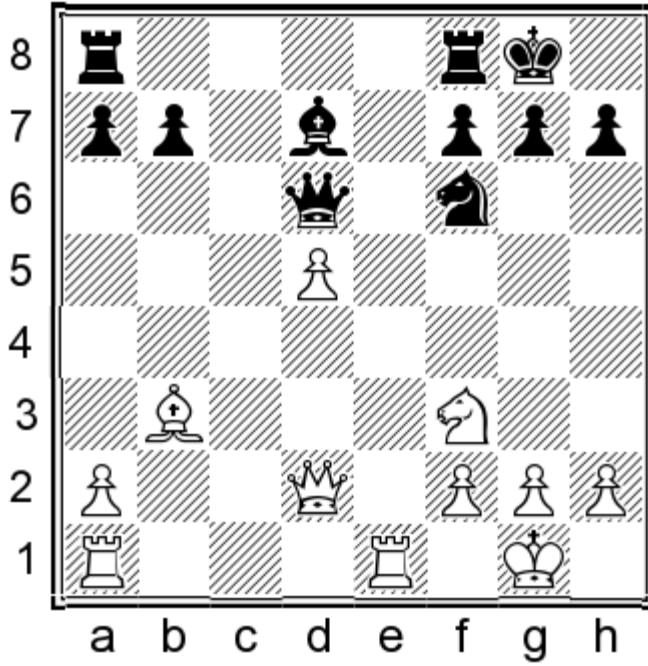
*analysis diagram*

C1) 15... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  intends to block the pawn with the knight, which would give a good game, while taking advantage of tactical circumstances:

C1a) 16.d6  $\mathbb{Q}a4!$  (to prevent the protection of the d6-pawn; 16... $\mathbb{Q}g4?$  17. $\mathbb{Q}ad1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  18. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  is very bad for Black, who is unable to exploit the weakening of the opposing kingside) 17. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  18. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  19. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$  White has the initiative;

C1b) Instead of 16.d6, 16. $\mathbb{Q}b4$  also deserves attention, with the possible follow-up: 16...b5 17. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  (after the black knight's retreat the d5-pawn is no longer attacked and so the bishop finds shelter from the advance of the black pawns) 17...a5 18. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  19. $\mathbb{Q}e5$  The knight will try to settle on c6 and White is a little better.

C2) 15... $\mathbb{Q}c7!$  (the queen gains a tempo on the c4-bishop in order to get to d6) 16. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}d6!$



*analysis diagram*

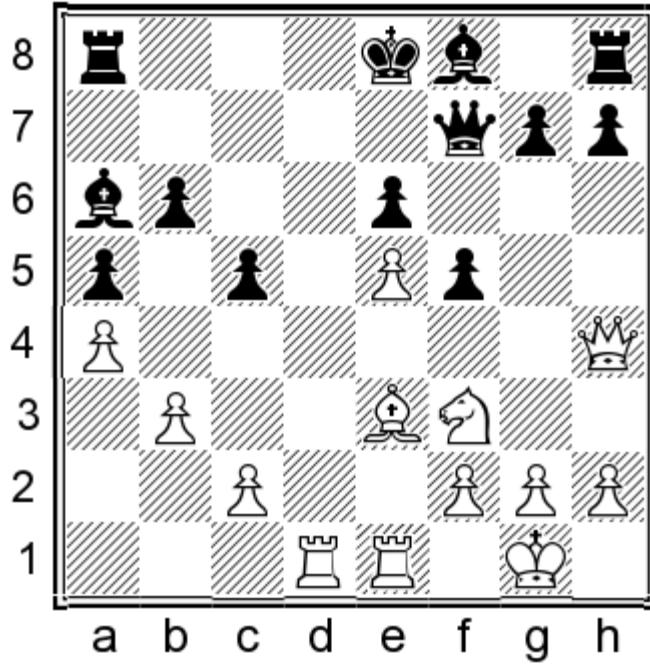
The queen is rarely used to block a pawn because it loses its mobility (it is the most powerful piece!) and must move if attacked. In this position it doesn't need to actively participate in the main black plan (the advance of the a- and b-pawns and the occupation of the open files) and cannot be driven off by the white pieces. Black has a comfortable game.

After 15... $\mathbb{Q}c7$  the most interesting line for White is to challenge Black's control of the d6-square by playing 16. $\mathbb{W}b4!$  even though his queen is exposed to attack from the black pawns, for example: 16...b5 17. $\mathbb{Q}b3$  a5 18.d6!  $\mathbb{W}b8?!$  19. $\mathbb{W}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  when both sides have made progress and the situation is unclear. Instead of 16...b5, 16... $\mathbb{Q}e8?!$  allows Black to block the d5-pawn 'ideally' with his knight, but his queen is temporarily misplaced and this enables White to gain the initiative: 17. $\mathbb{Q}ac1$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  18. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{W}b6$  (18... $\mathbb{W}b8?!$  is too passive) 19. $\mathbb{W}xb6$  axb6 and Black is a little worse as his queenside majority has been devalued.

#### 14.e5 $\mathbb{Q}d5$

14... $\mathbb{Q}e8?$  15.d5! leads to a large white advantage.

(continuation and solution 58)



White to move

The best plan available to White gives him a very big advantage without resorting to complicated tactical resources. Can you find it?

Show/Hide Solution

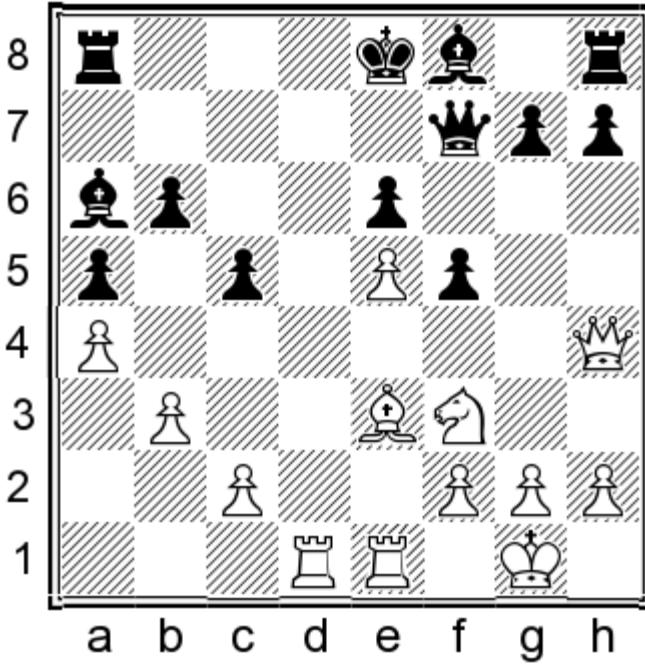
29

Vlastimil Hort 2550

Bojan Kurajica 2520

Vinkovci 1976

1.e4 c5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b5$  e6 4.0-0 a6 5. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  dxc6 6.d3  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  7.e5 f5 8.a4 a5 9. $\mathbb{Q}a3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  10. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  11. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  12. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$   $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  13.b3  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  14.d4 cxd4 15. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  b6 16. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  17. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  18. $\mathbb{Q}h4$  c5 19. $\mathbb{Q}ad1$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$



*White to move*

White has a big lead in development and various ways to try to exploit this, such as doubling rooks on the d-file or placing a minor piece on g5. Let's see some variations illustrating White's possibilities before moving on to the game continuation, which is both more effective and more strategic:

A) 20.Qg5 and now:

A1) 20...Bb7? (intending to exchange the white knight, but this loses control of the c4-square) 21.Wc4! Qc6 (21...Ba6 22.Wxa6!) 22.Qd4! Qd7 23.Qb5 and White is winning;

A2) 20...Be7 21.Qxe7 (21.Qd6! as in the game is even stronger) 21...Wxe7 22.Wh5+ Wf7 23.Wxf7+ Qxf7 24.Qd7+ Qg6 25.Qed1 followed by 26.Q1d6 leads to a probably decisive white advantage;

A3) 20...h6! 21.Qd2 Qg8! – at the end of the day the white bishop is exposed on g5 and Black is doing very well in the critical variation 22.Qed1 hxg5 23.Qxg5 Qe7!.

B) 20.Qd2, doubling rooks, is a natural plan:

B1) If 20...Bb7? 21.Qg5 Wg6 22.Wc4 Qd5 23.Qb5+ wins;

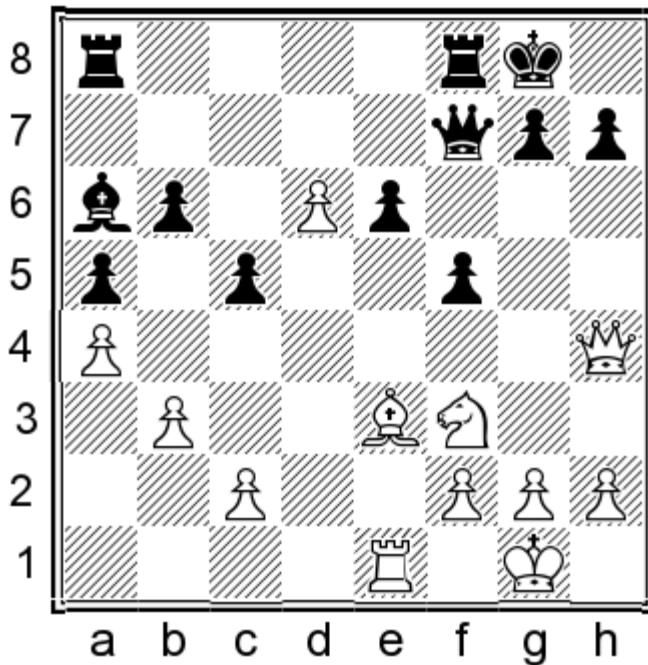
B2) 20...h6 21.Qed1 Be7 is close to completing development, but 22.Qg5! prohibits castling and wins by force: 22...Qxg5 23.Qxg5 Wg6 (23...We7? 24.Wh5+) 24.Qxe6! Wxe6 25.Qd8+ Qf7 26.Q1d7+ Qg6 27.Wg3+ Qh5 28.Qxg7 followed by a quick mate;

B3) 20...Be7 21.Qg5! Qb7! (21...h6? transposes to the previous variation) 22.Qxe7! (22.Qed1 Qxf3 23.gxf3 Wg6! 24.f4 h6 25.Qh1 Qxg5 26.fxg5 Wxg5 27.Wc4 0-0 isn't so bad for Black) 22...Wxe7 23.Qg5 h6 24.Wh5+ Qf8 25.Qh3 g5! (it is important to keep the knight away) 26.Qed1 We8 and Black is worse, but the game continues.

## 20.Qd6! Qxd6

20...Qe7 is reasonable, and after 21.Qg5! Qb7 (castling is not possible) 22.Qxe7 (22.Wc4 is also good, but sharper) 22...Qxf3 (22...Wxe7? 23.Qg5) 23.Qd8! Black is likely to finish his development, but he is in trouble on the only open file and his queenside pawns are too exposed to allow him to save the game.

## 21.exd6 0-0



In return for the exchange White has a strong passed pawn on d6 which can be protected by the bishop on e7. The knight will either go to e5 to support its advance, and generally have a major influence on the game, or to g5 to attack the e6- and h7-pawns. The main action will take place on the dark squares, which are accessible to the two white minor pieces but not to the black bishop, which is confined to the light squares. It is important to emphasize this minor piece distribution. Finally, there are no files for the black rooks.

### 22.♘e5

22.♘g5 keeps the choice of square for the knight open and is probably the best move. The critical continuation is 22...f4 to possibly play the queen to f5 where it will be active and will defend the h7-pawn. 23.♗e7 is then a good move, but a forced win is obtained by 23.♘e5! ♖f5 24.d7! ♖xc2 25.♗g4! (25.d8=♕? ♕axd8 26.♗xd8 ♖d2! turns the tables) 25...♖f5 (or else 25...♖xb3 26.♗h6 g6 27.♗xg6) 26.♗xf5 exf5 27.♗d1 and White will stay a piece up.

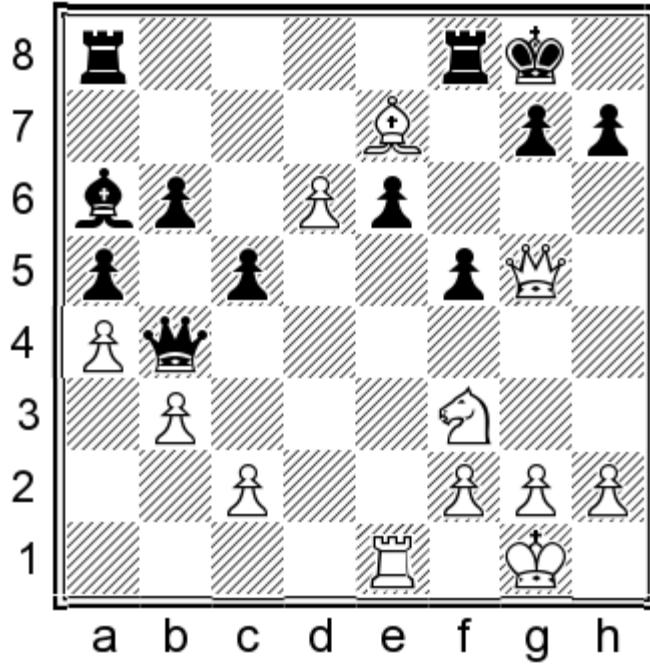
### 22...♖b7

22...♖f6? 23.♗g5 loses the queen.

### 23.♗g5 ♖d5 24.♗e7 ♘b7

After the toughest continuation 24...♖d2 25.♗f3! (less good is 25.f3 ♕fe8 and 26.d7? is no good because of 26...♕xe7, as the queen is overloaded) 25...♖b4 just by looking at the position there is no doubt that White has a large advantage and several lines are promising.

Let's see a win in detail after 26.♗g5:



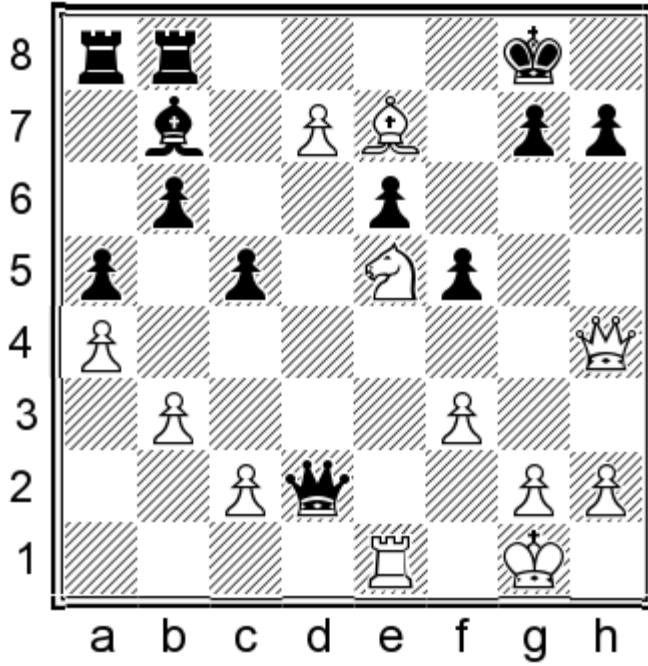
*analysis diagram*

- A) 26... $\mathbb{W}g4$  27. $\mathbb{Q}xf8$   $\mathbb{W}xg5$  28. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$   $\mathbb{Q}xf8$  The knight is well placed, this is one of the ideas of 26. $\mathbb{W}g5$ , and 29. $\mathbb{Q}xe6+$  is decisive;
- B) 26... $\mathbb{B}f7$  27. $\mathbb{W}e3$  (and not 27.d7? h6!) 27... $\mathbb{W}e4$  (if 27... $\mathbb{Q}c8$  28.c4! confines the black queen) 28. $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{W}c6$  (no better is 28... $\mathbb{W}d5$  29. $\mathbb{W}xd5$  exd5 30.d7  $\mathbb{B}xe7$  31. $\mathbb{B}xe7$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  32. $\mathbb{B}e6!$  with the main idea of playing  $\mathbb{Q}f3-e5$  and, in many variations, of taking the b6-pawn) 29. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{W}e8$  30. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  (30... $\mathbb{W}xf7$  31. $\mathbb{B}d1$ ) 31. $\mathbb{W}g5$  The immediate threat is 32. $\mathbb{W}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  33. $\mathbb{W}xe8+$   $\mathbb{B}xe8$  34.d7 and the ideas of advancing the h-pawn and making a rook lift along the third rank are conclusive.

**25.f3  $\mathbb{W}d2$**

25... $\mathbb{B}fb8$  26.d7  $\mathbb{W}d2$  transposes to the game.

**26.d7  $\mathbb{B}fb8$**



**27.c4!**

White's positional advantage is enough for the win, but there is no direct attack and so Hort takes the time to consolidate his position.

**27... $\mathbb{W}c3$  28. $\mathbb{Q}f1?$**

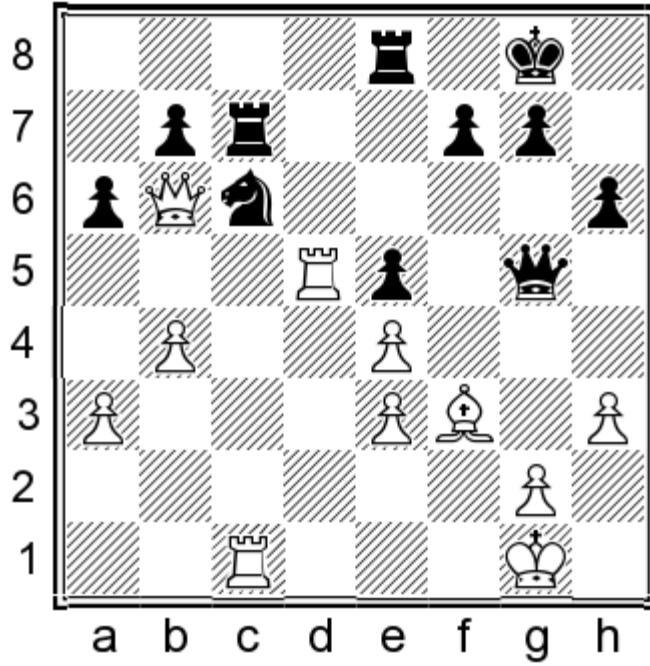
This time the direct 28.d8= $\mathbb{W}+$  was better.

**28... $\mathbb{W}d2$**

Apparently both players either overlooked or underestimated the 28... $\mathbb{Q}e4!$  resource, which presents White with technical difficulties. After 29.fxe4  $\mathbb{W}xe5$  30.d8= $\mathbb{W}+$   $\mathbb{R}xd8$  31. $\mathbb{Q}xd8$   $\mathbb{W}d4!$  he must start with 32. $\mathbb{Q}e7!$  to remove the f8-square from the black rook.

**29. $\mathbb{W}g5$**

Black resigned. Hort proposed the variation 29... $\mathbb{W}xg5$  30. $\mathbb{Q}xg5$   $\mathbb{R}d8$  31. $\mathbb{R}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  32. $\mathbb{R}d6$ .



*White to move*

If you find a large white advantage, that's good. Can you find a win, or something that comes close to it?

Show/Hide Solution

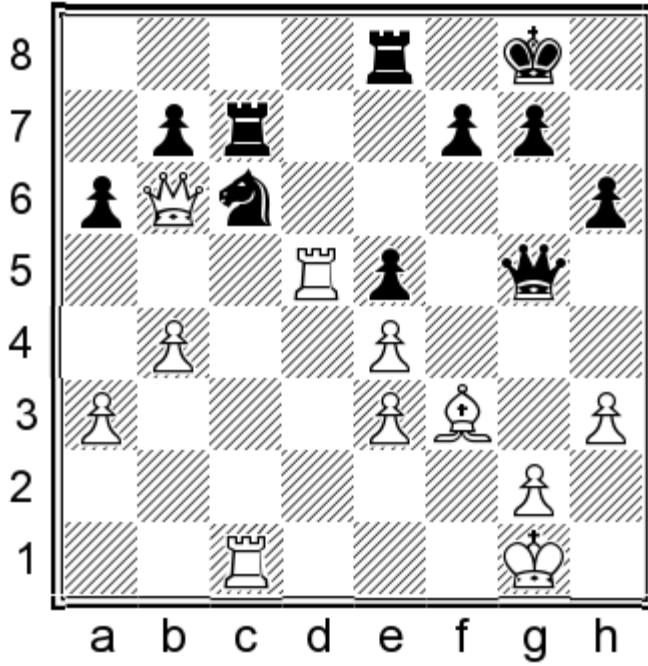
**30**

**Viacheslav Ragozin**

**Grigory Levenfish**

Moscow 1936 (6)

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.♘c3 ♘f6 4.♗g5 ♘e7 5.e3 h6 6.♗f4 0-0 7.♘d3 c5 8.♘f3 ♘c6 9.cxd5 ♘xd5 10.♘xd5 ♘xd5 11.e4 ♘d8 12.dxc5 ♘a5+ 13.♘d2 ♘xc5 14.0-0 e5 15.♘e3 ♘b4 16.♘c2 ♘g4 17.a3 ♘d6 18.♘e2 ♘fc8 19.♘a4 a6 20.h3 ♘h5 21.♘fd1 ♘c7 22.♘ac1 ♘xf3 23.♘xf3 ♘g5 24.♘b3 ♘xe3 25.fxe3 ♘e7 26.♘d5 ♘c7 27.♘b6 ♘e8 28.b4 ♘g5

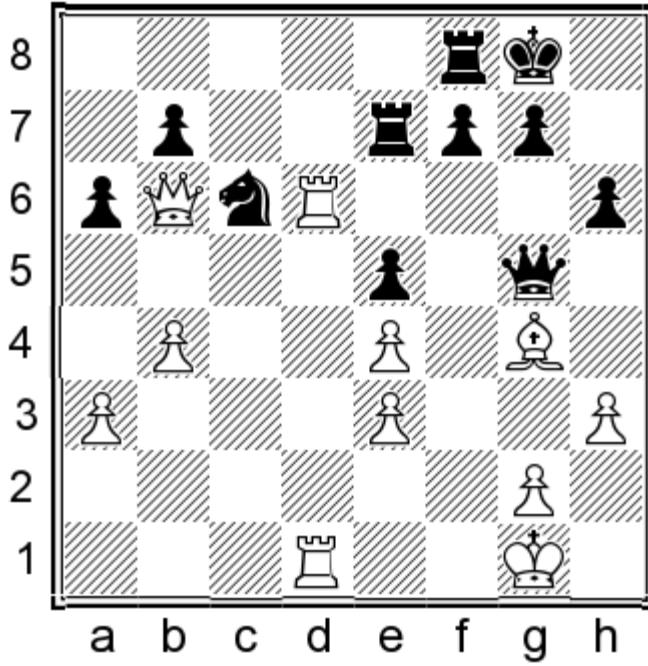


*White to move*

White exerts strong pressure on the c- and d-files and his main plan is to advance the a- and b-pawns and, if appropriate, double rooks on the d-file. The doubled central pawns do control important squares, but the e3-pawn is also exposed and for now 29.♕xc7? is no good because of 29...♗xe3+.

Let's see some tries for White:

- A) 29.♖cd1 ♗e7 when we can see nothing concrete on the d-file and the a3-pawn cannot advance – the black position is solid;
- B) 29.a4 ♜ce7 30.♖cd1 (and not 30.b5? ♔d4!, which takes advantage of the pin on the e3-pawn) 30...♗e6! – the white queen is tied to the defence of the e3-pawn and Black exploits this to gain counterplay;
- C) 29.♗g4 (this limits the activity of the black pieces and would be the best move if it were not for the game continuation...) 29...♜ce7 30.♖cd1 ♜f8 (so as not to waste time when the bishop comes to d7) 31.♖d6! (31.♗d7 ♔b8 32.♗a4 ♜e6 allows Black to breathe, as does 31.a4 h5)



*analysis diagram*

White has a substantial advantage, for example:

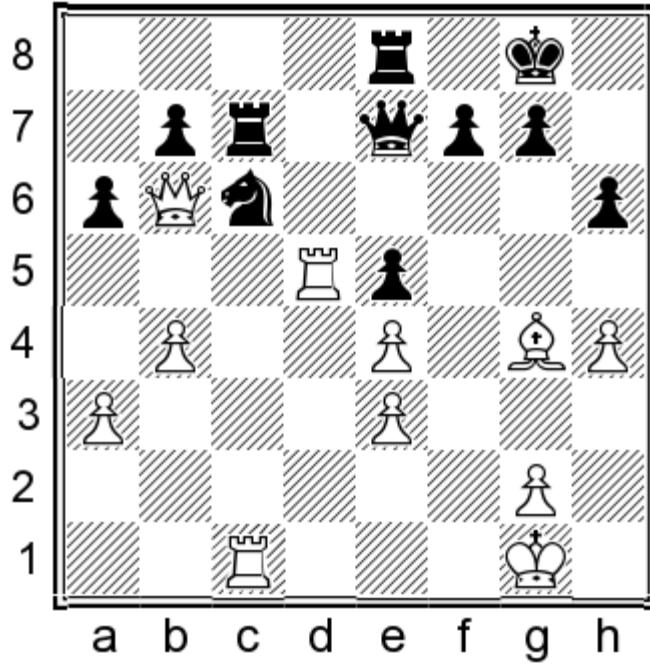
C1) 31...h5 32.♖d7 ♜b8 33.♘a4 The knight is passive and two important plans for White are to play ♖d6-d8, to weaken the queenside, and ♖d1-f1, with pressure on the f-file;

C2) 31...♜b8 32.♗h2 – so that the e3-pawn is not captured with check if the white queen moves. White prepares to play 33.♖d8 or 33.♖f1 with the threat of 34.♖f5 ♜h4 35.g3. The variation 32...h5 33.♖d8! ♜ee8 (33...hxg4? 34.♖xf8+ ♔xf8 35.♖d8+ loses the queen) 34.♖xe8 ♜xe8 35.♘e2 ♜e7 36.♘xh5 is indicative of Black's problems.

**29.h4! ♜e7**

This move is forced. The queen cannot continue to attack the e3-pawn as it must defend the c7-rook.

**30.♘g4!**

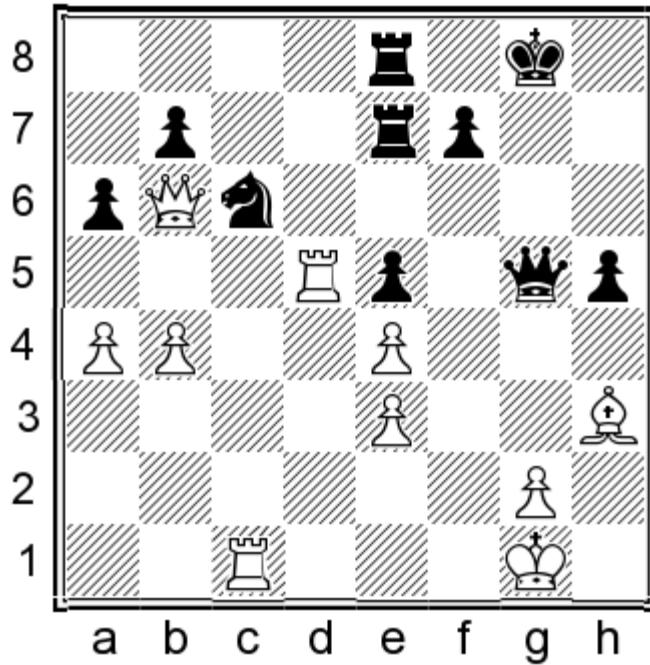


The complement to the previous move. The c7-rook can no longer move and therefore the black knight and queen are also immobilized. The threat is 31.a4 followed by 32.b5, winning a piece.

**30...g6?**

30...h5! 31.Qh3 g5! offers some practical chances of salvation:

A) 32.hxg5! Qxg5 33.a4 Qce7



*analysis diagram*

The queen has returned to g5 just in time to allow the knight to be unpinned, but the weakening of the kingside combined with the white pressure on the other wing is fatal: 34.b5! (based on the tactical point 34...Qd4? 35.Qxd4!;

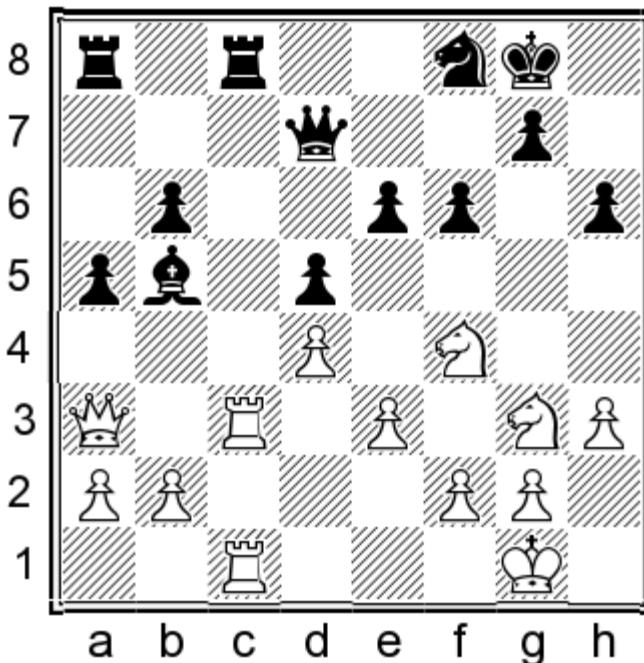
34.  $\mathbb{E}f1$  is also good) 34...  $\mathbb{Q}b4$  (or 34...  $\mathbb{Q}b8$ ) 35.  $\mathbb{E}d6$  probably followed by 36.  $\mathbb{E}f1$  makes it possible to increase the pressure without exposing the king and leads to a decisive advantage for White;

B) 32.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  is more complicated: 32...  $g\text{xh}4$  (32...  $g4$  33.  $g3$  – to avoid ...  $g4-g3$  with certain counterchances – shouldn't avoid defeat) 33.  $a4$   $\mathbb{W}g5$  34.  $b5$  (Black has taken an extra tempo to bring his queen back to g5, but has a tactical resource to save the piece) 34...  $a\text{xb}5$  35.  $a\text{xb}5$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  36.  $\mathbb{W}xc7$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  37.  $e\text{xd}5$   $\mathbb{W}xf5$  38.  $d6$  and White is probably winning again, but should be alert to the risk of a perpetual check.

31.a4  $\mathbb{E}f8$  32.b5  $a\text{xb}5$  33.  $a\text{xb}5$  f5 34.  $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{W}a3$  35.  $\mathbb{W}c5$   $\mathbb{W}a2$  36.  $\mathbb{E}d6$   $\mathbb{E}fc8$  37.  $\mathbb{E}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  38.  $\mathbb{W}d6$

Black resigned.

31



White to move

Which plan gives White the advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

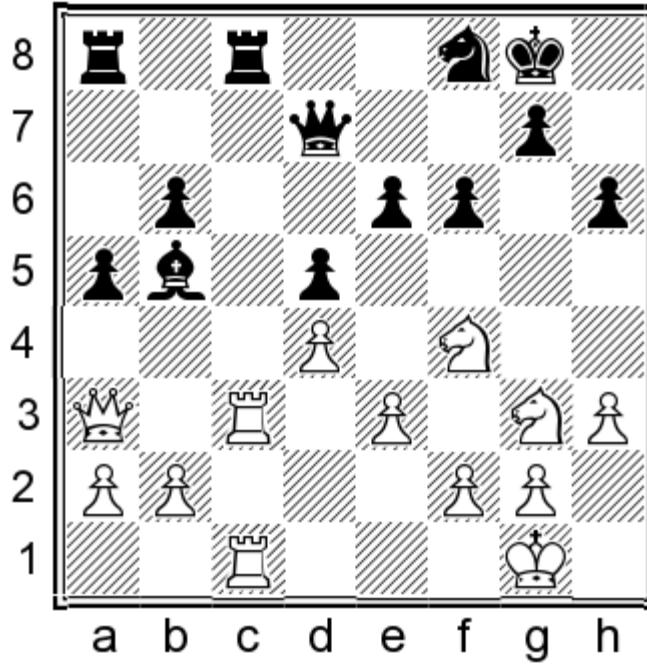
31

Alexander Alekhine

Arpad Vajda

Portsmouth 1923 (2)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 e6 3.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$  d5 4.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}bd7$  6.  $e3$  0-0 7.  $\mathbb{E}c1$  c6 8.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $d\text{xc}4$  9.  $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$  h6 11.  $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{W}xe7$  12.0-0 b6 13.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{E}d8$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $c\text{xd}5$  15.  $\mathbb{W}a4$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  17.  $\mathbb{E}c3$  f6 18.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  19.  $\mathbb{W}a3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  20.  $\mathbb{E}fc1$   $\mathbb{E}dc8$  21. h3  $\mathbb{Q}b5$  22.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  a5

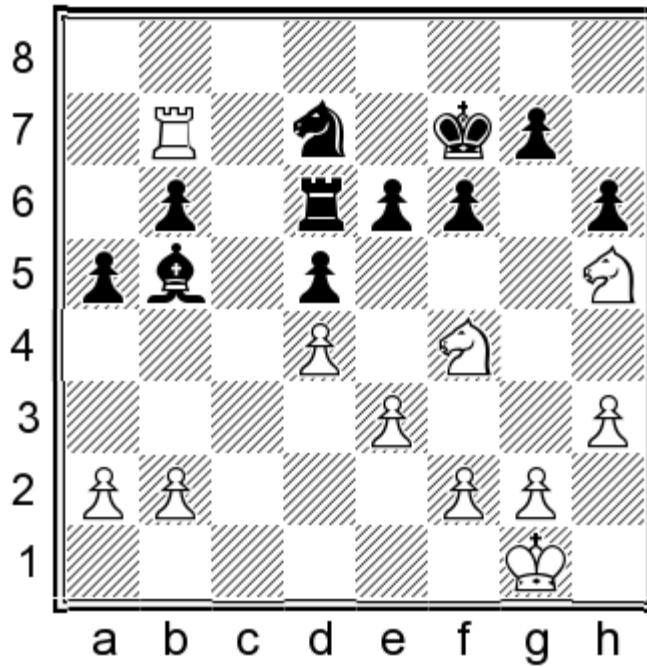


*White to move*

White exerts a certain pressure on the queenside, but his knights are far away from it. The black pawn structure is weakened on both sides, which could play a role if White gains the initiative. For now Black is not ready to play ...e6-e5 because after a double exchange on c8 the d5-pawn would be lost.

A) 23.e4!? dxe4 24.Qgh5!? frees the third rank to attack the king. An interesting idea;

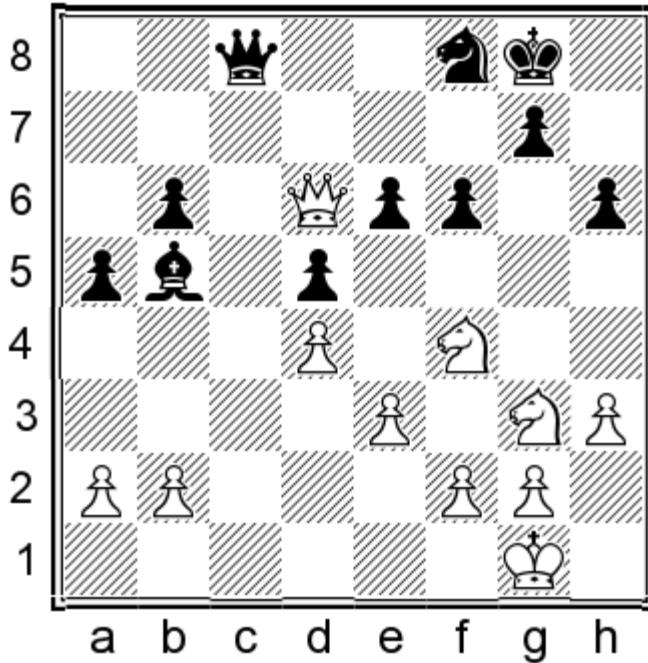
B) 23.Qgh5 is a useful move, but Black can equalize by 23...Bxc3! 24.Qxc3 (and not 24.Bxc3? e5!) 24...Bd8 25.Qc7 (otherwise it is not easy to progress while keeping an eye on the ...e6-e5 thrust) 25...Qxc7 26.Bxc7 Bd7 27.Bc8 Qf7 28.Bb8 Bd6 29.Bb7+ Qd7.



*analysis diagram*

Black has succeeded in parrying the few threats from the white rook and it now appears that the rook is not coordinated with its knights. The position is balanced.

**23.♖xc8! ♕xc8 24.♖xc8 ♕xc8 25.♕d6!**



Giving up one advantage to gain another is often necessary to make progress. Piece exchanges are known to highlight any defects in the pawn structure and White has given up fighting for the c-file in order to infiltrate the black camp with his queen. The b6- and e6-pawns are exposed, as will be the g7-pawn after ♜g3-h5, which will also put the black king in danger. This play on both wings is possible with the queen, while it was not with the rook in our previous variation.

The immediate threats are 26.♕xb6 and 26.♕xd5! exd5 27.♕xd5+.

**25...♝c6**

After 25...♝c6 26.♕d8! ♔f7 27.♜gh5 with the threat 28.♜xg7! ♔xg7 29.♕e7+ ♔g8 30.♜h5, Black has a choice:

A) 27...♝b7 and now the most promising continuation is 28.♜xg7! ♔xg7 29.♜h5+ ♔g8 (or 29...♔f7 30.♕xf6+ ♔g8 31.♕xh6) 30.♕xf6+ ♔g7 31.♜g4 ♜h7 (31...♝f7?! abandons one wing to defend the other, but after 32.♕xb6 the a5-pawn will soon fall) 32.♕h4 ♜f7 33.♕xh6+. White has three pawns for the piece and a positional advantage; he is at least a little better;

B) 27...♝d7!? 28.♕xb6! (28.♕b8 is tactically possible, as after 28...g5? 29.♜xf6! regains the piece with interest, but a way to make progress still needs to be found) 28...e5! (this is the idea of 27...♝d7; the f4-knight has no retreat squares) 29.a4! (the bishop cannot take cover either if it wants to retain control of the e2- and d3-squares; this move would also be the answer to 28...g5) 29...♝c4 (29...♝xa4? 30.dxe5 fxe5 31.♜d3 loses at least a pawn) White can now play 30.b3 or 30.dxe5 fxe5 31.b3 and in both cases he has the advantage in a complex position.

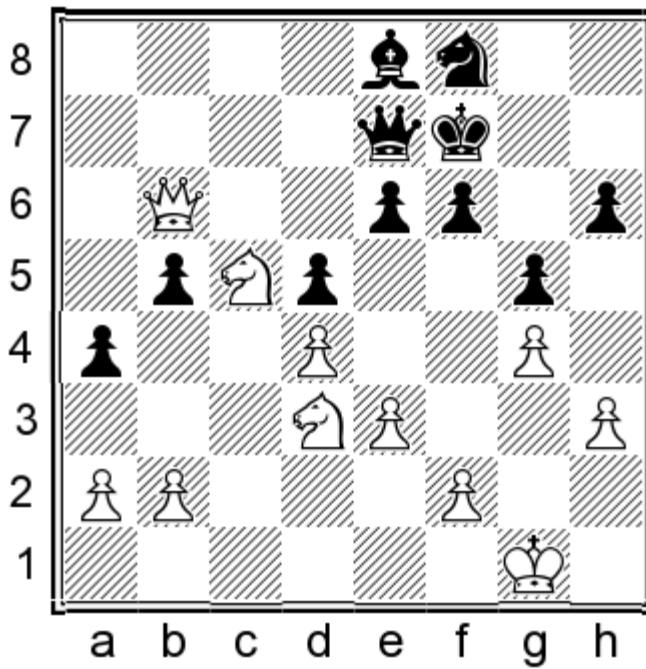
**26.♜gh5 ♕d7 27.♕b8 b5?!**

A weakening move played to allow the queen to stay close to the king. After 27...♝b7 28.♕d8 ♔f7 the white queen has come closer to the kingside and 29.♜xg7! is strong, as we have seen in a similar position.

**28.g4!**

Preparing to bring the knight to c5. 28.♘d3? immediately is met by 28...♛e8!, which forces the exchange of queens.

28...♝f7 29.♘d3 a4 30.♘c5 ♛e7 31.♗b6 ♜e8 32.♘f4 g5 33.♘fd3



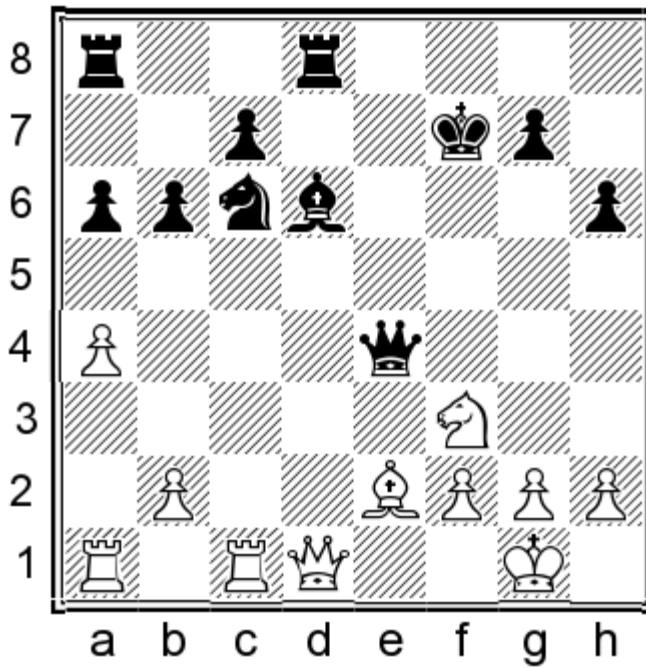
The knights invade the queenside but the black king is no less exposed. In trouble all over the board Black has little chance of escape.

33...h5 34.♗b7 hxg4 35.hxg4 ♜g7 36.♘dc5 e5 37.♘d6 ♜g6 38.♘xb5 ♘d7 39.♗c7 ♜e8 40.♘d6 ♜f8 41.♘f5 ♛h7 42.♘e6+ ♜f7 43.♗d8

Black resigned.

Show in Quiz Mode

32



White to move

In addition to understanding the necessary variations, what do you think of 22.g3  
and 22.♔e1 ?

Show/Hide Solution

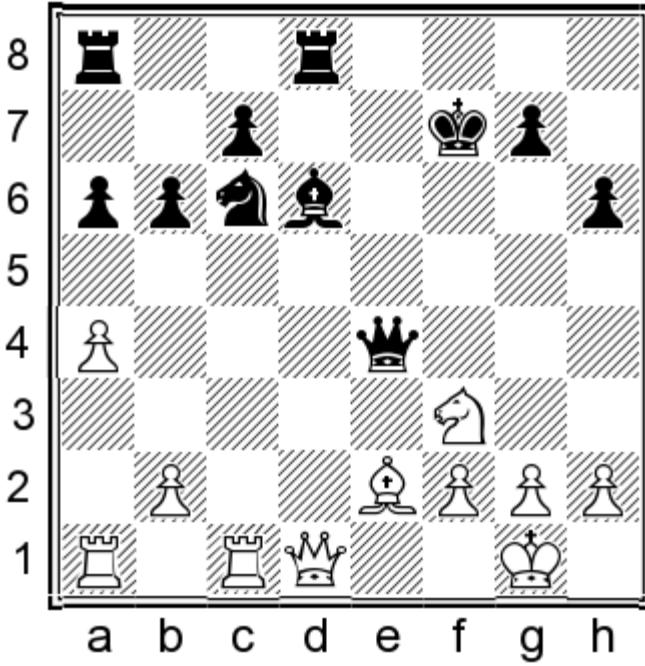
32

Fridrik Olafsson

Tigran Petrosian

Bled/Zagreb/Belgrade ct 1959 (8)

1.c4 e6 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♗c3 d5 4.d4 ♜b4 5.cxd5 exd5 6.♗g5 h6 7.♗xf6 ♗xf6 8.♗a4+ ♘c6 9.e3 0-0 10.♗e2 ♜e6 11.0-0 a6 12.♖fc1 ♜d6 13.♗d1 ♘e7 14.♗a4 b6 15.♗c3 ♖fb8 16.a4 ♘c6 17.e4 dxe4 18.♗xe4 ♗f4 19.d5 ♗xe4 20.dxe6 ♖d8 21.exf7+ ♘xf7



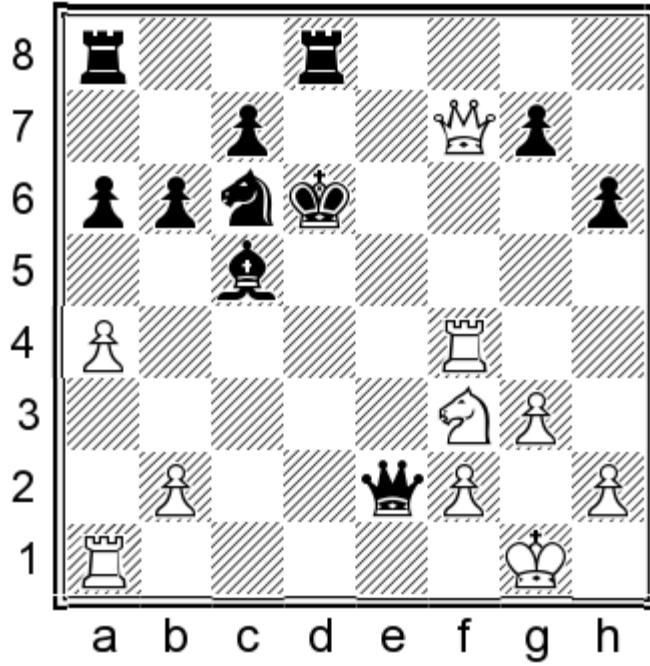
*White to move*

The black king is unprotected, which in principle does not matter when you take into account the activity of the pieces, but the presence of opposite-coloured bishops does put it in danger. White may possibly gain time on the black queen or knight. For now he must counter the threat of 22... $\mathbb{Q}xh2+$ , which wins the queen.

22.g3! and 22. $\mathbb{W}e1!$  are both excellent and involve the important move  $\mathbb{R}c1-c4$ , giving the rook good prospects. However, 22.g3 requires long and accurate calculation, which is not the case for 22. $\mathbb{W}e1$ . 22. $\mathbb{W}b3+$  or 22. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$  doesn't give anything special after the retreat of the king to f8, as the white pieces are not ready to participate in an attack.

22.g3! keeps the queen on a light square, and now:

- A) 22... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  tries to shelter the king, but White has a direct win available with 23. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{W}e8$  24. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  25.b4! (but not 25. $\mathbb{Q}xc6?$   $\mathbb{W}xc6$  26.b4  $\mathbb{W}d5!$  and the d2-knight is attacked) 25... $\mathbb{Q}xb4$  26. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ ;
- B) 22... $\mathbb{Q}a5$  puts the knight offside to take control of the b3- and c4-squares. A promising continuation is 23. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{W}e8$  24. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ , which allows the bishop to go to a2 and thus act on two important diagonals. Black is lost, for example: 24... $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  25. $\mathbb{Q}a2+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  26. $\mathbb{W}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  27. $\mathbb{W}h7$ ;
- C) 22... $\mathbb{Q}e5$  – the exchange of knights will accentuate the problems on the light squares and the end is nigh: 23. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{W}xe5$  (or else 23... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  24. $\mathbb{W}b3+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  25. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ ) 24. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  25. $\mathbb{W}c2$  with the idea 26. $\mathbb{W}h7$ ;
- D) 22... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ , protecting the c6-knight and bringing the d8-rook into play by gaining a tempo on the queen. This move forces White to play a precise combination to win. 23. $\mathbb{W}b3+$  (the e2-bishop is no longer defended) 23... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  24. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$  (this thematic and indispensable move, that we will also see in the game, is linked to a piece sacrifice here) 24... $\mathbb{W}xe2$  25. $\mathbb{Q}f4+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  26. $\mathbb{W}f7+$  (26. $\mathbb{Q}xf7+$  is less decisive and complicated too) 26... $\mathbb{Q}d6$



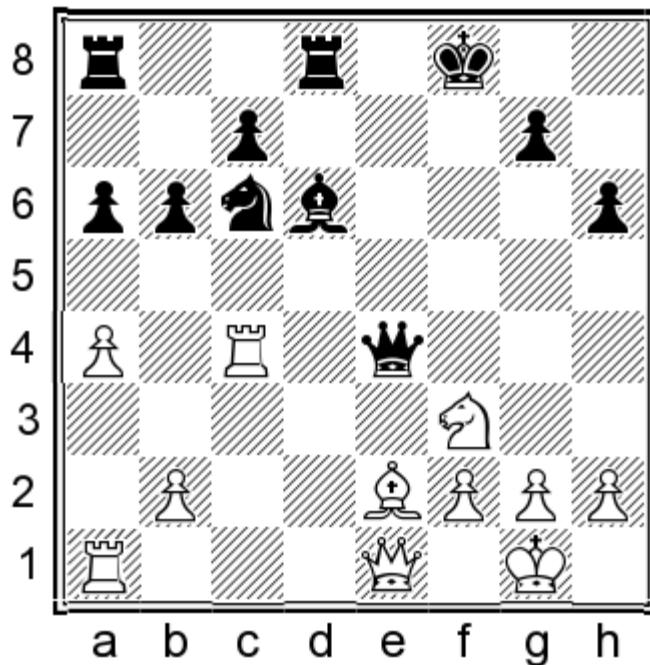
*analysis diagram*

White's task is to place a rook on one of the central files: 27.  $\mathbb{W}g6+$ !  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  28.  $\mathbb{W}g4+$ ! (defending the knight and controlling the e4-square) 28...  $\mathbb{W}e6$  (or 28...  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  29.  $\mathbb{E}e4$   $\mathbb{W}xf2+$  30.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{E}e8$  31.  $\mathbb{E}d1+$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  32.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ ) 29.  $\mathbb{E}f7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  30.  $\mathbb{E}d1+$  (30.  $\mathbb{Q}e5+$  first is also good) 30...  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  31.  $\mathbb{Q}e5+$  and the black queen is lost.

**22.  $\mathbb{W}e1!$**

Perhaps this is no better than 22.g3, but it's easier to play. The immediate threat is to win the queen by 23.  $\mathbb{Q}c4+$ .

**22...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  23.  $\mathbb{Q}c4!$**

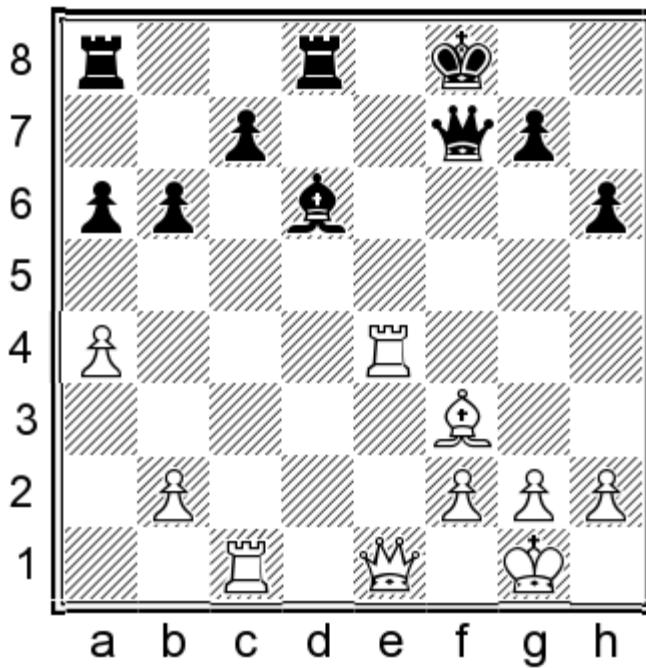


This is the key move and the only one that poses Black any problems. The rook can participate in play on the e-, f- or g-files according to circumstances.

**23... $\mathbb{W}e8$  24. $\mathbb{R}ac1$**

24. $\mathbb{W}c3!$  is stronger, taking advantage of the fact that 24... $\mathbb{W}xe2$  loses the queen after 25. $\mathbb{R}e1$ . The rook will normally go to g4 and the white advantage is decisive.

**24... $\mathbb{Q}e5$  25. $\mathbb{R}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}xf3+$  26. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$   $\mathbb{W}f7$**



**27. $\mathbb{R}e3?$**

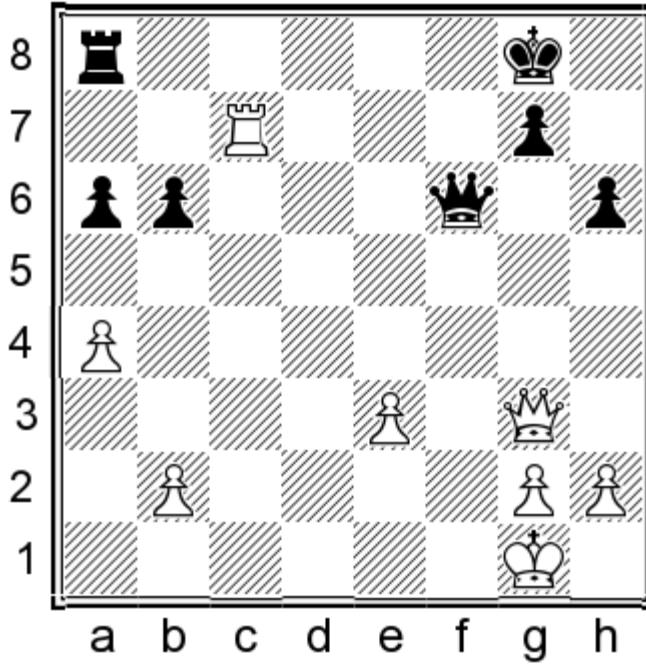
White attacks the a8-rook and prepares to meet 27... $\mathbb{R}ab8$  with 28. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$ , which threatens 29. $\mathbb{R}f3$  and prevents 28... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  because of 29. $\mathbb{Q}c4$ . This forces the simplification that follows.

Better was 27. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$   $\mathbb{W}f6$  28. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ , which puts the bishop in a dominant position and protects the major pieces from exchanges while keeping the opposing king in the centre. Black is in a critical position.

**27... $\mathbb{Q}f4!$  28. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  29. $fxe3$   $\mathbb{R}xa8$  30. $\mathbb{W}g3$**

Threatening 31. $\mathbb{R}f1$ .

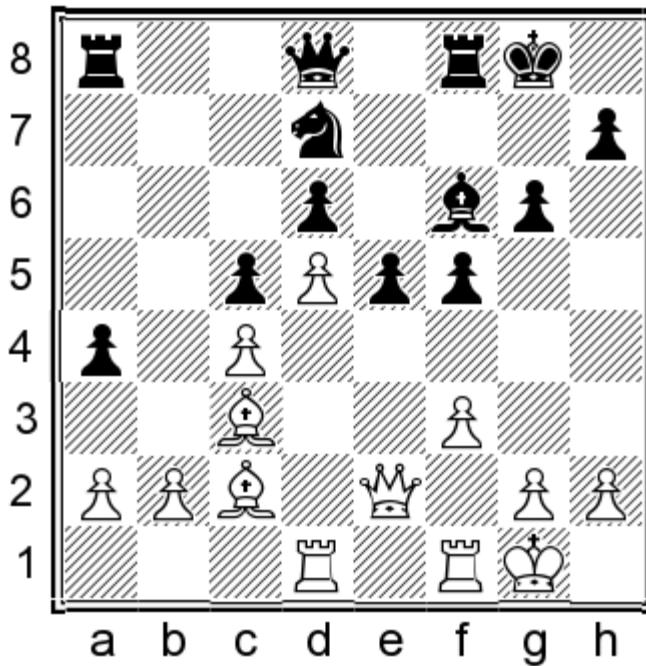
**30... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  31. $\mathbb{R}xc7$   $\mathbb{W}f6$**



Black has solved the problem with his king, and his queen is active. His rook will soon come into play and the a4-, b2- and e3-pawns are all exposed. With or without queens, noting that White can force their exchange by 32.  $\mathbb{W}f3$  should he wish, he has good drawing chances.

32.  $\mathbb{W}f2$   $\mathbb{W}e5$  33.  $\mathbb{B}d7$   $\mathbb{B}e8$  34.  $\mathbb{B}d3$   $\mathbb{W}e4$  35.  $\mathbb{W}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  36.  $\mathbb{W}d1$   $\mathbb{B}e6$  37.  $\mathbb{B}c3$   $\mathbb{B}g6$  38.  $\mathbb{W}c2$   $\mathbb{W}xc2$  39.  $\mathbb{B}xc2$   $\mathbb{B}d6$  40.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{B}d3$  41.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{B}b3$  42.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $a5$  43.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $g5$  44.  $e4$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  45.  $\mathbb{B}f2$   $\mathbb{B}b4+$  46.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{B}xa4$  47.  $e5$   $\mathbb{B}a1$  48.  $e6$   $b5$  49.  $e7$   $\mathbb{B}d1+$  50.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{B}e1$  51.  $\mathbb{Q}xb5$   $\mathbb{B}e5+$  52.  $\mathbb{Q}a4$   $\mathbb{B}xe7$  53.  $\mathbb{Q}xa5$   $\mathbb{B}a7+$  54.  $\mathbb{Q}b4$   $\mathbb{B}a8$  55.  $b3$   $h5$  56.  $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{B}c8+$  57.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{B}d8+$  58.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $\mathbb{B}c8+$  59.  $\mathbb{Q}d7$   $\mathbb{B}c1$  60.  $\mathbb{B}b2$   $\mathbb{B}h1$  61.  $b4$   $\mathbb{B}xh2$  62.  $b5$   $\mathbb{B}h1$  63.  $b6$   $\mathbb{B}d1+$  64.  $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $\mathbb{B}d8$  65.  $b7$   $\mathbb{B}b8$  66.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  1-0

33



*Black to move*

Which plan gives Black a strong initiative?

Show/Hide Solution

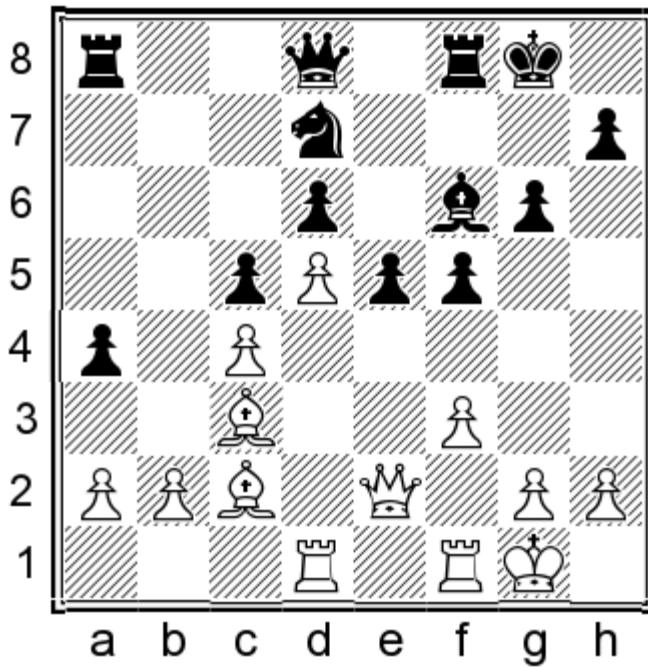
**33**

**Herman Pilnik**

**Efim Geller**

Gothenburg izt 1955 (15)

1.e4 c5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3.d4 cxd4 4. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  d6 6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  e5 7. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  8.0-0 0-0 9. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  10. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  a5 11. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  12.exd5  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  13.c4  $\mathbb{Q}a6$  14. $\mathbb{Q}d2$  b6 15. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  16. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  bxc5 17. $\mathbb{W}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  18. $\mathbb{Q}d1$  a4 19. $\mathbb{Q}c2$  f5 20. $\mathbb{Q}d1$  g6 21. $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  22.f3



*Black to move*

White has a queenside majority which is difficult to exploit and his bishop pair is stymied by Black's firmly supported central duo. Black's position looks promising, but it seems that he is struggling to make progress as the e4-square is well controlled by the white pieces. The breakthrough that follows, sacrificing the potential passed pawn, is thematic and is quite a normal way to mobilize a majority in positions with asymmetric pawn structures.

**22...e4! 23.Qxf6**

A) 23.f4?  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  24.bxc3, to deprive the black pieces of the e5-square, is by and large unfavourable because of the protected passed pawn on e4 and the deterioration of the pawn structure, but, in addition, it loses a pawn after 24... $\mathbb{W}f6$  25. $\mathbb{W}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$ ;

B) 23.fxe4  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  24.bxc3 f4! We clearly see Black's idea: the e5-square is freed for the knight, the e4-pawn will soon be blocked, limiting the action of the c2-bishop, and finally the majority becomes mobile and its advance will cause damage to the white king position. One idea for White is to attack the f4-pawn by 25.g3 before the opposing pieces are well organized, with the possibilities:

B1) 25...fxg3 26.♗xf8+ ♜xf8 27.hxg3 ♜e5 with a black advantage based on the exposed situation of the white king and the better pawn structure (the four white central pawns are blocked by just two black pawns);

B2) 25...g5! 26.gxf4 gxf4 followed by ...♜d7-e5 is even stronger. Capturing the f4-pawn by 27.♗g4+ ♔h8 28.♗xf4? loses to 28...♝g8.

**23...♝xf6!**

23...♝xf6?! 24.fxe4 fxe4 does not lose the e4-pawn, as 25.♔xe4? ♜e8 26.♗f4 is met by 26...g5!, but it will remain under pressure for a long time after 25.♗de1.

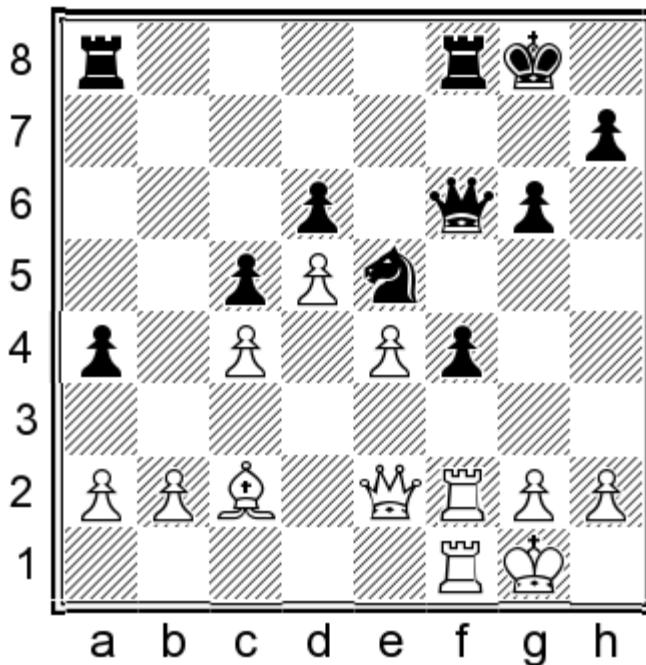
**24.fxe4 f4!**

And not 24...♝xb2 25.exf5, which revives the white bishop.

**25.♗f2**

25.e5 ♜xe5 is a thematic reaction to the black plan, to regain some air, but with equal material White is clearly worse.

**25...♜e5 26.♗df1**



**26...♛h4**

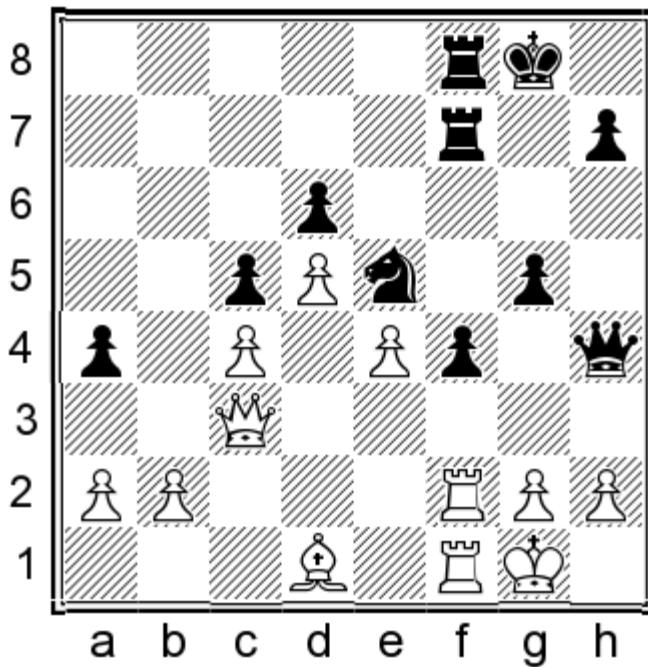
Black has carried out his plan and the advance of the f- and g-pawns will go hand in hand with an attack on the king, which is why Geller first activates his queen.

**27.♕d1**

Controlling the f3- and g4-squares.

**27...♝f7 28.♗c2 g5 29.♗c3 ♞af8**

It is important that this rook also participates in the action, although this involves sacrificing the a4-pawn.



### 30.h3?!

This does not prevent the advance of the g5-pawn and the weakening of the kingside will prove to be significant.

A) 30.♗xa4?! is critical, taking a second pawn to be able to return material under better conditions and obtain a passed pawn. For the moment the bishop is offside and an interesting idea is 30...f3!?, whose tactical justification is that 31.gxf3? loses after 31...♝xf3+! 32.♜xf3 (or 32.♝h1 ♐xh2) 32...♛g4+. Let's have a look at 30...♝g4 in more detail, with a choice:

A1) 31.♛h3 ♛xh3 32.gxh3 ♜xf2 33.♝xf2 (thanks to the capture of the a4-pawn White has two pawns for the exchange) 33...♜a7!? (to durably slow the mobilization of the white queenside pawns) 34.b3 ♔g7 35.♜g1 ♔f6 Black has a large advantage with many available plans: prepare an invasion of the king via the e5-square, play ...h7-h5 followed by ...g5-g4, place a rook on h6, or even, a little later, play ...♜f8-a8 to sacrifice an exchange on a4 should a favourable opportunity arise;

A2) 31.h3 ♜xf2 32.♜xf2 f3! 33.gxf3 ♛xh3 34.♝d1 ♜f4! 35.♜g2 h6 – Black is getting ready to play ...♜f4-h4, preceded or not by ...♛h3-h5, and he has a strong initiative.

B) Waiting with 30.♝e2! is the most resistant, because even if Black has a good initiative it is not easy for him to open the position in a clearly favourable manner.

B1) One possible continuation is 30...g4 31.g3! ♛g5, for example:

B1a) 32.gxf4 ♜xf4 33.♛e3! (the attack on the pinned rook gives counterplay) 33...♜g6 34.e5! dxe5 – by returning his extra pawn White has obtained some real assets, notably the passed d5-pawn, and the position is complex;

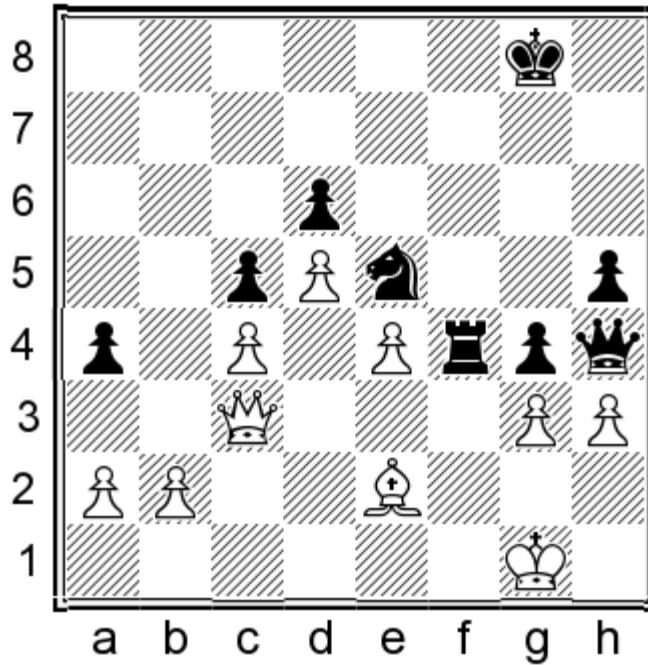
B1b) 32.♛d2 (this pin again) 32...♜g6 33.e5! (this sacrifice also returns) 33...♜f5! (unpinning the f4-pawn and threatening 34...fxg3; 33...♛xe5 34.♝xg4 and 33...dxe5 34.♝d3 are not so good) 34.gxf4 ♜xf4 (threatening 35...♜h3+ 35.♝h1 dxe5 36.♛e3 when we end up with the same structure as in our previous variation and the position is just as obscure.

B2) After 30.♝e2! Black can keep the pawn structure as it is for the moment and play 30...♛h6 with the ideas of ...g5-g4 or ...♛h6-g6, and thus keeps excellent compensation for the pawn.

**30...h5 31.Qe2**

31.Qxa4 g4 32.Qd1 is not so clear.

**31...g4 32.Qxf4 Qxf4 33.Qxf4 Qxf4 34.g3**



**34...Qf3+**

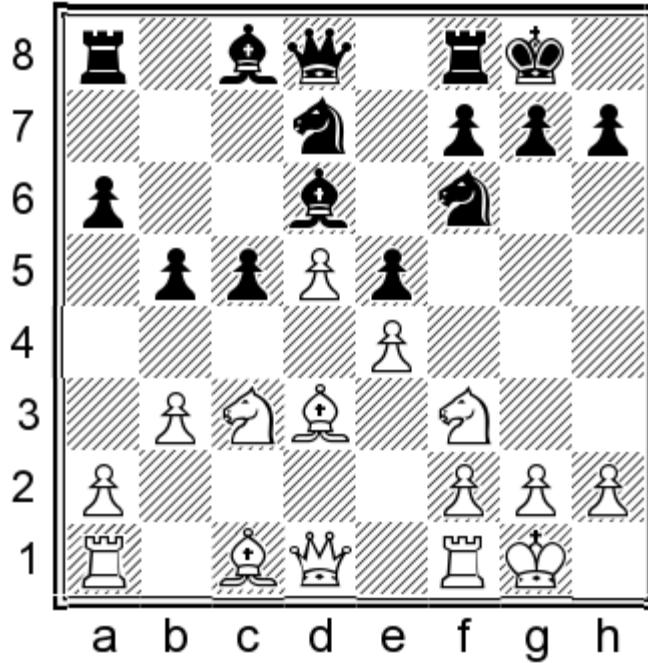
'Of course, simpler was 34...Qxh3 35.gxf4 g3, etc., but Black, being in time trouble, played a previously calculated variation.' (Geller)

For the record, at that time there was no thirty seconds extra thinking time per move played.

**35.Qf2**

Or 35.Qxf3 Qxg3+.

**35...Qxh3 36.gxf4 g3+ 37.Qxf3 g2+ 38.Qf2 Qh2 0-1**



*White to move*

The main plan for White is to play a2-a4. How can Black respond to the immediate 13.a4 ? How can White prepare a2-a4 ?

Show/Hide Solution

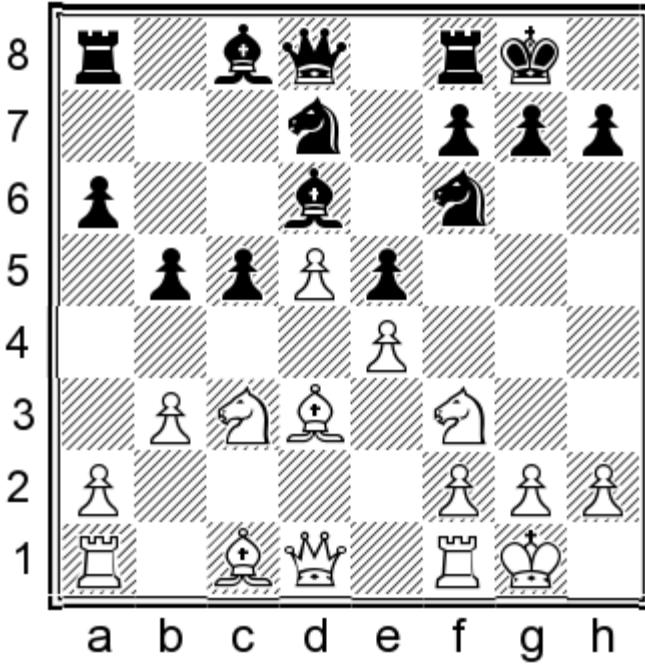
34

Lev Polugaevsky

Peter Biyiasas

Petropolis izt 1973 (4)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  c6 5.e3  $\mathbb{Q}bd7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  dx $c$ 4 7. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  b5 8. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  a6 9.e4 c5 10.d5 e5 11.b3  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  12.0-0 0-0



*White to move*

White has a protected passed pawn on d5 but for the moment it is securely blocked by the d6-bishop.

Black has a queenside majority and if he manages to mobilize it by favourably playing ...c5-c4 he would get enough counterplay to compensate for his opponent's space advantage in the centre.

For now White has good control of the c4-square and his main plan is to attack the black majority with a2-a4 in order to then blockade it after forcing the b5-pawn to advance.

### 13.♗e1!

The immediate 13.a4 allows the typical reaction 13...c4! 14.bxc4 b4! 15.♗e2 ♜c5 16.♗g3 ♜c7 17.♗e3 a5. Black blocks the c4- and d5-pawns, puts pressure on the a4- and e4-pawns and has a passed pawn on b4; the c5-knight being particularly effective, Uhlmann's idea in his game against Fuchs (East Germany, 1964) deserves attention: 18.♕xc5!? ♜xc5 19.♗d2 followed by 20.♗b3. White has greatly relieved the pressure, but he has conceded his important dark-squared bishop and is probably only a little better despite his extra pawn.

After 13.a4, 13...b4 14.♗e2 is also possible and only now 14...c4! because the d3-bishop is tied to the defence of the e4-pawn and cannot comfortably capture on c4; it is therefore necessary to continue 15.bxc4 ♜c5 16.♗g3, thus reaching the position we have just discussed.

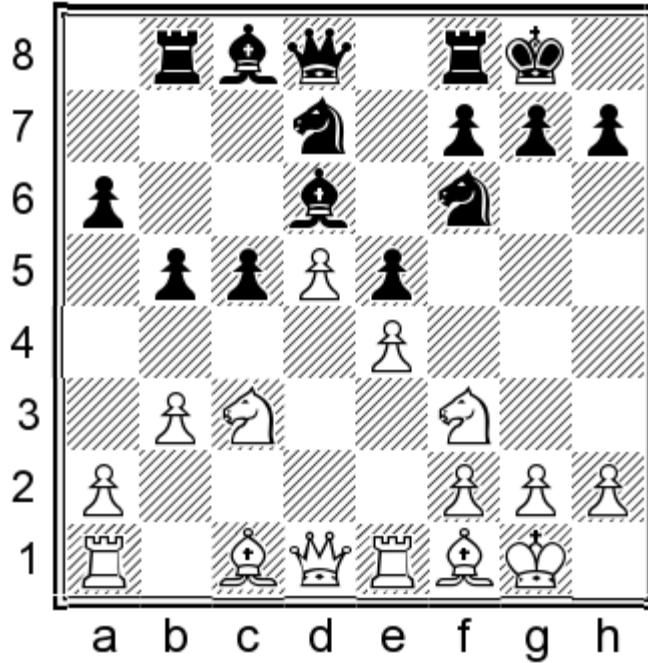
The move 13.♗e1! pursues the double objective of overprotecting the e4-pawn and releasing the f1-square for the bishop, so that it is not attacked when Black plays ...c5-c4.

### 13...♝b8!

In order to support the b-pawn, whether it is on b5 or on b4 after the possible sequence ...c5-c4, b3xc4 ...b5-b4.

For the time being 13...c4?! 14.bxc4 b4?! is not beneficial for Black, as after 15.♗a4! he will not be able to install a blockading knight on c5 and will simply have lost a pawn.

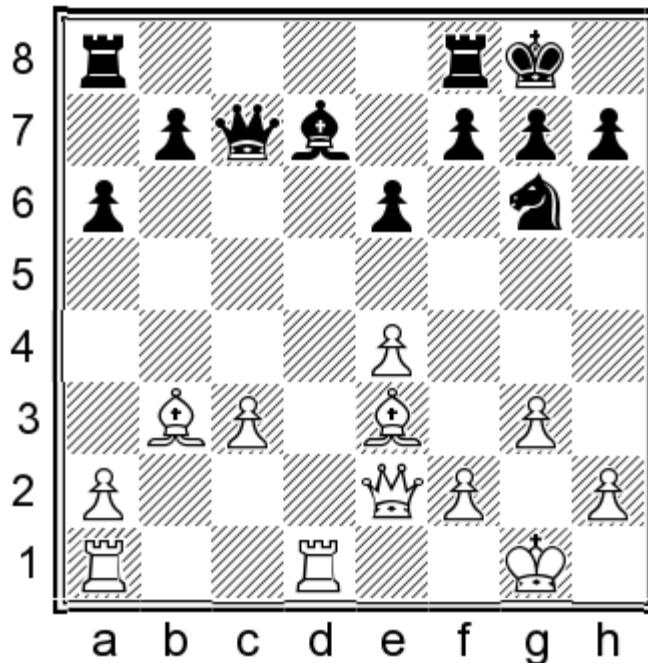
### 14.♗f1!



White has completed his consolidation and is ready to play a2-a4.

(continuation and solution 59)

35

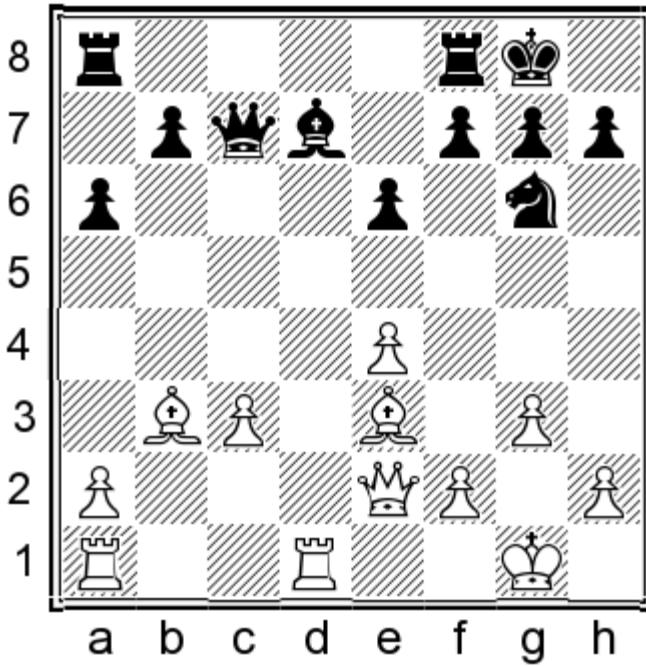


White to move

Which plan gives White a big advantage and how can you implement it?

Show/Hide Solution

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.Qc3 dxc4 4.e4 c5 5.Qf3 cxd4 6.Qxd4 a6 7.Qxc4 Qd7 8.0-0 Qc6 9.Qf3 Qc7 10.We2 Qd6 11.Qd1 Qge7 12.Qe3 Qe5 13.Qxe5 Qxe5 14.g3 Qxc3 15.bxc3 Qg6 16.Qb3 0-0



White to move

White controls the d-file and has the bishop pair. The b3-bishop is blocked by the f7- and e6-pawns, but it can also be said to block them because if one of the pawns advances the bishop would then become very powerful. White will take advantage of this to exert pressure on the a1-h8 diagonal, and in particular on the g7-square, by playing Qe3-d4 and h2-h4-h5-h6. This plan gives him a big advantage. The a2- and c3-pawns are isolated but this is not a problem yet.

The try 17.Qb6?, in order to gain control of the d-file after 17...Qc6? 18.Qe3, is no good because of 17...Wxb6 18.Qxd7 Qe5 when the remaining white bishop is passive and the d7-rook must leave the seventh rank.

**17.Qd4!**

This is the right time for this move as 17...Qe5? is now impossible because of 18.Qxe5 Wxe5 19.Qxd7. It will of course be possible to chase this bishop away by ...e6-e5, but this will open up prospects for the b3-bishop, which is no less dangerous.

A) 17.h4 first allows the centralization of the black knight by 17...Qe5! and loses some of the advantage, although White is still better, for example: 18.Qf4 f6! (18...Qc6 19.Wh5 f6 20.Qxe6+ and 18...Qad8 19.Qxd7! Qxd7 20.Wh5 f6 21.Qxe6+ both lose a pawn with no compensation) 19.Qxe5?! fxe5 20.Qc4 Qc6?! (20...Qac8 21.Qxc7 Qxc7 22.Qxd7! gives up the pawn in worse conditions, while 20...Wxc4 21.Qxc4 Qc8 22.Qd6 Qf7 keeps it, but at the cost of a certain passivity) 21.Qxe6+ Wh8 22.Qc4 Wb6 23.We2 Qf6 – Black has some pressure for the pawn and the isolation of the white pawns is starting to play a role;

B) After 17.f4 Qc6 White cannot quickly advance either of his central pawns without weakening his position too much,

but 18... $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}fd8$  19.h4 is an interesting idea, with the initiative in a complicated position.

17..b5

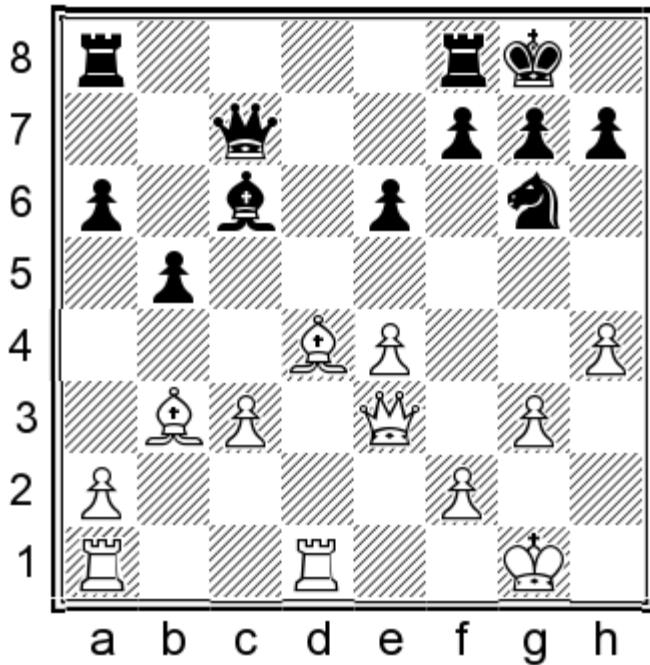
A) 17...e5 18.♗b6! leads to a big white advantage after 18...♘c6 19.♗e3! probably followed by 20.♗d5 or, worse still, 18...♘xb6 19.♖xd7 and the need to defend the f7-pawn paralyses the f8-rook (it can still be released by ...♗g6-h8, though);

B) 17... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ , with the idea of playing ... $\mathbb{Q}f8-d8$  followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}g6-f8-d7$ , to consolidate the dark squares, is interesting. After 18. $\mathbb{W}e3!$  (to allow the d4-bishop to go to b6) 18... $\mathbb{Q}fd8$  19. $h4$   $h6$  (and not 19... $\mathbb{Q}f8?$  20. $\mathbb{W}g5!$ ) 20. $\mathbb{Q}d2!$   $\mathbb{W}e7$  (this time 20... $\mathbb{Q}f8?$  is no good because of 21. $\mathbb{Q}b6$  and Black can no longer exchange rooks with check) 21. $\mathbb{Q}ad1$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  22. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{W}e8$  23. $\mathbb{Q}d6$  White has evolved his plan according to circumstances; he now has a stable space advantage, while having avoided the exchange of pieces, and is much better.

18. ♜e3

A good move that prepares a dark-squared attack on the kingside and reinforces control of the b6- and c5-squares. 18.h4 is also good because, as on the previous move, White can answer 18...e5 with 19.♗b6!.

**18... ♕c6 19. h4!**



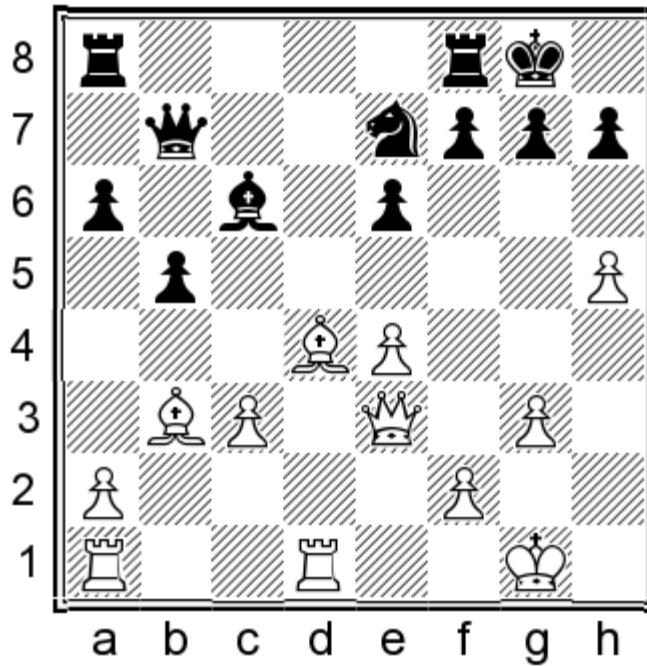
19... ♕b7?

This is the decisive mistake because the knight can no longer get to e5.

A) After 19... $\mathbb{E}ac8$  20.h5  $\mathcal{Q}e5$  21.h6 (and not 21. $\mathbb{W}f4$   $\mathcal{Q}c4!$  – this is why the black rook came to defend the queen) 21...g6 the weakening of the kingside has long-term consequences, but resistance is possible;

B) Another defence is 19...h6 to take the g5-square away from the white queen and prevent the h4-pawn from going to h6. White will then play 20.h5 ♔e7 (20...♔e5? 21.♔f4) 21.g4 with a strong attack due to the possibility of opening lines by g4-g5.

20.h5 ♟e7



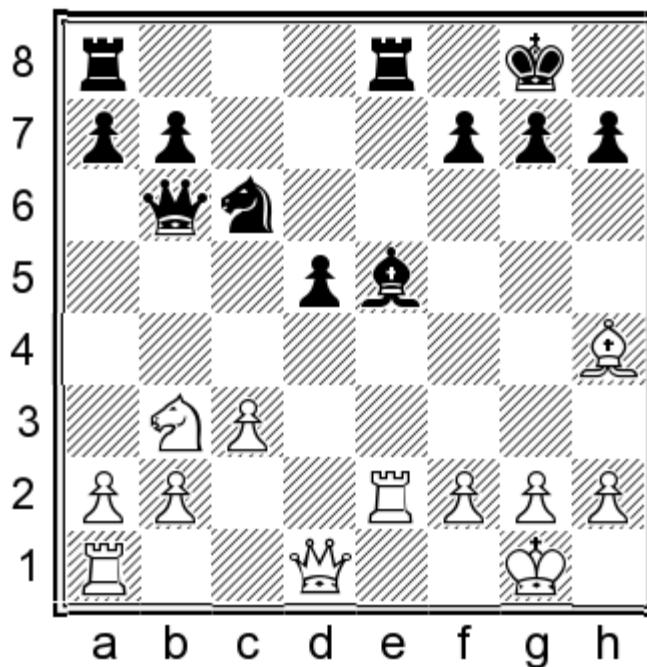
**21.♕xg7!**

Spielmann mentions that 21.♗g5 f6 22.♕xe6+ ♔h8 also wins after 23.h6!.

**21...♔xg7 22.♗g5+ ♔g6 23.h6+**

Black resigned, as 23...♔g8 24.♗f6 leads to mate.

36



*Black to move*

Which plan gives Black the initiative? How can White answer it?

Show/Hide Solution

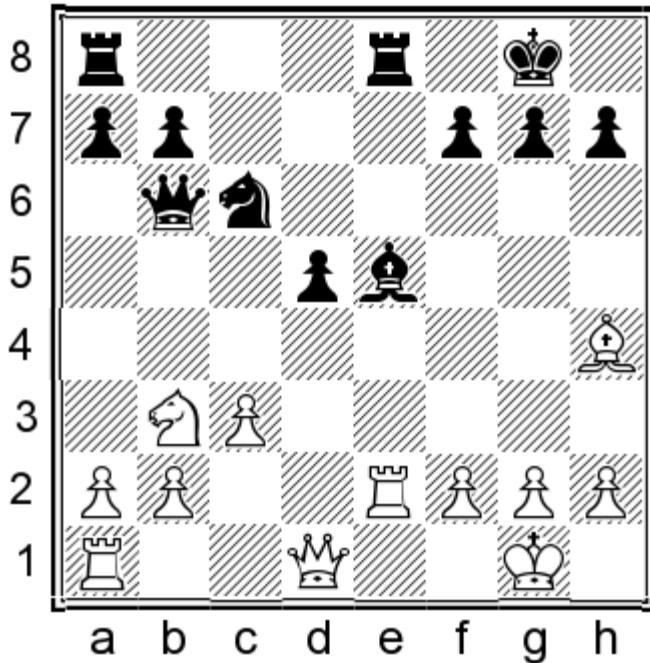
**36**

**Lothar Schmid**

**Lajos Portisch**

Nice ol 1974 (12)

**1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3.♘d2 c5 4.♗gf3 ♘c6 5.exd5 exd5 6.♗b5 ♘d6 7.dxc5 ♘xc5 8.0-0 ♗ge7 9.♗b3 ♘d6 10.♗g5 0-0  
11.♗h4 ♘g4 12.♗e2 ♜e8 13.♗e1 ♜b6 14.♗fd4 ♘xe2 15.♗xe2 ♘e5 16.♗xc6 ♘xc6 17.c3**



*Black to move*

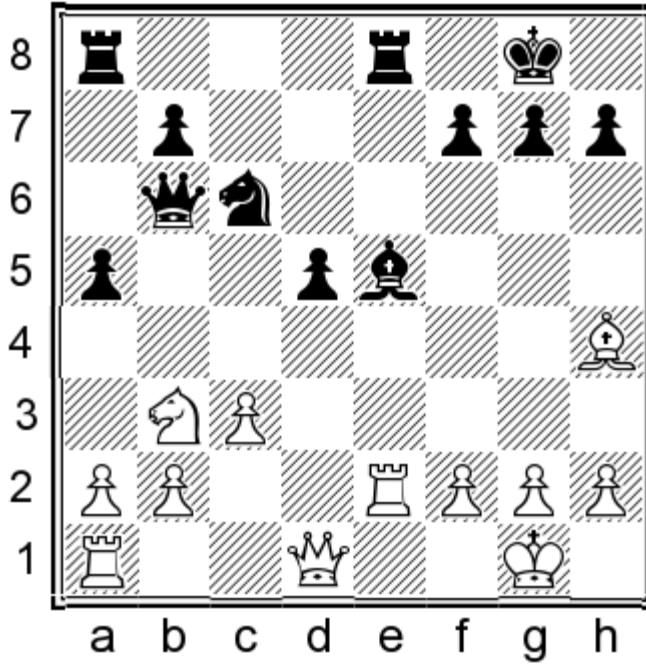
Black has a space advantage thanks to his isolated d-pawn and controls the blockading square enough to be able to advance it whenever he wishes.

The white bishop went to h4 a few moves ago to try to exchange its black counterpart by ♘h4-g3, but this manoeuvre has not achieved its goal because Black can answer this by ...♗e5-f6. It therefore finds itself more or less out of the game (it does nevertheless prevent ...♜a8-d8) while the black bishop exerts an influence on the centre and on the queenside.

The d5-pawn is not currently hanging because 18.♗xd5? allows 18...♗xh2+! 19.♔f1 ♜xe2 20.♗xe2 with a ‘centralization’ of the white king.

17...d4 18.cxd4 ♘xd4 (and not 18...♗xd4? 19.♗xe5) is an equalizing sequence that gives little chance of exploiting the remoteness of the h4-bishop.

**17...a5!**



A typical plan: Black will create weaknesses in his opponent's position with a queenside pawn attack while not looking to exchange his isolated pawn for the moment. At the appropriate moment, maybe never, it will advance and be exchanged for the c3-pawn, when Black's piece activity will reflect his space advantage. The general plan is to play ...a5-a4-a3 to weaken the c3-pawn and the immediate threat is to win the b2-pawn.

## 18.Qb1

A) 18.a4 blocks the black pawn, but weakens the queenside and the b3-square in particular:

A1) 18...Qxh2+?! 19.Qxh2 Bxe2 20.Qxe2 Qxb3 seems to win a pawn without any problem, but this is not the case: 21.Qe1! h6 (21...f6? loses after 22.Qe6+ Qf8 23.Qg3) 22.Qb5! Qxb5 23.axb5 Qa7 (the knight cannot go to e5, which is the point of 21.Qe1!) 24.Qd1 and White has sufficient compensation for the sacrificed pawn;

A2) 18...d4! 19.cxd4 Qxd4! (and not 19...Qxd4? 20.Qxe5! Qxb3 21.Qb5 Qd4 22.Qxb3 Qxh4 23.Qxb7) and Black has the initiative. The pawn structure on the queenside is symmetric, but only White suffers from his weaknesses because of the offside situation of the h4-bishop.

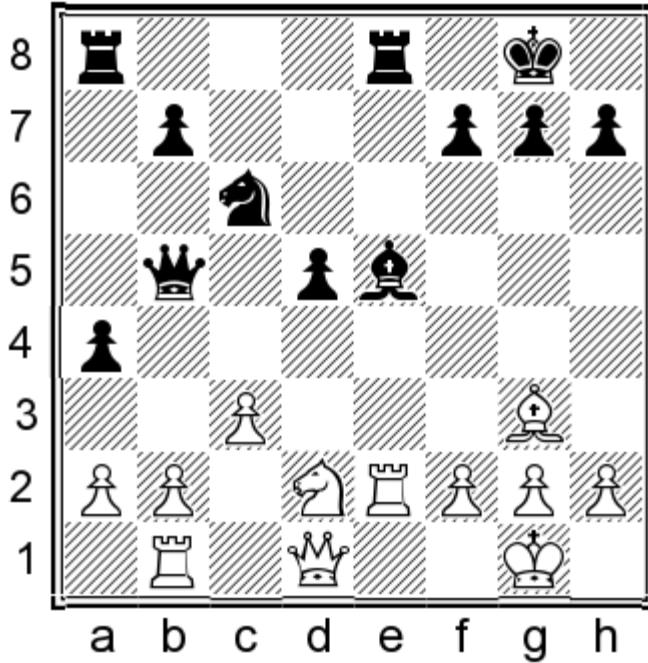
B) 18.Qc2 is solid, but does not equalize, because after 18...a4 19.Qc1 (19.Qd2? Qxh2+) 19...a3 the opening of lines on the queenside favours Black;

C) 18.Qd3!? (this is probably the best move and in any case the prelude to great tactical complications) 18...a4 19.Qd2 a3!? (after 19...Qxb2 20.Qae1! Qxa2 Black has won two pawns, but the pin on his bishop is annoying and the position is unclear) and now:

C1) 20.b3? (this allows a long series of unfavourable moves) 20...Qb4! 21.Qf3 Qc7! (attacking the pawns on c3 and h2) 22.Qg3 Qxg3 23.Qxe8+ Qxe8 24.hxg3 Qe5! (the c3-pawn is pinned against the a1-rook, which is tied to the defence of the a2-pawn) 25.Qe3 Qxe3 26.fxe3 Qc2 and Black has a big advantage;

C2) If 20.bxa3 Qc5 21.Qae1 f6 the f2-pawn is pinned and Black has pressure on the queenside pawns, but White has many resources thanks to his active pieces.

## 18...a4 19.Qd2 Bb5 20.Qg3



**20...♝f6**

White's main problem is that his bishop does not participate in the play in the centre or on the queenside, therefore Portisch takes the time to avoid an exchange of bishops.

20...♝xg3 21.♜xe8+ ♜xe8 22.hxg3 d4! is nevertheless also interesting, with the idea of intensifying the pressure while the b1-rook is still inactive.

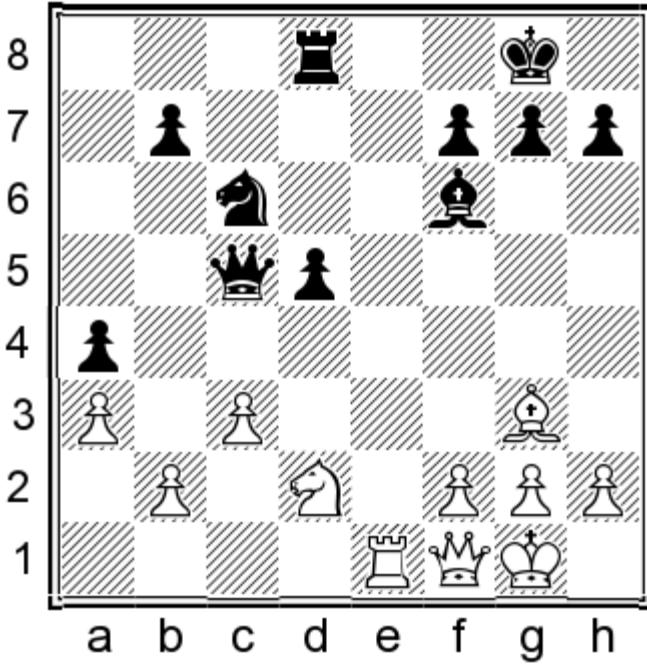
**21.♜xe8+ ♜xe8 22.♝f1 ♜c5**

The idea is still 23...a3.

**23.♝e1 ♜d8**

After 23...♝xel 24.♝xel a3 White gets out of trouble thanks to 25.♝e8+ ♜f8 26.♝xf8+ ♜xf8 27.♝d6+.

**24.a3**



**24...h6?!**

The ...d5-d4 thrust is now on the agenda, to extend the f6-bishop's diagonal to the b2-pawn, but 24...d4?! immediately allows 25.♘e4.

The queen has served its purpose on c5 (to induce a2-a3) and 24...♗b6!, with the idea of advancing the d-pawn, gives Black the initiative.

**25.♗d3?!**

25.♗c7! is strong, to prevent the black queen from returning to b6 and to control the movement of the black knight, for example: 25...♝c8 26.♗d3! (indirectly defending the bishop) 26...g6 (or 26...♘e7 27.♗e5!) 27.♗f4! (gaining a tempo on the h6-pawn) 27...h5 28.♗e3 and White has no more problems.

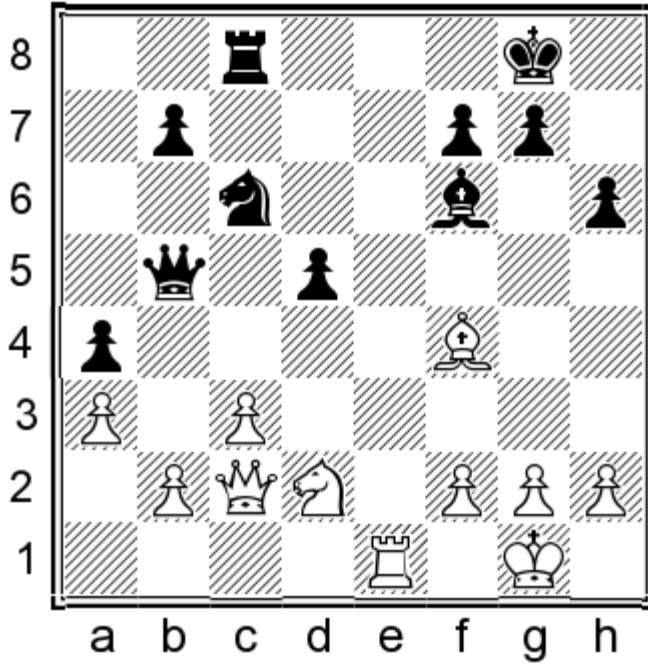
**25...♗b6! 26.♗c2 ♗b5 27.♗c7?!**

A) 27.♗f4? d4! 28.♘e4 (28.cxd4 ♘xd4 29.♗e4 ♗xb2 is hopeless) 28...♗e5 29.♗xe5 d3! gives Black a big advantage thanks to his passed pawn;

B) After 27.♗f3 d4! 28.cxd4 ♘xd4 29.♗xd4 ♘xd4 the b2-pawn is exposed and Black is a little better.

**27...♝c8 28.♗f4?**

28.♗d6 or 28.h3 (the c7-bishop is not hanging) 28...g6 29.♗d6, with the idea of putting the bishop on b4 should the c6-knight move (to protect the b2-pawn) and to answer ...d5-d4 with c3-c4, leaves White with a solid position.



**28...Qd4!**

Without the rook on the d-file 28...d4 29.Qe4! gives nothing.

**29.Qd1**

This leaves the b2-pawn defenceless, but 29.Qb1? Qe2+ is no good.

**29...Qe6 30.Qg4**

Pinning the e6-knight and preparing 31.Qxe6 in answer to 30...Qxb2. Capturing on e6 is not yet a threat because of 31...Qd7!.

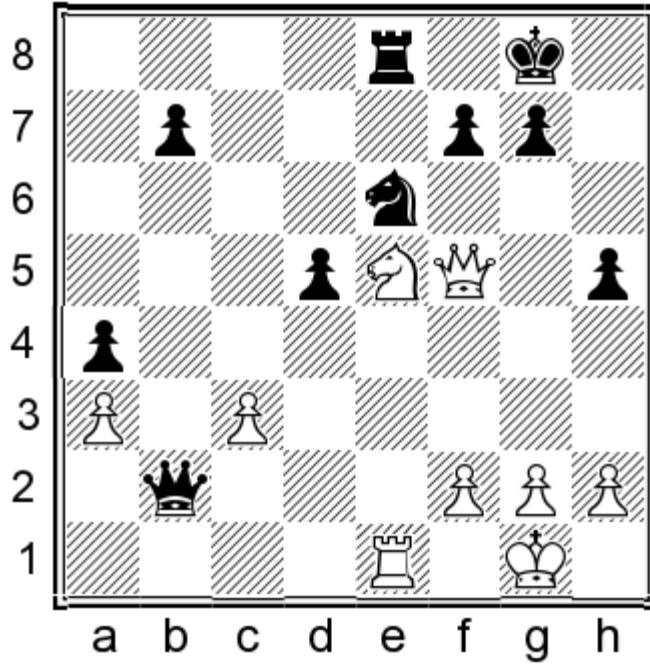
**30...h5 31.Qf5 Qe8 32.Qf3**

32.Qb1 Qxf4 33.Qxf4 Qe2, with the threat of 34...Qd3, does not save White.

**32...Qxb2**

The fall of the b2-pawn exposes the a3- and c3-pawns.

**33.Qe5 Qxe5 34.Qxe5**



**34...♝d8**

A clear win is obtained by 34...♜e7! 35.♝xf7 ♝f8! (attacking both the rook and the knight) 36.♝e5 (36.♜xe7? ♜c1+) 36...♜xc3.

**35.h3**

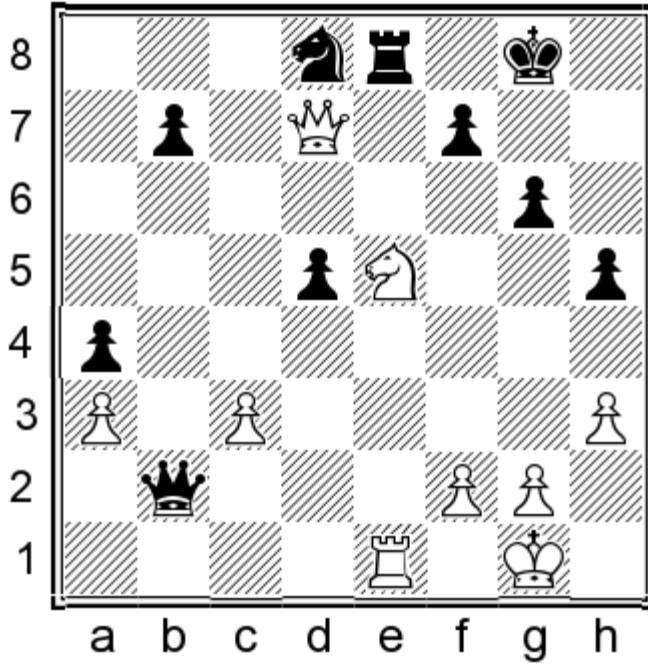
35.♝d7 ♜xe5! exploits the weakness of the back rank.

**35...g6**

To force the exchanging combination that follows.

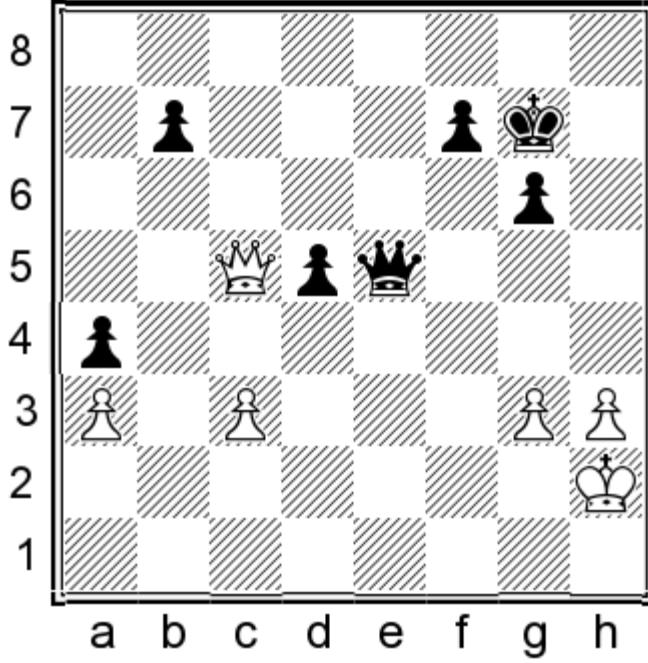
35...♜xc3 36.♜e3 ♜c1+ 37.♝h2 ♜c7 or 35...♜xa3 36.♝d7 ♜xe5 (as in the game) are more conclusive.

**36.♝d7**



36... $\mathbb{E}xe5$ ! 37. $\mathbb{W}xd8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  38. $\mathbb{E}xe5$   $\mathbb{W}c1+$  39. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{W}f4+$  40.g3  $\mathbb{W}xe5$  41. $\mathbb{W}a5$  h4 42. $\mathbb{W}c5$  hxg3+

White resigned. This is probably the adjournment position because playing 43.fxg3 is forced and not worth thinking about.



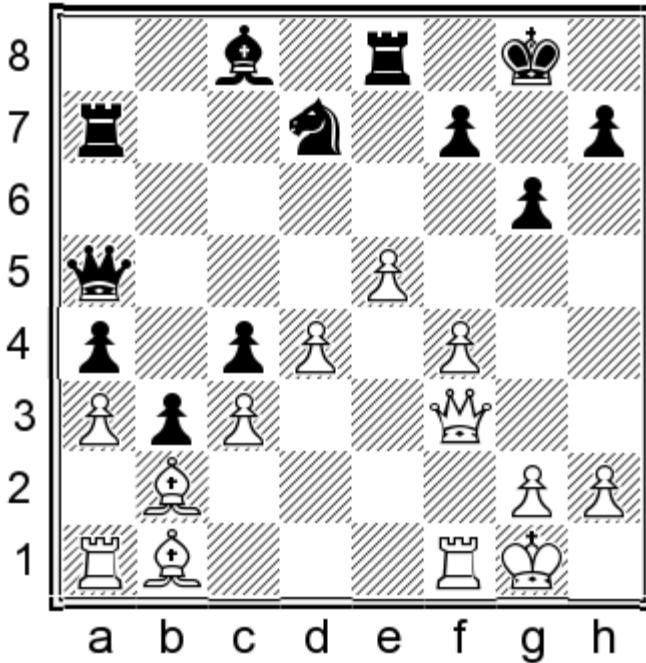
*analysis diagram*

After 43...b6! the white queen must abandon its ideal position, from where it defends the a3- and c3-pawns and controls the g1-a7 diagonal, and then Black wins, for example:

- A) 44. $\mathbb{W}xb6$   $\mathbb{W}xc3$  followed by the advance of the d-pawn;
- B) 44. $\mathbb{W}b4$   $\mathbb{W}e2+$  45. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}e1+$  46. $\mathbb{Q}h2$  (46. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}e4+$  exchanges queens) 46... $\mathbb{W}f2+$  when the g3-pawn will fall;

C) After 44.  $\mathbb{W}c6$   $\mathbb{W}e2+$  45.  $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}e3+!$  46.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$  d4! 47. cxd4  $\mathbb{W}xa3$  48. d5  $\mathbb{W}b2+$  49.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$  a3 the a-pawn will be promoted first and the black king is safe from checks.

37



Black to move

Which plan gives Black the advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

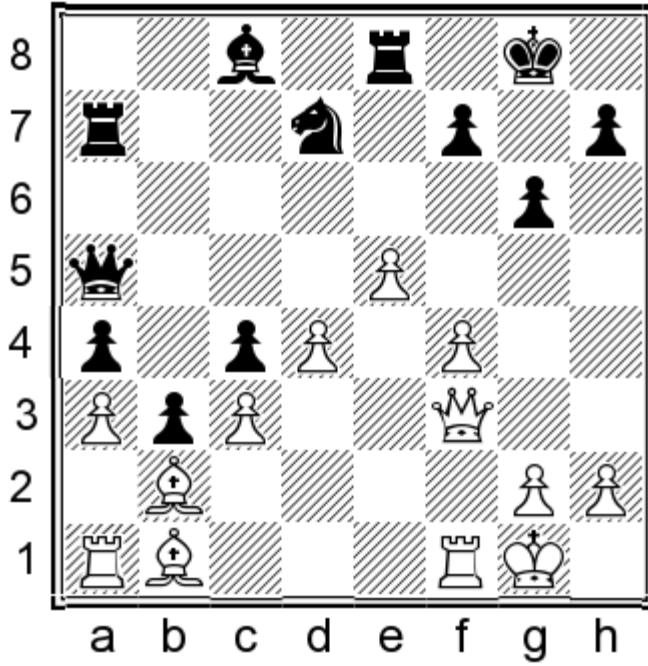
37

Lev Polugaevsky

Efim Geller

Tbilisi ch-URS 1959 (19)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  4.e3 0-0 5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  b6 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  7.0-0 c5 8.  $\mathbb{W}e2$  d5 9. cxd5 exd5 10. a3  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  11. bxc3  $\mathbb{E}e8$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}b2$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$  c4 14.  $\mathbb{Q}c2$  b5 15. f3 a5 16. e4 b4 17. e5 b3 18.  $\mathbb{Q}b1$  a4 19. f4  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  20.  $\mathbb{W}h5$  g6 21.  $\mathbb{W}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  22.  $\mathbb{W}f3$   $\mathbb{W}a5$  23.  $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  dxc4 24.  $\mathbb{W}xc6$   $\mathbb{E}a7$  25.  $\mathbb{W}f3$



*Black to move*

White has an extra pawn and a strong central pawn chain. His passive and blocked b2-bishop still fulfills the important function of stabilizing the queenside situation, where he lacks space. The b1-bishop is influential, but cannot move and immobilizes the a1-rook. Meanwhile, Black has a good hold on the light squares to add to the protected passed pawn on b3.

A) For the moment 26.f5 is not a threat because after 26... $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$  27.dxe5  $\mathbb{W}xe5$  the position would open without the white queenside pieces being able to participate in the action;

B) White is more intent on playing 26. $\mathbb{Q}e4$  even if nothing is clear after 26...f5!, for example:

B1) 27.exf6?  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  28. $\mathbb{Q}c6$  (28. $\mathbb{Q}ae1?$   $\mathbb{Q}ae7$  loses the bishop) 28... $\mathbb{Q}g4$  29. $\mathbb{W}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}e2$  is no good at all;

B2) 27. $\mathbb{Q}d5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  28. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  is better, but after 28... $\mathbb{Q}b6$  29. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  Black has a good blockading position. It is then possible to give up a pawn by 30.c4!?, possibly a second one by advancing the d-pawn, and in any case the situation is complex.

**25...f5!**

Geller plays to blockade the white queenside. A normal plan for further progress is ... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ -b6-d5 followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}a7$ -g7 and, at the right time, ...g6-g5; this last move should not be played too quickly, though, for after f4xg5 the f5-pawn, which keeps the b1-bishop in place, will prove exposed.

**26.g4!**

This is not the start of an attack, but an attempt to loosen the grip. Black will have to protect the f5-pawn, which will limit the mobility of his pieces.

After quieter moves White is simply worse, even if he does not risk anything serious for the time being because of the closed nature of the position.

The critical line, if not the best, is 26.exf6?  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  27.f5 with a choice:

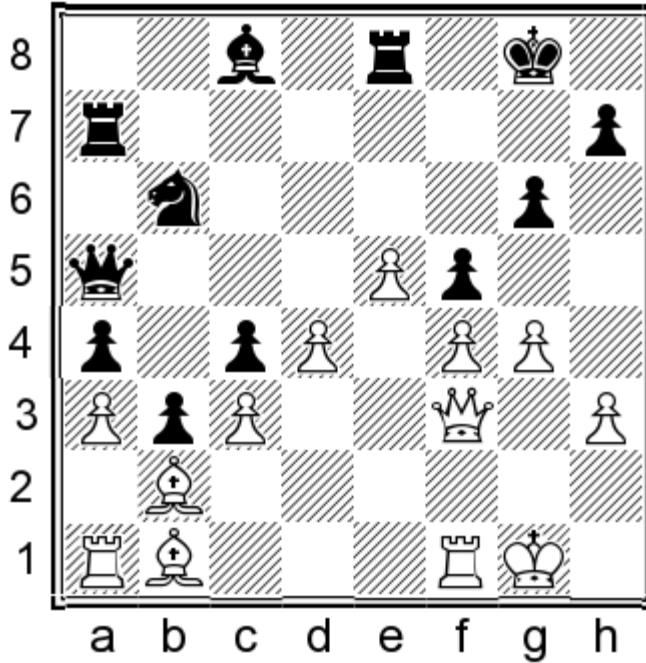
A) 27... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  28. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  gxf5 29. $\mathbb{W}xf5$   $\mathbb{W}xf5$  30. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  provides excellent compensation for the missing black pawn, but

nothing decisive is seen after 30... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  31. $\mathbb{Q}af1$  or 30... $\mathbb{Q}e2$  31. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  32. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ ;

B) 27... $g5!$  fixes the white pawn on f5. There can follow, for example, ... $\mathbb{Q}a7-e7$  followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}c8-b7$  when White will be unable to cope with his queenside paralysis in such an open position.

## 26... $\mathbb{Q}b6!$

26... $fxg4?$  regains the pawn (27. $\mathbb{W}xg4?$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ ), but after 27. $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  28.f5 the b1-bishop comes back into play and the situation becomes more complicated.



## 27.h3!

Polugaevsky wants to put pressure on the f5-pawn, but without opening the g-file. In the illustrative sequence 27.gxf5?  $gxf5$  28. $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  29. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{Q}xg1$  30. $\mathbb{Q}xg1$   $\mathbb{W}d5!?$  31. $\mathbb{W}xd5+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  we see the realization of a typical winning plan when one or more opposing pieces are offside: exchanging the other pieces.

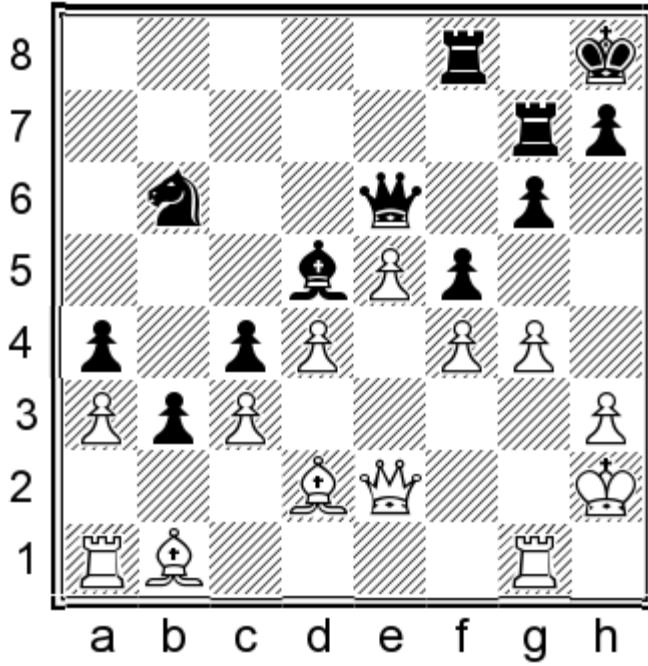
## 27... $\mathbb{W}d5$ 28. $\mathbb{W}g3$

White avoids the exchanges but loses ground.

## 28... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 29. $\mathbb{Q}h2$

29. $g5?$  does not sufficiently close the game and after 29... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  30.h4  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  followed by ...h7-h6 the h-file will be opened.

## 29... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ 30. $\mathbb{Q}g1$ $\mathbb{Q}ee7$ 31. $\mathbb{W}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}ef7$ 32. $\mathbb{W}e3$ $\mathbb{W}e6$ 33. $\mathbb{W}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}d5$ 34. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 35. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$

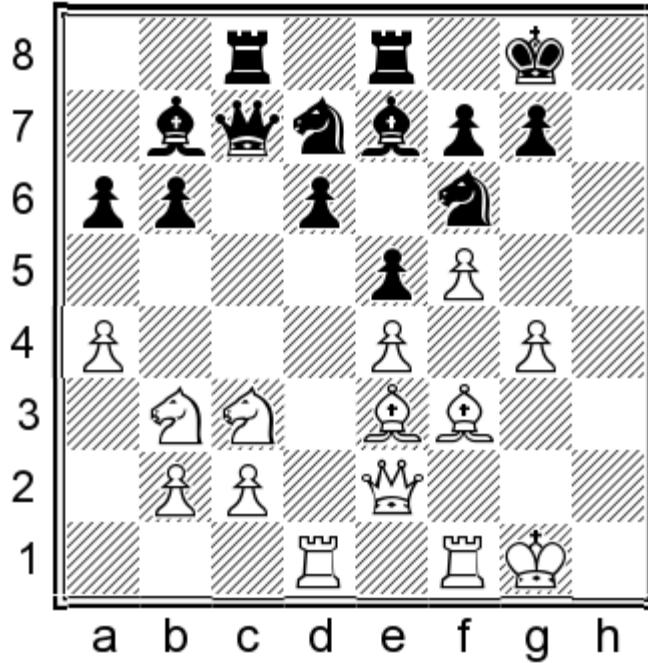


Polugaevsky has defended well so far and it is not easy for Black to open the game without provoking complications because of the pressure on the f5-pawn. Now that the white dark-squared bishop has left its sentry post on b2 to look for some activity, an interesting idea is to place the knight on b5 in order to attack the a3- and c3-pawns and only then attempt a breakthrough on the kingside.

### 36.gxf5?

A long defence often leaves a trace... the g-file opens and White is lost.

36...gxf5 37.♗xg7 ♔xg7 38.♕e1 ♘g8 39.♗h4 ♔f8 40.♗g3 ♖g6 41.♗f2 h5 42.h4 ♖g4 43.♗e3 ♔e7 44.e6 ♘g6 45.♗f2 ♖d1 46.♗e4 ♖xa1 47.♗xd5 ♗xd5 48.♗f3 ♖xc3 0-1



*Black to move*

After the thematic continuation 18...d5 19.g5, can you consider the plausible black replies and give your opinion on each of them? Limit the calculation to what is necessary as much as possible.

Show/Hide Solution

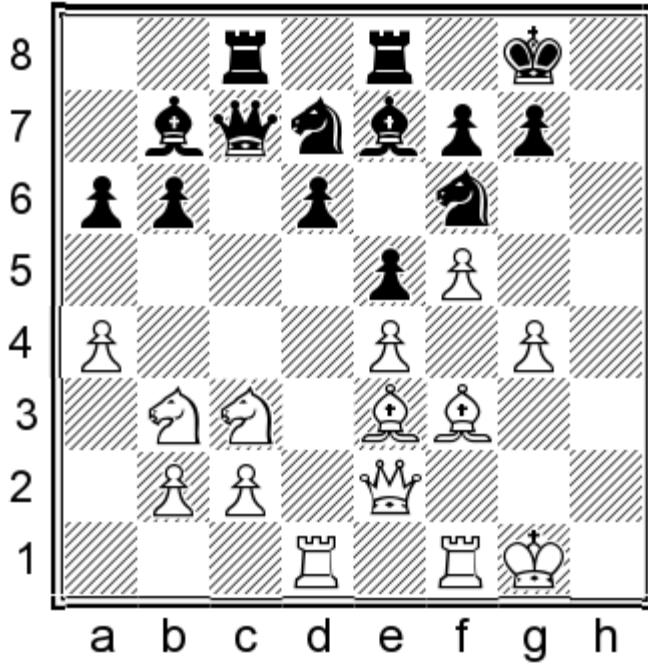
**38**

**Eduard Prandstetter 2430**

**Karel Mokry 2490**

Trancianske Teplice 1985 (3)

1.e4 c5 2. $\mathbb{Q}$ f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4. $\mathbb{Q}$ xd4  $\mathbb{Q}$ f6 5+. $\mathbb{Q}$ c3 a6 6. $\mathbb{Q}$ e2 e6 7.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}$ bd7 8.a4 b6 9.f4  $\mathbb{Q}$ b7 10. $\mathbb{Q}$ f3  $\mathbb{W}$ c7 11. $\mathbb{W}$ e2  $\mathbb{R}$ c8 12. $\mathbb{Q}$ e3 h5 13.h3 e5 14. $\mathbb{Q}$ b3  $\mathbb{Q}$ e7 15. $\mathbb{R}$ ad1 0-0 16.f5  $\mathbb{R}$ fe8 17.g4 hxg4 18.hxg4



*Black to move*

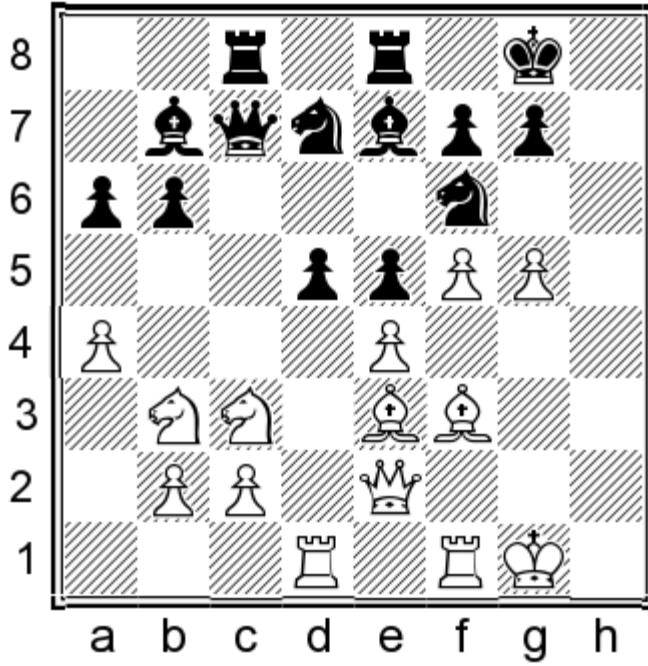
White intends to continue with 19.g5 to both launch an attack on the kingside and decentralize the f6-knight. The defence 18... $\mathbb{Q}h7!$ ? 19. $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{W}d8$  20. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  is strategically risky for Black, who voluntarily abandons the centre, but his king is safe for the moment and there are weak squares in the white camp; the position is not so clear.

### 18...d5!

A thematic reaction to the advance of the g-pawn in the Sicilian Defence, which often involves a pawn sacrifice. The first idea, in general, is that if the centre opens the white attack will lose its foundation and will probably not even occur, or it will but under worse conditions. The second is ‘normally’ to offer a solution to the f6-knight and to meet g4-g5 by ... $\mathbb{Q}f6xe4$ , but this will not be possible in the position we are looking at.

### 19.g5

- A) 19. $\mathbb{Q}xd5?$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  20.exd5 e4 21. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}xc2$  is no good;
- B) 19.exd5 e4 (19... $\mathbb{Q}b4$  is also good) 20. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}g3$  21. $\mathbb{Q}f4$  leads to a complex game after 21... $\mathbb{W}xg4$  or 21... $\mathbb{W}h4$ .



**19...d4!**

As we shall see, this is a pawn sacrifice for positional compensation.

A) After 19... $\mathbb{Q}xe4?$  20. $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$   $dxe4$ , the e3-bishop is unmoving and blocks the e4- and e5-pawns. This forms a barrier to the black pieces and the win is achieved without problem by 21. $\mathbb{W}h5$  with the idea of bringing a rook to the h-file and possibly playing f5-f6. The centre can be considered to be closed, even if it is in an unusual way;

B) 19... $dxe4?$  20. $\mathbb{Q}h1!$  (leaves the second rank free) 20... $\mathbb{Q}h7$  and now:

B1) 21.f6!? is interesting as 21... $gxf6?$  loses to 22. $\mathbb{W}g4!$  (with the threats of 23. $\mathbb{R}xd7$  and 23. $gxf6+$ ) 22... $f5$  23. $\mathbb{W}xf5$  and the f7-pawn is attacked;

B2) 21. $\mathbb{W}h5$  is simple and strong. One possible continuation is 21... $\mathbb{Q}df8$  22. $\mathbb{R}f2!$  with the ideas of 23. $\mathbb{R}h2$ , 23. $\mathbb{R}df1$  and 23. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ , and it is doubtful that Black can save himself. Instead of 22. $\mathbb{R}f2$ , 22. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{W}xc2$  and 22. $\mathbb{R}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}b4!$  are less clear.

C) 19... $\mathbb{Q}h7?!$  rightly inspires a certain degree of mistrust, but this time after 20.g6!, which damages the black king's pawn cover, you have to calculate a bit:

C1) 20... $\mathbb{Q}hf6?!$  21. $gxf7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  22. $exd5$  e4 23. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$   $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  24. $\mathbb{W}xh5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  25. $\mathbb{W}h3$ , preventing the black queen from checking on g3. White prepares to play, for example,  $\mathbb{Q}b3-d4$  and he is much better;

C2) 20... $fxg6$  21. $fxg6$   $\mathbb{Q}hf6$  22. $exd5$  e4 and now 23. $\mathbb{Q}xe4?$  loses to 23... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  24. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{W}g3+$  25. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  and 23. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  allows 23... $\mathbb{W}g3$ , which regains the g6-pawn, but 23. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$  with the idea of 24. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  gives White the upper hand, taking advantage of the fact that 23... $exf3?$  is no good because of 24. $\mathbb{W}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  25. $\mathbb{W}xf3$ . After 21... $\mathbb{Q}hf6$  the best is, however, 22. $\mathbb{Q}g4!$ , which threatens 23. $\mathbb{Q}e6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  24. $\mathbb{W}h2$  and intends  $e4xd5$  under better conditions.

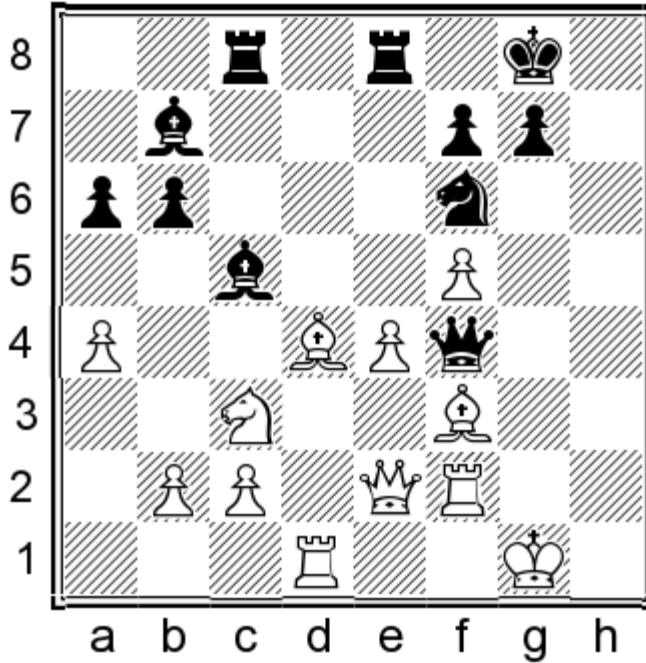
**20.gxf6  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$**

Recapturing with the knight enables Black to exert pressure on the e4-pawn. 20... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $exd4$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4+$  23. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  also deserves attention and gives Black a good blockading position with, for example, the idea of ... $\mathbb{Q}e5-c4$ .

**21. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $exd4$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$**

The missing pawn is compensated by the exposed situation of the white king and the e4-pawn, as well as by the general weakness of the dark squares.

**23.♗f2 ♖f4**



**24.♗h1?**

White probably wanted to repeat moves by attacking the black queen with his rook along the second rank without seeing the forthcoming check on c1.

A good continuation was 24.♖xc5 ♕xc5 25.♘d3 and now:

- A) 25...♕ce5 leads to a draw after 26.♗e2 ♗g5 27.♗g2, etc.;
- B) 25...b5!? 26.axb5 axb5 allows the game to continue, with equal chances.

**24...♗g5+ 25.♗g2**

25.♗g2 ♜xe4 and 25.♔f1 ♜h5 leave a slim chance of survival.

**25...♗xd4+ 26.♗xd4 ♘c1+ 27.♗d1 ♘xb2**

Material balance is restored. With weak pawns, the h1-bishop offside and the king exposed, White is lost.

**28.♗d5 ♜xd5 29.exd5 ♘c3 30.♗d2**

Or else 30.♔f1 ♘e5 31.♗f2 ♘ce8 with a black win.

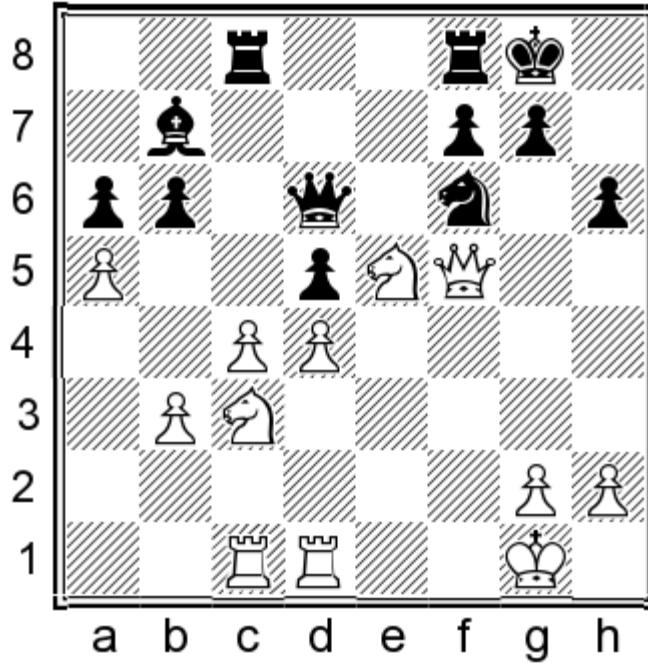
**30...♗e1+ 31.♔h2 ♘a1**

There is nothing to do for the white bishop.

**32.♗xg7+ ♔xg7 33.♗g2 ♘h8+ 34.♔g3 ♘c1**

White resigned.

39



Black to move

What is the best plan for Black and what is White's correct reaction?

Show/Hide Solution

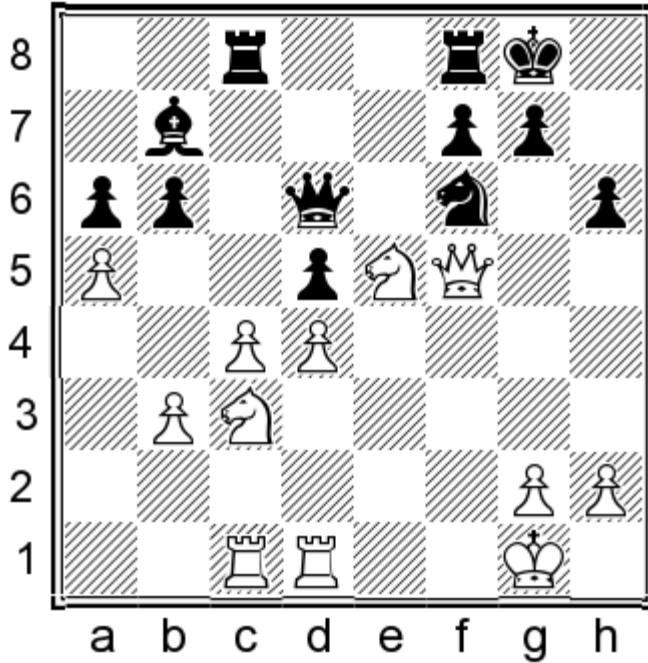
39

Igor Bondarevsky

Vasily Smyslov

Moscow ch-URS 1950 (3)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  4.e3 d5 5.a3  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  0-0 7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  b6 8.0-0 c5 9. $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  10. $\mathbb{B}d1$  cxd4 11.exd4  $\mathbb{Q}a6$  12.b3  $\mathbb{B}c8$  13. $\mathbb{B}b1$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  14. $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{W}b8$  15. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  h6 16. $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  17. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  18. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  19.a4  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  20.f4  $\mathbb{Q}b4$  21.f5  $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  22. $\mathbb{W}xd3$  exf5 23. $\mathbb{W}xf5$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  24. $\mathbb{B}bc1$  a6 25. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  26.a5



*Black to move*

White is threatening to take on b6 and then play c4-c5, which would give him a protected passed pawn and bury the b7-bishop.

26...bxa5? 27.c5! momentarily wins a pawn, but allowing the opposing plan is a mistake.

**26...dxc4! 27.bxc4**

Black had to part with his central pawn but the b7-bishop gains good prospects and the newly emerged hanging pawns are both influential and at the same time exposed.

After 27.♗xc4?! ♕c6 (or 27...♕b4) the knight cannot capture on b6.

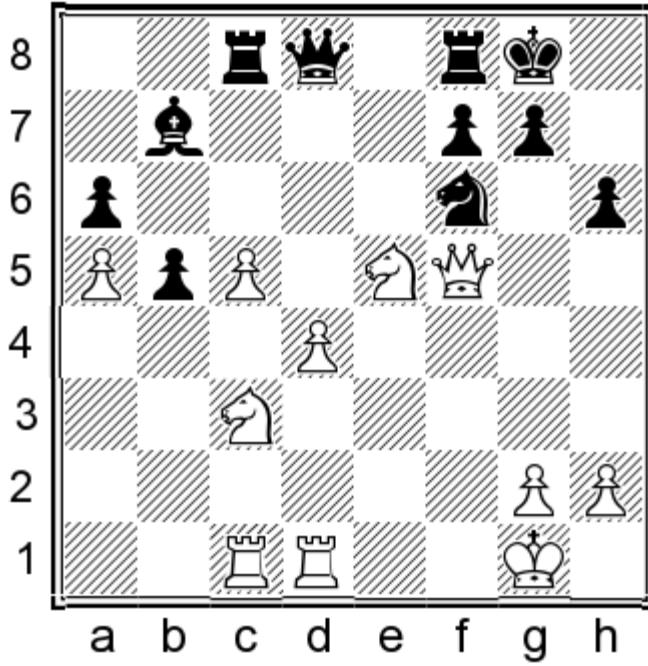
**27...b5!**

27...bxa5?! 28.c5 ♕c7 has two disadvantages compared to the game continuation: the passed a5-pawn is less dangerous than if it were on b5 and the c4-square is not controlled, which allows 29.♘c4 with better play for White.

**28.c5**

28.cxb5? axb5 29.♘xb5 ♕d5 seems excellent for Black and is in actual fact winning: 30.♕f1 ♜xc1! (deviating the rook from the defence of the d4-pawn; 30...♜a6 31.♜xc8 ♜xc8 32.♘c7! ♜xc7 33.♕xa6 is unclear) 31.♜xc1 ♜a6 32.♜c5 ♕b3 33.♘c6 (33.♕d3 ♕xd3 34.♘xd3 ♜b8 wins a knight) 33...♜e8 34.♘ca7 ♜e4 – the rescue of the b5-knight has transported the pieces to the queenside and now the white king is all alone.

**28...♕d8**



The main theme of the position is the blockade of the central pawns as the white rooks are ideally placed to support their advance. 29.♕e2!, with the threat of 30.c6 (which incidentally defends the a5-pawn) and the idea of placing the knight on f4 or g3, is the critical follow-up:

- A) 29...♝e4 (the ideal square for the bishop, which continues to monitor the blockading squares and effectively supports the advance of the b-pawn) 30.♗f4 b4 31.♘g3 ♜h7 (it is necessary to choose one of the two diagonals...) 32.♘c4 ♜d5 when the position is unclear;
- B) If 29...♞d5 30.♘f4 (30.♘g3, to control the e4-square and eventually go to f5, is not easy to judge) 30...♝e4 the bishop has apparently lost time, but it is permanently installed on e4 and chances are level.

### **29.♜a1?!**

As we have just seen, it is not necessary to protect the a5-pawn.

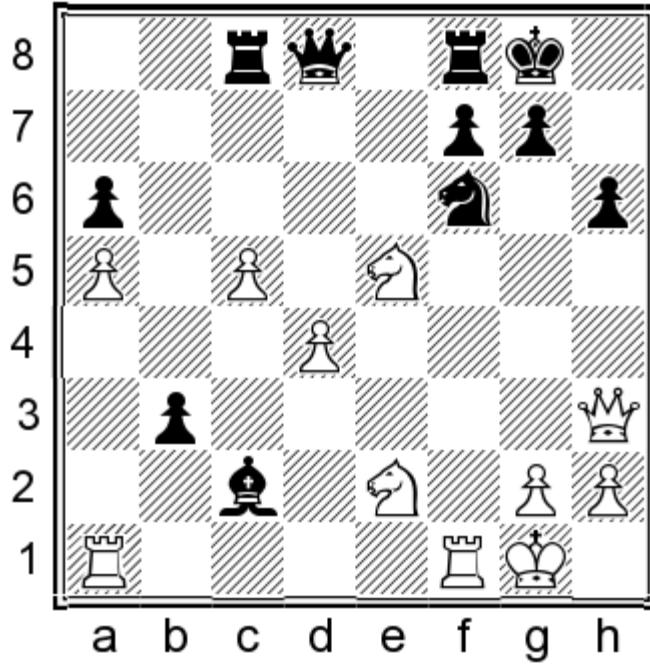
### **29...b4**

The advance of this pawn is normal, but nevertheless, White's previous move has deprived his position of dynamism and the simple 30...♝e8! would ask him what he wants to do next and put him in an uncomfortable position.

### **30.♘e2??**

30.♘a4! was the right move, indicated by Smyslov. After 30...♝e4 31.♗f2 b3 32.♘b6 ♜c7 33.♗ac1! (back to the right file) 33...♞c2?! 34.♗xc2 bxc2 35.♗xc2 is dangerous for Black, but 33...♞d5 is possible, with equal chances, as after 34.♗b2?! ♜c2! the exchange sacrifice would result in a fork on e3.

### **30...♝e4 31.♗h3 ♜c2 32.♗f1 b3**



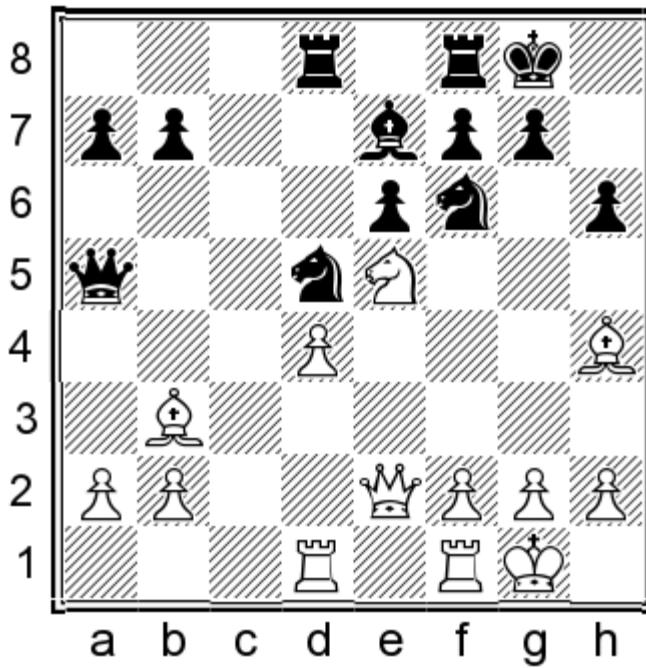
It is necessary to monitor the b3-pawn and defend the d4-pawn as well as a number of squares, and moreover the king is vulnerable. White is worse and was unable to save the game:

33.  $\mathbb{W}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  34.  $\mathbb{W}b2$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  35.  $\mathbb{Q}fe1$   $\mathbb{W}d5$  36.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}fe8$  37.  $\mathbb{Q}ac1$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  38.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{W}f5$  39.  $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}ce6$  40.  $\mathbb{Q}xe3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  41.  $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  42.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}e4$  43.  $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}xe1$  44.  $\mathbb{Q}xe1$   $\mathbb{Q}d1$  45.  $c6$   $\mathbb{W}xc6$  46.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{W}c4$  47.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}c2$  48.  $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  49.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{W}b5$  50.  $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}g4+$  51.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{W}c4+$

White resigned.

Show in Quiz Mode

40



White to move

Which plan gives White the advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

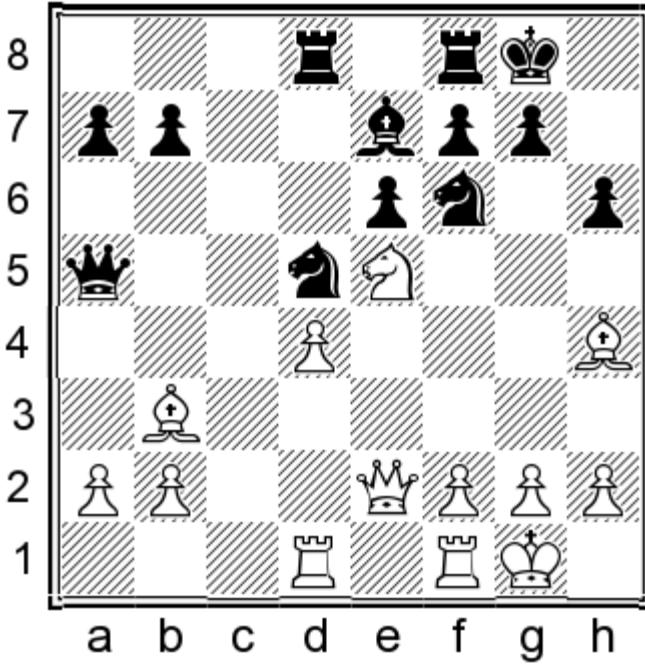
40

Gideon Ståhlberg

José Raúl Capablanca

Moscow 1935 (16)

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.Qf3 Qf6 4.Qc3 Qe7 5.Qg5 0-0 6.e3 Qbd7 7.Wc2 h6 8.Qh4 c5 9.Qd1 Wa5 10.Qd3 cxd4 11.exd4 dxc4 12.Qxc4 Qb6 13.Qb3 Qd7 14.0-0 Qc6 15.Qe5 Qd5 16.Qxd5 Qbxsd5 17.We2 Qad8



*White to move*

Black has successfully chosen to block the isolated pawn. The d5-knight now fulfils the important function of limiting the action of the b3-bishop to avoid sacrificial attacks on the a2-g8 diagonal.

The d4-pawn and the e5-knight are comfortably installed and White has a lasting space advantage in addition to the bishop pair.

### 18.f4!

This is the only plan that can really bother Black. The idea is to continue with f4-f5 in order to give perspectives to the b3-bishop and f1-rook.

### 18...Qe8?

A) After 18...Qb6 19.f5 Qfe8 20.fxe6 we see the realization of White's idea:

A1) 20...fxe6? is an attempt to keep firm control of the d5-square, but now Black also has an isolated pawn to add to the previous defects of his position and after 21.Qg6 he is in a very bad way;

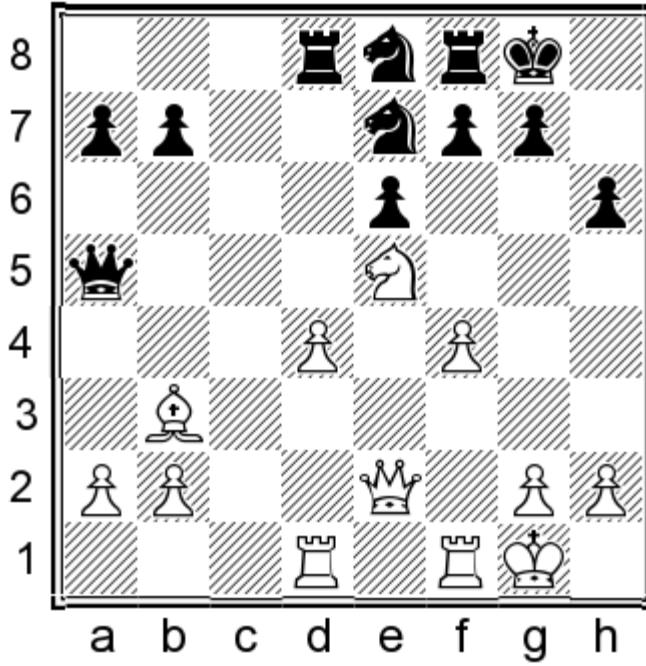
A2) After 20...Qxe6 21.Qf3 Black's position seems solid but in fact it is also very passive as the d5-knight must remain where it is and must also be supported; White has the time to manoeuvre and enjoys a significant advantage.

B) 18...g6 with a junction:

B1) 19.g4 (one or other of the f- and g-pawns can advance) 19...Qb6 20.f5 (20.Qg3, which maintains the pressure, is also strong) 20...exf5 21.gxf5 g5 22.Qg3 – Black is still in trouble but he has managed to keep the f-file closed. The weakening of both kingsides favours White as he is more active;

B2) 19.Qd3 (threatening 20.Qxg6) 19...Qg7 – White can play 20.g4 as in the previous variation, or else 20.a3 to prepare Qb3-c2 and renew the threat of a sacrifice on g6. Once again he has a comfortable advantage.

### 19.Qxe7 Qxe7



**20.f5!**

The plan is carried out tactically and Ståhlberg will gain a decisive attack.

20.♕xf7? ♜xf7 21.♕xe6? ♔d5 closes the fatal diagonal) 21...♗f6 22.f5 ♔ed5 allows White to regain material, but his attack has disappeared and the chances are equal.

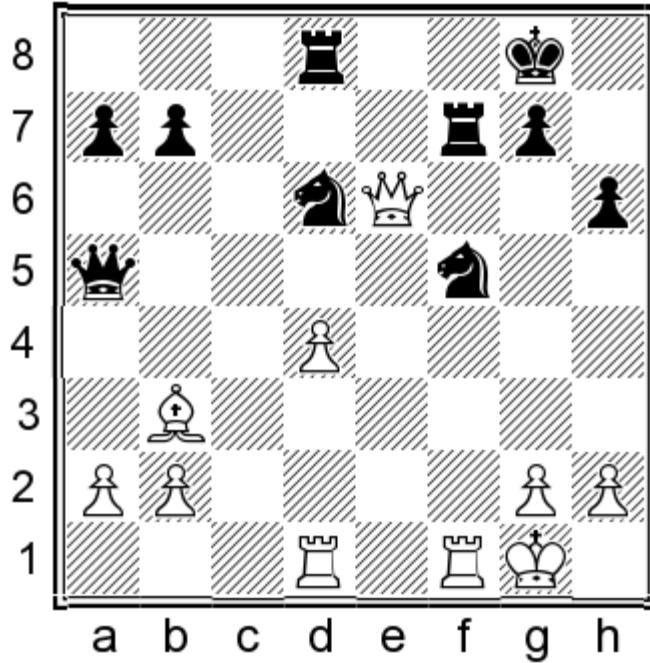
**20...♗xf5**

Black is lost after 20...exf5? 21.♕xf7 ♜xf7 22.♗xe7, as well as after 20...♗c7 21.f6!, even though this is a bit more complicated.

**21.♕xf7! ♜xf7**

21...♗xd4 22.♗xd4 ♜xd4 23.♗xe6 is hopeless.

**22.♗xe6 ♔ed6**



Black has an extra piece but the f7-rook and f5-knight are both pinned.

**23.g4?**

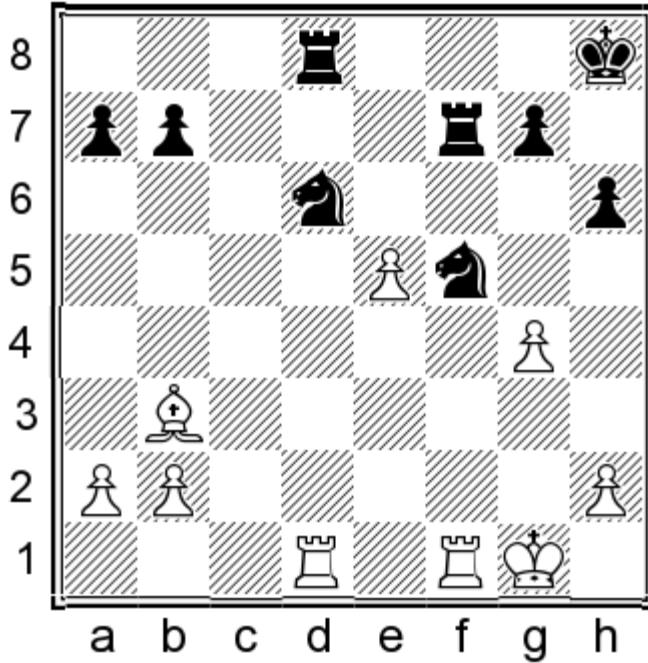
23... $\mathbb{W}e5!$  attacks the queen and threatens g2-g4 as well as possibly capturing the f7-rook with the bishop. Neither 23... $\mathbb{W}b6$  24.g4  $\mathbb{Q}h4$  25. $\mathbb{W}e7$  nor 23... $\mathbb{W}c7$  24. $\mathbb{B}xf5$ , taking advantage of the pin on the d6-knight, can save the game.

**23... $\mathbb{Q}h8!$**

An acrobatic defence.

23... $\mathbb{W}c7$  24. $\mathbb{G}xf5$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  also resists, but under worse conditions.

**24. $\mathbb{W}e5!$   $\mathbb{W}xe5$  25. $dxe5$**



Despite all the hanging black pieces there is a way out:

**25...Qe3! 26.Qxf7**

26.Qxf7 Qxf7 gives nothing.

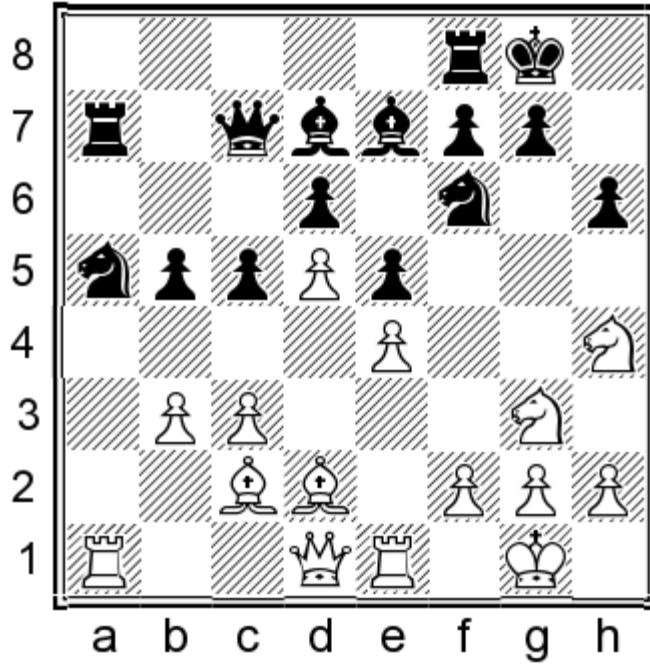
**26...Qxd1 27.exd6 Qxd6**

The two opponents agreed to a draw here, but Ståhlberg could have continued a bit with 28.Qb3, the bishop clearly being stronger than the knight. For example:

A) 28...Qxb2 29.Qf8+ Kh7 30.Qc2+ g6 31.Qf7+ followed by 32.Qxb7;

B) 28...Qe3 29.Qe1 Qxg4 (or 29...Qd3 30.h3 followed by 31.Qf2) 30.Qe8+ Kh7 31.h3 Qf6 32.Qc2+ g6 33.Qe7+ and then 34.Qxb7.

In both cases White retains some winning chances.



*Black to move*

What do you think of 20... $\mathbb{Q}fa8$

and 20... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  ?

Show/Hide Solution

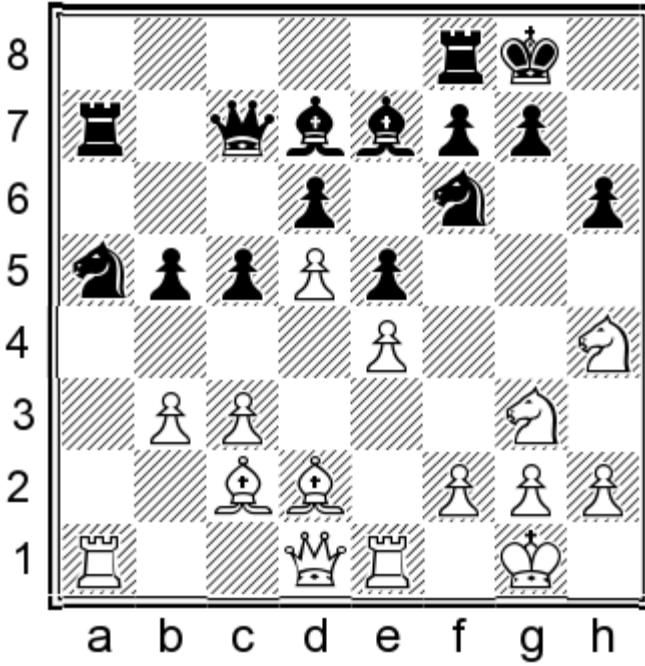
**41**

Carl Schlechter

Friedrich Köhnlein

Hamburg 1910 (10)

1.e4 e5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}b5$  a6 4. $\mathbb{Q}a4$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  5.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e1$  b5 7. $\mathbb{Q}b3$  d6 8.c3  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  9. $\mathbb{Q}c2$  c5 10.d4  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  11. $\mathbb{Q}bd2$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  12.a4  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  13.axb5 axb5 14.d5  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  15. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  0-0 16. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  17.b3 h6 18. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  19. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}a7$  20. $\mathbb{Q}h4$



*Black to move*

White intends to place a knight on f5 and attack the black king. From this point of view, having played ...h7-h6 proves to be weakening and Black will have trouble preparing ...g7-g6.

- A) 20... $\mathbb{Q}xe4?$  21. $\mathbb{B}xe4$  f5 22. $\mathbb{Q}g6$  fxe4 23. $\mathbb{Q}xe7+$   $\mathbb{K}f7$  24. $\mathbb{Q}ef5$  is hopeless;
- B) 20... $\mathbb{Q}h7!?$  21. $\mathbb{Q}hf5$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  is a reasonable idea that allows the exchange of dark-squared bishops, but it does not dispute control of the f5-square and does not equalize;
- C) The best plan is 20... $\mathbb{Q}fa8!$  21. $\mathbb{Q}hf5$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  with the intention of playing ... $\mathbb{Q}g8-h7$  followed by ...g7-g6, to control the f5-square, and if the white queen then abandons control of the b3-square, ...c5-c4 with the idea of responding to b3-b4 by ... $\mathbb{Q}a5-b3$  gives good counterplay (with the queen on d1 this would involve a pawn sacrifice, but remains possible in certain cases). On the other hand, ... $\mathbb{Q}a5-b7$  reduces the knight's prospects and by playing it Black will have to evaluate the consequences of b3-b4, which prevents its return; this move may, however, help initiate play on the a-file.

Let us see some variations:

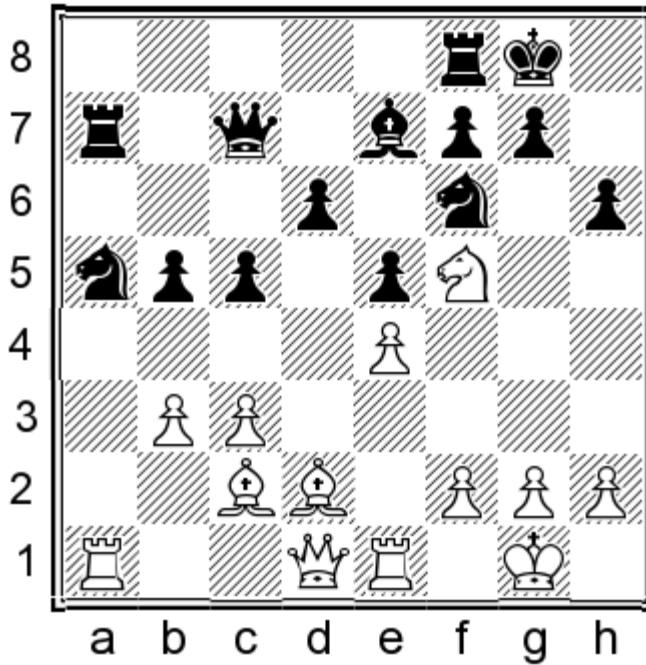
- C1) 22. $\mathbb{W}f3$  (threatening 23. $\mathbb{Q}xh6+$ ) 22... $\mathbb{W}d8$  followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}g8-h7$  and ...g7-g6 brings White nothing;
- C2) 22.f4?! allows 22...c4! 23.b4  $\mathbb{Q}b3!$  24. $\mathbb{B}xa7$   $\mathbb{W}xa7+$  as the check avoids the loss of a pawn on b3;
- C3) 22. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  23.f4?! (a critical move to hope to gain the initiative, but it does not work very well; after 23. $\mathbb{Q}h5$   $\mathbb{Q}g8!$  – 23... $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  24. $\mathbb{W}xh5$  g6 25. $\mathbb{W}h4!$  is dangerous – followed by ...g7-g6 the dark squares around the king are sufficiently defended) 23...g6! (and not 23...exf4?! 24. $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  g6 25.e5!) 24.fxe5 dxe5 25. $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{Q}g4!$  and Black is doing very well;
- C4) 22. $\mathbb{Q}h5!$  (in order to exchange one of the black king's defenders and increase the queen's prospects) 22... $\mathbb{W}d8!$  (22... $\mathbb{Q}xh5$  23. $\mathbb{W}xh5$  allows sacrifices on h6; 22... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  and 22... $\mathbb{Q}h7$  are risky – the ideal square for a knight retreat being g8, to support the h6-pawn, but this is unavailable at the moment) 23. $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$   $\mathbb{W}xf6$  – Black suffers a little from a lack of space, but is not in any immediate danger and is only slightly worse.

**20... $\mathbb{Q}xd5!?$**

A risky idea for the king, but winning a pawn does enrich Black's defensive possibilities by enabling him to sacrifice

material back later on.

21.  $\mathbb{Q}hf5$   $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  22.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$



The white knight is comfortably posted on f5 as it can be neither exchanged nor expelled, and the black king is in danger.

23.  $\mathbb{R}e3$

With the idea of 24.  $\mathbb{R}g3$  to threaten the pawns on g7 and h6. 24.  $\mathbb{W}f3$  is another good move and 24...  $\mathbb{R}fa8!$  25.  $\mathbb{W}g3$  g6 is then the best defence, offering the h6-pawn in order to keep reasonable pawn cover in front of the king. The absence of the d5-pawn allows a possible return of the a5-knight to the centre when Black has good resources, even though it is clear that he is worse.

23...  $\mathbb{Q}h7?$

23...  $\mathbb{R}fa8!$  24.  $\mathbb{R}g3$  g6 25.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  is again the best continuation. The g3-rook is well placed for an attack on the king but otherwise it is offside and meanwhile Black will try to gain the initiative on the queenside. Let us see two possible continuations:

A) 26.  $\mathbb{Q}g4?!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  27.  $\mathbb{R}xg4$  c4! and now the position is complicated after 28. bxc4  $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ , but on the other hand, 28. b4  $\mathbb{Q}b3!$  gives the initiative to Black as he avoids losing a pawn on b3 because of the weakness of the back rank;

B) 26. h4! gives the king an escape square and prepares 27. h5! and if 27...  $\mathbb{Q}xh5?$ , then 28.  $\mathbb{W}xh5!$  and the queen can't be captured because of the mate on g8. White is better.

24.  $\mathbb{R}h3!$

Now the h6-pawn is the target as the black king is exposed on the h-file. After 24.  $\mathbb{R}g3$   $\mathbb{R}g8$  followed by 25...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  the game continues.

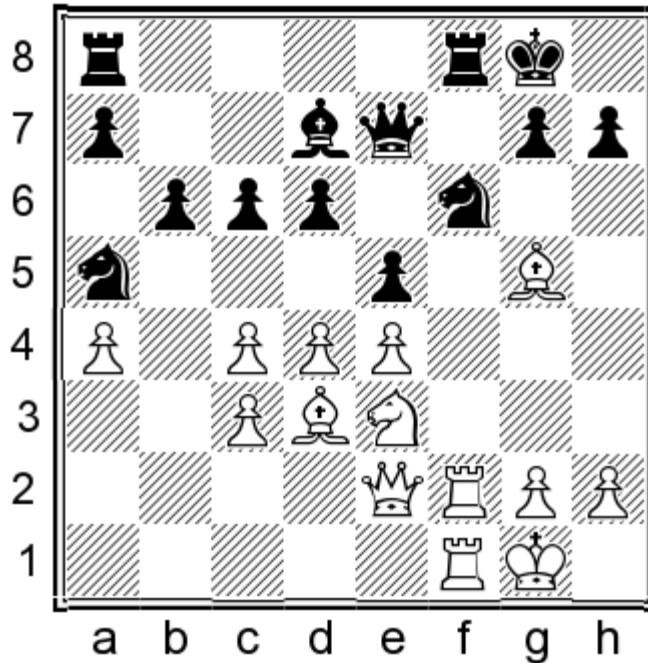
24...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  25.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6!$

25.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7!$  was also decisive.

**25...gxh6 26.  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$**

Black resigned. 26...  $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  27.  $\mathbb{W}h5$  is hopeless.

42



White to move

Find two distinct plans that lead to a very large white advantage.

Show/Hide Solution

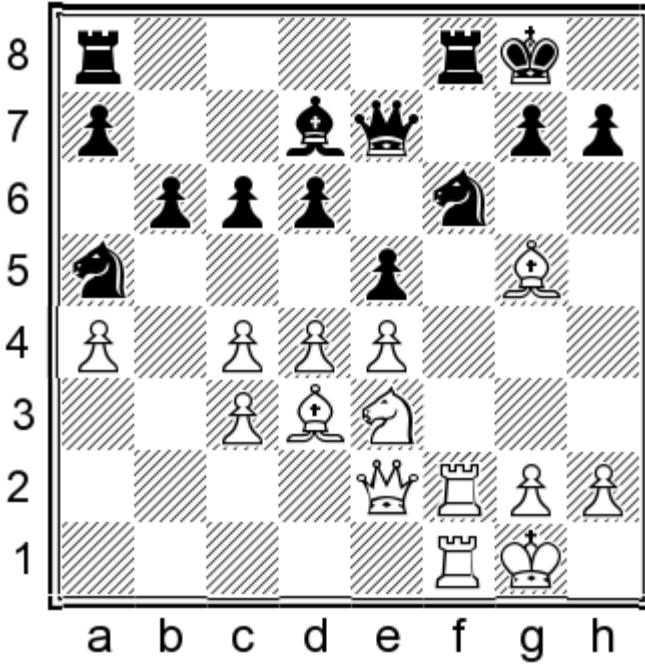
42

Efim Geller

Haije Kramer

Helsinki ol 1952 (4)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  b6 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  5.e3  $\mathbb{Q}b4$  6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  7.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  8.bxc3 0-0 9. $\mathbb{Q}e1$  f5 10.f3  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  11.a4  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  12. $\mathbb{R}a2$   $\mathbb{Q}a5$  13. $\mathbb{R}af2$   $\mathbb{W}e7$  14. $\mathbb{W}e2$  d6 15.e4 fxe4 16.fxe4 e5 17. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  18. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  19. $\mathbb{Q}e3$  c6



*White to move*

White has a damaged pawn structure, but it does give him a strong presence in the centre. His pieces are active and he has the pair of bishops. The f6-knight is pinned and under strong pressure, which leaves the e4-pawn safe. The e3-knight controls the g4-, f5- and d5-squares (which stops the c6-pawn from moving) and defends the c4-pawn, often a sensitive point in this pawn structure, which accentuates the offside position of the a5-knight.

As for Black, he has a passive and cramped position. One idea to get rid of the pin on the f6-knight is to play ...h7-h6; depending on circumstances the bishop can then either exchange on f6 or else retreat to h4, then g3 after an eventual ...g7-g5, and in both cases the black pawn structure will be severely weakened.

The strongest plan is probably 20.d5! c5 (it is necessary to keep the position closed as after 20... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  21.dxc6  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  22. $\mathbb{Q}d5$  or 21... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  22. $\mathbb{Q}g4$  it's all over) 21. $\mathbb{W}e1!$  with the idea of  $\mathbb{Q}d3-e2-g4$  to exchange the light-squared bishops so as to obtain the f5- and g4-squares for the knight. Defending the a4-pawn is pointless as the d7-bishop has to guard these two squares and so the queen is placed according to its kingside prospects (that said, 21. $\mathbb{W}d1$  is also good). Now:

A) 21... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  22. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}af8$  is what Black wishes to play in order to consolidate the f6-square, but this does not hold and in particular there is a direct win by 23. $\mathbb{Q}h5!$  g6 24. $\mathbb{Q}g4$ ;

B) 21...h6 22. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  23. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  gxf6 24. $\mathbb{W}h4$  (capturing the f6-pawn would bring the rook into play) 24... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  25. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$  (25. $\mathbb{W}xh6?$   $\mathbb{W}g7$  halts the attack) 25... $\mathbb{W}g7$ !? (an ingenious attempt to defuse the decisive arrival of the white bishop on g4: 26. $\mathbb{Q}g4?$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4!$  allows resistance) 26. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  27. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{W}e7$  28. $\mathbb{Q}g4$  and White wins.

## 20.c5!

With the idea of blocking the c6-pawn to then play d4-d5 and gain control of the d5-square. This is an unusual plan because in this kind of structure the c4-c5 breakthrough generally intends to attack the opposing dark-squared pawn chain.

## 20...bxc5

A) After 20... $\mathbb{Q}h8?$ , 21.d5 is strong, as in the game, but there is also a direct win: 21.cxd6  $\mathbb{W}xd6$  22. $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  23.dxe5! (23. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  allows Black to hold the e5-point and resist) 23... $\mathbb{W}xe5$  24. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$   $\mathbb{W}xc3$  25.e5 and the advance of the

passed pawn combined with threats to the king decides matters;

B) 20...dxc5 21.d5! with a choice:

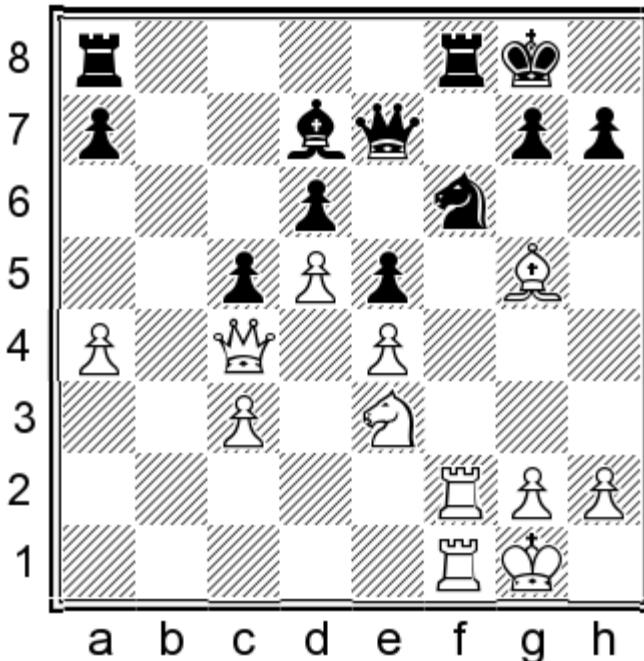
B1) 21... $\mathbb{W}d6$  (unpinning the knight, but the queen will be exposed) 22.dxc6  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  (22... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  23. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{W}d7$  24. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  and 22... $\mathbb{W}xc6$  23. $\mathbb{Q}xf6 \mathbb{Q}xf6$  24. $\mathbb{Q}xf6 gxf6$  25. $\mathbb{Q}d5$  are both losing) 23. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  24. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$  (the queen must abandon its ideal post) 24... $\mathbb{W}e7$  (or 24... $\mathbb{W}c7$  25. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  with the idea of 26. $\mathbb{Q}d5$ ) 25. $\mathbb{Q}d5$  and White wins;

B2) 21...c4! (Black returns the pawn to exchange the a5-knight) 22. $\mathbb{Q}xc4 \mathbb{Q}xc4$  23. $\mathbb{W}xc4$  (threatening 24.dxc6+) 23... $\mathbb{W}c5!$  (the point of the black defensive plan initiated by 20...dxc5; going into the endgame allows the game to continue, even if Black's prospects are poor) 24. $\mathbb{W}xc5 bxc5$  25. $\mathbb{Q}xf6 \mathbb{Q}xf6$  26. $\mathbb{Q}xf6 gxf6$  27.d6! (27. $\mathbb{Q}xf6 cxd5$  seems less promising) 27... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  (after 27... $\mathbb{Q}b8$  28. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  the e5-pawn is exposed to a knight attack and Black is much worse) 28. $\mathbb{Q}b1!$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  29. $\mathbb{Q}f5$  and in spite of the material balance we can consider that White has a pawn more given the doubled and isolated pawns on c5 and c6. He has a big advantage.

## 21.d5! c4!

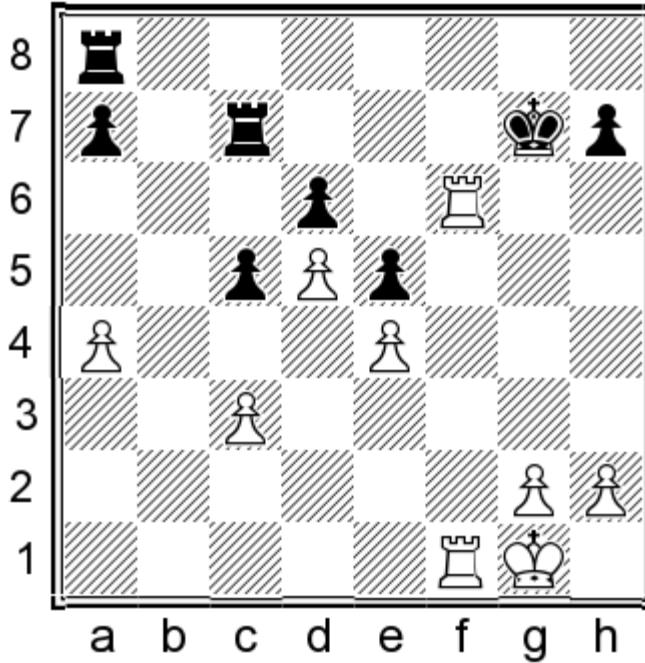
Both to exchange the a5-knight and to unblock the c6-pawn in order to stop the white knight from getting to the d5-square.

22. $\mathbb{Q}xc4 \mathbb{Q}xc4$  23. $\mathbb{W}xc4$  c5



The white knight's invasion squares on f5 and g4 are permanently controlled and White is unable to obtain anything important through the f-file alone. Nevertheless, the black queenside is now porous and simultaneous pressure on both wings should bear fruit.

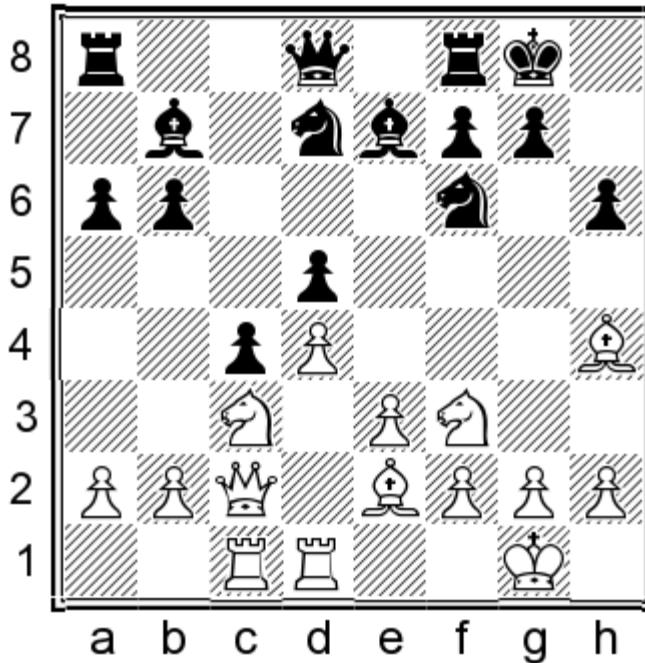
24. $\mathbb{W}a6 \mathbb{Q}c8$  25. $\mathbb{W}c6 \mathbb{Q}d7$  26. $\mathbb{W}c7 \mathbb{Q}fc8$  27. $\mathbb{Q}xf6 gxf6$  28. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}xc7$  29. $\mathbb{Q}xe7+ \mathbb{Q}f7$  30. $\mathbb{Q}f5 \mathbb{Q}xf5$  31. $\mathbb{Q}xf5 \mathbb{Q}g7$  32. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$



Black is a pawn down and has difficulty finding counterplay due to the weakness of the d6-pawn. He is probably lost.

32... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  33. $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  34. $h4$   $h5$  35. $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}b3$  36. $\mathbb{Q}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  37. $\mathbb{Q}xh5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  38. $\mathbb{Q}g5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  39. $\mathbb{Q}gg6$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  40. $h5$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$   
 41. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  42. $\mathbb{Q}eg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  43. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}xa4$  44. $\mathbb{Q}d8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  45. $\mathbb{Q}hd6$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  46. $\mathbb{Q}6d7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  47. $\mathbb{Q}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  48. $\mathbb{Q}g7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$   
 49. $h6$   $\mathbb{Q}a1+$  50. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  51. $h7$  1-0

43



White to move

What do you think of the b7-bishop? How can White gain a large advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

43

Vlastimil Hort 2575

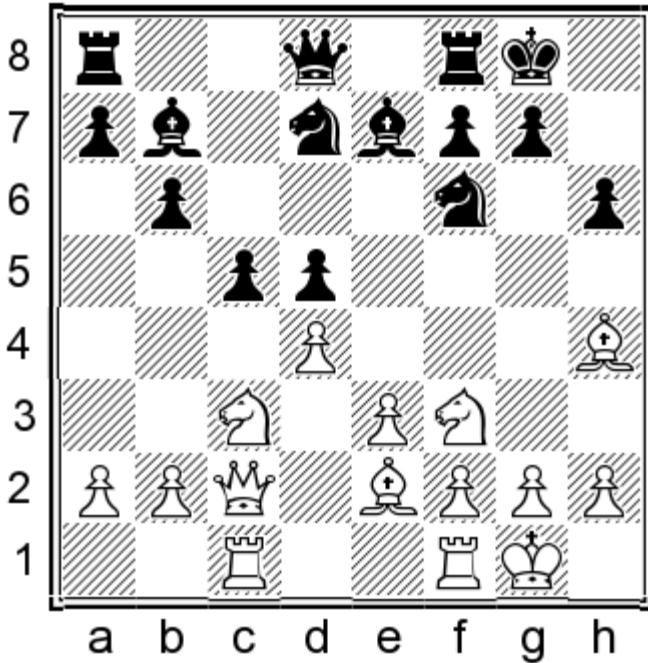
Anatoly Karpov 2690

Amsterdam 1981

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  e6 3.c4 d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}h4$  0-0 7.e3 b6 8. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  9.cxd5 exd5 10. $\mathbb{Q}e2$

The seemingly modest development of the bishop on e2, rather than d3, is designed to leave the d-file free and to consequently take an interest in the d5-pawn.

10... $\mathbb{Q}bd7$  11.0-0 c5 12. $\mathbb{Q}c2$



The value of the black position depends on the strength of the central d5-pawn which controls the e4-square. From this point of view the b7-bishop is extremely important, and even if its own scope is limited by the d5-pawn it does defend it effectively and the other pieces can only be active because of this.

12...a6?!

Preparing the typical plan of ...c5-c4 followed by ...b6-b5 to mobilize the black majority, but this is not yet feasible under good conditions.

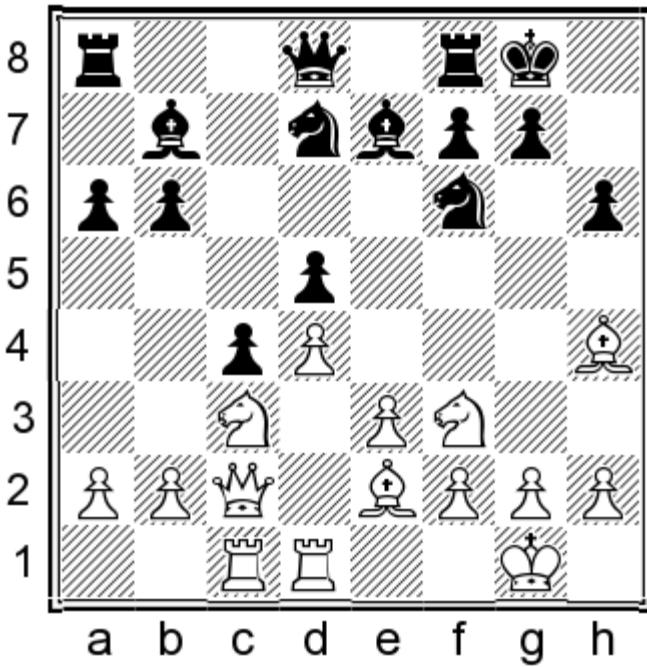
12... $\mathbb{Q}c8$  13. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$ , for example, keeps Black's position solid.

13. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$

The rook puts pressure on the d5-pawn, which will allow  $\mathbb{Q}f3-e5$  to be played without worrying about the knight being exchanged.

13...c4?!

Here again, 13... $\mathbb{E}c8$  was safer.



White to move

**14.a4!**

By preventing the c4-pawn from being supported by ...b6-b5 Hort prepares the b2-b3 lever to favourably open the queenside. Exerting central pressure by  $\mathbb{Q}f3-e5$ , possibly followed by  $\mathbb{W}c2-f5$  and  $\mathbb{Q}e2-f3$ , is another promising plan. After 14. $\mathbb{Q}e5$  b5 Black has achieved his aim and has a good position.

**14... $\mathbb{Q}c6??$**

A consistent move, and the only one that perseveres with the preparation of ...b6-b5, but it has a big flaw...

**15. $\mathbb{Q}e5!$**

With the intention of exchanging the bishop that we said was essential for the protection of the black centre.

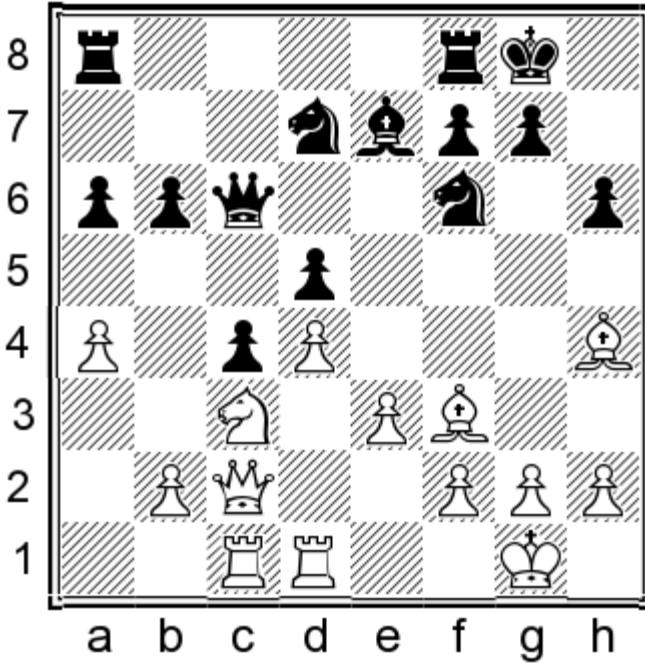
**15... $\mathbb{W}c7$**

15... $\mathbb{Q}xe5?$  16.dxe5 loses the d5-pawn.

**16. $\mathbb{Q}xc6!$**

16. $\mathbb{W}f5!$  is also strong, with a very big advantage.

**16... $\mathbb{W}xc6$  17. $\mathbb{Q}f3!$**



Black has got what he wanted and will finally play ...b6-b5 and keep a pawn on c4, but due to the disappearance of the c6-bishop it is now on d5 that the position will crack. The bishop pair also plays its role in the complications that follow.

A) The white threat is seen after, for example, 17... $\mathbb{E}ac8$ : 18. $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  19. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  and the d5-knight, which is pinned, cannot recapture on e7;

B) 17... $\mathbb{E}fe8$  is interesting, to support the e7-bishop. Let us see two possibilities:

B1) 18. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  19.e4 dxe4 20. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  (the d5-pawn has been exchanged rather than lost but the c4-pawn will be lost while the queen on c6 and the rook on a8 are badly placed on the f3-bishop's diagonal) 20... $\mathbb{E}ac8$  (20... $\mathbb{Q}d5?$  21. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  does not close the light-squared diagonal) 21. $\mathbb{Q}xf6+$   $\mathbb{W}xf6$  22. $\mathbb{Q}b7$   $\mathbb{E}cd8$  and White will have an extra pawn after 23. $\mathbb{W}xc4$  or 23. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$   $\mathbb{E}xd4$  24. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ . Nevertheless, the bishops are of opposite colours without a clear initiative for White and the black position is probably defensible;

B2) 18. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  19. $\mathbb{W}f5!$  (and not 19. $\mathbb{Q}xe7?$   $\mathbb{E}xe7$  20. $\mathbb{W}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}7f6$ ) 19... $\mathbb{Q}xh4$  (after 19... $\mathbb{Q}7f6?$  20. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  the d5-knight is lost) 20. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{W}f6$  21. $\mathbb{W}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$   $\mathbb{E}xa8$  23. $\mathbb{E}xc4$  – with a rook and two pawns for two minor pieces White has a material advantage equivalent to about a pawn, as we are in the endgame. Moreover he also has an excellent central position which, all told, gives him a significant advantage.

C) 17... $\mathbb{E}ae8$  defends the e7-bishop while removing the rook from the f3-bishop's diagonal so that there is no longer any effective combination for White at the moment: 18.b3! b5 19.axb5 axb5 20.bxc4 bxc4 21. $\mathbb{E}b1!$  (the Black rooks are passive and the threat is 22. $\mathbb{E}b5$ , winning the d5-pawn) and now:

C1) 21... $\mathbb{E}b8$  again allows the combination 22. $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  23. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$ ;

C2) 21...g5 22. $\mathbb{Q}g3$  g4 23. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  maintains the central pawns, but the weakening of the kingside is important and White has a large advantage.

### 17... $\mathbb{Q}b4$

Karpov wants to exchange on c3 to secure the light squares.

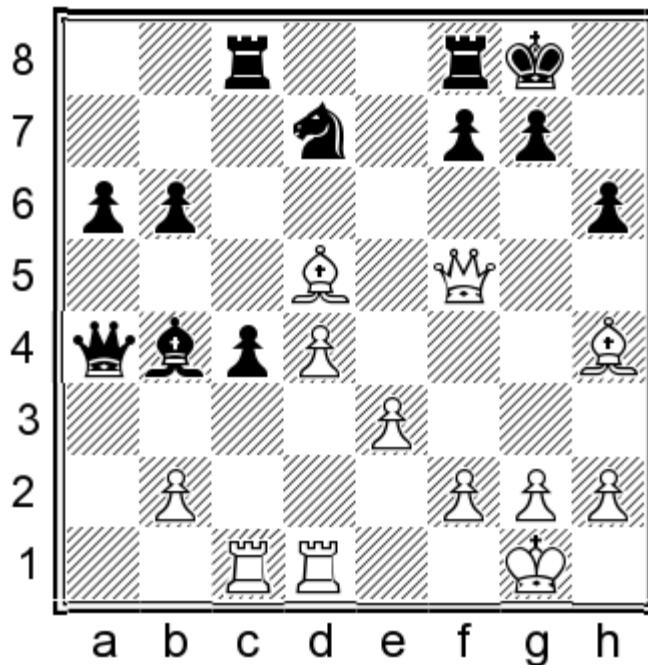
**18. $\mathbb{Q}xd5!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  19. $\mathbb{W}f5$**

A sequence that we have already seen.

**19... $\mathbb{W}xa4$**

19... $\mathbb{Q}7f6$  20. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  does not defend anything.

**20. $\mathbb{Q}xd5 \mathbb{E}ac8$**



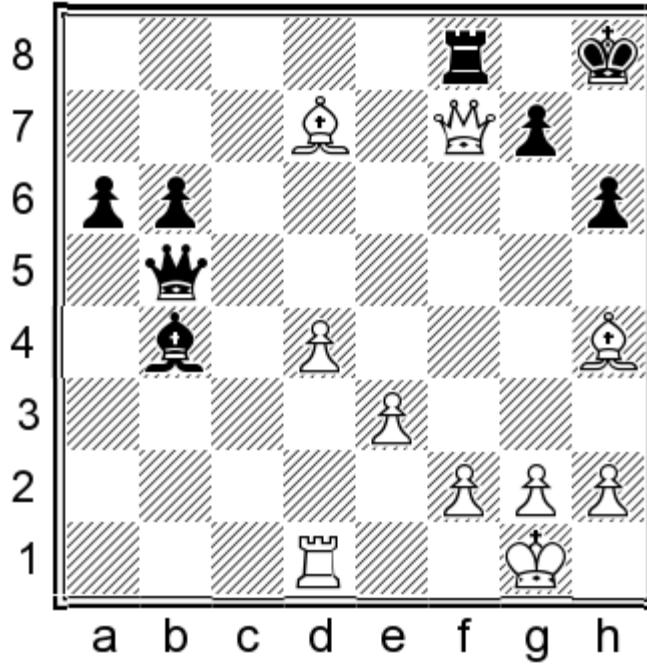
**21.b3!**

21. $\mathbb{Q}xc4?$  allows 21... $\mathbb{E}xc4!$  and the c1-rook cannot recapture as it defends its colleague on d1.

**21... $\mathbb{E}xb3$**

21... $\mathbb{E}xb3$  abandons the defence of the d7-knight.

**22. $\mathbb{E}xc8 \mathbb{E}xc8$  23. $\mathbb{W}xf7+ \mathbb{Q}h8$  24. $\mathbb{Q}xb3 \mathbb{W}b5$  25. $\mathbb{Q}e6 \mathbb{E}f8$  26. $\mathbb{Q}xd7$**



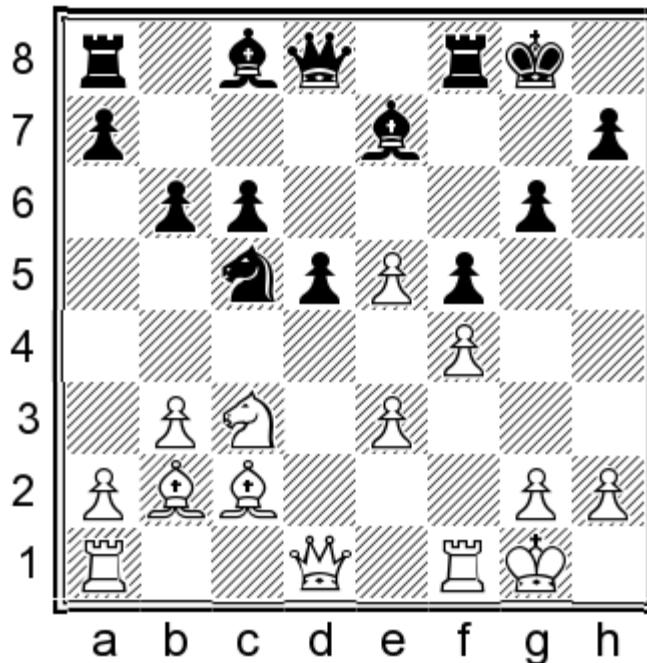
Black resigned.

Two variations are possible:

A) 26... $\mathbb{W}e2$  (both the white queen and rook are attacked) 27. $\mathbb{W}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}e1$  (attacking and pinning the f2-pawn) 28. $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2+$  29. $\mathbb{Q}xf2$   $\mathbb{W}xf2+$  30. $\mathbb{Q}h1$  and there is no back-rank mate;

B) 26... $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  27. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$   $axb5$  28. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  (indirectly defending the b4-bishop) 29.g4  $\mathbb{Q}c4$  30. $\mathbb{Q}d8$  and a second pawn will drop.

44



White to move

Which plan gives White an advantage? Can you consider the ramifications depending on Black's various replies?

Show/Hide Solution

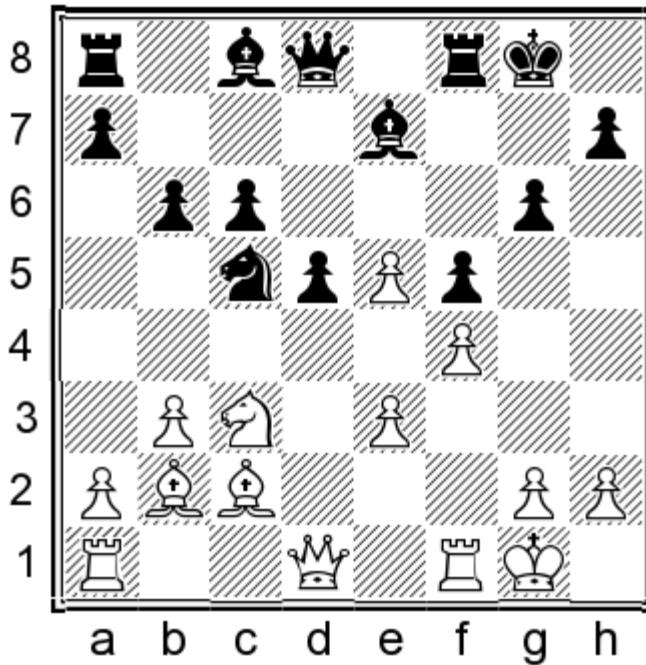
44

Vladimir Makogonov

Mikhail Yudovich

Leningrad ch-URS 1939 (7)

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  c6 4.e3  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}bd7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  7.dxe5  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  8.f4  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  9.cxd5 exd5 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  0-0 11.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}c5$  12. $\mathbb{Q}c2$  f5 13.b3 g6 14. $\mathbb{Q}b2$  b6



White to move

Various formations are possible for each of the two sides, with a tendency towards a slight white advantage. Only one plan, to be played right away, can really hinder Black: the advance of the b3-pawn to b5 to take advantage of the vulnerability of the d5-pawn.

15.b4!  $\mathbb{Q}e4$

Or else 15... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  (with the idea of playing ...d5-d4) 16.b5 with a choice:

A) 16... $\mathbb{Q}b7$ ? (passive without being solid) 17.bxc6  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  18. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  and White has the choice between playing for an attack by 19.e4!? fxe4 20. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  with ideas of going to d6 or f6, or of attacking the centre by 19. $\mathbb{W}f3$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  20. $\mathbb{E}ad1$   $\mathbb{E}ad8$  21. $\mathbb{E}d2$  followed by 22. $\mathbb{E}fd1$ ;

B) 16...d4! 17. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ ! (to get a pawn on c6; 17.exd4  $\mathbb{W}xd4+$  18. $\mathbb{Q}h1$   $\mathbb{W}xd1$  19. $\mathbb{E}fxd1$  c5 20. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  is a little better for White) 17...dxe3 18.bxc6  $\mathbb{Q}c5$  19. $\mathbb{Q}b3$  – Black is struggling in this complex situation. The c8-bishop is tied to the defence of the knight and a good answer to 19... $\mathbb{W}c7$  is 20. $\mathbb{W}d5$ , securely defending the c6-pawn.

16. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ !

One important idea behind the 15... $\mathbb{Q}e4$  move is to secure the d5-pawn by exchanging the c3-knight, which White therefore decides to keep at the cost of the bishop pair.

### 16...dxe4

16...fxe4 17.b5! leads to a white advantage due to the pressure on the d5-pawn and the permanent threat of opening the long diagonal:

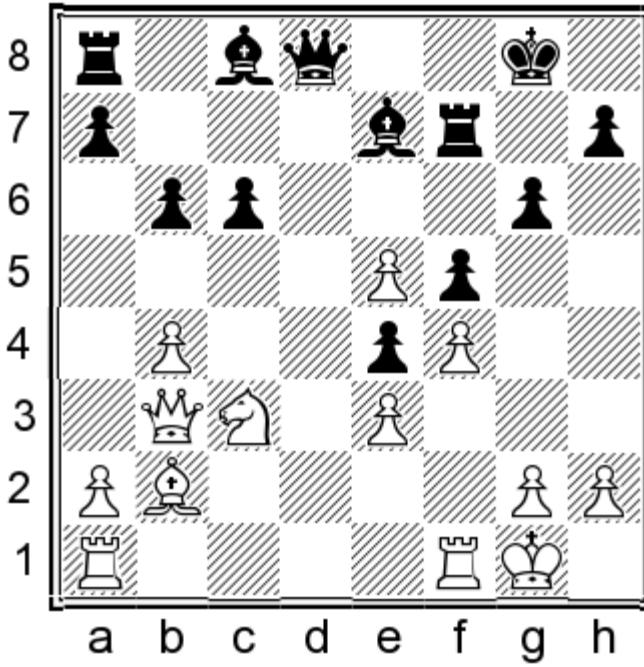
- A) 17... $\mathbb{Q}b7?$  18.bxc6  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  19. $\mathbb{W}b3$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  and now 20. $\mathbb{Q}xe4?$  is met by 20... $\mathbb{Q}a4!$  but it can be prepared by 20.a4!, and if 20... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  then 21. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  anyway (21...dxe4? 22.e6+);
- B) 17... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  18.bxc6  $\mathbb{Q}c5$  19. $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{W}e8$  (19... $\mathbb{W}c8?$  allows 20. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  and if 20... $\mathbb{W}d8$  then 21. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ ) 20. $\mathbb{Q}b5$  (20. $\mathbb{Q}xd5?$   $\mathbb{W}d8)$  20... $\mathbb{W}xc6$  21.a4 when, depending on the circumstances, White will play  $\mathbb{Q}b5-d6$  without fear of losing a pawn or  $\mathbb{Q}b2-a3$  to exchange the dark-squared bishops.

### 17. $\mathbb{W}b3+!$

To prevent the blockading move 17... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ .

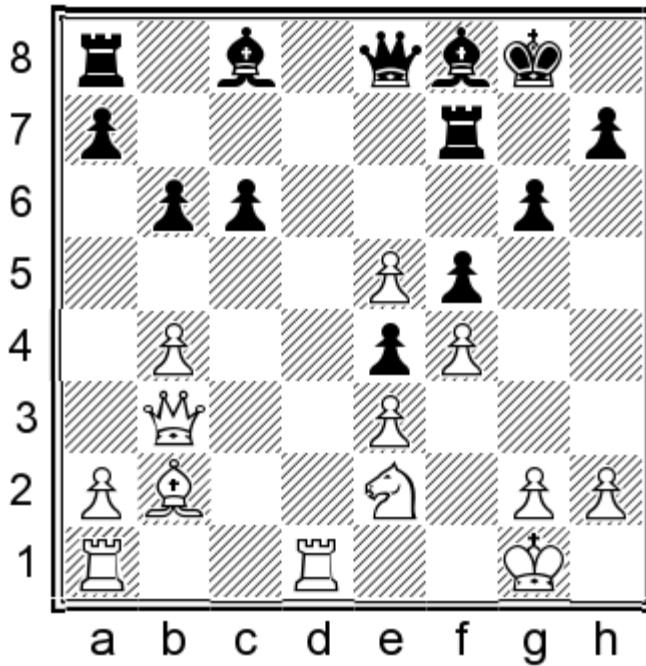
### 17... $\mathbb{Q}f7$

After 17... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  the king is exposed on the long diagonal. One possible continuation is 18. $\mathbb{Q}ad1$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  (or else 18... $\mathbb{W}e8$  19.e6  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  20. $\mathbb{Q}d6$  when the e6-pawn is defended and White is winning) 19. $\mathbb{W}c4!$  (the threat of going to b5 or d5 with the knight deflects the black queen from its control of the d6-square; 19. $\mathbb{Q}d6!?$ , in the spirit of the game, is also strong but not decisive) 19... $\mathbb{W}b7$  20.e6 and now neither 20... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  21. $\mathbb{Q}d6$  nor 20... $\mathbb{Q}h6$  21.g4 fxg4 22. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  leave Black any hope.



A clear win is obtained by 18.e6!  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  (he must try to eliminate the e6-pawn) 19. $\mathbb{Q}xe4!$  fxe4 (19... $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  20. $\mathbb{W}c3$ ) 20. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  21.e7+.

### 18... $\mathbb{W}e8$ 19. $\mathbb{Q}e2$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$



The exchange sacrifice  $\mathbb{Q}d1-d6$ , played now or later, is a key element to progress. It can be prepared by 20. $\mathbb{W}c3$  (the queen takes its place on the long diagonal and eyes the c6-pawn) 20... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  with a choice:

A) 21. $\mathbb{Q}d6$  puts pressure on c6 and e6. Black cannot capture the rook for now and must defend accurately:

A1) 21... $\mathbb{Q}d5$ ? 22.e6  $\mathbb{R}g7$  23. $\mathbb{Q}d7$  is hopeless;

A2) 21... $\mathbb{Q}c8$ ?! 22. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  (this is better than on the previous move because the d4-knight blocks the queen/bishop battery, but it offers White the opportunity for a combination) 23.e6  $\mathbb{R}g7$  24.e7! – the g7-rook cannot move and the f8-bishop must continue to protect it, which only leaves 24... $\mathbb{W}xe7$  but this allows 25. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  with a large white advantage;

A3) 21...c5! 22.bxc5 bxc5 the c5-pawn takes the d4-square from the white knight, but its capture would give the black rooks a lot of activity and in many cases the possibility of taking the d-rook under favourable conditions. Let us see a typical illustrative variation: 23. $\mathbb{W}xc5$  (23. $\mathbb{Q}c1$ !? followed by 24. $\mathbb{Q}b3$  is unclear) 23... $\mathbb{Q}c8$  24. $\mathbb{W}d4$ ?!  $\mathbb{W}b5$ ! 25. $\mathbb{Q}e1$  (25. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ ?  $\mathbb{W}xe2$  is losing because of the threat of 26... $\mathbb{Q}c2$ ) 25... $\mathbb{Q}c4$  26. $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$ ! 27.exd6  $\mathbb{W}d5$  – Black has repulsed the enemy pieces before taking the exchange and he is better.

B) 21. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ , again with pressure on c6 and e6, is also dangerous:

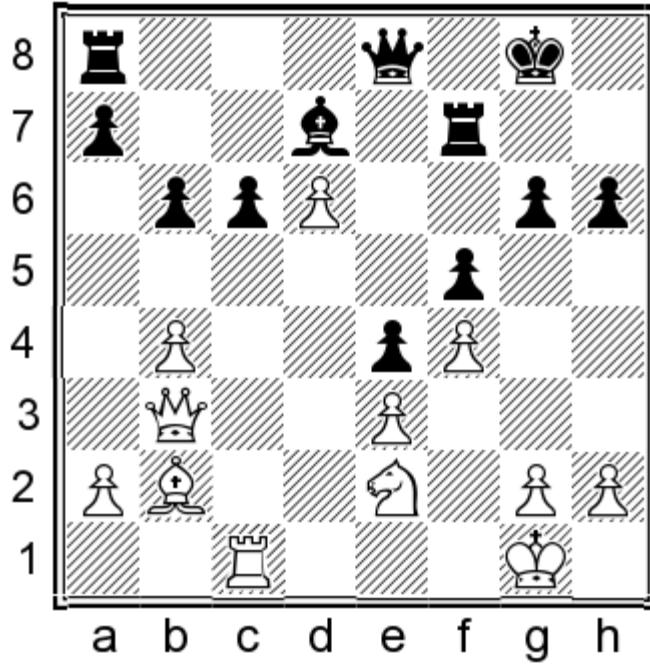
B1) 21...c5? 22. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $\mathbb{W}xe6$  23. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ ! cxb4 24. $\mathbb{W}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  25.exd6  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  26. $\mathbb{W}h8+$  wins the a8-rook;

B2) 21... $\mathbb{Q}xb4$ ! 22. $\mathbb{W}xb4$  c5 23. $\mathbb{W}a3$  cxd4 24. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  – Black has kept the position closed and his rooks have reasonable prospects. Chances are level.

## 20. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ ?

The c8-bishop cannot go to e6 and Black is more or less obliged to accept the sacrifice, however the queen/bishop battery is not yet set up.

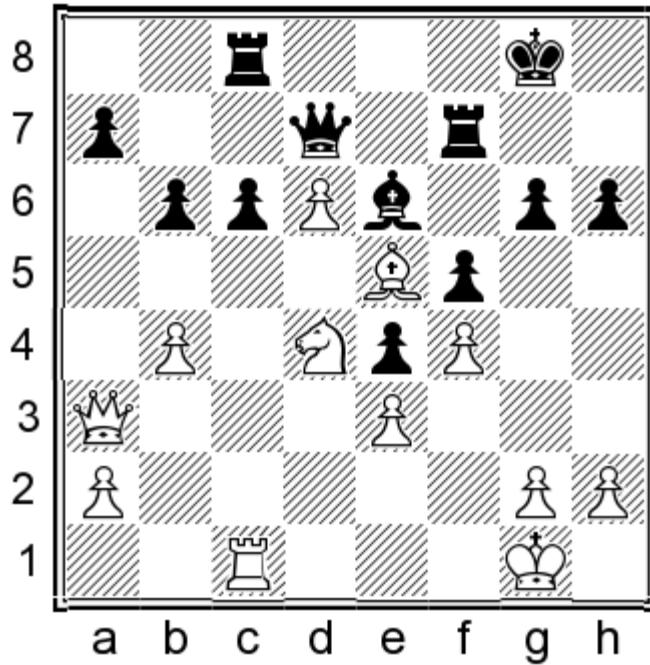
**20... $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  21.exd6 h6 22. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$**



**23.♘e5**

23.♘c3 ♔h7 gives nothing concrete so Makogonov chooses to establish a good central position and to solidly defend the d6-pawn.

**23...♜c8 24.♝a3 ♘e6 25.♞d4 ♛d7**



The two white minor pieces can play on the dark squares but the black bishop cannot. When such a material distribution can be obtained after an exchange sacrifice, this tends to increase the compensation.

In our game White cannot make any progress but locks the dark squares so well that he has nothing to fear, taking into account the d6-pawn and the insecurity of the black king.

## 26.b5!?

The desire to win often makes it possible to avoid a draw, one way or the other.

## 26...cxb5?

After 26...c5! 27.♗c6 Black can return the exchange for a pawn by 27...♝xc6 28.bxc6 ♜xc6 or 27...♝d5 28.♗e7+ ♜xe7 29.dxe7 ♜xe7. In both cases he is a bit better.

## 27.♝c7!

Initiating the decisive combination.

## 27...♝xc7

On 27...♝e8 28.♗xe6 ♜xe6 29.♝b3! wins.

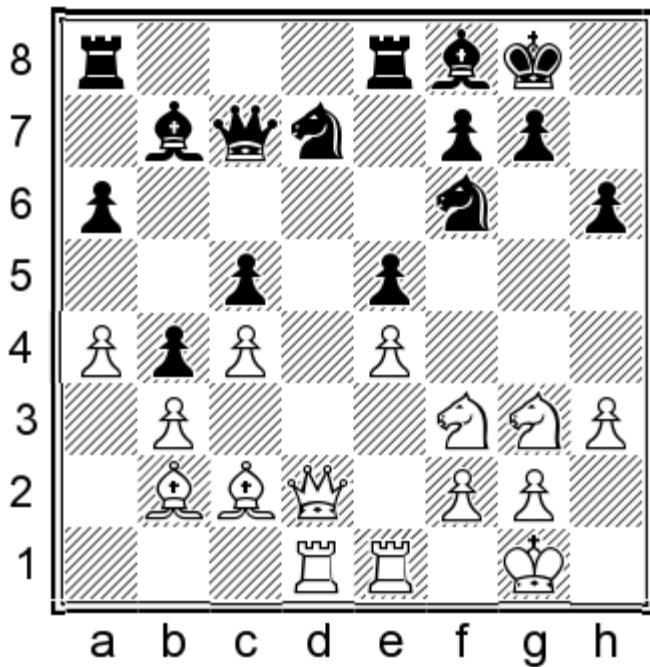
## 28.dxc7 a5 29.♗xe6 ♜xe6 30.♝d6! ♜c4

After 30...♜c8 the simplest is to take a lot of pawns: 31.♜xg6+ ♔f8 32.♜xh6+ ♔e8 33.♜xb6

## 31.♜xg6+ ♔f8 32.♝d6+ ♔e8 33.♜g8+ ♔d7 34.♜d8+

Black resigned.

45

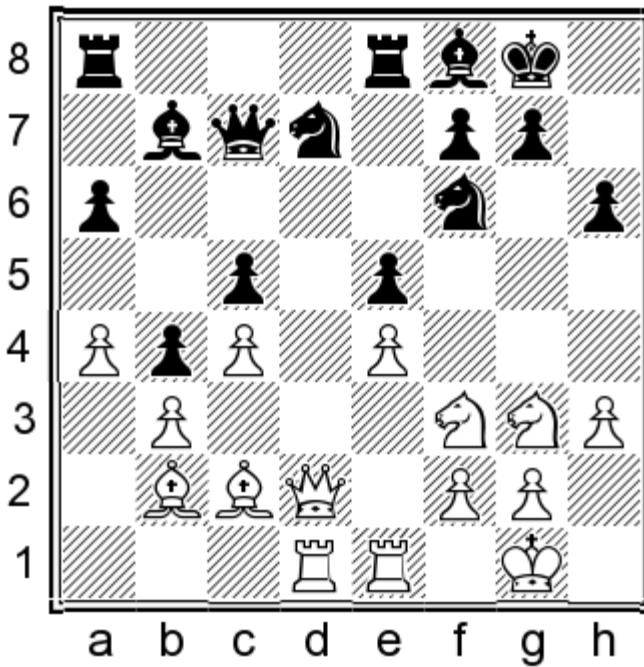


White to move

Which plan gives White the advantage? How can you implement it?

Show/Hide Solution

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗b5 a6 4.♗a4 ♘f6 5.0-0 ♘e7 6.♕e1 b5 7.♗b3 d6 8.c3 0-0 9.h3 h6 10.d4 ♘e8 11.♗bd2 ♘f8  
 12.♗f1 ♘b7 13.♗g3 ♘a5 14.♗c2 ♘c4 15.b3 ♘b6 16.♗b2 ♘bd7 17.♗d2 c5 18.♗ad1 ♘a5 19.dxc5 dxc5 20.c4 b4  
 21.a4 ♘c7



*White to move*

The symmetrical central pawn structure indicates that the installation of a knight on d4 or d5 is an important plan for both sides. Until this is achieved the open d-file plays a big role. The white pressure on the e5-pawn cannot be exploited directly, but it interferes with Black's manoeuvring. This is also true, to a lesser extent, for the black pressure on the e4-pawn.

**22.♗f5!**

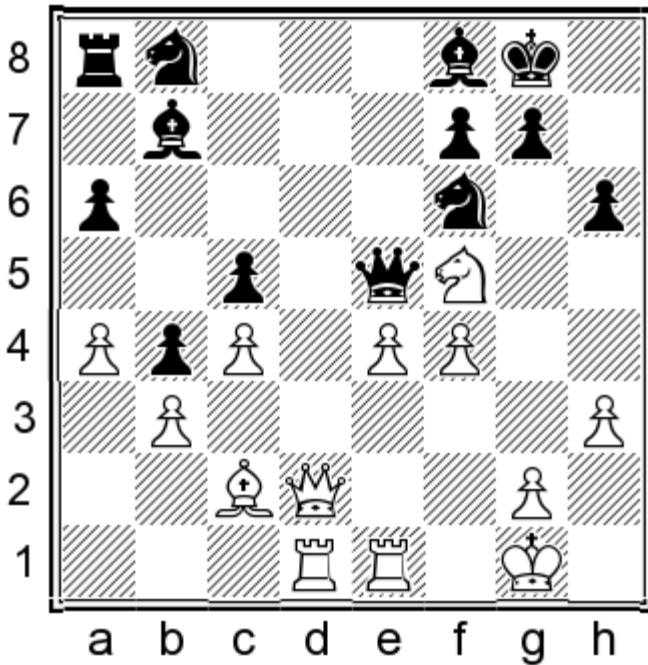
This prepares 23.♗e3, as then 23...♗xe4? would lose the d7-knight, as well as the sacrifice on e5 in answer to 22...♗b8, which we will see in detail.

22.♗f1?!?, with the same idea, is too timid and after 22...♗b8! (better than 22...♗ad8 23.♗c1 as now 23...♗b8? is no good because of 24.♗xd8 ♗xd8 25.♗xe5) 23.♗e3! ♘c6! (23...♗xe4? 24.♗d5! ♘xd2 25.♗xc7 is losing) 24.♗d5 ♗d8 Black has a solid position and is not necessarily in a hurry to play ...♘c6-d4.

**22...♗b8?**

After 22...♗ad8 23.♗c1! (but not 23.♗e3? ♘xe4 nor 23.♗d6?! ♘xd6 24.♗xd6 ♗a5! – threatening to win the queen – 25.♗d2 ♘b8 and in both cases Black is better), White prepares to play ♗c1-b1, to strengthen the e4-pawn, followed by ♗f5-e3-d5. Due to the pressure on the e5-pawn Black cannot easily counter this, or install his knight on d4, and so he is worse. The white queen may also go to a1 in certain variations.

23.♘xe5! ♕xe5 24.♗xe5 ♖xe5 25.f4



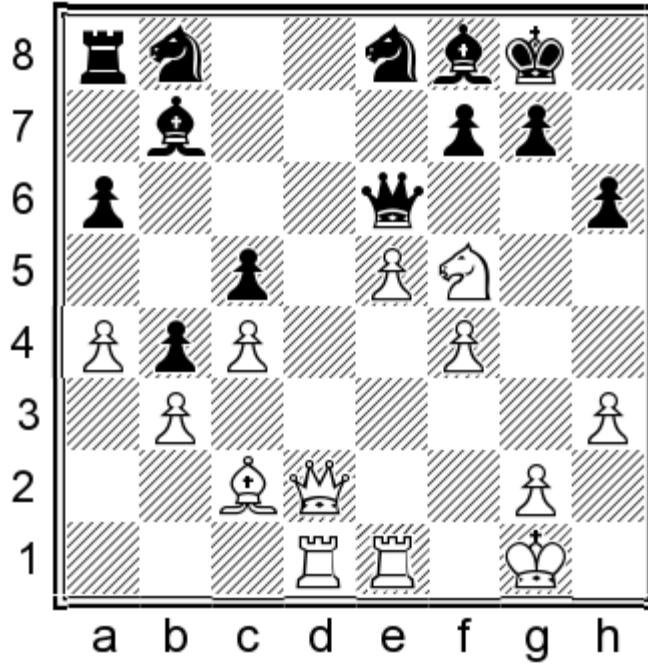
White has sacrificed two pieces for a rook and pawn, which in a middlegame approximately corresponds to the sacrifice of a pawn. In exchange he has obtained a central majority that advances with gain of time on the black pieces and which will give him a large space advantage and an attack on the king. In addition, the black queenside is still undeveloped.

25...♕e6

After 25...♕c3 26.♕c1! (threatening 27.♖d3) 26...♗fd7 27.e5! the queen's retreat has been cut off and it will soon be lost.

26.e5 ♘e8

After 26...♗e4, to try to exchange the knights, let us see a decisive follow-up for White: 27.♗xe4 ♕xe4 28.♗d6! (28.♗xe4? ♖xf5 shows the idea of 26...♗e4; 28.♗xg7 ♖xg7 29.♗xe4 ♘c6 leaves Black some saving chances) 28...♖xd6 29.♖xd6 ♖xd6 30.♖xd6 ♖b7 (keeping the rook defended; after 30...♘c2 31.♖d8+ ♔h7 32.♖e3 the pin on the knight is decisive) 31.♖d8+ ♔h7 32.♖f8 ♘c6 (or 32...♔g6 33.f5+ ♖xf5 34.♖xf7+) 33.♖xf7 – White has a rook and two well-advanced pawns for the two black minor pieces and he will prevail.



**27.♘h4!**

Leaving the way open for the f4-pawn and freeing the b1-h7 diagonal.

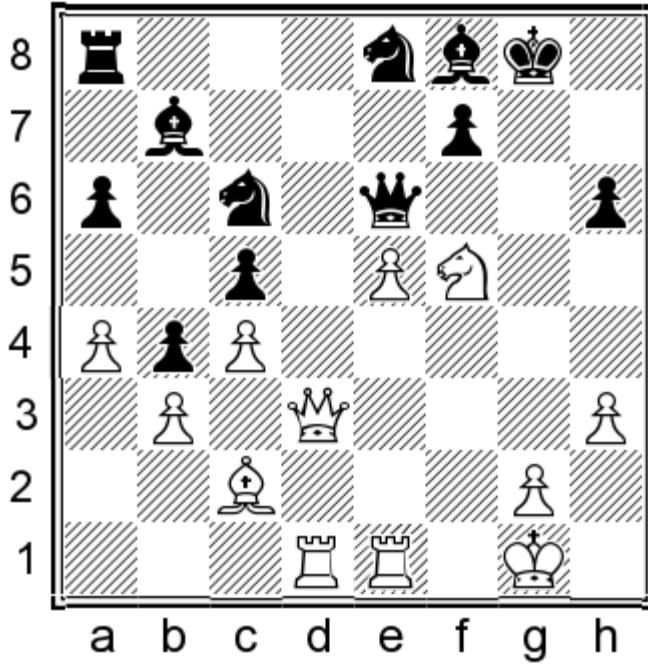
27.♘d6 ♘xd6 28.exd6 is also good, with a strong passed pawn and threats to the king.

**27...♘c6 28.♗d3!**

A thematic move to force a weakness before opening lines.

The immediate advance 28.f5? ♗c8 29.e6 (or 29.f6 ♘d4) 29...♘f6 is not convincing.

**28...g6 29.f5! gxf5 30.♘xf5**



The queen/bishop battery now has an open diagonal and White is winning. One threat is 31.  $\mathbb{Q}e7+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  32.  $\mathbb{W}h7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  33.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ .

**30... $\mathbb{W}g6$  31. $\mathbb{W}e2$**

31.  $\mathbb{W}d7?$  is tempting, with the ideas 32.  $\mathbb{W}xb7$  and 32.  $\mathbb{Q}e7+$ , but this allows 31...  $\mathbb{Q}c8!$  32.  $\mathbb{W}xe8$   $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  33.  $\mathbb{W}xa8$   $\mathbb{Q}xc2$  with complications.

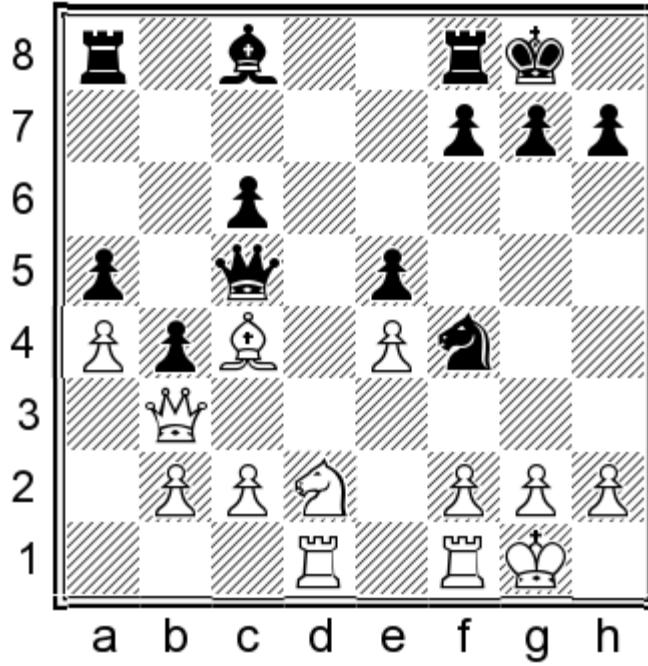
**31... $\mathbb{W}g5?$**

After 31...  $\mathbb{W}e6$  32.  $\mathbb{W}e4$   $\mathbb{W}g6$  there is a clear win by 33.  $\mathbb{E}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  34.  $\mathbb{E}d5$  (34.  $\mathbb{W}d3?$   $\mathbb{W}xg2\#$  is to be avoided) 34...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  35.  $\mathbb{E}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  36.  $\mathbb{W}f4$ .

**32.h4**

The black queen is trapped.

**32... $\mathbb{W}f4$  33.g3  $\mathbb{W}xe5$  34.  $\mathbb{W}g4+$   $\mathbb{W}g7$  35.  $\mathbb{Q}xg7$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  36.  $\mathbb{W}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  37.  $\mathbb{W}c7$   $\mathbb{E}b8$  38.  $\mathbb{E}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  39.  $\mathbb{E}xc6$   $\mathbb{Q}d4+$  40.  $\mathbb{W}f1$  1-0**



White to move

What plan gives White good prospects and how should Black react to it?

Show/Hide Solution

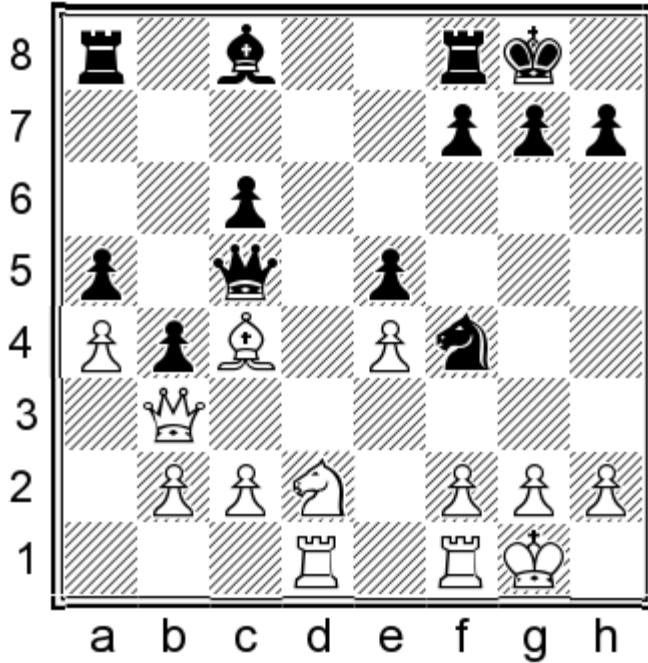
46

Ratmir Kholmov

Alexey Suetin

Leningrad ch-URS 1963 (8)

1.e4 c5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3.d4 cxd4 4. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  e6 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  a6 7.a3 b5 8. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  dxc6 9.0-0 e5 10. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  11.a4 b4 12. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  13. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  14. $\mathbb{Q}c4$  0-0 15. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  16. $\mathbb{Q}d2$  a5 17. $\mathbb{Q}ad1$   $\mathbb{Q}f4$  18. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}xc5$



*White to move*

Black has advanced his queenside pawns a lot, which can either give him a big space advantage or else many squares to cover. This double aspect will be abundantly illustrated in this game.

The f4-knight is well placed and represents a danger to the white king.

White's plan is to try to exploit the black queenside weaknesses while ensuring the safety of his king.

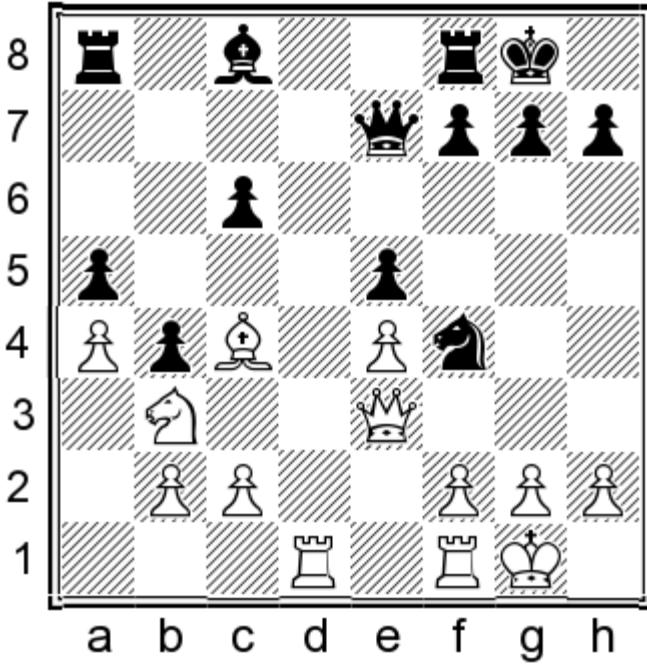
**19.♘e3!**

Freeing the b3-square for the knight, from where it will control a5 and c5.

**19...♝e7!**

After 19...♝xe3? 20.fxe3 ♜g6 (20...♜e6 21.♗f3!) 21.♗b3 White threatens 22.♖d6 and enjoys a significant advantage.

**20.♗b3**



**20...Qe6**

By exchanging bishops Black reduces pressure on the white king so as to strengthen his queenside.

A) On 20...Bg5 21.Bg3 Be7!? White does not really have anything better than repeating moves by 22.Qe3 to return to the main plan. Instead of 21.Bg3, 21.g3 leads to a good game for Black after 21...Qh3+ 22.Qh1 Qxe3 23.fxe3 Qg4 24.Qd6 Qg5 with the ideas 25...Qxe4 and 25...Qf3+, winning the exchange;

B) 20...Qg4!? is interesting, with two possibilities:

B1) 21.f3? Qh3! 22.Qf2 (and not 22.gxh3? Bg5+ 23.Qf2 Bg2+ 24.Qe1 Bxc2) 22...Bg5 23.g3 (23.Qf1? loses the queen after 23...Bxg2 24.Qxg2 Qh3+) 23...Qe6! (menacing 24...Qh3+) 24.Qh1! Bxc4 25.gxf4 exf4 is in Black's favour;

B2) 21.Qd2! Bg5 (threatening 22...Qe6) with a new crossroads:

B2a) 22.Qg3 Qh5 23.Qe3 Bxe3!? (23...Qf4 repeats the position) 24.fxe3 Qf6 is unclear;

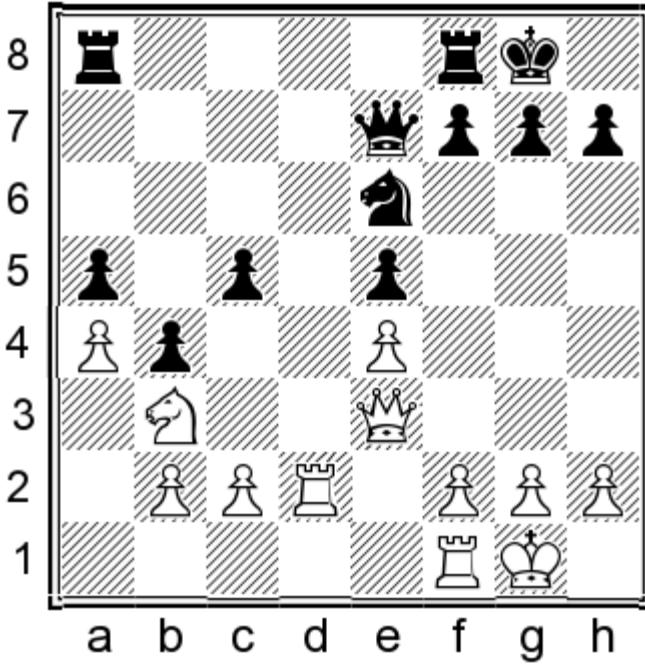
B2b) 22.Qe1!? Qe6! (after 22...Qe2?! 23.Qg3 Bxg3 24.Qxf7+ Qxf7 25.hxg3 Qc4 26.gxf4 Black is worse, whether he exchanges on b3 or lets the knight go to c5) 23.Qf1 leads to a complex position.

**21.Qxe6 Qxe6**

The knight notably controls the sensitive c5-square.

**22.Qd2 c5**

The pressure on the a5-pawn hinders Black from challenging for control of the d-file, but exchanging a pair of rooks before advancing the c-pawn gives him a good game, for example: 22...Qfd8! 23.Qfd1 Qxd2 24.Qxd2 c5! 25.Qd5! (the attack on the black queenside remains the main theme) 25...c4! and now 26.Qd2! Bc7 maintains the balance, but not 26.Qxa5? Bc7! nor 26.Qc5?! Qf4! with the idea of 27.Qd7? Qd8! (the exchange of rooks has weakened White's back rank) 28.Qxd8+ (or 28.Qd2 Qxd7 29.Qxd7 Bg5! with the threats of 30...Bxg2 mate and 30...Qh3+, winning the queen) 28...Qxd8 (threatening 29...Qd1+) 29.Qe1 Qd4 30.Qb7 Bxb2 (30...Bb6? allows 31.Qd2!) and Black wins.



**23...d5!**

This avoids the expulsion of the knight that would occur after 23...fd1?! c4! (23...d4 is enough for a comfortable game) as 24.d7? allows 24...fd8! 25.xd8+ xd8 26.xd8+ xd8 27.d2 d7! when the c4-pawn is taboo and Black exploits this to take an interest in the a4-pawn, which cannot be defended without serious concessions. One instructive continuation is 28.e2 c3! 29.bxc3 xa4 30.cxb4 xb4 and the passed a-pawn decides the game.

**23...c4 24.d5**

White has managed to take advantage of the weakness of the black queenside and has a slight advantage.

**24...fc8**

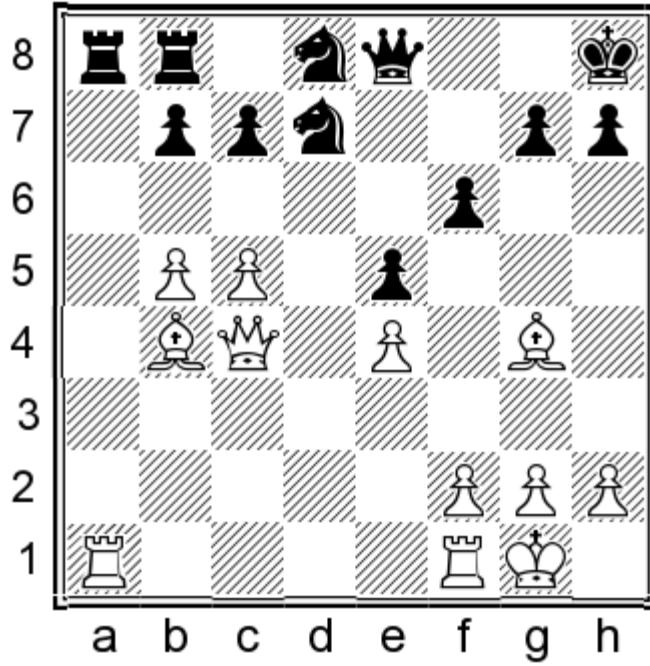
A) 24...f4 25.d7 g5 26.g3 ac8 gives some counterplay. The c5-knight requires defending and Black can sometimes sacrifice the exchange to deflect the white queen, for instance in the variation 27.h1 xc5 28.xc5 g4 (attacking the d7-rook and threatening mate in 2 moves) 29.gxf4 f3+ with a perpetual check. Instead of 27.h1, 27.fd1 maintains the pressure, but the position remains complicated;

B) 24...xc5 is also interesting:

B1) 25.xc5 xc5 26.xc5 c3! 27.bxc3 (27.b3 fd8 gives Black enough counterplay) 27...fc8 28.cxb4 axb4 29.xc8+ xc8 30.b1 xc2 31.f1 c4 32.a5 f8 (32...c5? 33.xb4, threatening mate) 33.a6 c6! 34.a1 c8! with the idea of ...b4-b3-b2; the exchange of the a- and b-pawns is inevitable and the game is drawn;

B2) 25.xc5! fc8 26.d5 (26.b5 c3! 27.b3 d8) is the most promising, even if after 26...e8!? 27.a1 the a1-rook is tied to the defence of the a4-pawn for a while.

(continuation and solution 60)



*White to move*

How can White gain a very large advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

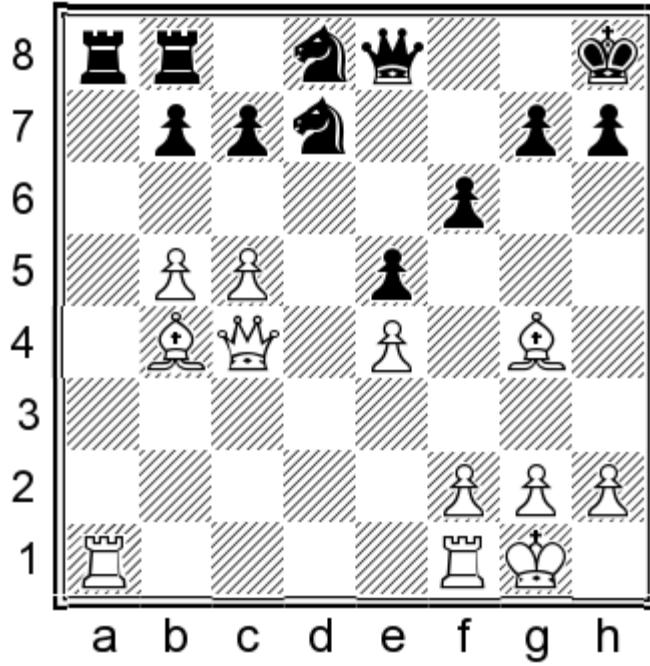
47

Gedeon Barcza

Alexandar Tsvetkov

Marianske Lazne zt 1951 (13)

1.e4 e5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3.d3  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4.c3 d5 5. $\mathbb{W}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  0-0 7.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  8. $\mathbb{Q}bd2$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  9.b4  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  10.a3 a6 11. $\mathbb{Q}b2$  dx $e$ 4  
12.dx $e$ 4  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  13.c4  $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  14. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  f6 15. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{W}e7$  16.a4  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  17.b5  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  18. $\mathbb{Q}b2$   $\mathbb{E}c8$  19. $\mathbb{Q}a3$   $\mathbb{W}e8$  20.c5 axb5 21.axb5  
 $\mathbb{Q}d7$  22. $\mathbb{Q}b4$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  23. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  24. $\mathbb{W}xc4+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  25. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{E}cb8$

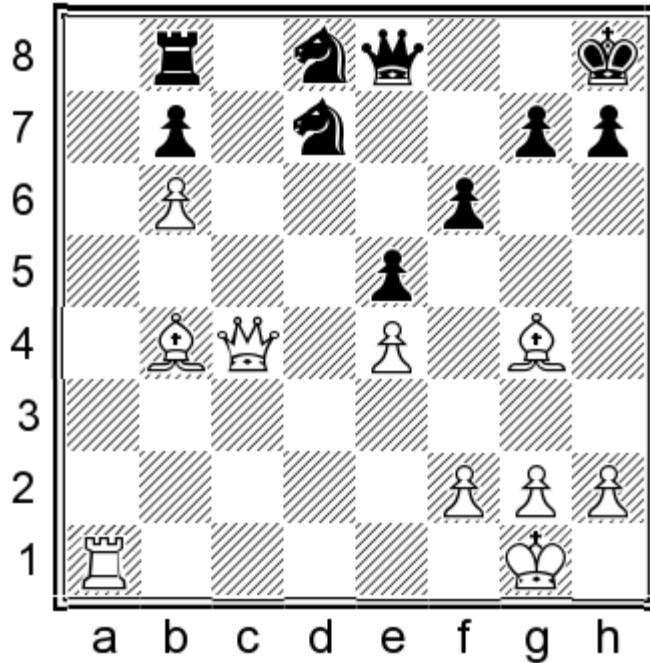


*White to move*

White has a big space advantage on the queenside and a powerful bishop pair. He is clearly better and will remain so if he chooses a quiet continuation. Nevertheless, Black's position is solid and in particular he can regroup by ... $\mathbb{Q}d7-f8$  followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}d8-e6$  with an eye on the d4-square.

A) 26.c6? is no good, as after 26...bxc6 27.bxc6  $\mathbb{Q}b6$  the c6-pawn is attacked and will be lost;

B) 26.b6?! is better, but after, for example, 26... $\mathbb{Q}xa1$  27. $\mathbb{Q}xa1$  cxb6! (27...c6?! is solid, but misses a chance to equalize) 28.cxb6



*analysis diagram*

28... $\mathbb{Q}c6$ ! (and not 28... $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ ? 29. $\mathbb{W}c7$ !) with a choice:

B1) 29. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  30. $\mathbb{W}b5$   $\mathbb{E}a8$ ! and the attack on the a1-rook saves the knight, which would still be safe after 31. $\mathbb{E}xa8$ ?!  $\mathbb{W}xa8$ ! because of the back-rank mate; White will probably win the b7-pawn but the disappearance of all the pawns on the queenside makes it unlikely that he will be able to exploit his advantage;

B2) 29. $\mathbb{W}b5$   $\mathbb{E}d8$  allows White to keep his b6-pawn, but the black pieces are now much better placed than before and the b7-pawn is hard to attack. After 30. $\mathbb{Q}d6$  there would follow 30... $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ ! 31. $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{E}a8$ !, as seen previously, and if 32. $\mathbb{E}xa8$  then 32... $\mathbb{Q}xa8$ !, winning a tempo on the bishop, is fine, but not now 32... $\mathbb{W}xa8$ ? 33. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ ! as there is no longer a back-rank mate.

## 26. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ !

There is no good way to defend the c7-pawn and Black is lost. This move cannot wait, because after, for example, 26.h4  $\mathbb{Q}f8$ ! 27. $\mathbb{Q}a5$  Black can play 27... $\mathbb{Q}de6$  and avoid weakening his position.

## 26...b6

A) After 26... $\mathbb{E}c8$  the d7-knight is pinned and 27. $\mathbb{E}fd1$  wins;

B) 26...c6 27. $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{E}c8$  28.b6 leads to the same decisive pin.

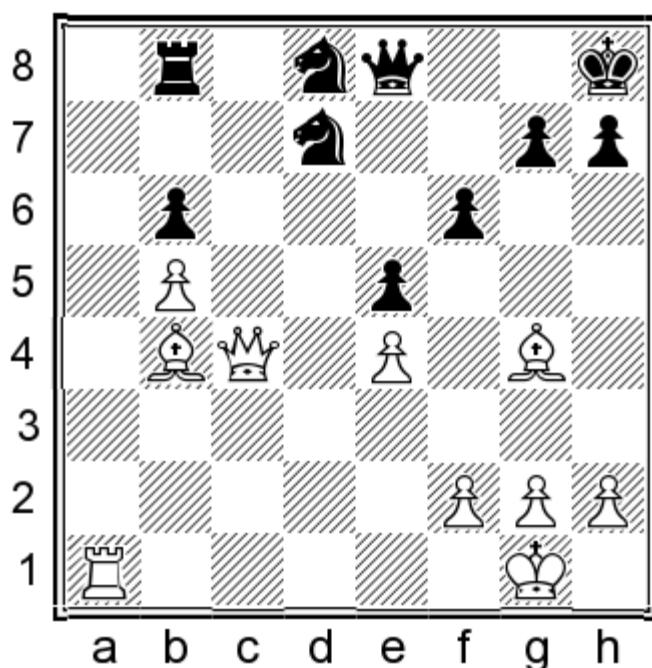
## 27.cxb6 cxb6

After 27... $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  28. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$ ! cxb6 29. $\mathbb{E}a6$ ! White puts pressure on the b6-pawn and prepares to double rooks on the a-file, taking advantage of the fact that 29... $\mathbb{E}xa6$  30.bxa6 gives him a decisive passed pawn. The attempt to install the knight on a5 or c5 by 29... $\mathbb{Q}b7$  allows 30. $\mathbb{E}xb6$ .

## 28. $\mathbb{Q}b4$

The bishop has fulfilled its mission to weaken the opposing pawn structure and returns to its post.

## 28... $\mathbb{E}xa1$ 29. $\mathbb{E}xa1$



Now we have the same position as in the previous diagram, with the only difference being that the queenside pawns are located one rank lower down. The general rule saying that it is undesirable to move pawns in an area where we are under pressure is confirmed here: the b6-pawn is more exposed than it was on b7 and the c5-square is not easily accessible to a black knight whereas the c6-square was.

### 29... $\mathbb{Q}b7$

More resistant was 29... $\mathbb{Q}c5$  (threatening to strengthen the position by 30... $\mathbb{Q}db7$ ) 30. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $bxc5$ , but after 31. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$  the b5-pawn is defended by the attack on the knight and White is getting ready to play  $\mathbb{Q}g4-d7$ ,  $\mathbb{Q}d1-d7$  or even  $\mathbb{Q}d1-d5$  if necessary. After the fall of the c5-pawn the win will be obtained thanks to the strength of the b5-pawn added to the exposed situation of the black king.

Instead of 31. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$ , 31. $\mathbb{W}xc5$  is less clear because 31... $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  (and not 31... $\mathbb{W}xb5??$  32. $\mathbb{W}f8\#$ ) 32. $\mathbb{W}c8$   $\mathbb{Q}b4!$  33.g3  $\mathbb{Q}d4$  keeps Black in the game.

### 30. $\mathbb{W}c6$

The d7-knight is too unstable for the position to be held.

### 30... $\mathbb{Q}bc5$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}a7$ $\mathbb{Q}f8$

Or else 31... $\mathbb{Q}d8$  32.g3 (winning the b6-pawn is not urgent because Black cannot undertake anything) 32...h6 33. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  34. $\mathbb{W}xb6$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  and now 35. $\mathbb{W}c7$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  36.b6 would be normal and sufficient, but 35. $\mathbb{W}b7!$   $\mathbb{W}g6$  36. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$  is stronger, winning the knight.

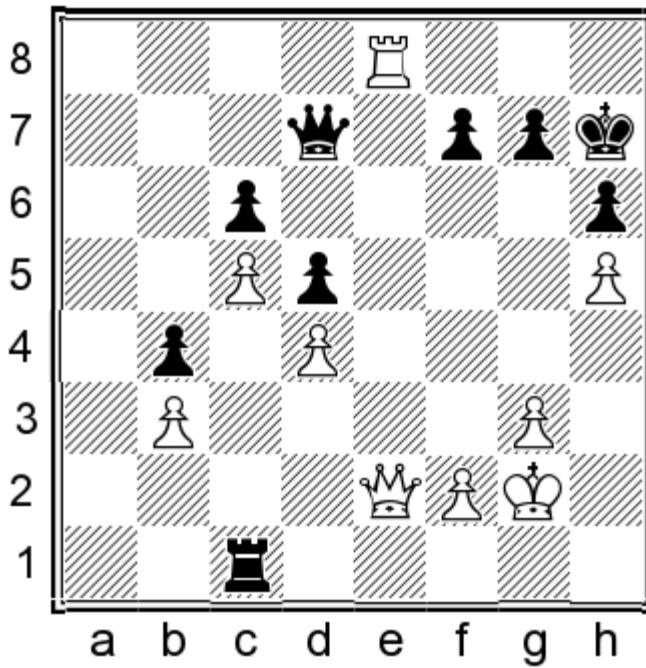
### 32. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ $\mathbb{W}xc6$

After 32... $bxc5$  the shortest is 33. $\mathbb{W}c7!$ .

### 33.bxc6 bxc5 34.h3 f5 35.c7 1-0

Show in Quiz Mode

48



White to move

What do you think of this position, and the moves 50.♕e5,

50.♖b8,

50.♗f8

and 50.♗d3+? Some calculation is necessary to supplement the understanding.

Show/Hide Solution

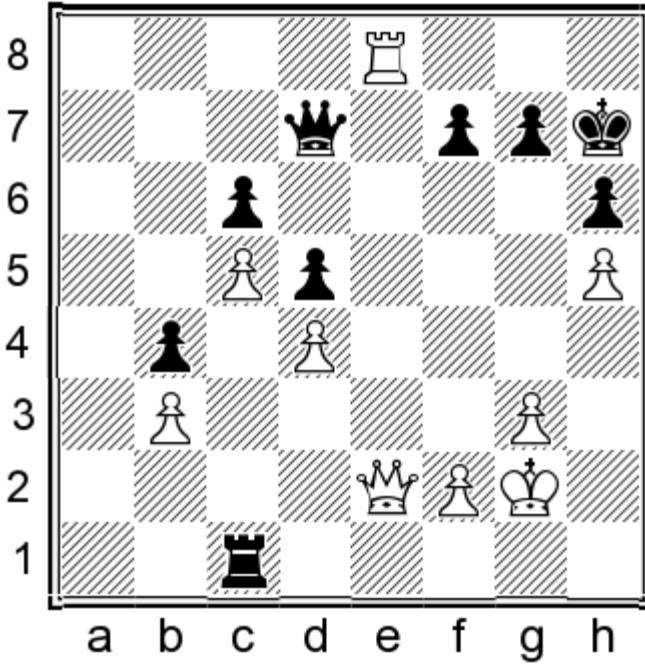
48

Lev Polugaevsky

Alexander Zaitsev

Vladimir ch-URS m 1969 (4)

1.c4 e6 2.g3 d5 3.♗g2 ♜f6 4.♗f3 ♛e7 5.0-0 0-0 6.d4 c6 7.♘c2 ♜bd7 8.b3 b6 9.♗b2 ♛b7 10.♗c3 ♜c8 11.♗ad1 b5  
12.c5 b4 13.♗b1 a5 14.♗bd2 ♜a8 15.e4 ♜xe4 16.♗xe4 dxe4 17.♘xe4 ♜f6 18.♘c2 ♜d5 19.♗e5 ♛f6 20.♗c4 ♛a6  
21.♗fe1 ♛b5 22.♗d6 ♜b8 23.♗c1 ♛a6 24.♗xd5 exd5 25.♗f4 ♜d8 26.♗e5 ♛c8 27.♗d3 ♛e6 28.♗de3 ♛e7 29.♗f5 ♛f6  
30.h4 ♛xe5 31.♗xe5 ♛xf5 32.♗xf5 a4 33.♗g2 axb3 34.axb3 ♜a3 35.♗e3 ♜a7 36.h5 h6 37.♗h3 ♜a8 38.♗f3 ♜c8+  
39.♗g2 ♜a2 40.♗e7 ♜d2 41.♗f4 ♜b8 42.♗e5 ♜a2 43.♗e3 ♜a8 44.♗e2 ♜c8 45.♗f3 ♜a1 46.♗e2 ♜c1 47.♗e8 ♛d7  
48.♗e7 ♜xe8 49.♗xe8+ ♗h7



*White to move*

In positions with only major pieces the attack on the king is often an important theme, and this is clearly the case here where the black king is both exposed and confined. The b4-pawn is defenceless and the c6- and f7-pawns are also vulnerable, especially since the black queen may have to move in search of counterplay.

An important idea for Black is to play ... $\mathbb{Q}d7-f5$ . The queen could then possibly go to b1, highlighting the fact that the white king is not safe either, but it would also prevent checks on the diagonal and monitor the h5-pawn, whose capture would give the king an escape square as well as threatening a check on h1. The vulnerability of the b3- and d4-pawns may play a role, especially in the case of a transposition into an endgame.

A) 50. $\mathbb{W}e5?$  takes the f5-square from the black queen and threatens 51. $\mathbb{W}b8$ , but it allows 50... $\mathbb{W}g4!$  with pressure on the h5- and d4-pawns. Now 51. $\mathbb{W}b8?$   $\mathbb{W}xh5$  loses, as well as 51.f3?  $\mathbb{R}c2+$ . Better is 51. $\mathbb{R}f8$ , which nevertheless leaves Black in the game after, for example, 51... $\mathbb{R}d1$  52. $\mathbb{R}xf7$   $\mathbb{R}xd4$ ;

B) 50. $\mathbb{R}b8$   $\mathbb{W}f5!$  is not convincing:

B1) 51. $\mathbb{W}e8?$   $\mathbb{W}xh5$  loses;

B2) 51. $\mathbb{R}xb4$   $\mathbb{W}b1!$  and White cannot avoid a draw by perpetual check: 52. $\mathbb{R}b7$   $\mathbb{R}g1+$  53. $\mathbb{Q}h3$  (53. $\mathbb{Q}f3?$   $\mathbb{R}e1$  54. $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{W}e4\#$ ) 53... $\mathbb{R}h1+$  54. $\mathbb{Q}g4?$  (54. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  draws) 54... $f5+$  55. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{R}e1$  and Black wins;

B3) 51. $\mathbb{R}b7!$  keeps an eye on the b4- and f7-pawns, and now:

B3a) 51... $\mathbb{W}e4+?$  52. $\mathbb{W}xe4$   $dxe4$  53. $\mathbb{R}xb4$  when White will capture the c6-pawn and have two connected passed pawns;

B3b) 51... $\mathbb{R}c3$  52. $\mathbb{R}xb4!$  Black's counterplay on the first rank takes too long to set up;

B3c) 51... $\mathbb{R}a1$  52.g4!  $\mathbb{W}b1$  (the queen is in front of the rook and by giving check will have to abandon the b1-h7 diagonal on which it would have had prospects, as we have seen) 53. $\mathbb{W}f3!$   $\mathbb{W}h1+$  54. $\mathbb{Q}g3$  – Black must still not exchange queens and is in trouble;

B3d) 51... $\mathbb{W}b1!$  52. $\mathbb{R}xf7$   $\mathbb{R}g1+$  53. $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{W}d1!$  (this time going into the endgame is correct as the white pawns will be captured; 53... $\mathbb{R}h1+$  54. $\mathbb{Q}g4$  is worse) 54. $\mathbb{W}xd1$   $\mathbb{R}xd1$  55. $\mathbb{R}c7$   $\mathbb{R}xd4$  56. $\mathbb{R}xc6$   $\mathbb{R}d3$  57. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{R}xb3$  when Black is worse, but still has chances to save himself.

C) 50. $\mathbb{R}f8!?$ , with the threat of 51. $\mathbb{W}d3+$  g6 52. $\mathbb{W}e3$  (gaining a tempo on the rook) 52... $\mathbb{R}c3$  53. $\mathbb{W}e5$ , is an interesting

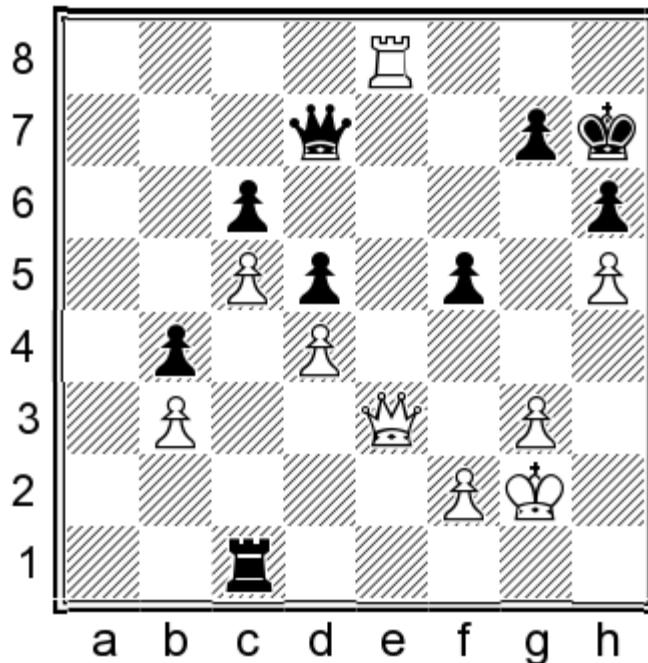
idea:

- C1) 50... $\mathbb{W}f5?$ , the normal move, is refuted by 51. $\mathbb{W}e8!$   $\mathbb{W}xh5$  52. $\mathbb{B}h8+$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  53. $\mathbb{W}xc6+$  f6 54. $\mathbb{W}e8+$ ; we saw this arrangement with the queen behind the rook for Black and here it is employed by White;
- C2) 50... $\mathbb{B}c3$  51. $\mathbb{B}b8!$  – abandoning the back rank invites an attack on the b4-pawn; Black is much worse, as 51... $\mathbb{B}xb3?$  52. $\mathbb{W}c2+$  loses the rook;
- C3) 50... $\mathbb{W}e6!$  seems to be the best defence, to play a rook ending a pawn down after 51. $\mathbb{W}xe6$  fxe6 52. $\mathbb{B}b8.$

**50. $\mathbb{W}d3+!$**

The best move, forcing a weakening of the kingside and preventing the black queen from going to f5.

**50...f5 51. $\mathbb{W}e3!$**



The queen returns to an active position while simultaneously attacking the black rook.

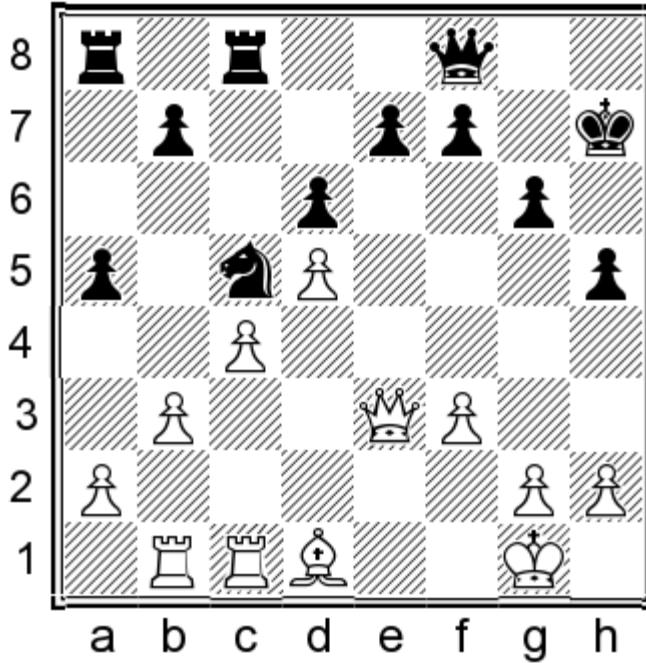
**51... $\mathbb{B}c3?$**

51... $\mathbb{W}f7!$ , with the intention of taking the h5-pawn while indirectly defending the rook, is the only way to resist: 52. $\mathbb{B}e7!$   $\mathbb{W}f6!$  (52... $\mathbb{W}xh5?$  53. $\mathbb{W}xc1$ ) and now:

- A) 53. $\mathbb{B}e6$   $\mathbb{W}f7!$  (guarding the invasion squares on the e-file) 54. $\mathbb{B}xc6$   $\mathbb{B}c3$  55. $\mathbb{W}e2$  is a complicated win;
- B) 53. $\mathbb{B}c7!$ ; the black rook is still attacked and one idea is to continue by 54. $\mathbb{W}e8$  with the threats of  $\mathbb{B}c7-c8$  and  $\mathbb{B}c7xc6$  followed by  $\mathbb{W}e8-g6+$ , for example: 53... $\mathbb{W}g5$  54. $\mathbb{W}e8$   $\mathbb{W}g4$  55. $\mathbb{B}xc6$   $\mathbb{W}e4+$  56. $\mathbb{W}xe4$  fxe4 57. $\mathbb{B}b6$  and, despite the exchange of queens, the outcome of the game is not in doubt.

**52. $\mathbb{W}e5$  f4 53. $\mathbb{W}b8$  f3+ 54. $\mathbb{Q}h2$**

Black resigned.



*Black to move*

What do you think of this position? What plan would you suggest for Black?

Show/Hide Solution

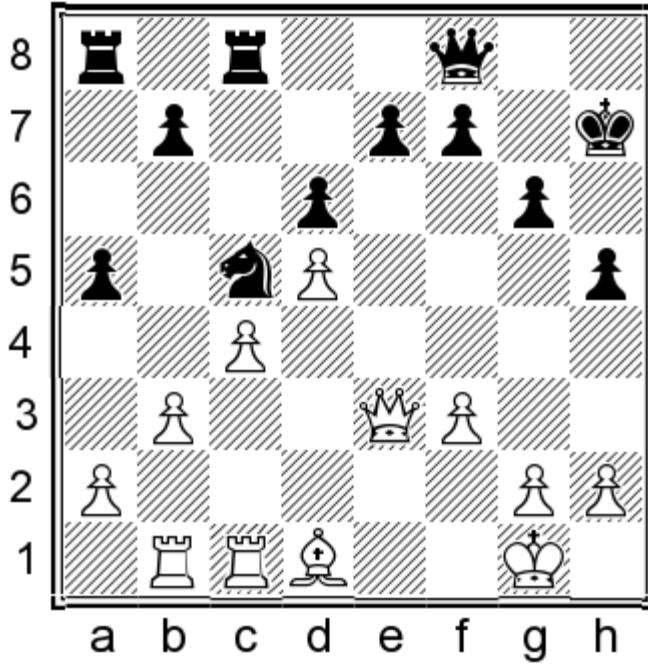
**49**

**Grigory Serper** 2420

**Jan Sørensen** 2335

Tunja Wch U20 1989 (8)

1.e4 c5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  3.d4 cxd4 4. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  g6 5.c4  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  0-0 8. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  d6 9.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  10. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  11. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  12.f3 a5 13.b3  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  14. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}c5$  15. $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{W}b6$  16. $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}fc8$  17. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$   $\mathbb{W}d8$  18. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  19. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  20. $\mathbb{Q}dc1$  h5 21. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  22. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  23. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  24. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  25.exd5  $\mathbb{Q}xe3+$  26. $\mathbb{W}xe3$



*Black to move*

Black has a weakened kingside and an exposed pawn on e7, and his pieces are massed on the queenside, where he is unable to open the position. White has a space advantage and his bishop can act on both wings, unlike the knight. A natural plan for him is to attack the black king by ♘d1-c2 followed by f3-f4-f5 and another is to play a2-a3 and then b3-b4. This latter plan should not be implemented too quickly, though, because the opening of the game on the queenside may well benefit both sides' pieces.

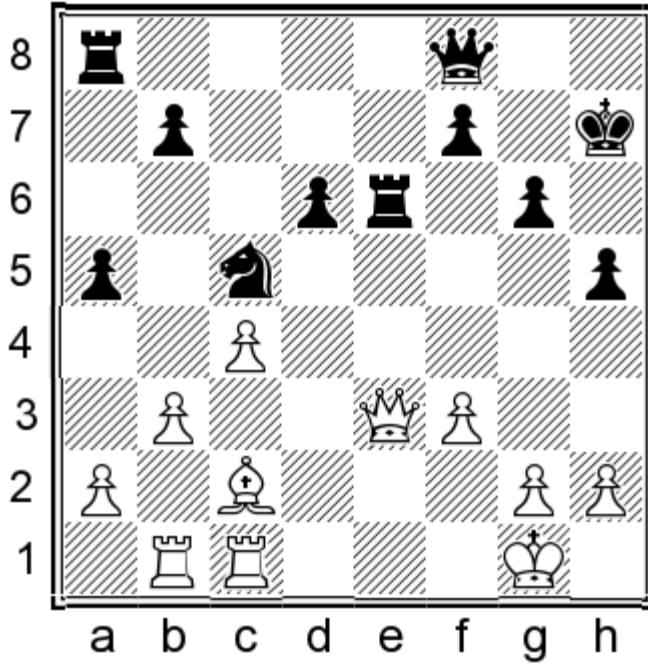
**26...♝e8!**

Sørensen prepares to bring his rooks into play by opening the e-file and in return will accept a weakening of the d5-square and d6-pawn. His knight will also be able to join the action and the fact that the bishop and almost all the white pawns control no dark squares will play a role. Considering the gloomy picture that we have just drawn of Black's chances in the absence of concrete action, there is no doubt that this is an excellent decision.

**27.♗c2**

The bishop frees the first rank for the rooks and targets the black king.

**27...e6 28.dxe6 ♜xe6**



The f2-f3 advance has weakened the a7-g1 diagonal and the second rank, that is to say the king's position, as we shall see, and Black has good counterplay.

**29.♗d2**

Defending the e2-square and keeping an eye on the a5-pawn.

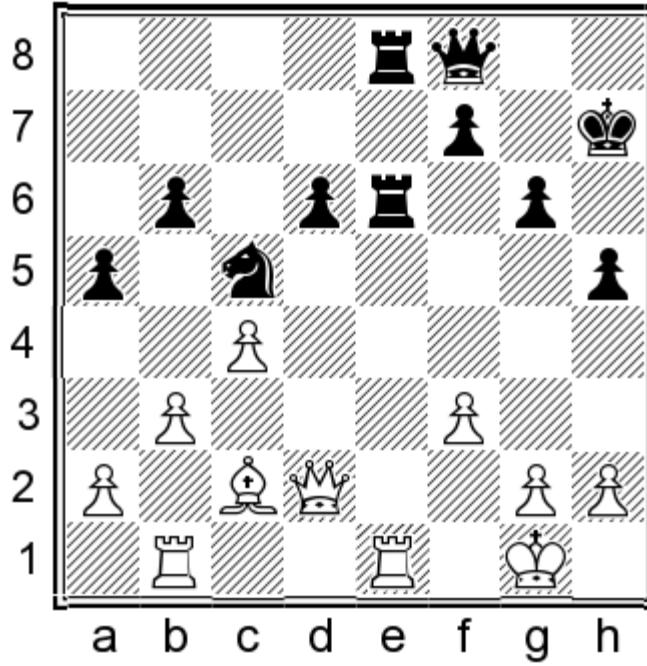
**29...b6**

In general it is useful to defend the a5-pawn but 29...♝ae8!? is interesting, as 30.♝xa5? ♜e2 31.♝c3 ♜h6 with the main threat of 32...♝g5 is too dangerous for White. It is better to play 30.♜e1 when Black has no profitable way to avoid 30...b6, which transposes into the game.

**30.♜e1**

30.a3 ♜ae8 31.b4, to allow the bishop to access the e4-square, is not a good idea. In this case Black has an interest in not exchanging on b4, both to leave the a3-pawn on the board (as it can become vulnerable) and so that the knight can return to c5 in case White opens a file, as he would normally want to, by b4xa5. After 31...♜e2 32.♝d1 ♜e1+! (better than 32...♝d7 33.♝e4) 33.♝xe1 ♜xe1+ 34.♝xe1 ♜e6 (as there is no longer a rook on e6 the knight can access this square) 35.♝e4 ♜g7 the white king and queenside pawns are exposed and Black has the initiative.

**30...♜ae8**



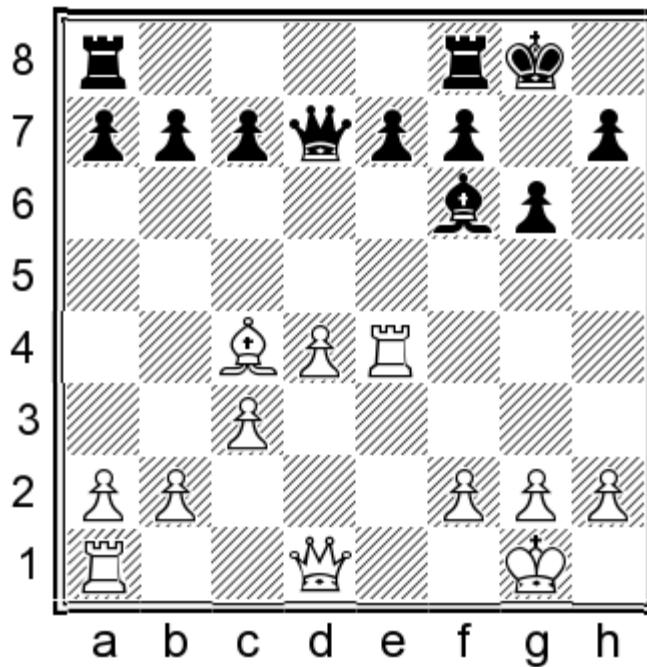
**31.a3?**

This move weakens the pawn structure as White will not have the time to profitably play b3-b4.

- A) 31.f4! with the idea of f4-f5 enhances the bishop's prospects and keeps the position balanced;
- B) 31.♗xe6 ♗xe6 32.a3 ♖e7 33.♗f1 is also good.

(continuation and solution 61)

50



*Black to move*

What do you think of this position, both now and after 14...b5 15.♗b3 a5 ?

Show/Hide Solution

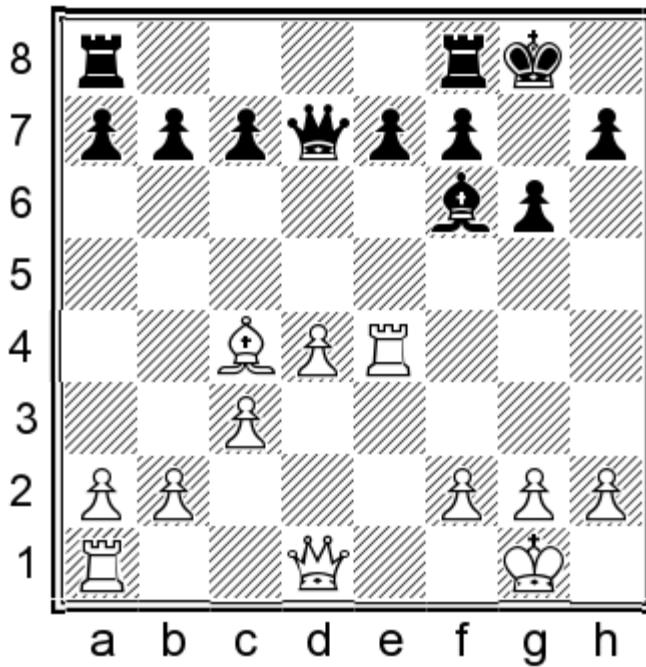
50

Klaus-Uwe Müller

Jan Smejkal

Halle 1974 (12)

1.d4 ♘f6 2.♘c3 d5 3.♗g5 ♘bd7 4.♗f3 g6 5.e4 ♘xe4 6.♗xe4 dxе4 7.♗d2 ♘f6 8.c3 ♗g7 9.♗c4 0-0 10.0-0 ♘f5 11.♗e1 ♘d7 12.♗xf6 ♘xf6 13.♗xe4 ♘xe4 14.♗xe4



Black to move

White has the most active bishop and a space advantage. He has good chances of taking the initiative, if Black plays passively, by advancing his h-pawn after having completed his development.

The c3- and d4-pawns control the centre and limit the action of the f6-bishop, but they are sort of blocked because the advance of either one of them would weaken the dark squares and hinder the movement of the white bishop.

**14...b5!?**

Black's plan is to put pressure on the dark squares by playing ...b5-b4 at the right time, followed by an exchange on c3 and ...c7-c5, and this will create a weak pawn and weak squares in the white position. It's an attempt to sharpen the play.

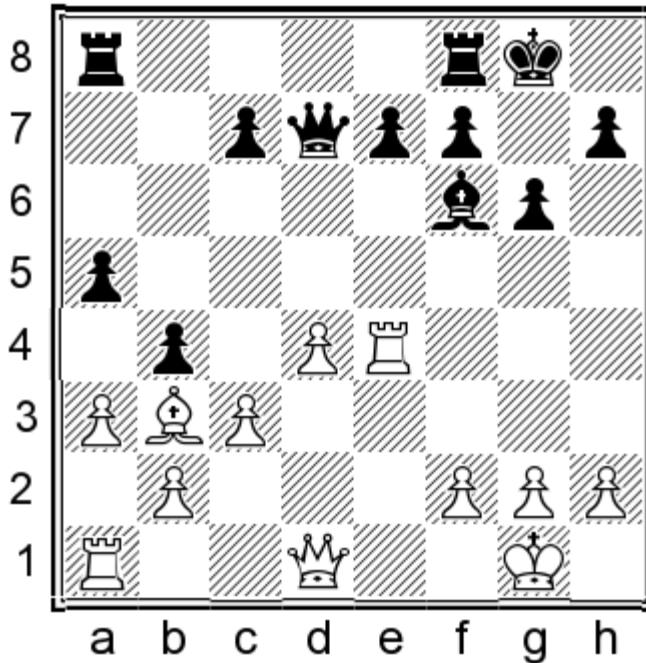
14...c5 is another good option and after 15.dxc5 ♘c7 the position is equal.

**15.♗b3 a5 16.a3**

16.♔e2 b4 17.cxb4 axb4 18.d5! gives White some pressure on the c-file and the b4-pawn, but the b2-pawn is also

exposed and it is not clear that he can obtain any advantage after, for example, 18... $\mathbb{E}fb8$ . Instead of 16...b4 Black can postpone the opening of the game by 16...c6 or 16... $\mathbb{E}fb8$  and the position is unclear. 16...a4 17. $\mathbb{Q}c2$  is somewhat passive, as 17...a3?! is met by 18.b4, which keeps the queenside closed under favourable conditions for White.

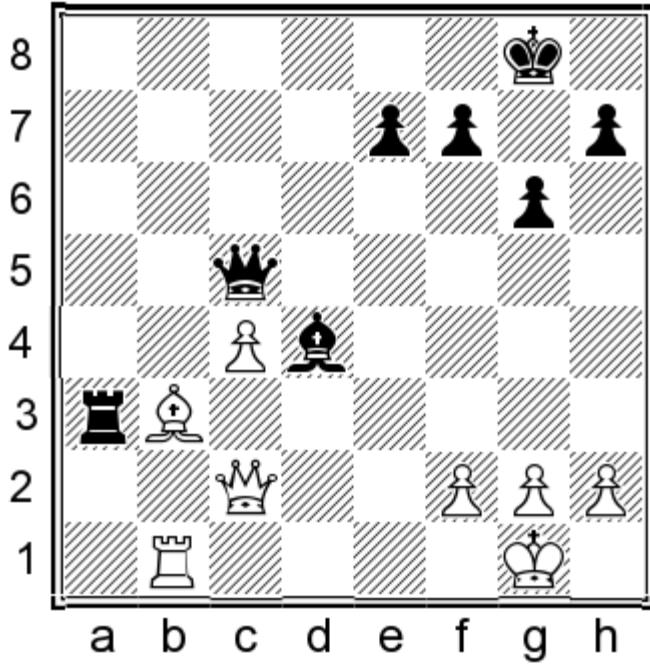
### 16...b4



### 17. $\mathbb{W}e2??!$

This move is not in harmony with the one that precedes it, and after the exchange on c3 it will turn out that White has spent a tempo on advancing the a-pawn to a square where it is exposed.

A) 17.axb4?! is possible, in order to reduce the number of pawns and play for a draw, but the queenside files are opening for the black rooks and after 17...axb4 Black retains the better chances, for example: 18. $\mathbb{E}xa8$   $\mathbb{E}xa8$  19. $\mathbb{E}e1$  (the back rank is exposed) 19...bxc3 20.bxc3  $\mathbb{Q}a3$ ! (the pressure on the b3-bishop and the c3-pawn makes the white pieces passive) 21. $\mathbb{W}c2$  c5! 22.dxc5 (22.d5?  $\mathbb{W}b5$ ! 23. $\mathbb{E}b1$  allows 23...c4, winning the d5- and c3-pawns) 22... $\mathbb{W}b5$  23. $\mathbb{E}b1$   $\mathbb{W}xc5$  24.c4  $\mathbb{Q}d4$



*analysis diagram*

Black's general plan is to put pressure on the f2-pawn, to tie the white pieces to its defence, and then to create weaknesses on the white kingside by advancing his pawns. He has an advantage whose size is difficult to assess. The game Boleslavsky-Sternér, Stockholm 1954 (solution 10), illustrates play in a similar position;

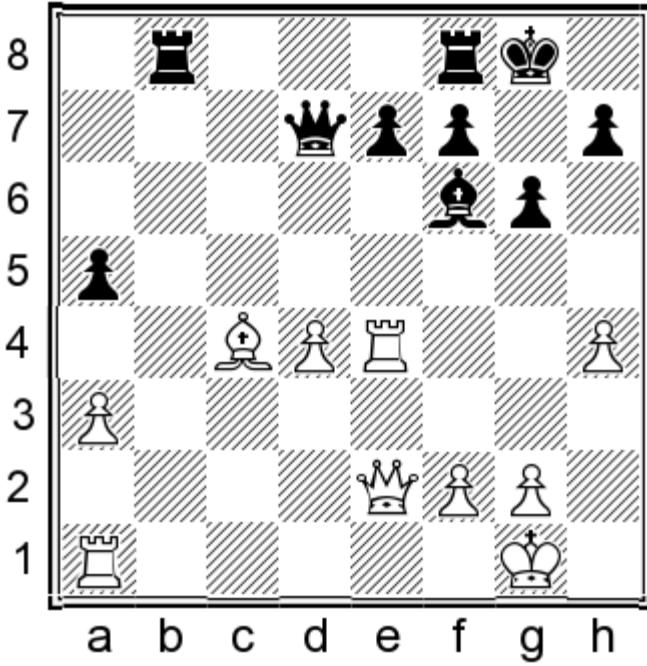
B) 17.cxb4! axb4 18.a4 fully justifies 16.a3 and creates a passed pawn that compensates the weakening of the d4-pawn, for example: 18...e6 19.♗e2 ♗d6 (or 19...♝xd4 20.♝xe6 ♘fe8) 20.♝d1 with mutual chances.

#### **17...bxc3 18.bxc3 ♘ab8 19.♝c4 c5 20.h4**

A) After 20.dxc5? Black will regain the c5-pawn with excellent play on the queenside;

B) 20.d5 ♘b6 21.♗e3 ♗d6 gives Black the initiative. Instead of 20...♝b6, 20...♝xc3!? leads to an instructive variation illustrating mutually active play in an opposite-coloured bishops position: 21.♝xe7 ♗d6 22.♝f1 (the f2-pawn must be defended) 22...♝b2 23.♗e4 ♘d4 (the black bishop is more active than its white counterpart) 24.♝a7! White is pressing the a5-pawn and is preparing to unblock the d-pawn by ♘a7-a6. The position is unclear.

#### **20...cxd4 21.cxd4**



**21...Rb6!**

A multi-purpose move that allows play on the b- or d-files (by ...Rf8-b8 or ...Rb6-d6) and may prepare ...e7-e6.

21...Qxd4?! 22.Rd1! (and not 22.Rxe7? Rf5, with the idea of 23...Rb2, and Black is better as it is not possible to contest the d-file: 23.Rd1 Rb2 24.Rd2? Rxf2+! 25.Rxf2 Rxd2) 22...e5 23.Rxe5 Ra7 24.Re4 and chances are equal.

**22.Re1?!**

The rook will be useless here in the case of 22...e6!. More precise are 22.h5 and 22.Rd1, but in both cases Black is a little better because the fundamental problem of the white position remains: the queen's pawn is exposed on d4 and would hinder the white bishop if it advances one square.

**22...Qxd4?**

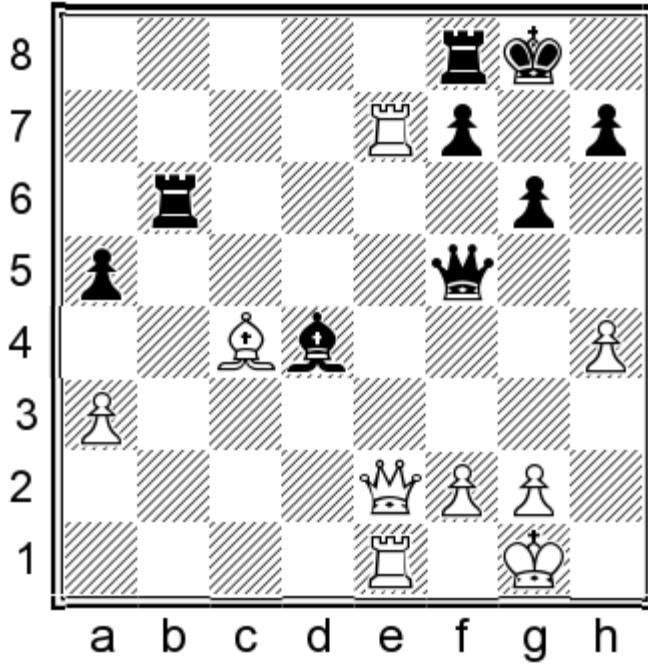
After this move, exchanging the d4-pawn for the e7-pawn, the position becomes more or less symmetrical with each side pressing on the opponent's f-pawn. A concrete calculation of variations is necessary to evaluate the position.

- A) 22...Rd8 leaves the initiative with Black, as do other moves that keep the pawn structure intact;
- B) After 22...e6! 23.Rd2 (threatening 24.d5 and attacking the a5-pawn) 23...Rd8 (it is no longer possible to protect the d4-pawn) 24.Rxa5 Qxd4 Black has a clear advantage because of the better security of his king.

**23.Rxe7?**

23.Rd1!, in order to keep the black rook away from the b2-square, is the best defence, for example: 23...e5 (or 23...Rd6 24.Rxe7 with equality) 24.Rxe5 Rd6 (24...Rb2?! 25.Rxb2) 25.Re7 with a balanced position.

**23...Rf5**



**24.g4?**

This move is too weakening.

- A) 24.♕f3 forces the exchange of queens, but after 24...♗xf3 25.gxf3 ♔c5! Black wins the a3-pawn (26.♖e7e5 ♖xa3 27.♖xa5? allows 27...♗b4) and keeps a large advantage because of the weakness of the white kingside pawn structure;
- B) 24.♗d2! ♗f6 25.h5! is an amazing resource that makes 25...♗b2?! harmless because of 26.♗xf7! ♖xd2! (26...♗xf7? 27.♗e8+ ♔g7 28.h6# – both of the moves 24.♗d2 and 25.h5 have been used) 27.♗xf6+ ♔g7 28.♗xf8 ♔xf8 29.♗e2 ♖xe2 30.♔xe2 and the position is drawn. Instead of 25...♗b2, 25...♔c5! renews the threat of 26...♗b2, attacks the e7-rook and wins the a3-pawn, with a black advantage.

**24...♗f6**

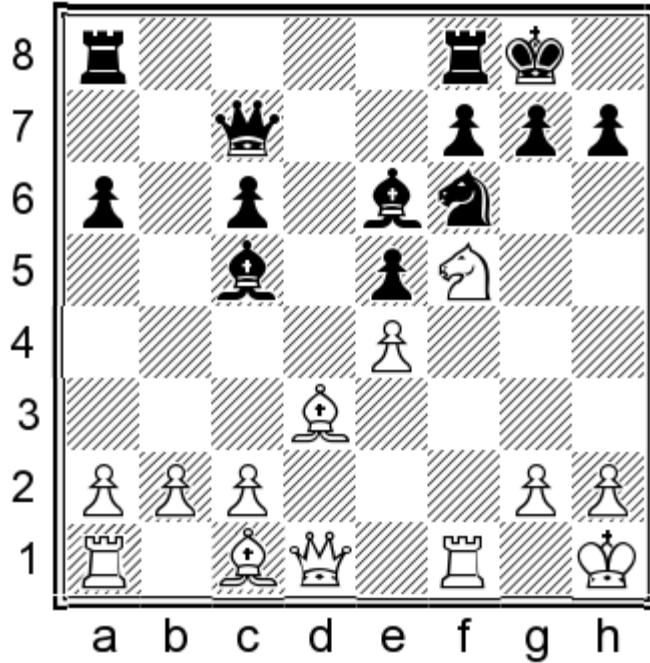
The king and all the white pawns are exposed. Black is winning.

**25.g5 ♗f5 26.♗d1 ♗b2 27.♗xd4**

On 27.♗d2 the simplest is 27...♗xf2+! 28.♗xf2 ♖xd2.

**27...♖xe2 28.♔xe2 ♗c5 29.♗dd7 ♖xa3 30.♗g2 ♗b4 31.♗g3 a4 32.♗f3 ♗b8+ 33.♗g2 a3 34.♗d5 ♗f4 35.♗e4 ♗f5 36.♗d6 a2 37.♗a4 ♗e5**

White resigned.



White to move

What do you think of this position? What do you think of the manoeuvre 15.  $\mathbb{W}e2$  a5 16.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$  ?

Show/Hide Solution

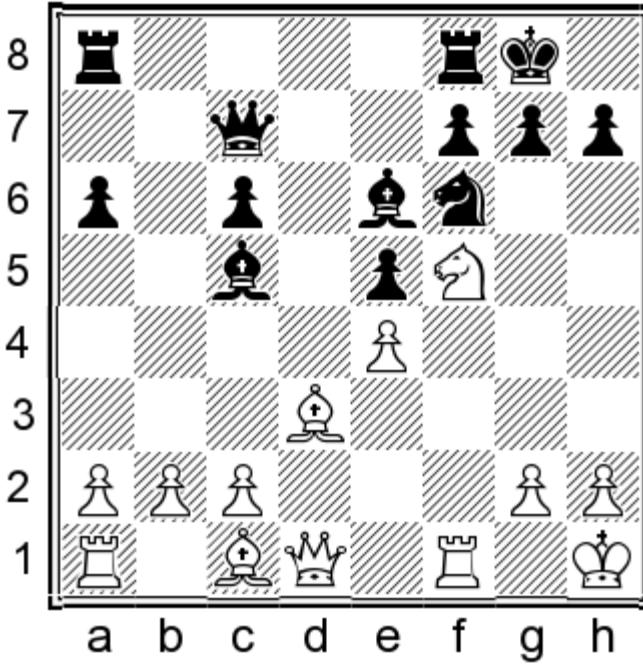
51

Leonid Stein

Lajos Portisch

Stockholm izt 1962 (12)

1.e4 c5 2.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$  e6 3. d4 cxd4 4.  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  a6 5.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  6. 0-0  $\mathbb{W}c7$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  8.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  bxc6 9. f4  $\mathbb{Q}c5+$  10.  $\mathbb{Q}h1$  d6 11.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$  e5 12. fxe5 dxe5 13.  $\mathbb{Q}h4$  0-0 14.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$



*White to move*

Black has a damaged queenside structure with two isolated pawns whereas the isolation of the e4-pawn carries less significance, even if we will see that it will also play a role later on. Thanks to the f5-knight and c1-bishop, aided by the queen and f1-rook, White exerts strong pressure on the dark squares around the opposing king. Nevertheless, Black can resolve this problem at any time by exchanging the f5-knight or by playing ... $\mathbb{Q}f6-e8$  (to protect the g7-pawn and move to d6 if necessary) followed by ...f7-f6. In both cases the light squares will be conspicuously weakened.

A) 15. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  (a natural move, but the bishop will have to lose a tempo after a future ...f7-f6) 15... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$  (15... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  16. $\mathbb{W}g4!$  is dangerous) 16. $\mathbb{W}e2$  f6 17. $\mathbb{Q}h4$  is a critical line that requires a certain accuracy from Black, for example:

A1) 17...a5 18. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{W}f7$  would be reasonable if it wasn't for 19. $\mathbb{W}g4!$  (threatening 20. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$ ) 19... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  20. $\mathbb{Q}h6!$   $\mathbb{W}g6$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $\mathbb{W}xh6$  with a large white advantage;

A2) 17... $\mathbb{Q}h8$  18. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$   $\mathbb{W}b6$  19. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  20.exf5  $\mathbb{W}xb2$  followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}e8-d6$  or ... $\mathbb{Q}e8-c7-d5$ . The centralization of the black pieces compensates surrendering the bishop pair.

B) There is also a tactical path to an advantage: 15. $\mathbb{W}e1!?$  (threatening 16. $\mathbb{Q}xg7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  17. $\mathbb{Q}xf6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  18. $\mathbb{W}h4+$  with a quick mate) 15... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  16. $\mathbb{W}c3!$  and Black must accept being worse after 16... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  17. $\mathbb{W}xc5$ , as 16... $\mathbb{Q}b6?$  17. $\mathbb{W}xc6!$  loses a pawn.

**15. $\mathbb{W}e2!$**

First winning a tempo on the a6-pawn.

**15...a5 16. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$**

The complement to the previous move. Stein plays on the light squares in order to anticipate the defensive manoeuvres that we have seen, ... $\mathbb{Q}e6xf5$  and ... $\mathbb{Q}f6-e8$  followed by ...f7-f6. The dark-square attack is deferred but will be more difficult to ward off under good conditions. This preparation for play on both colours is one way to exploit the bishop pair and then the defender often has the choice of which colour he will 'suffer' on.

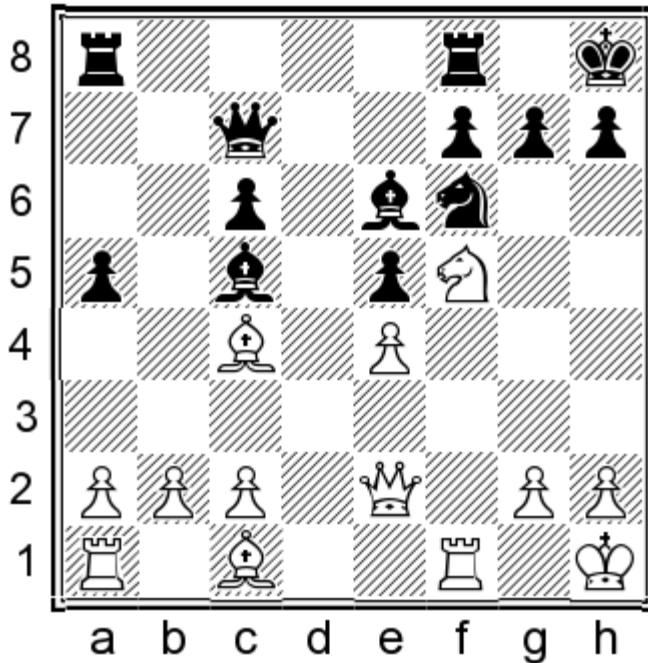
**16... $\mathbb{Q}h8$**

The black king leaves the a2-g8 diagonal on which it is exposed.

A) 16... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ ? allows 17. $\mathbb{Q}xe6 fxe6$  18. $\mathbb{W}c4$ , which wins at least a pawn;

B) 16... $\mathbb{Q}xc4$ ? 17. $\mathbb{W}xc4 \mathbb{Q}d7$  leaves the white queen and knight in dominant positions. 18. $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}h8$  19. $\mathbb{E}ad1$  is promising and 18. $\mathbb{E}f3$ !, with the idea of 19. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ , is probably decisive;

C) 16... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ ! 17. $\mathbb{W}g4 g6$ ? 18. $\mathbb{Q}xe6 fxe6$  19. $\mathbb{Q}h6+$  is no good for Black, but 17... $\mathbb{Q}xf5$ ! 18. $\mathbb{E}xf5 \mathbb{Q}h8$  allows him to resist in an inferior position; 19. $\mathbb{Q}xf7$ ?! does not then win a pawn because of 19... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  and after 20. $\mathbb{E}xf6 gxf6$  21. $\mathbb{Q}e6$  White has compensation for the exchange, but no advantage.

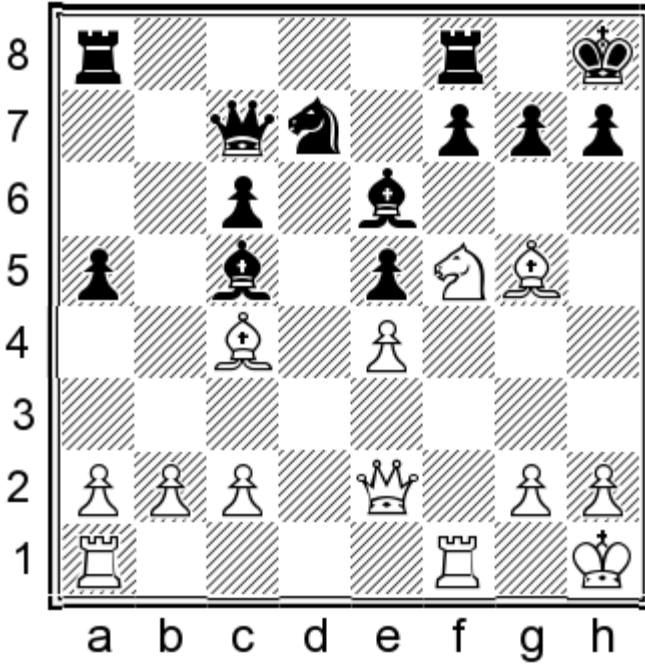


### 17. $\mathbb{Q}g5$

17. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$ ?!  $fxe6$  promises nothing, as after 18. $\mathbb{Q}g3$  (on 18. $\mathbb{Q}h4$  or 18. $\mathbb{Q}e3$  there is 18... $\mathbb{Q}xe4$ ) the white knight has no prospects and Black has active pieces to compensate his pawn structure's defects.

### 17... $\mathbb{Q}d7$

17... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ ?! keeps control of the g7-square, but the knight is passive and White is much better after 18. $\mathbb{Q}xe6 fxe6$  19. $\mathbb{Q}h4$  (or 19. $\mathbb{W}c4$ ).



**18.♖ad1!**

By bringing his last piece into play Stein puts pressure on the d7-knight that protects the c5-bishop and the f6-square, which is important to the black king's defence.

**18...♝b6?**

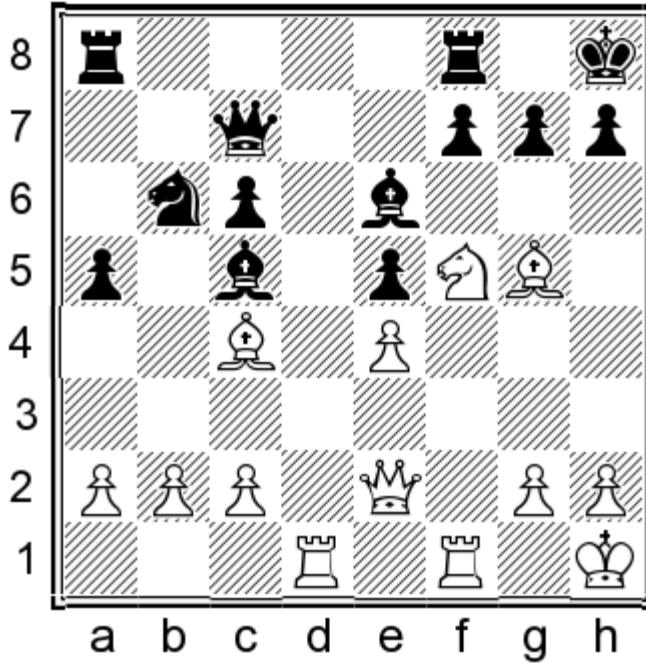
Black fights for the a2-g8 diagonal, but gives up control of the f6-square and allows a winning combination.

A) After 18...♝xc4?! 19.♝xc4 f6 20.♝h4 White is much better;

B) This was the last moment to play 18...♝xf5! and limit the white advantage while making it clearer:

B1) 19.♝xf5 is weaker now than before, because after 19...♝b6 the c4-bishop must abandon its good diagonal (20.♝b3?! a4);

B2) 19.exf5! f6 (19...♝b6? 20.f6 g6 21.♝e3 ♛xe3 22.♛xe3 is too dangerous, but 19...♝f6!? 20.♝xf6 gxf6 deserves attention) 20.♝c1 when the c4-bishop has a strong square on e6 and controls the g8-square, leaving the black king vulnerable.



As long as the f5-knight is not exchanged the dark squares around the king are fragile...

**19.♘xg7! ♖xc4**

After 19...♗xg7 20.♗f6+ there is no defence.

**20.♗f6!**

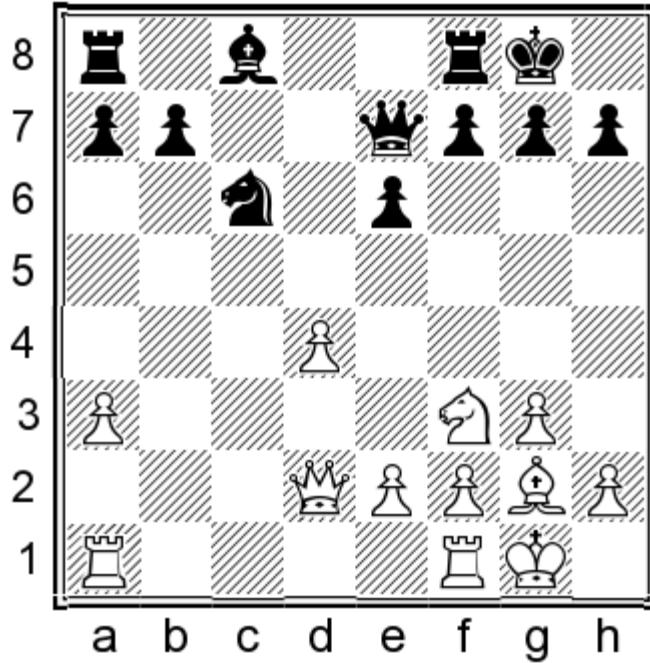
This move blocks the f7-pawn and allows the black king to be caught in a mating net. 20.♔h5? loses to 20...f5!, which brings the queen and f8-rook into play.

**20...♝e7**

Or else 20...♝xe2 21.♗f5+ ♔g8 22.♗h6#.

**21.♔f3**

Black resigned.



*White to move*

What different plans can White adopt?

Show/Hide Solution

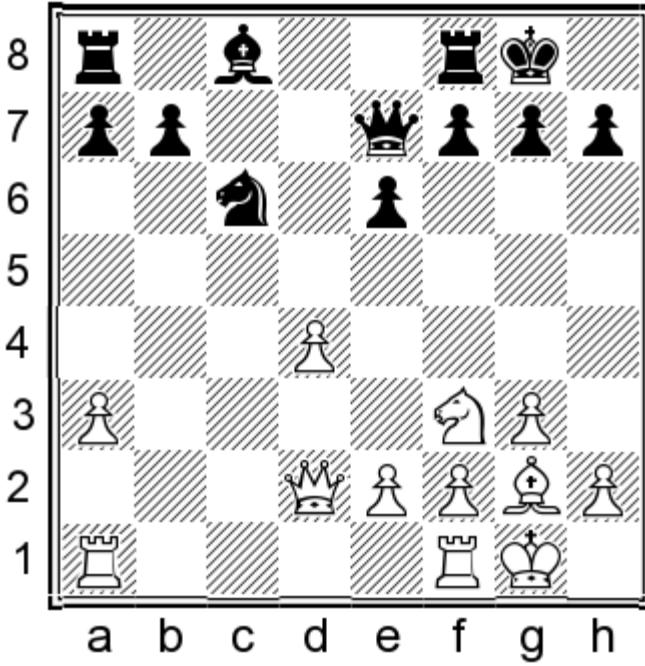
**52**

**Alexander Alekhine**

**Harry Golombek**

Margate 1938 (3)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  4.g3 d5 5. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  0-0 6. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  c5 7.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  8. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  9.a3  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  10.bxc3  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  11.0-0 cxd4 12.cxd4  $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  13. $\mathbb{W}xd2$   $\mathbb{W}e7$



*White to move*

White has a central space advantage and, thanks to the g2-bishop, strong pressure on the queenside which hinders the opposing development. He has the advantage and has many interesting moves at his disposal, and he can choose between three main plans: exerting direct pressure on the long diagonal (14.Qe5), mobilizing his central majority (14.e4) and developing while keeping the long diagonal open (14.Wb2, the actual move played in the game). Let's see these plans in action:

- A) 14.Qe5 Qd7 (14...Qxe5? 15.dxe5 Wd8 16.We3! does not solve the queenside development problems) and now:
  - A1) 15.Qxd7?! Wxd7 16.e3 does not give anything special;
  - A2) 15.Qxc6 Qxc6 16.Qxc6 bxc6 17.Qfc1 stabilizes the advantage that becomes structural with the c6-pawn isolated on an open file; Black will try to get some play on the b- or d-files and against the a3-pawn and he is only a little worse;
  - A3) 15.Qab1 Qab8 16.Qfc1 keeps the initiative while retaining the prospect of a general exchange on c6 and gives White a slight advantage.

B) 14.e4 increases White's central control and prepares the creation of a passed pawn by d4-d5, but obstructs the g2-bishop's diagonal and weakens the d4-pawn.

14...b6?! becomes possible, but this is not a good idea, as after 15.d5 exd5 16.exd5 White has a good initiative with, in particular, the prospect of going to c6 with his knight.

The best move is 14...Wd8! with pressure on the d4-pawn and a troublesome vis-à-vis between the d8-rook and the white queen:

- B1) 15.Qfd1 e5! (15...Qxd4? loses after 16.Qxd4 e5 17.Qc6!) 16.d5 Qg4! followed by ...Qg4xf3 and ...Qc6-d4 with good play for Black;
- B2) 15.d5 exd5 16.exd5 Qe5!? 17.Qxe5 (after 17.Qd4 – avoiding exchanges is normal when you have a space advantage – 17...Qc4 the black knight will be able to settle on d6 to give Black a solid position) 17...Wxe5 18.Qfe1 Wd6 19.Wb4 with pressure on the e7- and b7-points and the two direct threats of 20.Wxd6 and 20.Qe8+. White is a little better;
- B3) 15.Qc3!? (preventing both ...b7-b6 and ...Qc6-a5, which would not be the case for 15.Wb2) 15...Wf6!? (attacking

and pinning the d4-pawn to allow the bishop to be developed; after 15... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ ? 16.d5! the knight must return to b8) 16.e5 (16. $\mathbb{R}fd1$  retains a slight advantage) 16... $\mathbb{W}e7$  17. $\mathbb{R}fd1$  and now 17... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ ?! obstructs the d-file and allows 18. $\mathbb{Q}d2$ , heading for the d6-square, which is why 17...h6, which permanently deprives the white knight of the g5-square, is interesting, with ideas like ... $\mathbb{W}e7-d7$  or ... $\mathbb{R}d8-d7$  followed by ... $\mathbb{W}e7-d8$  depending on circumstances. The c6-knight may eventually go to e7. White is a little better.

#### 14. $\mathbb{W}b2$

Keeping the long diagonal open and attacking the b7-pawn so that neither 14... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  nor 14...b6 (because of 15. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ ) are possible. In addition, the queen avoids a possible vis-à-vis with a black rook on the d-file.

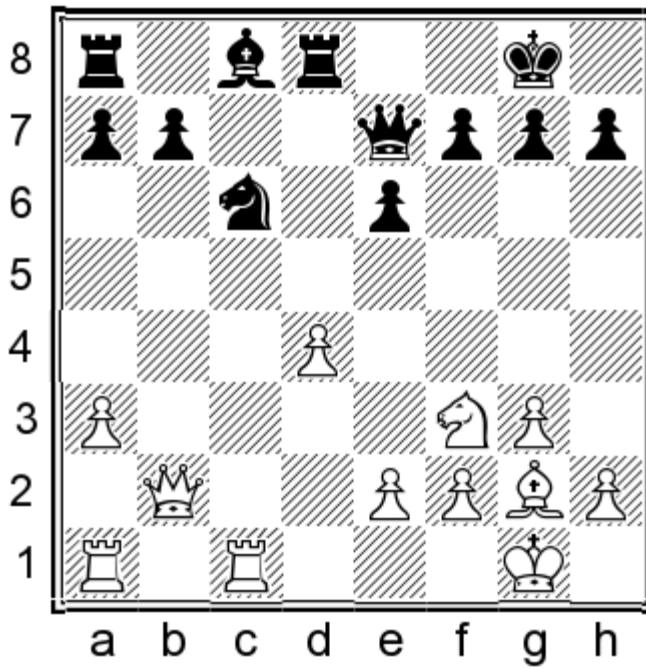
#### 14... $\mathbb{R}d8$

Black plays a useful central move with the possible idea of answering 15.e4 with 15...b6, getting a reasonable position. However, White can continue to improve his position without blocking the long light-squared diagonal and thus delay the development of the c8-bishop. 14... $\mathbb{R}b8$  is another option that places the rook passively for now but promotes further development.

#### 15. $\mathbb{R}fc1$ ??!

White wants to put his rooks on b1 and c1 and intends to strengthen his d4-pawn by e2-e3. This is an excellent strategic idea but it's also a tactical error that makes 15... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ ! possible.

15. $\mathbb{R}ac1$ ! keeps more flexibility between the play on the queenside or in the centre and continues to prevent the development of the c8-bishop.



#### 15... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ ?

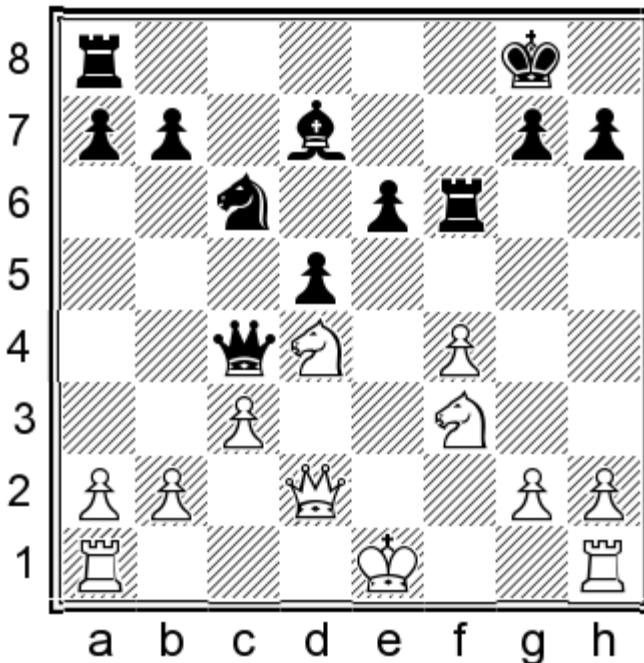
Preparing ... $\mathbb{R}a8-b8$ , which is not possible at the moment (15... $\mathbb{R}b8$ ? 16. $\mathbb{R}xc6$ ), followed by ...b7-b6 or ... $\mathbb{Q}c8-d7$ , but this manoeuvre exposes the queen and involves a waste of time.

After 15... $\mathbb{Q}d7$ ! 16. $\mathbb{W}xb7$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}a5$ ! Black has counterplay thanks to the possibility of a fork on b3 and the position is not clear. 16.e3! is better than taking on b7 and leads to a slight white advantage after 16... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ .

16.e3  $\mathbb{E}b8$

(continuation and solution 62)

53



White to move

What plans do you see for both sides?

Show/Hide Solution

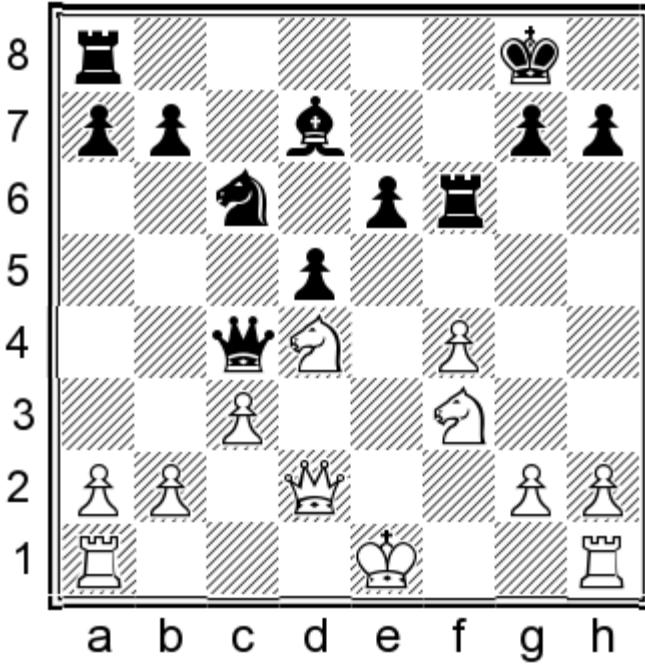
53

Paul van der Sterren 2475

Viktor Kortchnoi 2635

Wijk aan Zee 1984 (13)

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5.e5  $\mathbb{Q}fd7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{W}xe7$  7.f4 0-0 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  c5 9.dxc5  $\mathbb{W}xc5$  10. $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  11. $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  12.c3 f6 13.exf6  $\mathbb{E}xf6$  14. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$  15. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{W}xc4$  16. $\mathbb{Q}bd4$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$



*White to move*

The e6- and d5-pawns are fixed on light squares and we say that the d7-bishop is ‘bad’ because it is hampered in its movement and cannot control the weakened dark squares. Yet this bishop also has upsides. In order to block the e6- and d5-pawns White has placed his own pawns on dark squares (c3, f4 and soon g3), which has created weaknesses on the light squares and thus gives the d7-bishop some prospects.

When you get closer to the endgame (let ‘s imagine the diagram position but where the only pieces are the black bishop and a white knight) the bishop often becomes a bad piece because it cannot attack the opposing pawns and no longer collaborates with the other pieces. Black can accept certain exchanges but must remain vigilant and consider the position from a dynamic viewpoint.

Returning to the game. White has a problem with his development as he cannot castle on either side and the desirable 17.  $\mathbb{W}e2$  move loses the f4-pawn. The pawn structure is unfavourable for Black with the e6-pawn exposed on an open file and squares that can serve as bases for the white pieces on d4 and e5. His main plan is to gain some activity for his bishop and, if possible, to open the f-file. A typical manoeuvre is ... $\mathbb{B}d7-e8-g6$  (or h5). Breakthroughs by ...g7-g5 and ...e6-e5 (either or both, normally in this order) also play an important role.

A) 17.  $\mathbb{B}e5?$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  18.  $fxe5$   $\mathbb{R}f7$  19.  $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{R}af8$  allows White to play with a ‘good’ knight against a ‘bad’ bishop and to probably exchange queens, but the f-file is opened for the black rooks, for example:

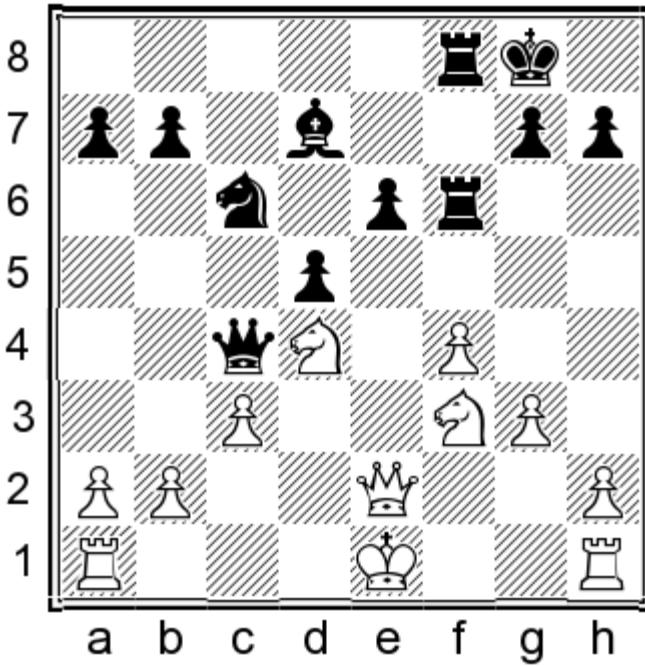
A1) 20.  $\mathbb{Q}f3?$ !  $\mathbb{W}xe2+$  21.  $\mathbb{Q}xe2$   $\mathbb{R}f5$ , with the idea of ... $\mathbb{B}d7-e8-h5$ , leads to a black advantage due to the pressure on the e5-pawn and the f-file. If now 22.  $h3$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  23.  $\mathbb{R}hf1?$ , planning to answer 23... $\mathbb{Q}h5$  with 24.  $g4$ , then 23... $\mathbb{R}b5+$  wins the exchange;

A2) 20.  $\mathbb{W}xc4!$   $dxc4$  21. 0-0-0 (21.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$ ) 21... $\mathbb{R}f2$  and challenging the second rank by 22.  $\mathbb{R}d2?$  runs into 22... $\mathbb{R}xd2$  23.  $\mathbb{Q}xd2$   $\mathbb{R}f2+$ , and so it is necessary to play passively by 22.  $\mathbb{R}hg1$  with a solid position for the moment.

B) 17.  $g3$  is a natural move to prepare  $\mathbb{W}d2-e2$  and keep the f-file closed for as long as possible. Let’s look at 17... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ , 17... $\mathbb{R}af8$  and 17... $e5$ :

B1) 17... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  does not completely equalize after 18.  $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{W}xe2+$  19.  $\mathbb{Q}xe2$   $\mathbb{Q}h5$  (or 19... $\mathbb{Q}g6$  to go to e4) 20.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{R}af8$  even if the black position is still very playable;

B2) 17... $\mathbb{R}af8$ ! (a useful move in general and apparently the strongest) 18.  $\mathbb{W}e2$



*analysis diagram*

And now:

B2a) 18...g5! (in the same spirit, 18... $\mathbb{W}xe2+$  19. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  g5!? is also interesting) 19. $\mathbb{W}xc4$  dxc4 20. $\mathbb{Q}xg5!$  (20.fxg5?  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{R}f2$  favours Black, and after 22.0-0-0 e5 23. $\mathbb{Q}c2$  the positional line 23... $\mathbb{Q}f5$  24. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}d3$  provides sufficient compensation for the pawn, while 23... $\mathbb{Q}a4!$  wins the exchange) 20...e5! (the double sacrifice of the g- and e-pawns is typical and instructive) 21.fxe5  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  22. $\mathbb{Q}e4$  – Black has good compensation for the pawn, for example after 22... $\mathbb{R}b6$  23.b4 (23.0-0-0  $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ ) 23... $\mathbb{Q}d3+$  24. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}h3$ , which takes control of f1;

B2b) 18... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  19.cxd4 (after 19. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ , which loses sight of the g5-square, 19... $\mathbb{W}xe2+$  20. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  g5! leads to a good game for Black) 19... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  (after 19... $\mathbb{W}xe2?$  20. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  21. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$  – but not 21. $\mathbb{Q}e5?$  g5! – 21... $\mathbb{Q}h5$  22. $\mathbb{Q}e5$  White is better, as 22...g5 loses the exchange to 23. $\mathbb{Q}d7$ ) 20. $\mathbb{W}xc4$  dxc4 21.0-0! (21. $\mathbb{Q}e5$  allows 21...g5!) 21... $\mathbb{Q}h5$  (21... $\mathbb{Q}c6$  22. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}d5?$  would be strong if not for 23. $\mathbb{Q}d7!$ ) 22. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{R}d8$  23. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{R}xd4$  with a slight white advantage.

B3) 17...e5!? with the possibilities:

B3a) 18.b3 (to exchange on c6, the queen must first be driven away because 18. $\mathbb{Q}xc6?$  bxc6 19. $\mathbb{Q}xe5?$  allows 19... $\mathbb{W}e4+$ ) 18... $\mathbb{W}a6$  19. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  and now after 19... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  20. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  d4! or 19...bxc6 20. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  White has an extra pawn and a superb knight on e5. He has the best chances, but his king is exposed in the long-term and the position is sharp;

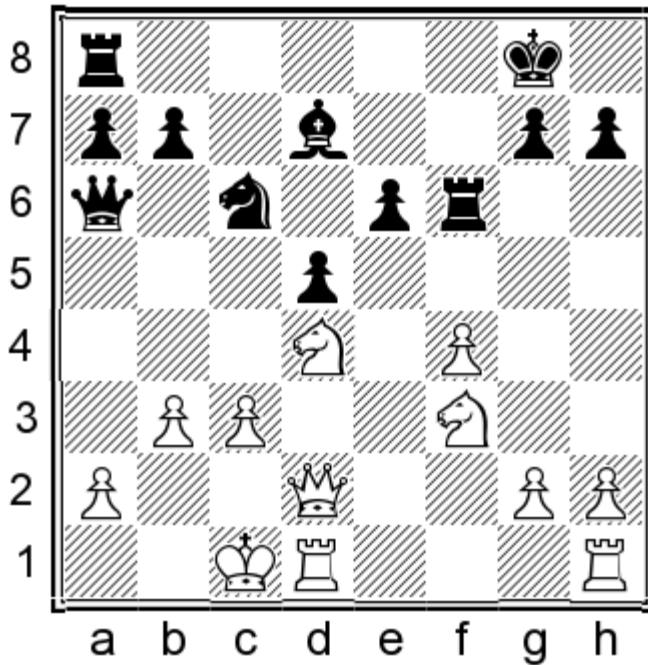
B3b) 18. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  19.fxe5 (a quiet continuation, in search of a slight advantage) 19... $\mathbb{R}f7!$  (after 19... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  20.0-0-0  $\mathbb{R}xe5$  21.b3  $\mathbb{W}c5$  22. $\mathbb{Q}he1$  White has brought his king to safety and is permanently better) 20.b3 (20.0-0-0 avoids weakening the pawn structure, but invites a draw after 20... $\mathbb{W}xa2$  21.e6  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $\mathbb{W}a1+$  23. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{W}a4+$  24. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{W}e4+$  25. $\mathbb{Q}c1$   $\mathbb{W}xe6$  26. $\mathbb{W}xd5$ ) 20... $\mathbb{W}a6!$  This controls the e6- and f1-squares – Black has a good game after 21.0-0-0  $\mathbb{R}af8$  or 21. $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{W}a5$ .

## 17.b3

Van der Sterren intends to quickly castle queenside (the a2-pawn will be defended by the queen), but this move is weakening and the f-file is particularly exposed.

**17... $\mathbb{W}a6$  18.0-0-0?!**

18.g3 is again the safest. Then 18... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  or 18... $\mathbb{B}af8$  can follow, as was the case after 17.g3, or else 18... $\mathbb{B}c8!?$  with some pressure on the c-file.



**18... $\mathbb{Q}xd4!$**

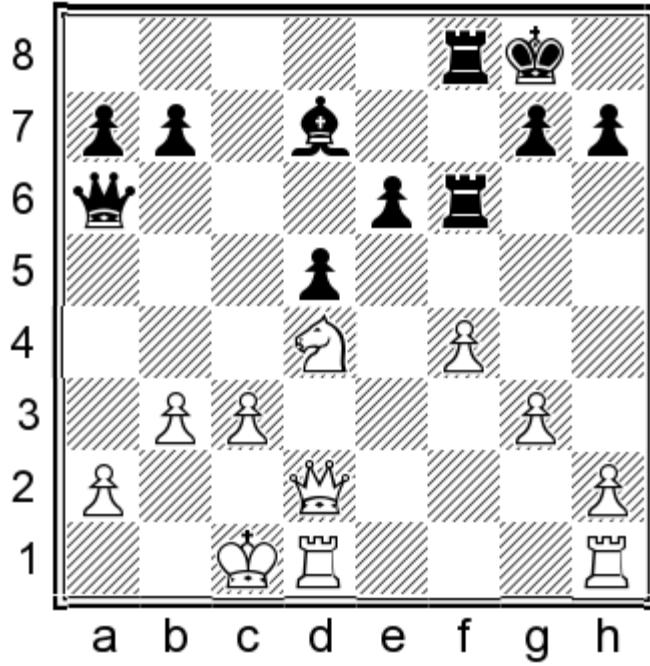
Kortchnoi plans to play ...e6-e5 to open the f-file and bring the d7-bishop into play with gain of tempo. He takes advantage of the fact that 19. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  is forced: 19.cxd4? is no good because of 19... $\mathbb{B}xf4!$  20. $\mathbb{Q}e5$  (20. $\mathbb{W}xf4 \mathbb{W}xa2$  21. $\mathbb{B}df1 \mathbb{B}c8+$  22. $\mathbb{Q}d1 \mathbb{B}b5$  23. $\mathbb{W}e5$  – defending the e2-square – 23... $\mathbb{W}a1+$  24. $\mathbb{Q}d2 \mathbb{W}c3+$  25. $\mathbb{Q}d1 \mathbb{W}c1\#$ ) 20... $\mathbb{B}af8$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xd7 \mathbb{W}c6+$  with a big advantage.

**19. $\mathbb{Q}xd4 \mathbb{B}af8!$  20.g3?**

20. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  is passive, but more or less holds the position, for example:

A) 20...e5!? 21. $\mathbb{W}xd5+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  22. $\mathbb{W}d2 \mathbb{Q}g4$  23. $\mathbb{B}he1$  exf4, with the idea of 24...f3 to open the f-file, maintains some pressure;

B) 20... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  with the ideas of 21... $\mathbb{Q}h5$  or 21... $\mathbb{Q}g6$  depending on the circumstances, also leads to a slight black advantage.

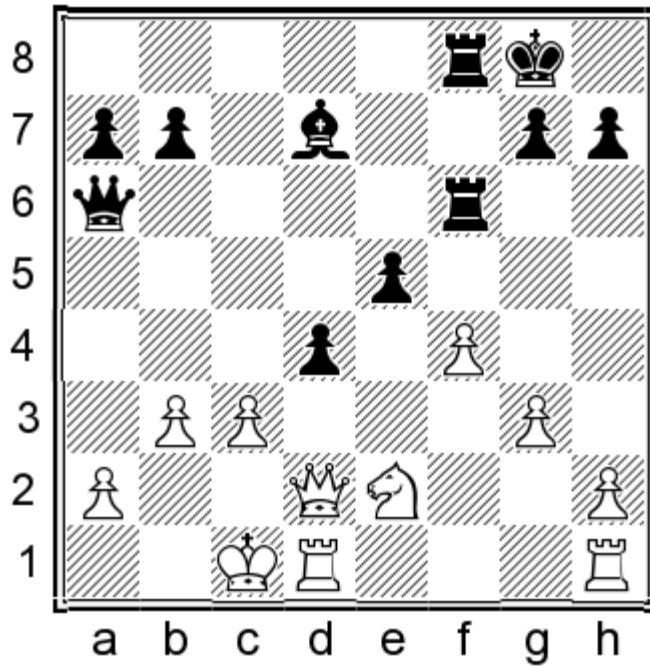


**20...e5! 21.♗e2**

To try to keep the f-file more or less closed, but other files will open and the sixth rank is already available to the f6-rook.

21.fxe5? ♜f2 loses immediately.

**21...d4!**



The c3-, f4- and g3-pawns have been placed to fix the e6- and d5-pawns and make the bishop 'bad', but the light squares have thus been neglected and the black bishop can act on several diagonals and actively participate in the attack on the white king. We knew this and now we can see it.

**22.cxd4**

White cannot keep the lines closed and at least decides to take some material.

On 22.c4 one possibility is 22...b5 with an opening of the c-file.

**22...♝g4!**

Pinning the knight and tying a rook to its defence. The immediate attack on the sensitive c2-square by 22...♜c6+ 23.♝b2 ♜fc8 leads nowhere after 24.♝c1.

**23.♝de1**

The knight is thus protected and unpinned, but the rook is no longer able to contest the c-file.

23.♝he1 loses the exchange following 23...exf4 24.gxf4 ♜e6.

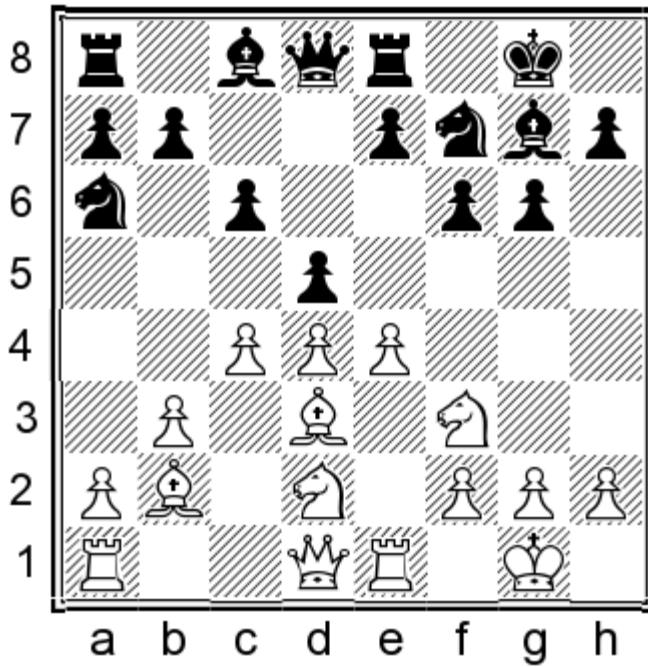
**23...♜c6+ 24.♝b2 ♜fc8 25.♝c1**

25.dxe5 ♜c2+ 26.♝xc2 ♜xc2+ 27.♝xc2 ♜xe2 gets two connected pawns for the piece, but is not enough to save the game.

**25...♞f5 26.♝b4 ♜b6 27.♝e7 ♜a5 28.a4 ♜xa4**

White resigned.

54

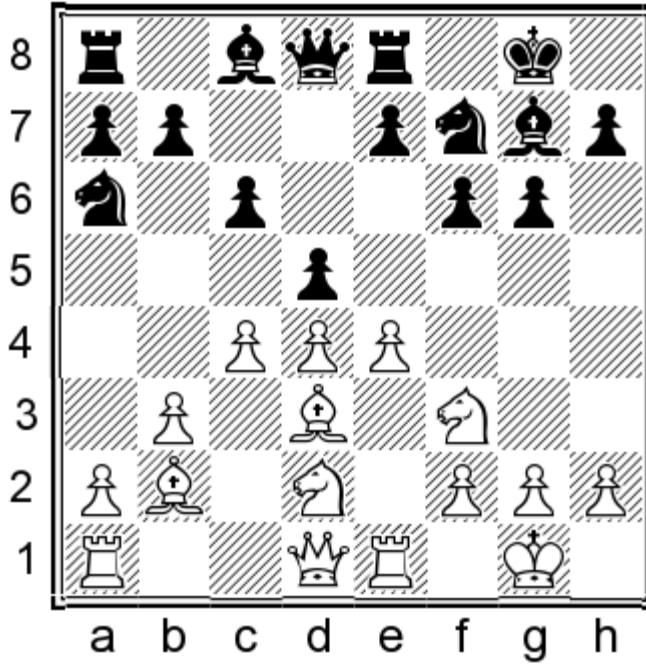


*Black to move*

What plan gives Black good play? With a little calculation can you note some consequences for both sides?

Show/Hide Solution

1.e4 c6 2.d4 d5 3.♘d2 g6 4.♗gf3 ♘g7 5.c3 ♘h6 6.♗d3 0-0 7.0-0 f6 8.c4 ♗f7 9.♗e1 ♘a6 10.b3 ♗e8 11.♗b2



*Black to move*

Black lacks space but he has an attractive plan at his disposal: play ...d5xe4 followed by ...f6-f5 (pinning the d4-pawn), ...c6-c5xd4 and then advance his central majority. In some cases ...e7-e5 will be played instead of ...c6-c5.

Let's see the details:

**11...dxe4! 12.♗xe4 ♘g4!?**

Another good continuation is 12...f5 13.♗c3! (unpinning the d-pawn; after 13.♗g3?! c5, the g3-knight lacks prospects and Black is already better) and now:

- A) 13...♘xd4 14.♗xd4 ♖xd4 leaves White with excellent compensation for the sacrificed pawn;
- B) 13...e5 14.dxe5 ♘xe5 15.♗xe5 ♖xe5 16.♗xe5 ♘xe5 17.♗e2 ♘f6 when Black has good chances of completing his development and equalizing, although this is not yet done;
- C) 13...c5! 14.d5 e5! 15.dxe6 (otherwise the black majority is dangerous) 15...♘xe6 when the position is balanced, the f7-knight being well placed to cover the weaknesses created by the advance of the f-pawn.

By 12...♘g4 Black presses against the d4-pawn and only intends to advance ...c6-c5 when this will lead to the exchange of his c-pawn for the d4-pawn.

**13.♗ed2**

This knight, whose position on e4 was unstable, will take over from his colleague on f3 in order to defend the d4-pawn.

13.h3?  $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  14. $\mathbb{W}xf3$  loses a pawn after 14...f5 followed by 15... $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ .

### 13...f5 14.h3

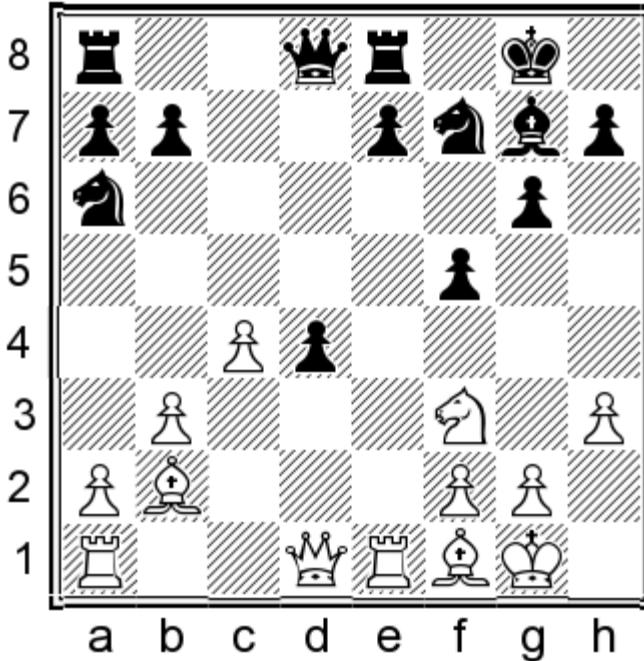
A) 14. $\mathbb{W}c1$ ?! unpins the f3-knight and the d4-pawn partially, too. After 14...c5?! 15.d5! we see a drawback to the position of the bishop on g4: it is cut off from the e6-square, which makes it difficult to push ...e7-e5. On the other hand, 14...e5! takes advantage of the d4-pawn being pinned against the d3-bishop and gives Black an excellent game;

B) 14. $\mathbb{W}b1$ ?, in the same spirit, but defending the d3-bishop, is stronger:

B1) 14...e5 15.dxe5  $\mathbb{W}c7$  16.e6  $\mathbb{Q}d8$  should equalize with a little care;

B2) 14...e6!? (with the idea of playing 15...c5 and if 16.d5 then 16...e5) 15.c5!? $\mathbb{Q}xc5$ !?(15... $\mathbb{Q}b4$  16. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  is unclear) 16.dxc5  $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  17. $\mathbb{W}xb2$   $\mathbb{W}xd3$  18. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  19. $\mathbb{W}xe5$  gives White enough compensation for the missing pawn.

### 14... $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$ c5! 16. $\mathbb{Q}f1$ $\mathbb{Q}xd4$



### 17. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$

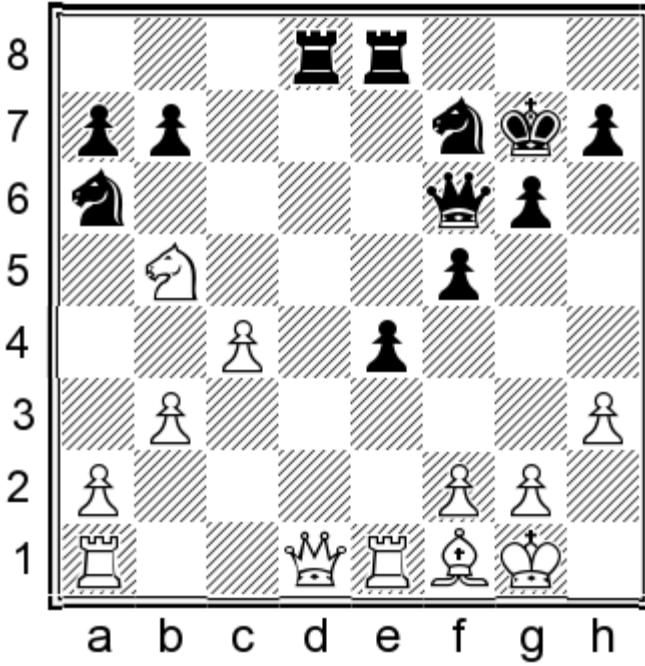
The e7-pawn will now advance while gaining time on the d4-bishop and f3-knight, Black is better.

17. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  is the move that White would like to play, with a choice:

A) 17...e5 18. $\mathbb{Q}b5$  e4! (18... $\mathbb{Q}c5$ ?! 19.b4  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  20.c5 is worse; the knight must remain on a6 until White plays a2-a3 to prepare b3-b4) 19. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$   $\mathbb{Q}xg7$  20.a3  $\mathbb{Q}c5$  21.b4  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  – both majorities are moving and chances are equal;

B) 17... $\mathbb{W}b6$  (threatening 18... $\mathbb{Q}ad8$  to pin and once more attack the knight; it is most likely that this move, with the complications it implies, deterred Parma from playing 17. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$ ) 18. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ !  $\mathbb{W}c5$  19. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ !  $\mathbb{Q}ad8$  (19... $\mathbb{Q}xa6$ ? loses to 20. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ ) 20. $\mathbb{Q}e6$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  only leads to equality. Instead of 18... $\mathbb{W}c5$ , 18... $\mathbb{Q}d6$ ! is also complicated, but apparently promising: the d-file is obstructed, but White will have some difficulties after ... $\mathbb{Q}a6-c5$  because of the unstable position of the e6-rook (he may consider sacrificing the exchange, but Black may not be in a hurry to take it).

### 17...e5 18. $\mathbb{Q}b2$ e4 19. $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ $\mathbb{Q}xg7$ 20. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ $\mathbb{W}f6$ 21. $\mathbb{Q}b5$ $\mathbb{Q}ad8$



Black has successfully realized his plan: his central majority is more influential than the opposing majority on the queenside and he has strong pressure on the d-file.

**22.♘c1 ♘b4**

Aiming at the d3-square and defending the d5-square where the white knight could go.

**23.♘c7**

A) 23.♘c3 ♘e5 leads to a large Black advantage;

B) 23.a3 ♘d3 24.♗xd3 ♗xd3! (a pretty variation: 24...exd3? 25.♗xe8 d2!? (25...♗xe8 26.♘c3! gives nothing) and now the natural move 26.♗d1? loses to 26...♗xe8, but 26.♘c3! ♗xe8 27.♗f1 holds the position) 25.♘c7? (the main idea of 23.a3 is to install this knight on d5, but this is not feasible; on other moves Black is simply better) 25...♗c8! and 26.♘d5 loses a piece after 26...♗xd5.

**23...♗e7 24.a3 ♘d3 25.♗xd3 ♗xc7!**

The most active white piece is exchanged and Black is much better.

**26.♗f1 ♗cd7 27.♗e3 a6 28.♗ac1 ♘e5 29.c5**

In search of counterplay on the queenside.

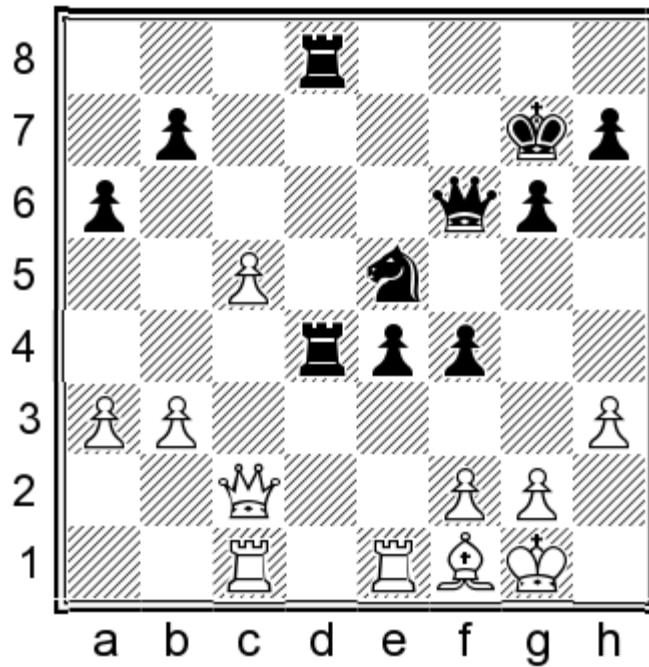
**29...♝d4**

Defending the e4-pawn, which prepares ...f5-f4.

**30.♘c3**

The blockading move 30.f4 allows 30...♘d3 (and not 30...exf3? 31.♗xe5) 31.♗xd3 ♗xd3 and Black is winning thanks to his control of the d-file, the protected passed e-pawn and the weakness of the white queenside pawns.

30...f4 31.♔c2



31...e3!

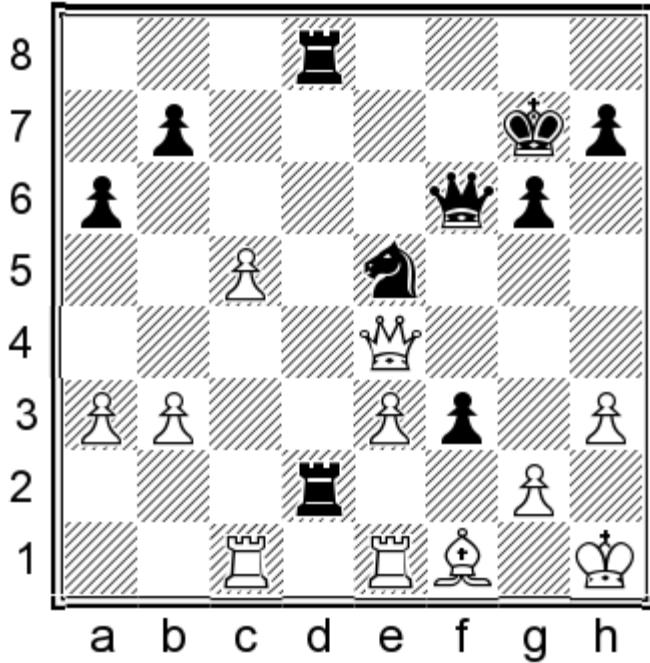
This thematic attack (...e4-e3 with the idea of responding to f2xe3 by ...f4-f3) clears the second rank, closes the e-file and displaces the f2- and g2-pawns defending the white king.

After 31...♔c6 32.b4 ♔d5 Black is better, but the need to defend the e4-pawn makes progression difficult.

32.fxe3

32.♗cd1 ♗d2 and 32.♗e2 ♜d3! also lose.

32...♗d2 33.♔e4 f3! 34.♔h1



34... $\mathbb{Q}f2?$

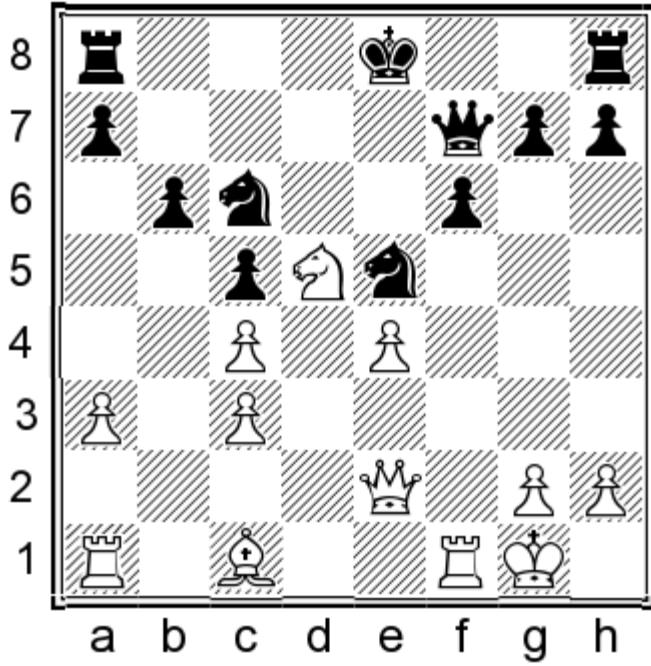
Black obviously has excellent compensation for the sacrificed pawn and at least one clear, though complicated, win:  
 34... $\mathbb{Q}g5!$  (threatening 35... $\mathbb{Q}xg2$ ) 35.g4 (35. $\mathbb{Q}c2 \mathbb{Q}g3!$  36. $\mathbb{Q}ec1 fxg2+$  37. $\mathbb{Q}xg2 \mathbb{Q}d1+$  38. $\mathbb{Q}f1 \mathbb{Q}xh3+$ ) 35...h5 36. $\mathbb{Q}f4!$   
 $\mathbb{Q}xg4!$  (or else 36... $\mathbb{Q}xf4$  37.exf4 hxg4! 38. $\mathbb{Q}xe5 g3$ ) 37.hxg4 (37. $\mathbb{Q}xg5 \mathbb{Q}h2+$  38. $\mathbb{Q}g1 f2\#$ ) 37... $\mathbb{Q}h4+$  38. $\mathbb{Q}g1 f2+$

35. $\mathbb{Q}ed1 \mathbb{Q}g5$  36.g4  $\mathbb{Q}fd2$  37. $\mathbb{Q}xd2 \mathbb{Q}xd2$

The situation has clearly improved for White.

38. $\mathbb{Q}f4 \mathbb{Q}xf4$  39.exf4  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  40. $\mathbb{Q}c3 \mathbb{Q}d4$  41. $\mathbb{Q}d3 \mathbb{Q}xd3$  42. $\mathbb{Q}xd3 \mathbb{Q}xb3$  43.c6 bxc6 44. $\mathbb{Q}xa6 c5$  45. $\mathbb{Q}g1 \mathbb{Q}d2$  46.a4 c4  
 47.a5 c3 48. $\mathbb{Q}d3 f2+$  49. $\mathbb{Q}xf2 \mathbb{Q}b3$  50. $\mathbb{Q}e3 \mathbb{Q}xa5$  51. $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{Q}b7$  52. $\mathbb{Q}xc3 \mathbb{Q}c5$  53. $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{Q}d7$

Draw agreed.



*White to move*

White has a badly damaged pawn structure, but he can nevertheless survive. What plan should he adopt?

### Show/Hide Solution

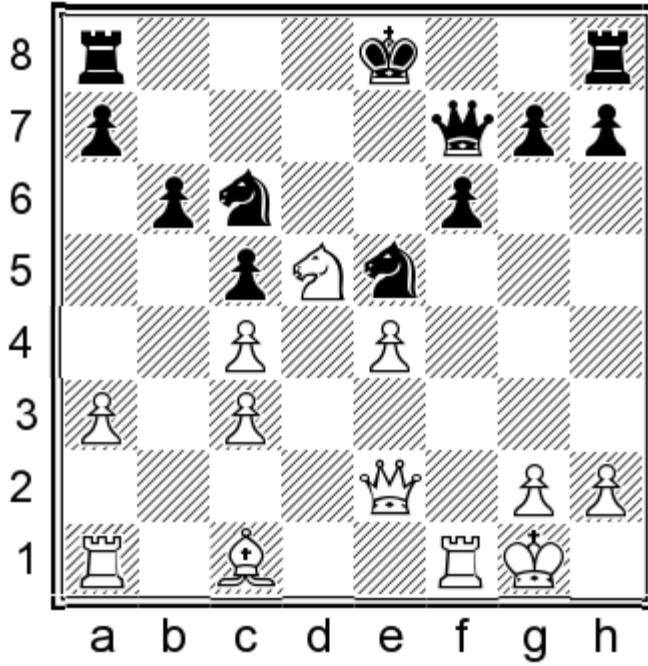
55

## **Andor Lilienthal**

## Vasily Smyslov

Parnu 1947 (7)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  4.e3 c5 5.a3  $\mathbb{Q}xc3+$  6.bxc3  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  7. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  b6 8. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  d6 9.e4  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  10.0-0 e5 11.f4  $\mathbb{W}e7$  12.fxe5 dxe5 13.dxe5  $\mathbb{Q}dxe5$  14. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  15. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  16. $\mathbb{W}xe2$  f6 17. $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{W}f7$



*White to move*

White's pawn structure is badly damaged and the c4-pawn is particularly exposed as the c1-bishop is the only piece on the board that cannot control the light squares. His counterchances reside in a slight development advantage as well as in the dominant position of his d5-knight. He will strive to open the position by preparing the advance of the a- or e-pawns. The blockading squares on a5 and e5 are therefore very important.

**18.Qf4!**

18.a4? first is a mistake, as after 18...0-0 19.Qf4 Rae8! the rook defends the e5-knight, which allows the c6-knight to remain in place to stop the advance of the a4-pawn.

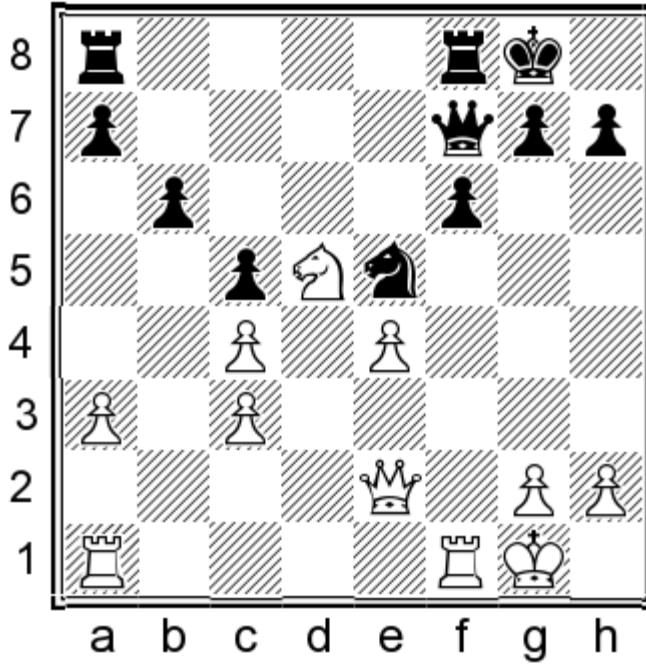
Instead of 18...0-0, 18...Qa5?, to win the c4-pawn, is no good because of Black's lack of development, for example: 19.Qf4! Qxc4 (19...Qexc4? 20.Qc7+) 20.Qxe5! Qxe5 21.Qb5+ Qf8 (Black cannot interpose on d7 because of the fork on c7) 22.a5 when the h8-rook is offside for a long time and the white initiative is worth more than one pawn.

**18...0-0 19.Qxe5!**

In general the exchange of pieces is not good for White, but he has a precise idea in mind: to threaten to advance both the a-pawn and the e-pawn.

19.a4? Rae8 is wrong, as we have seen.

**19...Qxe5**



**20.a4!**

Threatening 21.a5 with play on the queenside.

**20...Nc6**

The knight controls the a5- and e5-squares provided it stays on c6; it is therefore more or less immobilized and we can foresee the theme of overloading (the knight can prevent the a4-pawn or the e4-pawn from advancing, but not both at the same time).

**21.Qg4**

Threatening 22.Qxf6+. The idea is to remove the queen from the e-file to play e4-e5 without fearing a vis-à-vis with a black rook.

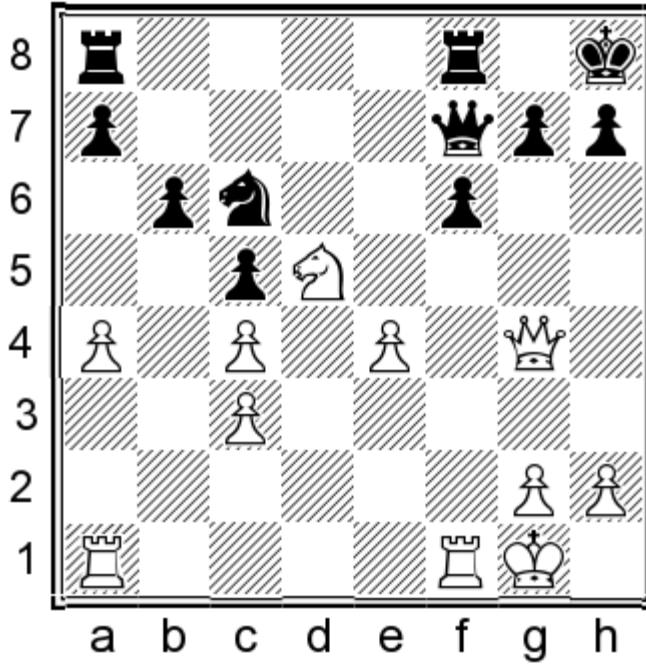
21.a5! is a better move order:

- A) After 21...bxa5 22.Qf2 the c5-pawn is immediately attacked and chances are shared, while the similar position we will see, and that could have occurred in the game, is slightly in Black's favour;
- B) 21...Qxa5 22.Qg4 (and not 22.e5? Qae8!) 22...Qh8 23.e5! transposes into the game without allowing a repetition of moves.

**21...Qh8!**

Black is ready to consolidate his position with 22...Qae8.

21...Qe5 22.Qe2 Qc6 23.Qg4 leads to a repetition of moves.



**22.a5! ♜xa5??!**

Black wants both the material advantage and to keep his beautiful pawn structure, but the decentralization of this knight will bring him trouble.

The correct move was 22...bxa5! with two possibilities:

A) 23.♖fb1, to control the b-file, and possibly go to b5 to attack the c5-pawn, seems to be very strong, but Black has a nice resource at his disposal: 23...♗ab8 24.♗b5?! (the normal move, without which White is a little worse) 24...a6! 25.♗xc5? ♗a7! when the c5-rook is pinned and lost;

B) 23.♗g3 (to go to d6 or e3 to attack the c5-pawn) 23...♗ac8 24.♗e3 (24.♗d6 ♜e5! defends the c5-pawn while attacking the c4-pawn, and after 25.♗a6 ♜c6 Black is a little better) 24...♗fe8 (24...♜e5 25.♗e2 is less convincing) 25.♗xc5 ♗g6! gives Black the advantage as the e4-pawn is vulnerable; 25...♗xe4 instead of 25...♗g6 allows 26.♗xa5!, exploiting the pin on the c6-knight.

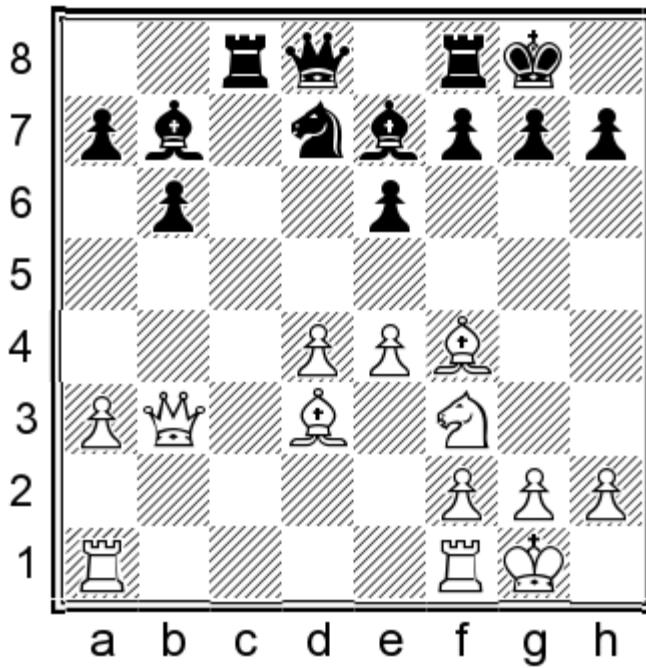
**23.e5!**

The end of the manoeuvre initiated by 19.♗xe5.

(continuation and solution 63)

## Show in Quiz Mode

56



*Black to move*

What plans are available to White? Find a good defensive move for Black together with the different associated plans.

Show/Hide Solution

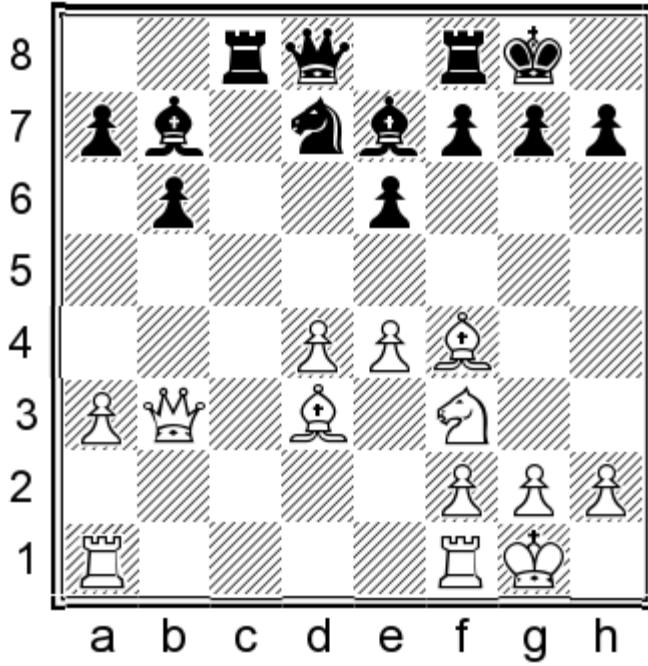
56

Lajos Portisch 2625

**Viktor Kortchnoi** 2630

### Montpellier ct 1985 (4)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  b6 4.a3  $\mathbb{Q}b7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  d5 6.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  7. $\mathbb{W}c2$  c5 8.e4  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  9.bxc3  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  10. $\mathbb{Q}f4$  cxd4 11.cxd4  $\mathbb{Q}c8$  12. $\mathbb{W}b3!$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  13. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  0-0 14.0-0



*Black to move*

Thanks to his strong pawn centre White has good prospects all over the board. He may consider an attack on the king, creating a passed pawn or a minority attack on the queenside. In principle he should avoid piece exchanges because of his space advantage.

**14...♝b8!**

A multi-purpose move that prepares ...♝e7-d6 as well as ...♝b7-a6, to try to exchange pieces, or ...♝b8-c6-a5 to obtain play on the queenside and prevent the white minority attack.

14...♝f6 15.♜fe1 does not really put pressure on the white centre and if now 15...♝h5 16.♝d2 ♜c7 then 17.g3 is possible but slightly weakening, so the simplest is 17.a4! ♜f4 18.♝f1 and Black lacks counterplay.

**15.♜ad1! ♜d6?!**

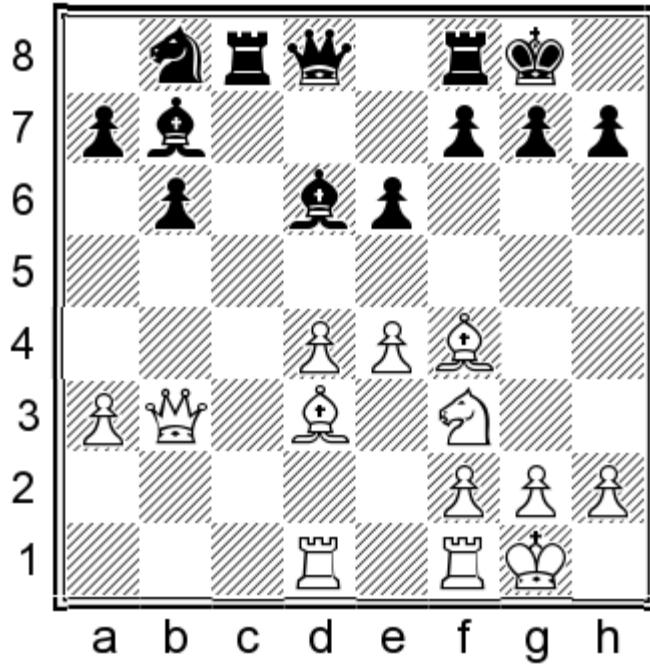
Chasing the f4-bishop from its dominant location, but the black position will become passive.

A) After 15...♝a6?! 16.♝xa6 ♜xa6 17.♝a4 ♜c7 18.♝xa7? ♜b5 19.♝a6 ♜c3 20.♜de1 b5 Black has play against the a3- and e4-pawns. Instead of 18.♝xa7?, 18.♝e5 or 18.♜c1 lead to a clear white advantage;

B) 15...♝c6! 16.d5! (16.♜fe1 ♜a5 17.♝a2 ♜c3 is balanced) 16...♝a5 is the best defence, the white queen eventually losing as much time to relocate as the black queen's knight. The following variations only have an illustrative value as the position is really complex:

B1) 17.♝a2 (keeping an eye on the a3- and d5-pawns) 17...♜c3 18.a4 (after 18.d6 ♜xd6 19.e5 ♜xf3 20.gxf3 ♜xa3 21.♝xh7+ ♜xh7 22.♜xd8 ♜xd8 Black has sufficient compensation for the queen) 18...exd5 19.exd5 ♜d6! (blocking the d-pawn; 19...♜xd5? 20.♝xh7+ ♜xh7 21.♜xd5 ♜c8 22.♝h5+ ♜g8 23.♝e5! with the threat of 24.♝g6! followed by 25.♝h8# is annoying) 20.♝xd6 ♜xd6 gives Black a good game, for example: 21.♝g5 ♜xd3 22.♜xd3 ♜a6 23.♝b1 ♜g6! with equal chances;

B2) 17.♝b1!? (aiming at the h7-pawn) 17...♜xa3! (grabbing a pawn to compensate for the activity of the white pieces) 18.d6 (18.dxe6 fxe6 19.e5 is not clear either) 18...♜c3 is not easy to judge; the e4-e5 advance, which is useful for the white attack, also makes the b7-bishop active.



**16.Bd2!**

Portisch avoids exchanges and places his bishop on an excellent square, preventing the ...Bb8-c6-a5 manoeuvre.

**16...Bc7**

Preparing 17...Qa6 18.Qxa6 Qxa6 19.Wa4 Wc8! with good play for Black.

A) On the immediate 16...Qa6? White exerts strong pressure on the black queenside by 17.Qxa6 Qxa6 18.Wa4 Qc7 19.Qc1 (but not 19.Wxa7? Qb5 followed by 20...Qxa3);

B) After 16...Qc6 17.Qfe1 Black does not have the a5-square for his knight and his position remains passive.

**17.Qfe1!**

In order to keep the light-squared bishop.

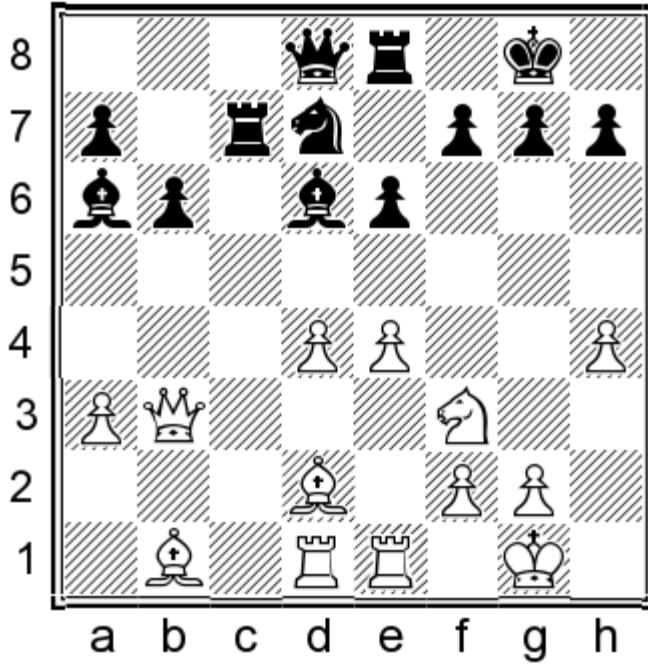
**17...Qa6 18.Qb1**

Black lacks counterplay and his king will be exposed to a strong attack.

**18...Be8 19.h4!**

A typical move in positions with this pawn structure: White takes advantage of his good central control to improve his position on the kingside (the advance of the h-pawn is intended to weaken the black king position and give the white pieces a support square on g5). 19.Qg5!, with the idea of answering 19...h6 by 20.e5, is also strong.

**19...Qd7**



Threatening 20...e5.

**20.♗g5?**

Preventing 20...e5 and preparing to bring the white queen to the kingside. The idea is excellent, but there is a tactical flaw.

20.e5! ♕e7 21.♗g5!, much as in the game, leads to a large white advantage.

**20...♝f8?**

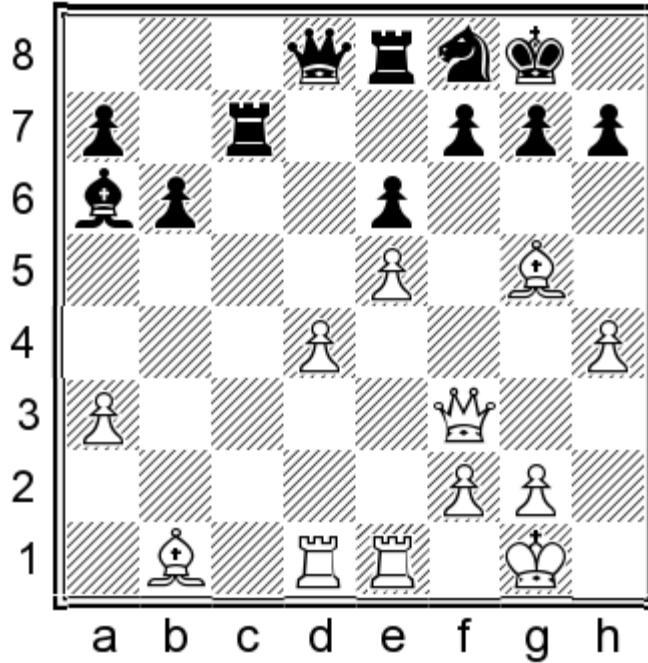
A) Black loses after 20...h6? 21.e5! ♕e7 (or 21...hxg5 22.exd6) 22.♔h7+! ♜f8 23.♗xe6+! fxe6 24.♕xe6;

B) It is difficult to imagine the a6-bishop as a defender of the king, and yet after 20...♝c4! 21.♕f3 e5! the f7-pawn is protected, the e4-e5 thrust is prevented and the position is unclear.

**21.e5 ♕e7 22.♕f3 ♜xg5**

More resistant was 22...f5 23.exf6 ♜xf6, improving the communication between his pieces at the cost of weakening his pawn structure, but Black remains worse.

**23.♔xg5**



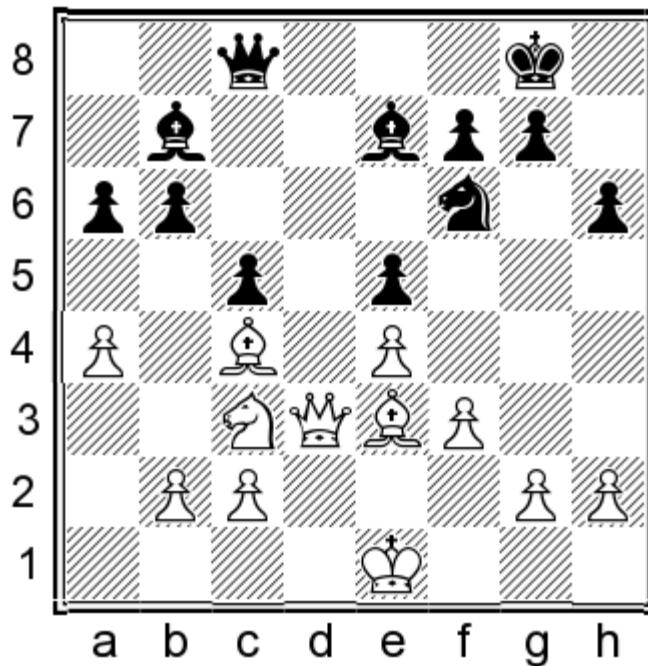
With so many pieces in the attack and the possibility of advancing the h-pawn, White is winning.

**23... $\mathbb{W}a8$  24. $\mathbb{W}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  25. $\mathbb{B}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  26. $\mathbb{W}f4$   $\mathbb{W}c8$  27. $\mathbb{B}g3$   $\mathbb{W}g8$  28. $h5$   $\mathbb{Q}e2?$**

A blunder, but there was nothing left to save anyway.

**29. $\mathbb{W}e4$  1-0**

57



*White to move*

How can White increase the pressure?

Show/Hide Solution

57

Efim Geller

Mario Bertok

Belgrade tt 1961 (3)

Direct action by 24.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  25.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  (or 25.  $exd5$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$ ) 25...  $\mathbb{W}c7$  26.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $a5$  gives White no more than a slight advantage as there is no longer a knight to take advantage of the bad black pawn structure.

24.  $\mathbb{Q}f2!$

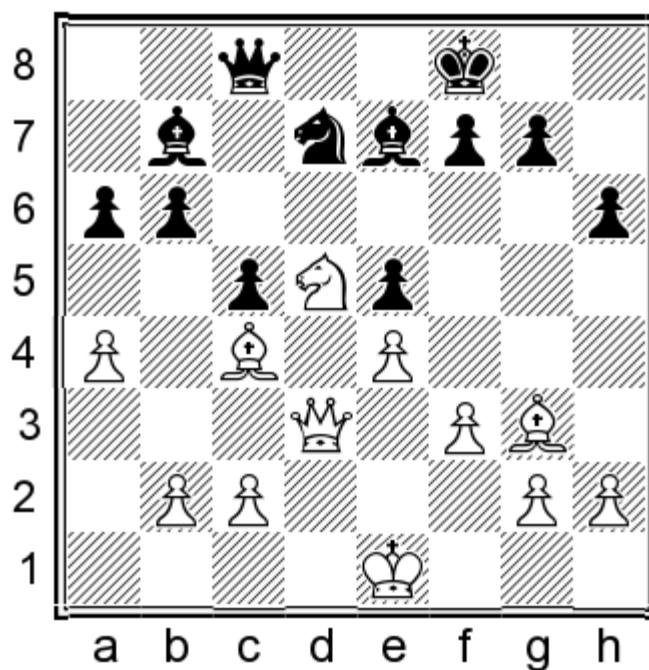
All the white pieces are ideally placed apart from this bishop. The attack on the e5-pawn will force important concessions.

24...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$

Or else 24...  $\mathbb{Q}d8$  (with the idea of bringing this bishop to c7 to defend the e5-pawn) 25.  $\mathbb{Q}h4!$  (25.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  is uncomfortable, but apparently tenable after 26.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  27.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  and now 28.  $\mathbb{W}xd5$   $\mathbb{W}b8$  or else 28.  $exd5$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$ ) and Black is hard-pressed to find a reasonable move:

- A) 25...  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  26.  $\mathbb{W}d6+$  and 25...  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  26.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  lose a pawn. We can see that the black king is also immobilized;
- B) 25...  $g5$  weakens the kingside, which is apparent after 26.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  27.  $\mathbb{Q}d1!$  followed by 28.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$ ;
- C) 25...  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  26.  $\mathbb{Q}xd8!$  (even stronger than 26.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$ ) 26...  $\mathbb{W}xd8$  27.  $\mathbb{W}d6!$  (27.  $\mathbb{Q}xa6$   $\mathbb{Q}xa6$  28.  $\mathbb{W}xa6$  allows 28...  $\mathbb{W}h4+$  29.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}xh2$ ) – the d7-knight is pinned and the black queen is tied to the defence of the c7- and e7-squares;
- D) 25...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  26.  $\mathbb{Q}g3!$  and Black must abandon the d5-square by 26...  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  with the same problems as in the game.

25.  $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  26.  $\mathbb{Q}d5$



The white queen can now go to b3 when the b6- and f7-pawns are vulnerable. White is probably winning.

**26...♝g5 27.♝f2**

27.♝xb6 ♜xb6 28.♛d6+ ♔g8 29.♛xb6 wins a pawn while maintaining a positional advantage as 29...♛d7 30.♝d3 c4 31.♝xc4 ♛d2+ 32.♝f1 does not give Black any real counterchances. Geller's choice is safer in practice.

**27...♝d8 28.♝e3 ♜c7 29.♝f5 ♜b8**

This is the only piece move that does not immediately lose material. On 29...♝f6, 30.♝d6, for example, exchanges one of the black bishops and wins at least a pawn.

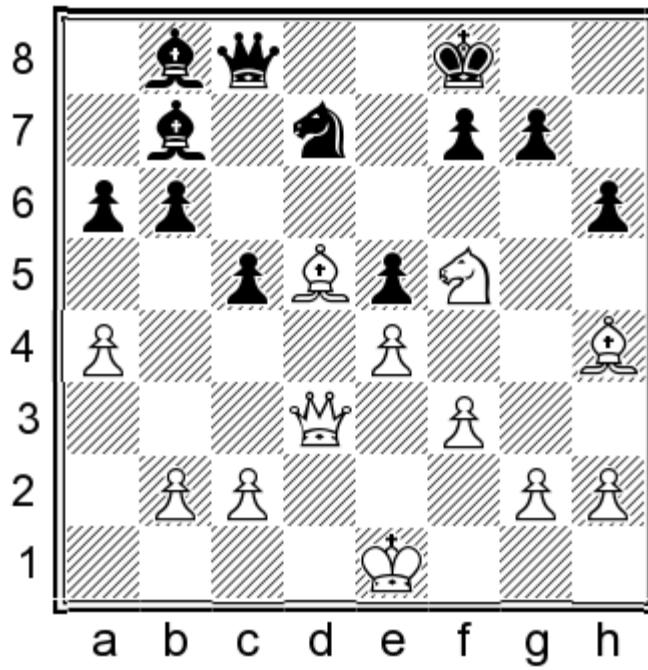
**30.♝h4!**

The pressure on the e5-pawn has paid off and the bishop is now involved in the attack on the king.

**30...♛c6**

30...f6 closes the h4-bishop's diagonal, but opens that of the c4-bishop. 31.♝d6 wins easily, but the most accurate and the most elegant is 31.♝e6! (drawing the bishop to c6 to prevent the ...c5-c4 sacrifice from slowing down the attack) 31...♝c6 32.♝a2! b5 33.♛b3! c4 34.♛b4+ and the game is over.

**31.♝d5 ♛c8**



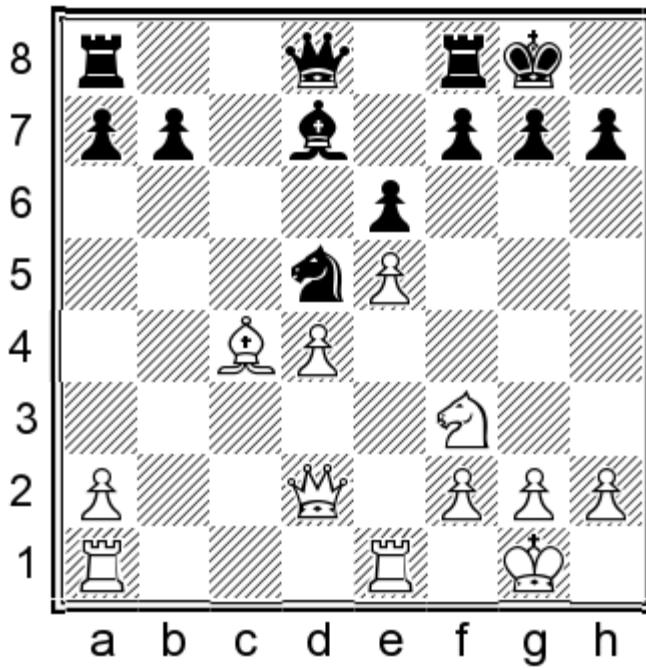
**32.♝xf7! g5**

32...♝xf7 loses to 33.♛c4+ ♔f8 (33...♝g6 34.♝e7+) 34.♝e7+.

**33.♛c4 ♔f6**

33...gxh4 34.♝g6 is no better.

**34.♝f2 ♛c6 35.♝g6 ♛d7 36.a5 ♜a7 37.axb6 ♜xb6 38.♝xc5+ ♜xc5 39.♛xc5+ ♔g8 40.♛xe5 1-0**



*White to move*

What is White's most promising plan?

Show/Hide Solution

58

Vasily Smyslov

Thomas Ernst

Subotica izt 1987 (10)

By advancing the e4-pawn White has abandoned his central duo to get a kingside space advantage and prospects of an attack on the king. For now his pawn structure is damaged, with a backward pawn on d4 and the d5-square in his opponent's hands.

After 15.♗d3 ♜c6 Black will play his knight to e7 then g6 or f5, according to circumstances. This will protect his king and put pressure on the d4-pawn, the exchange of the bishop on f3 can be considered, and the position is not clear. The occupation of the d6-square by 16.♗g5 h6 17.♗e4 ♜e7 18.♗d6 brings nothing after 18...♜c8.

**15.♗xd5! exd5**

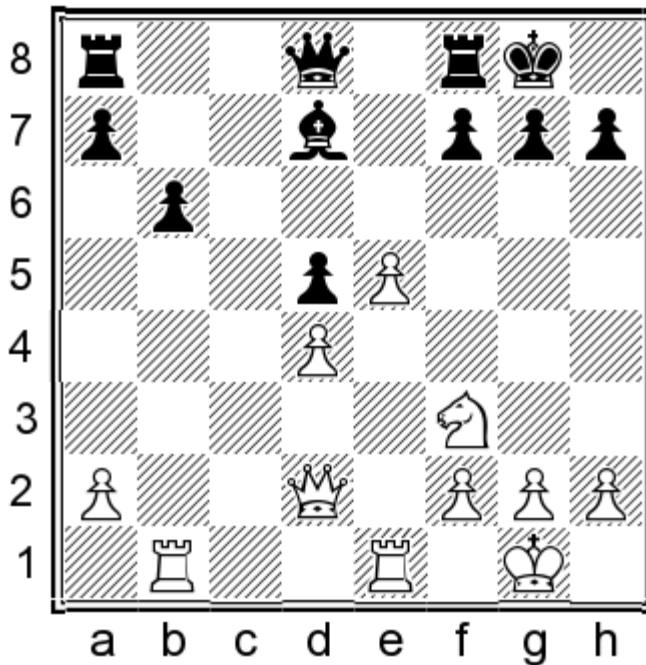
Smyslov weakens Black's structure. He can now combine two main plans: attacking his opponent's king and mobilizing the newly created majority by advancing the f2-pawn. The d7-bishop is the same colour as the blocked d5-pawn, which hinders its scope and leaves the dark squares a little weak. For this reason White should generally avoid the exchange of minor pieces.

**16.♖ab1!**

With the idea of swinging the rook along the third rank to participate in an attack on the king. Nevertheless, this move is

not the most urgent and seems to allow 16...b5, which fits in perfectly with Black's plan. In fact, after 16...b5 the c5-square is weakened, which allows White to infiltrate the queenside: 17.♗ec1! ♜c8 18.♗c5! with a big advantage. Since Black is not ready to play ...b7-b5, 16.♗ab1! occurs with gain of tempo, due to the attack on the b7-pawn, and proves to be an excellent move. Yet this finesse, which paid off in the game, could have changed nothing and is not necessary to the general plan initiated by 17.h3.

### 16...b6

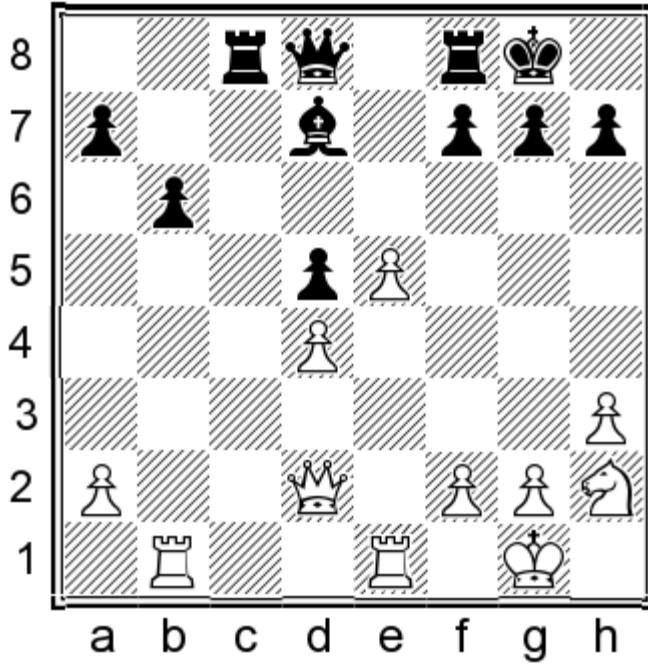


### 17.h3!

Parrying the positional threat of 17...♝g4, exchanging the bishop for the knight, and allowing ♘f3-h2 with new prospects for the knight that will normally go to e3, via f1, where it will put pressure on the d5-pawn and support the f2-f4-f5 advance.

### 17...♜c8 18.♘h2

Taking into account the possibility of 18...♝c4 on the next move, one idea is to play 18.♗bc1 ♜c4 19.♗xc4 dxc4 20.d5, but this gives no more than a complex position.



**18...Qa4**

In search of counterplay on the queenside the bishop gives up control of the g4-square, where the knight is about to go.

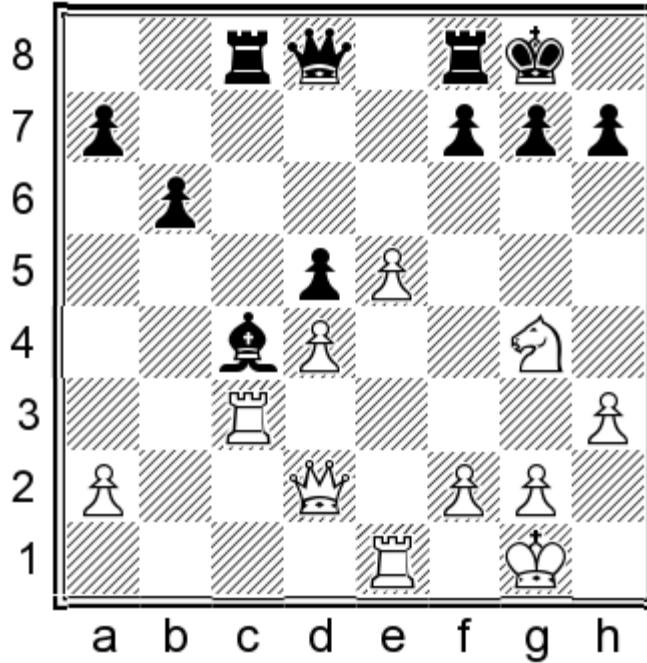
A) After 18...Qf5 the b1-rook must move again, but the bishop will in turn soon be attacked by the knight, for example: 19.Qbc1 Qe7 20.Qf1 Qxc1 21.Qxc1 Qc8 22.Qxc8+ Qxc8 23.Qe3 when the knight occupies the ideal square as we mentioned, and Black is in permanent trouble;

B) 18...Qc4! (an unlikely move that exposes the rook to an attack from the knight in order to threaten an easy-to-defend pawn) 19.Qf1 Wh4! 20.f4 (threatening 21.Qe3 and if 21...Wxf4? then 22.Qxc4 defends the queen) 20...Qa4!, stopping the knight from coming to e3 and preparing ...Qf8-c8-c4 or ...g7-g5, in both cases increasing the pressure on the d4-pawn. Instead of 20.f4 a good continuation is 20.Qbd1! Qa4! 21.Qe3 Qxd1 22.Qxc4 dxc4 23.Qxd1 with a double-edged position. This raises a recurring question: when a plan should ‘normally’ give an advantage in a certain type of position, but does not do so in the precise position one is looking at because of a tactical nuance, how can we evaluate it?

**19.Qbc1 Qb5**

The bishop goes to c4, after which Black will be ready to advance his majority. A common idea to defend the king is to exchange some pieces, for example: 19...Qd7 20.Qg4 Qxc1 21.Qxc1 Qc8 22.Qxc8+ Qxc8, but after 23.Qg5 (Smyslov’s variation) the threats of Qg4-f6+ and Qg4-e3 are very dangerous. The power of the queen and knight duo in an attack is well-known and this position is a good example of it.

**20.Qg4 Qc4 21.Qc3**



We can clearly see how much the black bishop is hindered by the d5-pawn: to help create counterplay it went to c4 where it is now cut off from the defence of its king. The black position is critical.

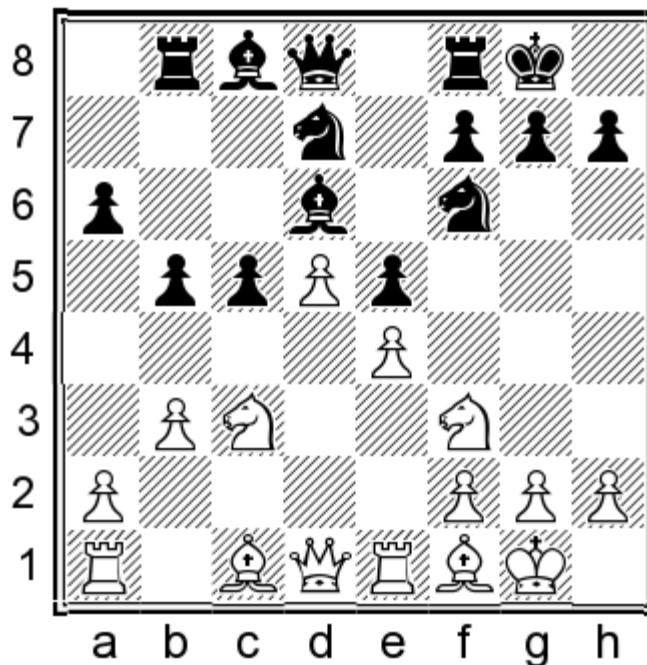
**21...b5 22.♖g3 ♔h8 23.f4 a5**

'On 23...♔h4 there would follow 24.♔h2 h5 25.♕e3, and 25...♗xf4 is no good because of 26.♕xc4.' (Smyslov)

**24.f5 b4 25.f6 ♕g8 26.♕f4 ♖xa2 27.e6 fxe6 28.♕e5**

Black resigned. 28...♕c7 allows 29.♕g6+ hxg6 30.♕h4#.

59



*Black to move*

White is ready to weaken the opposing pawn majority by playing a2-a4. Do you see a possibility for Black to keep it in good condition? What do you think of this?

Show/Hide Solution

**59**

**Lev Polugaevsky**

**Peter Biyiasas**

Petropolis izt 1973 (4)

Black is worse and his best chance of salvation is to maintain the b5-c5 duo in place by 14... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$  15.a4  $\mathbb{Q}c7$ . After 16.axb5 there are two possibilities:

A) 16... $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  (threatening to go to d4, thus inducing White to reform the duo; piece exchanges generally favour the side that has the least space) 17. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  axb5 when Black's position appears to be reasonable, but in fact White has the very strong plan 18. $\mathbb{Q}d2!$  with the idea of  $\mathbb{Q}a1-a5$ , and the pressure on the b5-pawn gives him a significantly better position, for example: 18... $\mathbb{W}b6$  19. $\mathbb{Q}a5$   $\mathbb{Q}a6?$  (Black must resign himself to playing 19...b4) 20. $\mathbb{W}a1$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xb5!$  with a decisive advantage;

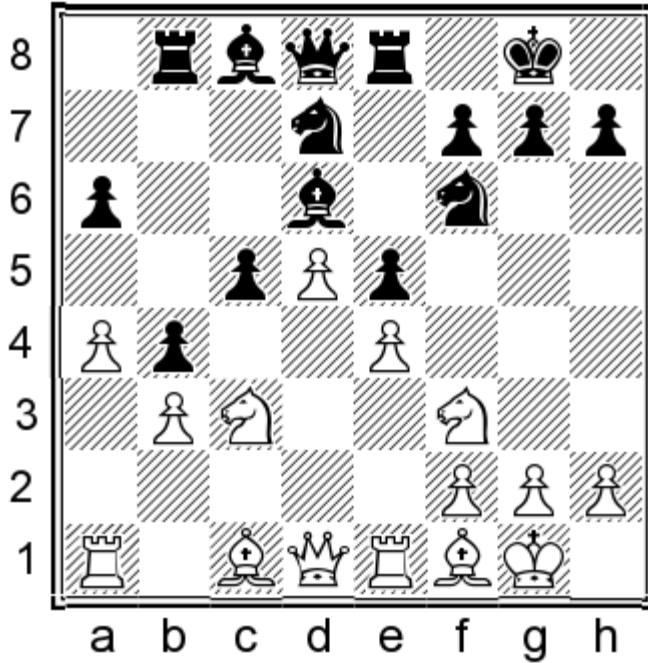
B) 16...axb5! 17. $\mathbb{Q}e3!$  (an excellent developing move that connects the rooks and puts pressure on the c5-pawn) 17... $\mathbb{Q}f6!$  (deserting the c5-pawn a little, but it was necessary to free the d7-square for the bishop in order to connect the black rooks as well, otherwise Black would be too cramped) 18. $\mathbb{W}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  19. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{W}e7$  20. $\mathbb{Q}ec1$   $\mathbb{Q}fc8!$  21. $\mathbb{Q}g3$  (21. $\mathbb{Q}xc5?$   $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  22. $\mathbb{W}xc5$   $\mathbb{W}xc5$  23. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  leads nowhere) 21... $\mathbb{Q}a8$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xa8$   $\mathbb{Q}xa8$  when Black is under pressure on both wings and clearly in trouble. This variation still represents the lesser evil for him.

**14... $\mathbb{Q}e8?$  15.a4!**

The pawn can no longer be defended on b5.

**15...b4**

After 15...c4? 16.axb5 axb5 17.bxc4 b4 18. $\mathbb{Q}b5$  the knight closes the b-file and puts pressure on the d6-bishop; Black is much worse.



**16.Qb1!**

Heading for the c4-square!

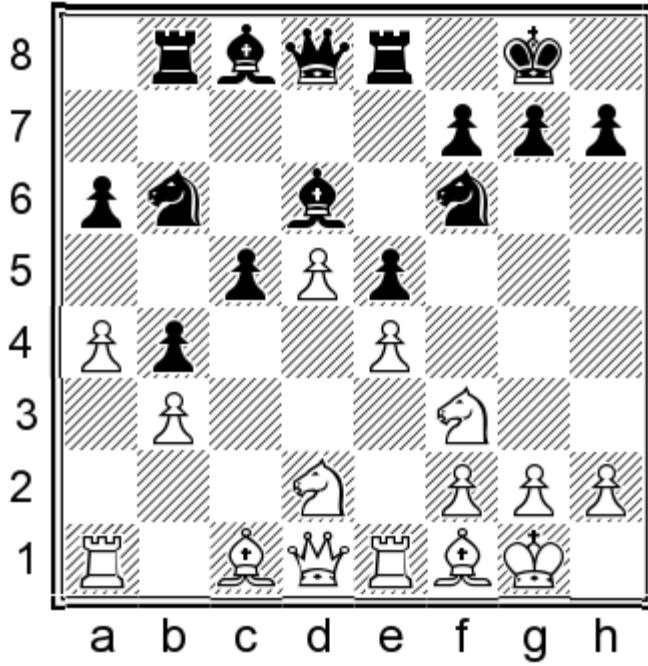
**16...Qb6**

16...a5 was interesting, to then play the knight to b6 while avoiding it being attacked, but this weakens the light squares and allows 17.Qb5 with a very large advantage for White.

**17.Qbd2**

After 17.a5?! Qbx d5! 18.exd5 e4! 19.Qg5 Black has a pawn, a centralized position and some sight of the white king in exchange for a piece. It is not clear that the compensation is sufficient, but his position would be significantly improved.

Instead of 19.Qg5, 19.Qfd2? loses to the thematic sacrifice 19...Qxh2+ 20.Qxh2 Qg4+, for example: 21.Qg3 (21.Qg1 Wh4 forces White to give up his queen on g4) 21...Wd6+! 22.f4 exf3+ 23.Qxf3 Wf6+ 24.Qg3 Wf2+.



**17...♝e7?**

After 17...a5 18.♗c4 ♗xc4 19.♗xc4 we see two excellent blockaders: the d6-bishop also defends the pawns on e5 (blocking the e4-pawn) and c5, while the c4-bishop additionally exerts strong pressure on the queenside light squares, undefended by the black pawns. It was Black's best chance.

**18.♗b2**

Continuing to develop while focusing on the e5-pawn.

Polugaevsky indicates that 18.a5! ♗a8 19.♗c4 ♗c7 20.♗g5 was better. The blockading knight on c4 is even stronger than the bishop was in the previous variation, especially because at any moment it threatens to capture the d6-bishop, which, although desperately passive, is a pillar of the black position. Furthermore, the g5-bishop is very powerful.

**18...♞e8**

To strengthen the e5-pawn by ...f7-f6 and support the d6-bishop. We will, however, see that the knight, a renowned blockader, will be less efficient than the bishop on d6 as it does not control the e5-square or defend the c5-pawn.

**19.♘c1**

Both the c4-square and the c5-pawn are on the c-file.

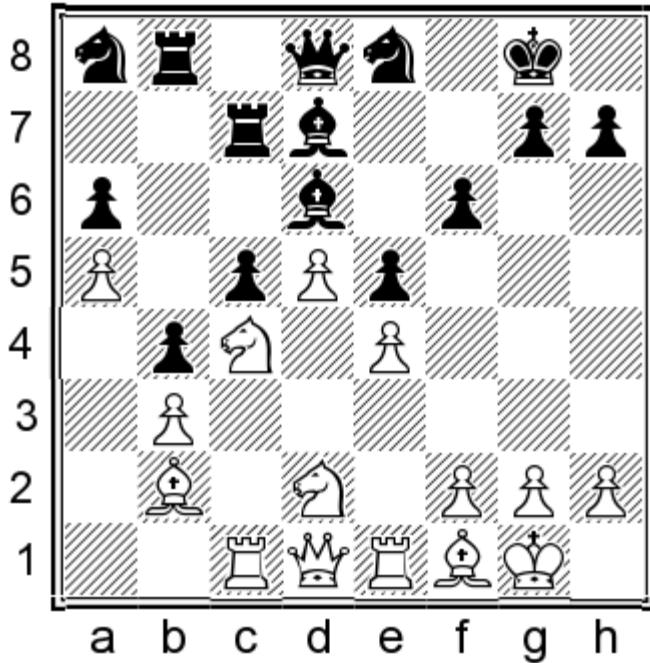
**19...f6 20.a5 ♗a8**

The knight would like to go to c7, then b5 and possibly d4, thus protecting the a6-pawn and leaving the way open for the c8-bishop. 20...♗d7 21.♗c4 was possibly a little better, but did not save the situation either.

**21.♗c4 ♞c7**

Defending the c5-pawn, which would be lost after 21...♗ac7 22.♗xd6 ♜xd6 23.♗c2, but preventing the knight from returning via c7.

**22.♘fd2 ♕d7**



**23.f4!**

The e5-square, whether occupied by a pawn or not, is important and will fall into White's hands.

**23...♝e7**

After 23...exf4, among various possible wins, Polugaevsky proposes 24.e5 fxe5 25.♗e4. The blockading bishop is attacked one more time and it's decisive, for example: 25...♞f5 26.♗cxd6 ♗xd6 27.♗xd6 ♜xd6 28.♗xe5 and White wins material in addition to seizing the centre.

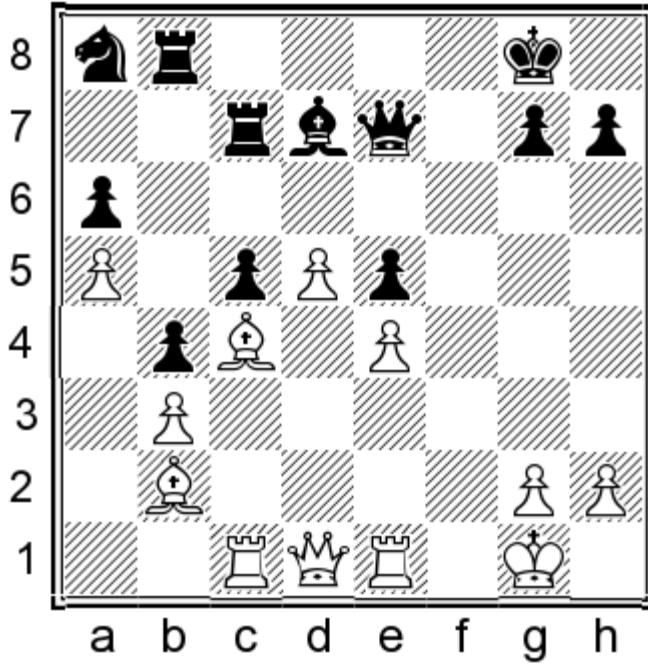
**24.fxe5 fxe5 25.♗xd6**

Exchanging Black's best defensive piece and making room for the other knight.

**25...♗xd6 26.♗c4 ♗xc4**

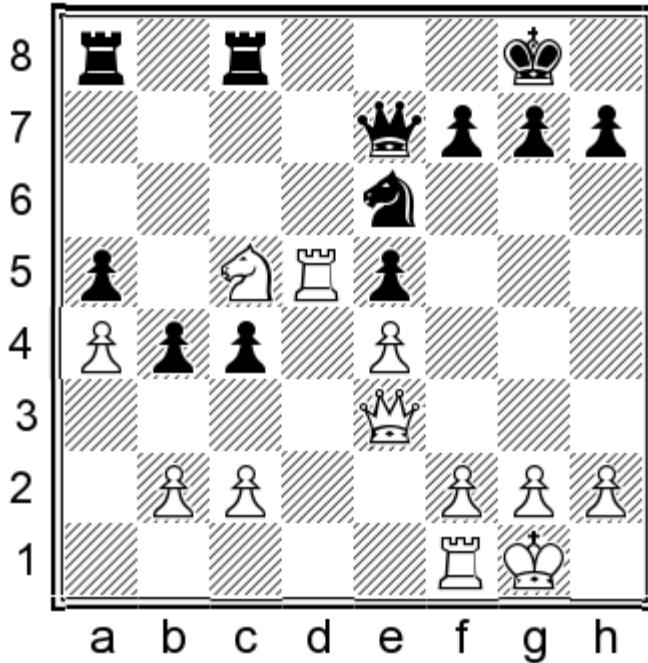
Or else 26...♗f7 27.d6.

**27.♗xc4**



Black resigned. The threat is 28.d6+. On 27... $\mathbb{W}d6$  White can win thematically by 28. $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$ , unblocking the d5-pawn, or else by 28. $\mathbb{W}h5 \mathbb{E}e8$  29. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  to take advantage of the remoteness of the black pieces, over on the queenside, and the pressure on the e5-pawn to attack the kingside.

60



*White to move*

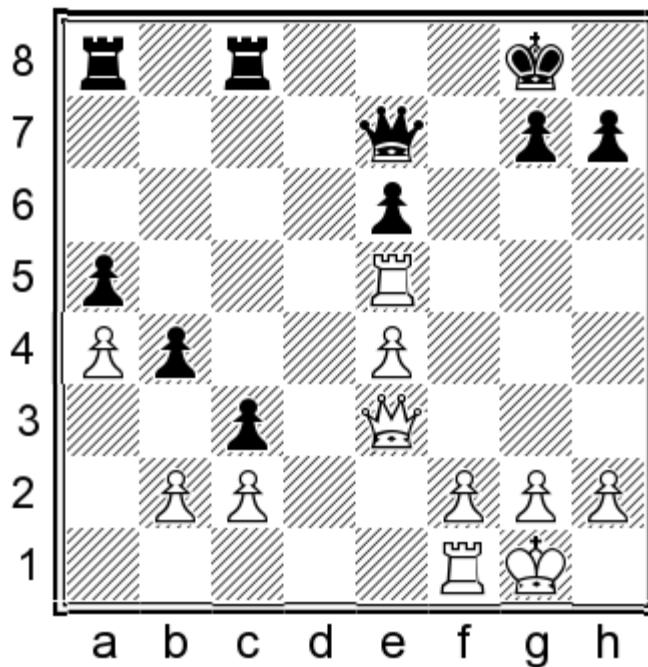
White played 25. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  here. What do you think of the position after both of the possible recaptures?

Show/Hide Solution

White has the initiative thanks to his control of the d-file and the pressure on the a5- and e5-pawns. The d5-rook is therefore ideally placed.

### 25. $\mathbb{Q}xe6 \mathbb{W}xe6?$

25...fxe6! was very strong. After 26.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  Black has a pawn less and a damaged structure, but he will be able to fight for the d-file: 26...c3! (and not 26... $\mathbb{Q}d8?$  27.  $\mathbb{Q}c5!$ ) and Black has excellent counterplay.



*analysis diagram*

27.bxc3 opens the c-file and exposes the c2-pawn, while 27.b3 allows the invasion of a rook on d2, for example:

A) 27.bxc3  $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  28.  $\mathbb{W}b6!$  (after 28.  $\mathbb{W}e2?$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  29.  $\mathbb{Q}b5 \mathbb{W}c6$  with the idea of 30.  $\mathbb{Q}c1 b3!$  White is clearly in trouble) 28...  $\mathbb{Q}xc2$  29.  $\mathbb{Q}xa5!$  (to create a passed pawn; 29.  $\mathbb{W}xe6+?$   $\mathbb{W}xe6$  30.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  loses after 30...  $\mathbb{Q}b8!$  31.  $\mathbb{Q}d6 b3$  32.  $\mathbb{Q}dd1 b2$  33.  $\mathbb{Q}b1 \mathbb{Q}b4$ , but 29.  $\mathbb{W}xe6 \mathbb{W}c5$  30.  $\mathbb{W}xc5 \mathbb{Q}xc5$  31.  $\mathbb{Q}b6!$  is also possible, although after 31...  $\mathbb{Q}d8$ , to avoid the activation of the f1-rook, Black is better) 29...  $\mathbb{Q}xa5$  30.  $\mathbb{W}xa5 b3$  31.  $\mathbb{W}b5 b2$  32.a5! (the white passed pawn saves the day) 32...h6 (32...  $\mathbb{W}a3$  33.  $\mathbb{W}e8+ \mathbb{W}f8$  34.  $\mathbb{W}b5$  makes no progress) 33.a6  $\mathbb{W}a3$  34.  $\mathbb{W}b8+ \mathbb{Q}h7$  35.a7  $\mathbb{Q}c1$  36.a8=  $\mathbb{W} \mathbb{Q}xf1+$  37.  $\mathbb{Q}xf1 \mathbb{W}xa8$  38.  $\mathbb{W}xa8 b1= \mathbb{W} +$  39.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$  – now White is better, but it's not enough and 39...  $\mathbb{W}c2+$  40.  $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{W}d3+$  41.  $\mathbb{Q}g4 \mathbb{W}d2!$ , which attacks the f2-pawn and prepares a check on g5, gives a clear draw;

B) 27.b3  $\mathbb{Q}d8!$  28.  $\mathbb{W}b6$  and now 28...  $\mathbb{Q}d2$  29.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6 \mathbb{W}d8$  30.  $\mathbb{W}c5 \mathbb{Q}xc2$  gives excellent compensation for the pawn, but 28...  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  29.  $\mathbb{W}c5 \mathbb{W}d7$  30.  $\mathbb{W}c4$  is also good; in this case the e6- and a5-pawns are under pressure, which hinders Black from playing his rook to d2 without conceding a pawn.

### 26. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$

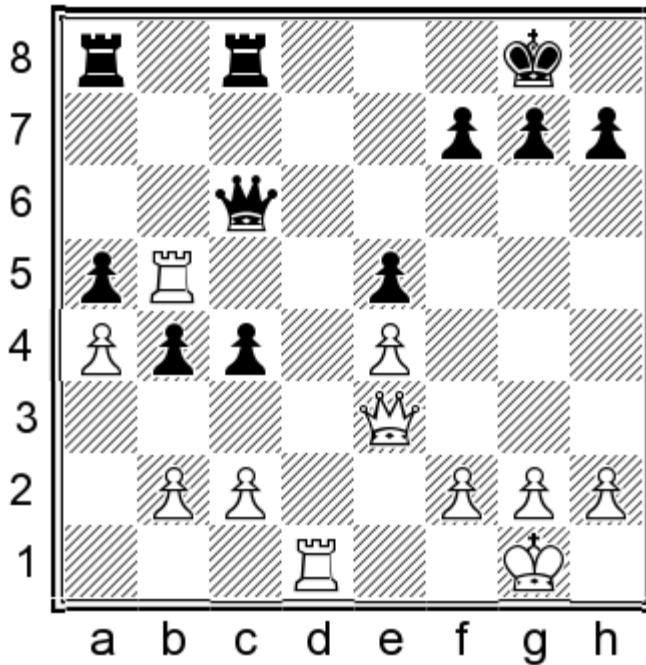
White takes complete control of the d-file, he is able to avoid the game opening up on the queenside and has a big advantage.

**26... $\mathbb{W}c6$**

The attack on the a4-pawn will allow the exchange of a pair of rooks.

**27. $\mathbb{R}b5!$**

27.b3? cxb3 28.cxb3 offers the c-file to Black.



**27...c3**

Black relinquishes his pressure on the a4-pawn, thus freeing the b5-rook, in exchange for the safety of his c-pawn and a potential entry square on d2.

After 27... $\mathbb{R}d8$  a clear path is 28. $\mathbb{R}dd5$  to prevent any black counterplay on the d-file while continuing to eye the a5-pawn.

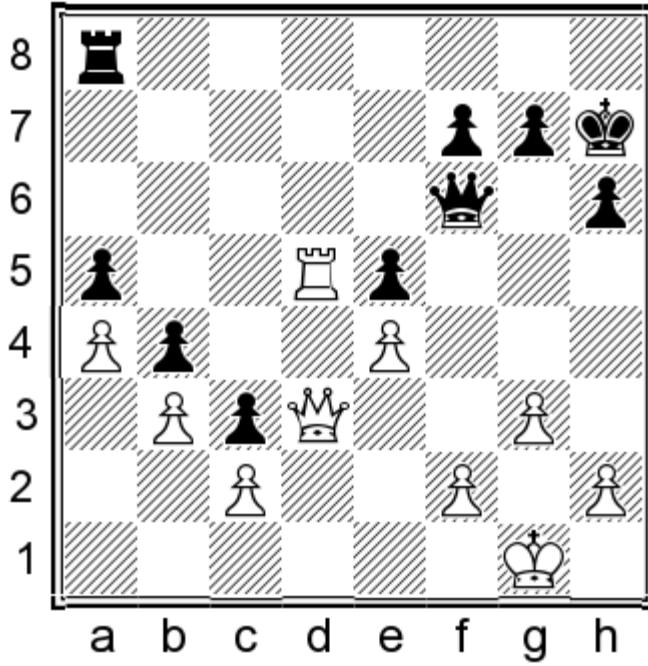
**28.b3  $\mathbb{R}d8$  29. $\mathbb{R}bd5$**

29. $\mathbb{R}xd8+$ !  $\mathbb{R}xd8$  30. $\mathbb{W}d3$ !  $\mathbb{W}a8$  (30... $\mathbb{W}f6$  31. $\mathbb{R}xe5$ ! costs a pawn) 31. $\mathbb{R}d5$   $\mathbb{R}xd5$  32. $\mathbb{R}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  33.d6!, with a strong passed pawn, seems decisive (the threat is to win the queen by 34. $\mathbb{W}xh7$ ). After the further 33... $\mathbb{W}d8$  34. $\mathbb{W}d5$  f6 35. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  the plan is to bring the king to the queenside while Black cannot do the same (35... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  36. $\mathbb{W}e6+$ ). 33...f6 keeps control of the d5-square, but does not attack the d6-pawn and then 34. $\mathbb{W}c4$  is convincing.

**29... $\mathbb{R}xd5$**

29... $\mathbb{W}c7$ ? loses to 30. $\mathbb{W}a7$ !.

**30. $\mathbb{R}xd5$   $\mathbb{W}f6$  31.g3 h6 32. $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$**



White's plan is to create threats against the black king while keeping the opposing pieces tied to the defence of the a5- and e5-pawns.

**33.h4 ♕e6 34.♔g2 f6**

This defends the e5-pawn, but weakens the royal position.

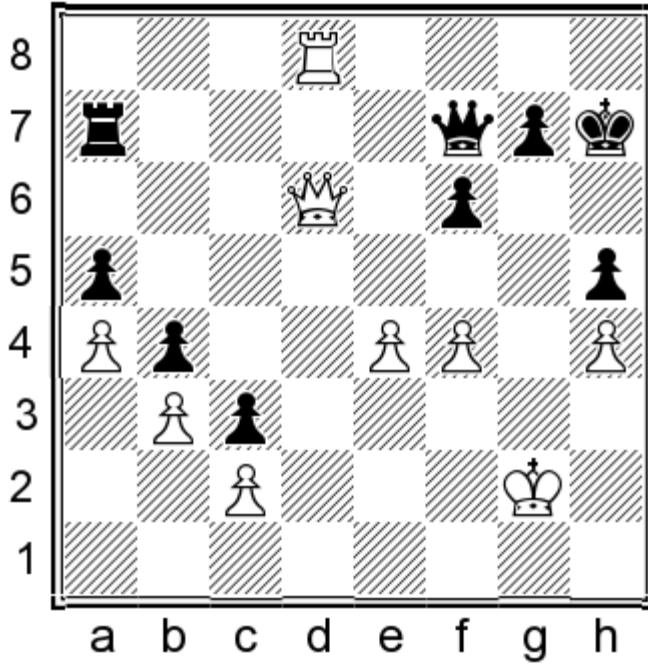
**35.♕d6 ♔f7 36.♕f3 h5**

Suetin wants to permanently avoid h4-h5 in order to give his king some room and keep some control of the light squares. This nonetheless constitutes a new weakening of his king position.

**37.♕d3 ♕a7 38.♕d8 ♕g6 39.♕d5 ♕f7 40.♕d3 ♕e6 41.♕d1 ♕f7 42.♕d6 ♔g6 43.f4!**

White exposes his own king to strengthen his attack.

**43...exf4 44.gxf4 ♔h7**



**45.♔f2!**

'Preventing 45...♛g6 after which there would follow 46.♕e6! ♜f7 47.♕e8 and White wins.' (Kholmov)

**45...♜e7 46.♝f3!**

Defending the e4-pawn. 'Now that the queen is forced to defend the rook this move is very timely.' (Kholmov)

**46...f5**

Suetin accepts the appearance of a protected passed pawn on e5 in order to secure the g6-square for his king.

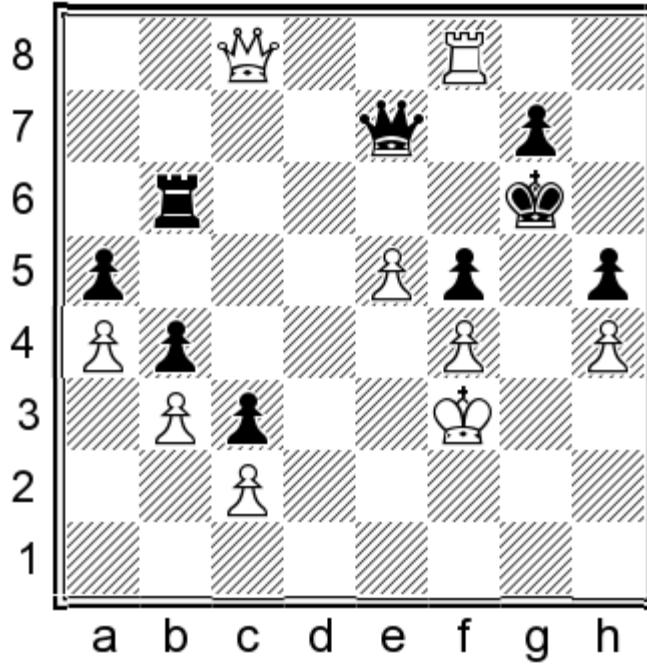
A) After 46...♜b7 (controlling the b8-square) 47.f5 Black is suffocated as 47...g6 allows 48.♚f8;

B) 46...g6! shelters the king from a quick mate, but it remains exposed, as do the f6- and a5-pawns; it is the lesser evil, even if the position is still very bad.

**47.e5 ♜e6 48.♝b8!**

Preventing the black queen from going to g6.

**48...♝g6 49.♛a8 ♛e7 50.♛c8 ♜b6 51.♚f8**



**51...♜e6**

Exchanging queens by 51...♝b7+ 52.♝xb7 ♜xb7 does not save the game either as a clear win is obtained by 53.♜a8, and now:

A) 53...♝d7 54.♜a6+! ♔h7 (the king has to decentralize as 54...♔f7? allows 55.e6+) 55.♜xa5 ♜d2 56.e6 when the c2-pawn can't be captured;

B) 53...♔f7 54.♜xa5 ♜d7 55.♜b5 ♜d2 56.♜xb4 ♜xc2 57.♜c4 and the black rook is passively tied to the defence of the c3-pawn.

**52.♝g2 ♔h7 53.♝h3**

Neither the black queen nor the rook can move and so Kholmov takes the time to shelter his king from checks while freeing the g-file and the d1-h5 diagonal for his queen.

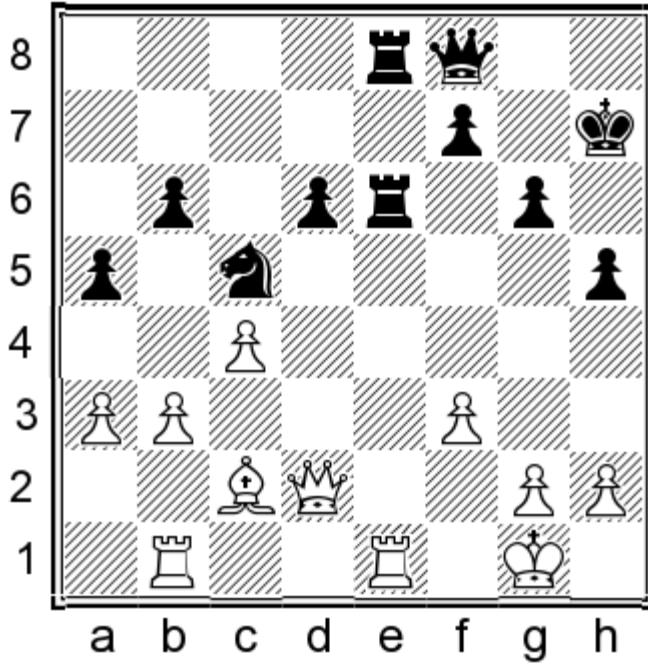
53.♜h8+ ♔g6 54.♝g8, with the threat of 55.♝h7+ ♔f7 56.♝xf5+, would have won immediately.

**53...♝g6 54.♜h8 ♜f7**

Preventing 55.♝g8 but confining the king.

**55.♜d8 ♜e7 56.♜d1**

Black lost on time. He could not prevent the mate on h5 anyway.



*Black to move*

What plan leads to a large black advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

**61**

**Grigory Serper**

**Jan Sørensen**

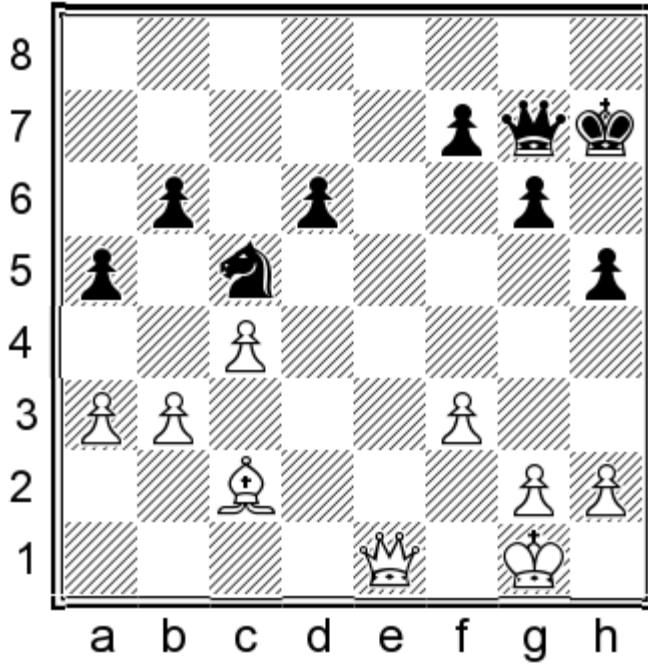
Tunja Wch U20 1989 (8)

**31... $\mathbb{R}xe1+$ !**

A surprising idea at first, and the only one that leads to an advantage. Black needs active pieces to compensate for his damaged pawn structure, but nevertheless chooses to trade all the rooks while at the same relinquishing his domination of the e-file.

31... $\mathbb{W}e7$  is natural and suffices to keep the balance in a complicated position after 32. $\mathbb{R}xe6 \mathbb{W}xe6$  (32... $\mathbb{Q}xe6!?$ ).

**31... $\mathbb{R}xe1+$ ! 32. $\mathbb{R}xe1 \mathbb{R}xe1+$  33. $\mathbb{W}xe1 \mathbb{W}g7$**



The exchange of rooks has weakened the first two ranks as well as the dark squares. In the immediate future White would like to control the a1-, b2-, c3- and d4-squares, but it is not possible and therefore the black queen will infiltrate his position. Black is much better.

### 34.h4

Avoiding a possible back-rank mate and contesting Black's control of the dark squares a little, which would not be the case with 34.h3. But the h-pawn becomes exposed.

A) After 34.b4 ♜e6! (but not 34...axb4, which relieves White of any worry concerning his a3-pawn, nor 34...♝d4+ which leads to the exchange of queens after 35.♝f2) White must also defend his c4-pawn, and if 35.bxa5 bxa5 36.♛xa5? then 36...♝d4+ 37.♝f1 ♛xc4+ wins the bishop;

B) 34.f4, to give the bishop some activity, was a natural move while the rooks were on the board, but it is now double-edged because the pawn is exposed: 34...♝d4+ 35.♝f2 ♛a1+ 36.♝f1 ♛c3! (36...♛xa3? 37.f5 gives White some play) 37.♝d1 ♛e3+ 38.♝h1 and now 38...f5 and 38...♜e4 are both good moves, as well as 38...♝xf4, which does not win a pawn (39.♝xh5+) but avoids the advance of the white f-pawn;

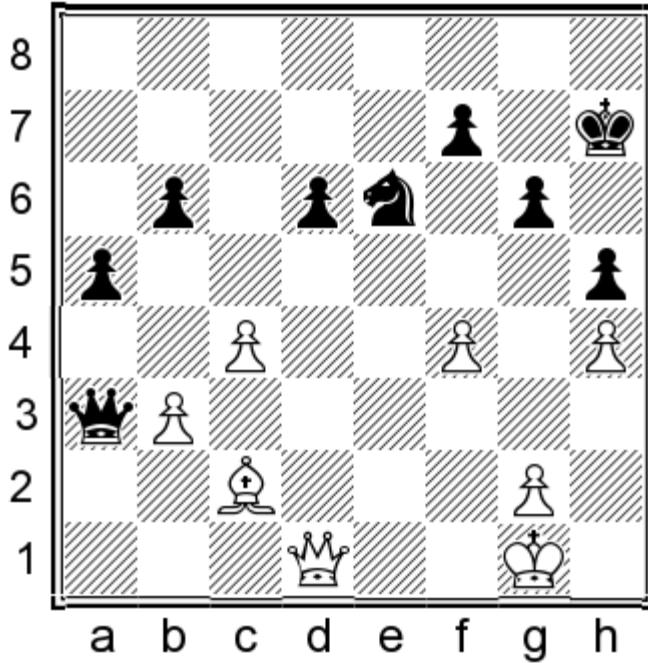
C) 34.♝d1 is a way to wait: 34...♝b2? directly attacks the a3-pawn, but sidelines the queen and allows 35.f4! with counterplay. The best move is 34...♝c3!, with the idea of answering 35.f4 by 35...♝e3+, transposing into the variation we have just looked at. Black will probably continue by ...♜c5-e6-d4 with perfectly centralized pieces.

### 34...♝b2 35.♝d1 ♛xa3 36.f4

With the ideas of f4-f5 and ♘d1xh5+.

36.♝xd6 ♛c1+ 37.♝d1 ♛e3+ 38.♝f1 may have been a little better.

### 36...♜e6



**37.  $\mathbb{W}xh5+$**

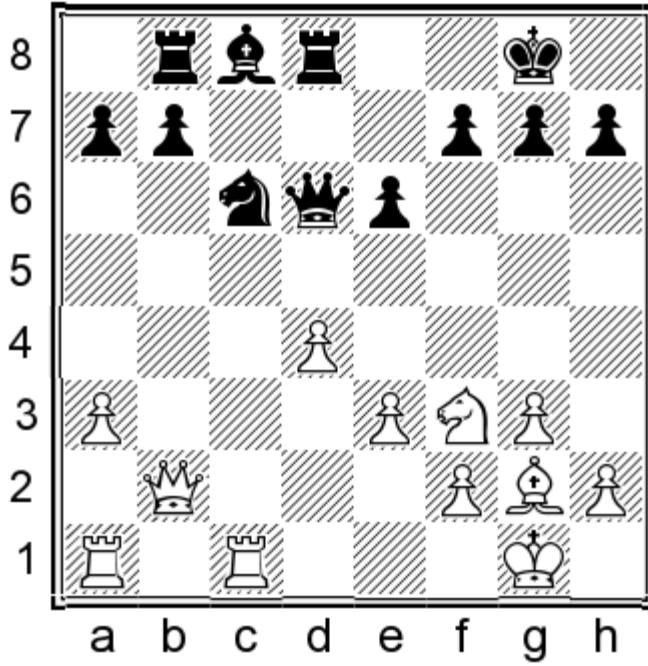
37.f5  $\mathbb{W}c5+$  38. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  39.fxg6+ fxg6 finally allows the bishop's diagonal to be extended, but Black must win with his extra pawn. The h5-pawn is defended by the queen.

**37...  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  38.  $\mathbb{W}d1$   $\mathbb{W}c5+$  39.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}xf4$**

The advantage is decisive.

**40.  $\mathbb{W}f3$   $\mathbb{W}e5$  41.  $g3$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  42.  $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}d4$  43.  $\mathbb{W}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  44.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$   $\mathbb{W}c5+$**

White resigned. On 45.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$ , to deny the black queen the g1-square, there could follow 45...  $\mathbb{W}e3!$  46.  $\mathbb{W}xe3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3+$  47.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}xd1$  48.  $\mathbb{Q}xd1$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  with a winning pawn ending.



*White to move*

White has a good advantage. By following a sound strategic plan, and supporting this with some good intuition and calculation, you can ensure that it becomes huge.

Show/Hide Solution

**62**

**Alexander Alekhine**

**Harry Golombek**

Margate 1938 (3)

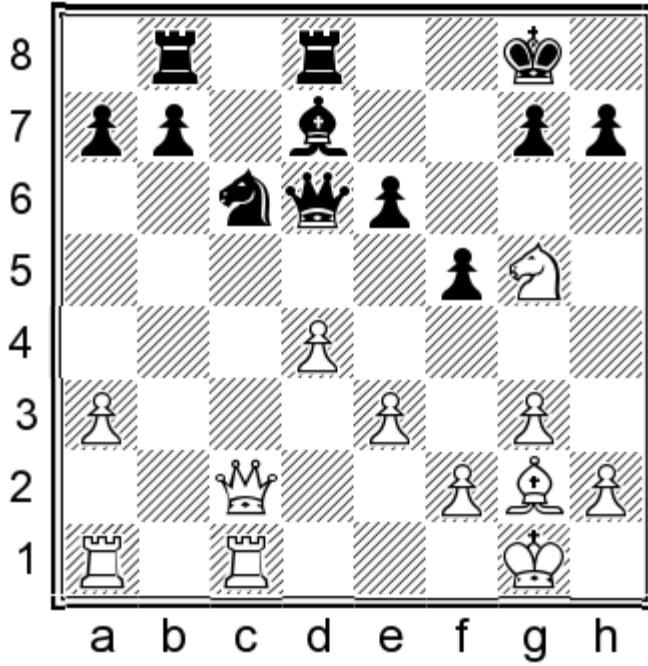
White needs to bring his knight into play to keep the initiative going, for example by playing 17.♘d2 (to stop 17...b6) 17...♗d7 18.♘e4 ♗e7 19.♘c5 with unpleasant pressure, even if nothing decisive is yet in sight after 19...♗e8.

**17.♘g5!**

Alekhine notices that the black king is exposed and plays on both wings. The threat (as we will see) is to seriously weaken the black king position by 18.♗c2 and if Black stops this by 17...h6 then the white knight will have gained a crucial tempo on its journey to the queenside: 18.♘e4 ♗c7 (18...♗e7? 19.♗xc6) 19.♗ab1 ♗d7 (on 19...b6?, 20.♗xc6 ♗xc6 21.♗f6+ wins the queen) 20.♘c5 and there is no satisfactory way to defend the b7-pawn.

**17...♗d7 18.♗c2! f5**

Taking the e4-square from the g5-knight. After 18...g6 19.♘e4 ♗e7 20.♗b2! (with the threat of 21.d5 followed by 22.♗f6+) 20...f5 21.♘c5, on top of the pressure on the queenside we can add the weakness of the e6-pawn and the kingside in general.



**19.d5!**

White plays to open the a2-g8 diagonal.

19... $\mathbb{Q}a2?$  h6 20. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  would be good, if it did not miss a great opportunity...

**19... $\mathbb{Q}e7$**

19...exd5 20. $\mathbb{Q}xd5+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  21. $\mathbb{Q}d1!$  (chasing the queen from the fatal diagonal) 21... $\mathbb{Q}e5!$  (21... $\mathbb{Q}a5$  22. $\mathbb{Q}a2+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  23. $\mathbb{Q}f7+$  leads to a smothered mate) 22. $\mathbb{Q}a2+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  23. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $\mathbb{Q}xd1+$  24. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  25. $\mathbb{Q}d7$  is hopeless for Black.

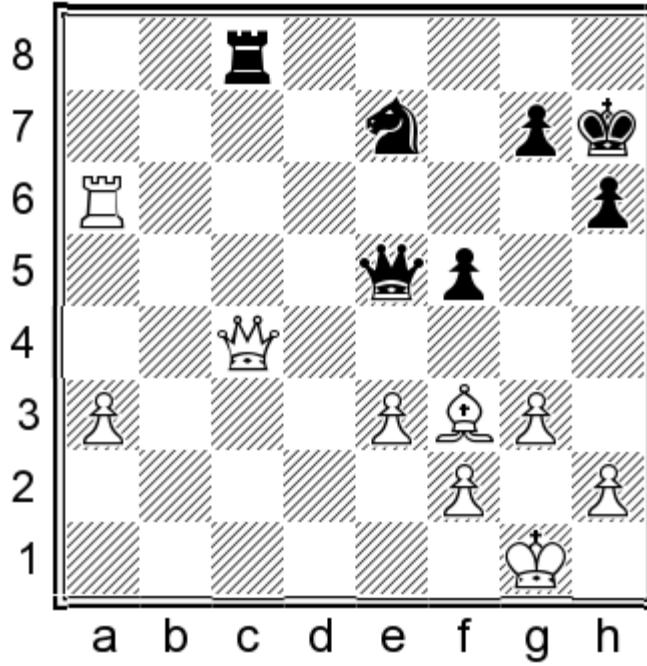
**20.dxe6  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  21. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xb7!$**

Elegantly winning a pawn. Other moves are possible.

**22...h6**

22... $\mathbb{Q}xd1+$  23. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$   $\mathbb{Q}xb7?$  allows 24. $\mathbb{Q}d8\#$ .

**23. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$   $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  24. $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}xd1+$  25. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  26. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  a6 27. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  28. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  29. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$**



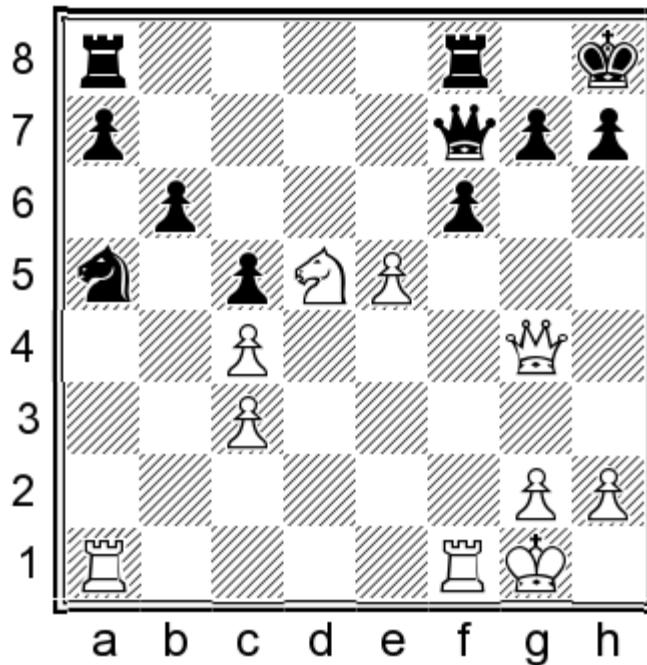
**30.♕f7!**

Alekhine often chose to play sharply to capitalise on a decisive advantage. In general this increases the risks of a miscalculation, but limits those associated with a prolonged struggle.

**30...♜c1+ 31.♝g2**

Black resigned. On 31...♝b5, attacking the rook and menacing mate, there is 32.♜xh6+! ♜xh6 33.♝h5#.

63



*Black to move*

Black played 23...f5. This move is connected to what plan?

Show/Hide Solution

**63**

**Andor Lilienthal**

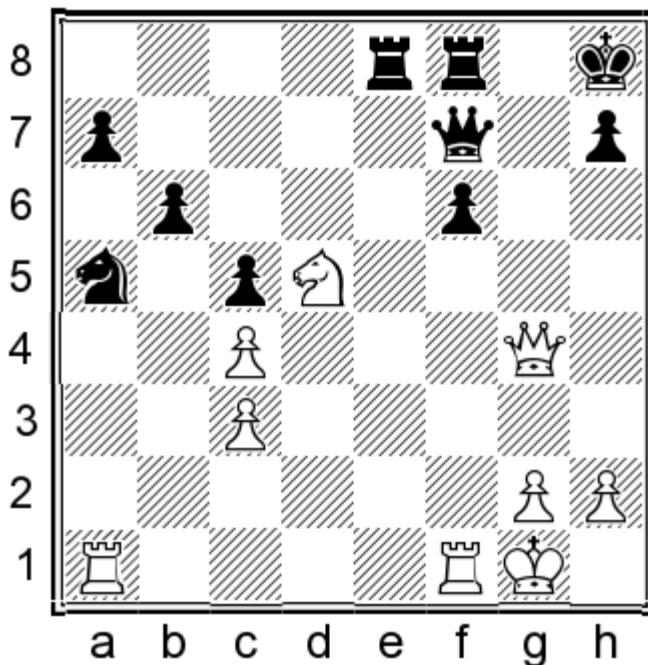
**Vasily Smyslov**

Parnu 1947 (7)

Black has an extra pawn, but the position is ready to open up near his king and there is an obvious difference between the two knights' respective activity.

A) After 23... $\mathbb{W}g6$  24. $\mathbb{W}f4!$  (pinning the f6-pawn and threatening 25.e6; 24. $\mathbb{W}xg6$   $\mathbb{h}xg6$  25.e6 is interesting) 24... $\mathbb{E}ae8$  25. $\mathbb{Q}c7!$  (25.exf6 gxf6 26. $\mathbb{Q}xf6?$  allows 26... $\mathbb{E}e6$ ) 25... $\mathbb{E}e7$  26.e6 White has the initiative. On 26... $\mathbb{E}c8$  there would follow 27. $\mathbb{Q}ad1!$ , which defends the knight indirectly;

B) Another possibility is 23... $\mathbb{E}ae8$  24.exf6 gxf6 and now:



*analysis diagram*

B1) 25. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xc4!$  gives White good compensation for the sacrificed pawn, but he must not capture the rook as 26. $\mathbb{Q}xe8?$   $\mathbb{W}xf1+!$  27. $\mathbb{E}xf1$   $\mathbb{E}xf1+$  28. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$   $\mathbb{Q}e3+$  29. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  leads to a black advantage;

B2) 25. $\mathbb{E}xf6$   $\mathbb{W}g7$  26. $\mathbb{E}xf8+$   $\mathbb{E}xf8$  27. $\mathbb{W}e4$  when White is a little better as his pieces are well centralized and the black king is exposed – nevertheless, Black's long-term chances are not to be underestimated (passed a-pawn and a better pawn structure).

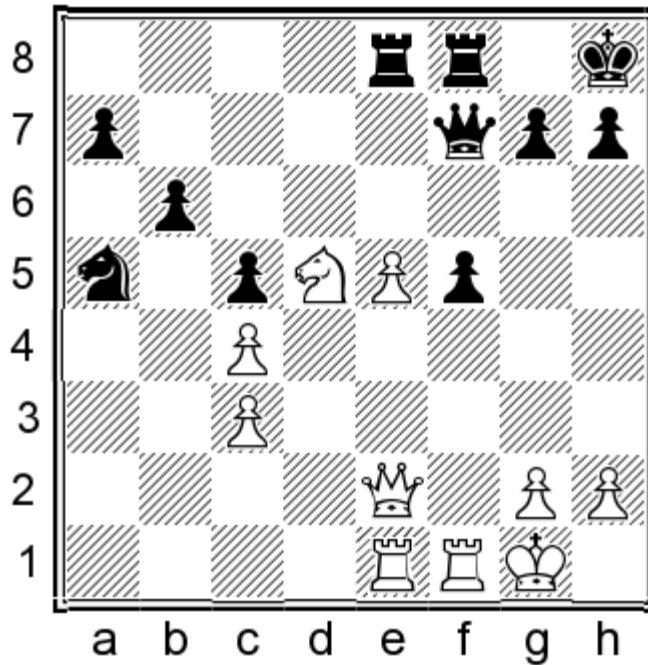
**23...f5!?**

In order to keep the game as closed as possible, but this comes at a cost...

**24. $\mathbb{W}e2$**

The only reasonable plan for White is to advance his central pawn, but this is so strong that Black must prevent it.

**24...♜ae8 25.♜ae1**



**25...♝e6!**

This blockading move involves an exchange sacrifice and is the normal follow-up to 23...f5.

The attempt to bring the a5-knight back into play while leaving the e5-pawn free is not satisfactory: 25...♞c6? 26.e6 ♜g6 (26...♝b7 does not control the e6-square and this is fatal after 27.e7 ♜f7 28.♝e6) 27.e7 ♜f7 28.♝e6! (although this allows the exchange of queens, it is the right move; the queen threatens to go to d7) 28...♝xe6 29.♝xe6 – the e7-pawn is too strong and White wins, as 29...♞xe7 loses the knight to 30.♞fe1.

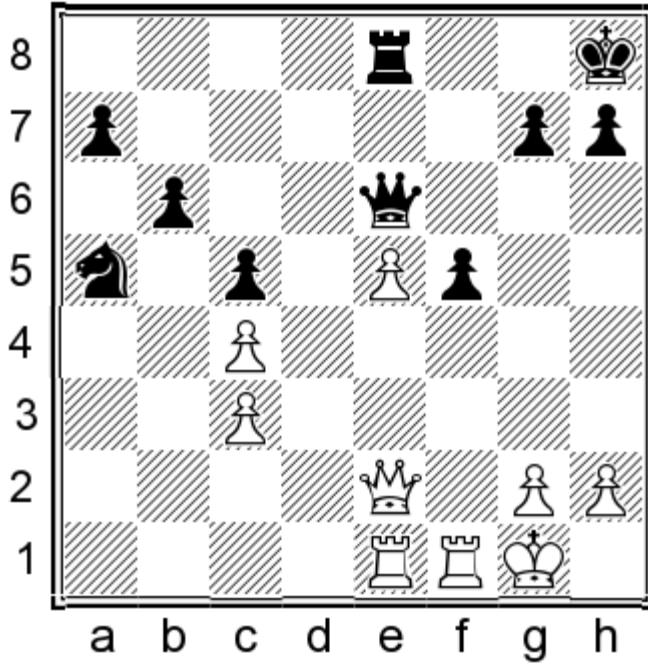
**26.♞f4**

26.g4 is tempting, but after 26...♞c6 27.♝xf5 ♜g8 Black is threatening to take on f5 and then on e5 with a good game.

**26...♜fe8**

Smyslov chooses to put immediate pressure on the e5-pawn. Other moves are possible.

**27.♝xe6 ♜xe6**



Black has a pawn for the exchange, a better pawn structure and pressure on the c4- and e5-pawns. This might be enough to give him a good game, but his knight is offside and White can (and must) play actively to take advantage of this. White is better.

**28.♕d3!**

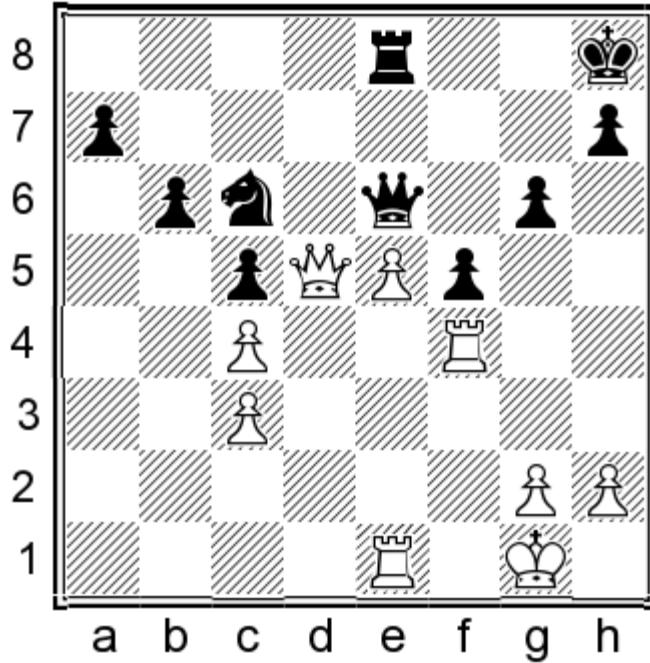
Lilienthal places his queen on the d-file while gaining a tempo on the f5-pawn. The weakening of the f6-square that will follow suggests the plan of opening the f-file by g2-g4.

**28...g6 29.♗f4?!**

To first defend the c4-pawn. It seems that rapid action by 29.g4! was more effective, with several possibilities:

- A) 29...♘xc4? 30.♕d7! ♘xg4+ 31.♔h1 – Black has no more checks and cannot stop the advance of the e-pawn;
- B) 29...fxg4? 30.♗f6 ♗e7 (30...♘xc4 31.♕d7 loses as in the previous variation) 31.♕d5 – the knight is dominated and White is winning;
- C) 29...♗xc4 (the knight comes back into play while taking a pawn, but this costs the f5-pawn and the f-file opens for the white rook) 30.gxf5 gxf5 31.♗xf5! (31.♗xf5 ♗g8+ 32.♔h1 ♗g6 gives Black some counterplay on the g-file and the long light-squared diagonal) 31...♗xe5 32.♗xe6 ♗xe6 33.♔h1! (33.♗f5? ♗f3+) 33...♗e7! (allowing the knight to retreat while defending the rook) 34.♗f5 ♗g6 35.♗xe7 ♗xe7 and now good winning chances are offered by 36.♗e5! (removing the d5-square from the knight) 36...♗c6 37.♗e6 ♗a5 38.♗e7 and White wins the a-pawn after 38...a6 39.♗a7 or 38...♗c6 39.♗c7.

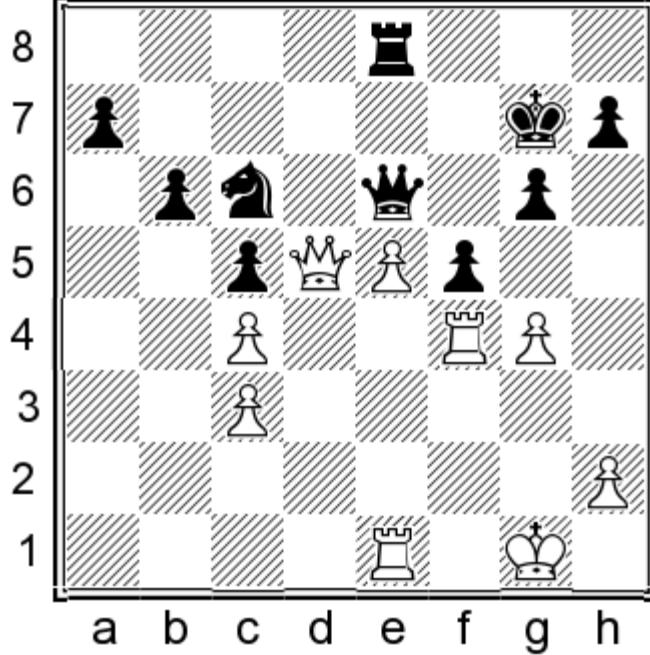
**29...♗c6 30.♕d5**



White is ready to open the game by g2-g4 and Black would like to capture the e5-pawn despite the danger that this involves on the e-file. To evaluate these possibilities it is necessary to analyse:

A) 30... $\mathbb{Q}xd5?$  31.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}xe5?$  32. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$  (avoiding the check on f3) 32... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  33. $\mathbb{Q}f2!$  (after 33.d6?  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  the black rook is released from the defence of the knight and will be able to go to d8) 33... $\mathbb{Q}f6$  34. $\mathbb{Q}fe2$  – the black pieces are immobilized and the advance of the d-pawn is decisive. Instead of 31... $\mathbb{Q}xe5?$  the most resilient is 31... $\mathbb{Q}xe5!$  32. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  33.d6  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  34. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  35. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  (35... $\mathbb{Q}e6?$  36. $\mathbb{Q}e5+)$  36. $\mathbb{Q}e7$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  and White keeps good winning chances by centralizing his king before going after the queenside pawns;

B) 30... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  (the king is preparing to defend the knight after it has captured on e5) 31.g4! and now:



*analysis diagram*

B1) 31... $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  (threatening 32... $\mathbb{Q}f3+$ ) 32. $\mathbb{Q}h1$  gives White a big advantage as the capture on g4 is no good: 32...fxg4? 33. $\mathbb{E}fe4$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  (33... $\mathbb{W}xd5$  34.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  35.d6 is hopeless) 34. $\mathbb{W}d2!$  (threatening to take on e5) 34... $\mathbb{W}c6$  (pinning the e4-rook and threatening 35... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ ) 35. $\mathbb{W}h6!$ , preventing 35... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  because of 36. $\mathbb{E}f1$  mate, and preparing  $\mathbb{Q}h1-g2-g3$  with a decisive attack after the e4-rook is unpinned;

B2) 31...fxg4 and now 32. $\mathbb{E}f6?$  loses to 32... $\mathbb{W}xd5$  33.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  with the double threat of capturing on f6 and checking on f3. Instead of 32. $\mathbb{E}f6?$ , 32. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  is promising, and we can take note of the pretty and acrobatic reorganization by 32... $\mathbb{Q}d8!$  33. $\mathbb{E}f6$   $\mathbb{W}e7$  34. $\mathbb{E}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}e6!$ , when the threat of a check on f4 wins Black a tempo along with some saving chances.

C) 30...h5! 31.h3  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  32.g4 hxg4 33.hxg4  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  34. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  – the exchange of h-pawns is unfavourable for White, whose king is no longer safe, but he keeps some winning chances.

### **30... $\mathbb{Q}xe5?$ 31. $\mathbb{Q}f1$**

Avoiding the check on f3 and preparing  $\mathbb{E}f4-f2-e2$  with a decisive pin on the e5-knight.

### **31... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 32. $\mathbb{E}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}f6$ 33. $\mathbb{E}fe2$ h5**

After 33... $\mathbb{W}xd5$  34.cxd5 the black pieces are tied up and White wins by advancing the d-pawn.

**34. $\mathbb{E}xe5$   $\mathbb{W}xe5$  35. $\mathbb{E}xe5$   $\mathbb{E}xe5$  36. $\mathbb{W}d6+$   $\mathbb{E}e6$  37. $\mathbb{W}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  38. $\mathbb{W}b8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  39. $\mathbb{W}xa7$   $\mathbb{Q}g5$  40. $\mathbb{W}d7$   $\mathbb{E}e4$  41. $\mathbb{W}d8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  42.h4  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  43. $\mathbb{W}c7+$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  44. $\mathbb{W}xb6$**

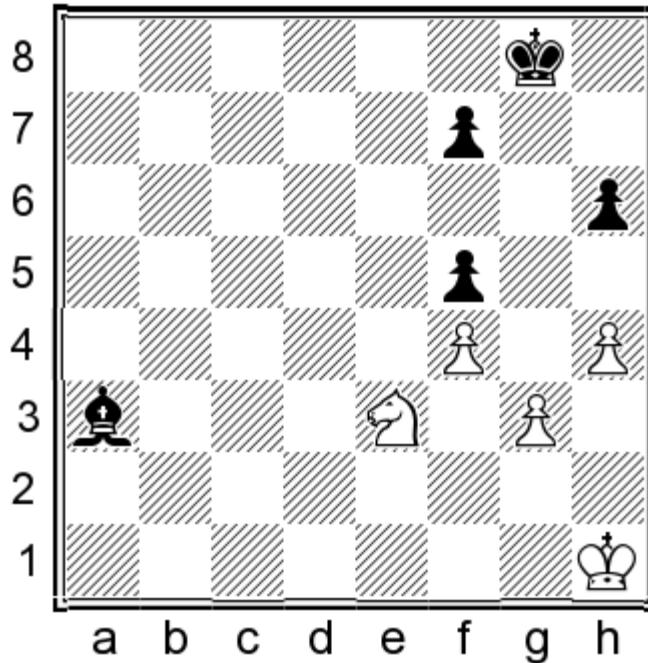
Black resigned.

Show in Quiz Mode

## Chapter 2

### The endgame exercises

64



White to move

How does White win?

Show/Hide Solution

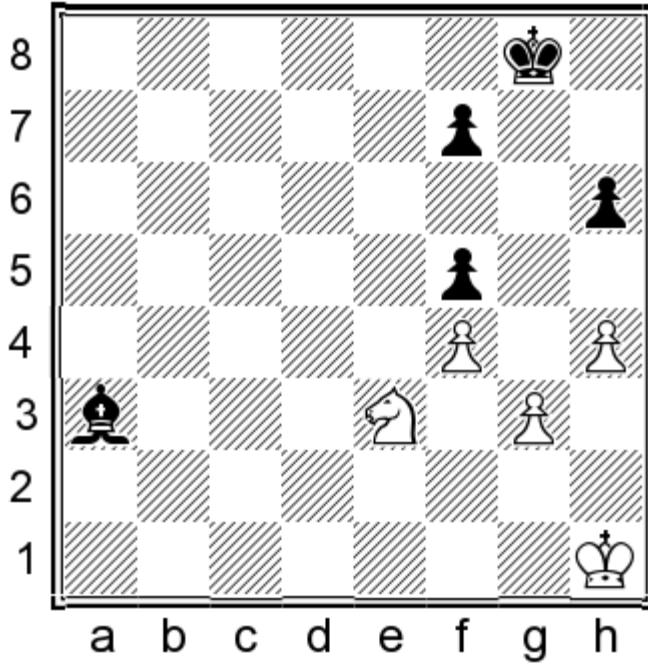
64

Cenek Kottnauer

Jan Smejkal

Hastings 1968/69 (4)

1.e4 c5 2.♘f3 d6 3.d4 cxd4 4.♘xd4 ♘f6 5.f3 e5 6.♘b3 d5 7.♗g5 ♘e6 8.exd5 ♖xd5 9.♘c3 ♘b4 10.♗d2 ♖d8 11.♗d3 0-0 12.0-0 ♘bd7 13.♔e1 ♕e8 14.♗h4 ♘e7 15.♗h1 ♖c7 16.♗ad1 a6 17.♗fe1 ♖ad8 18.♗e3 h6 19.♗f2 ♖c8 20.♗e2 b5 21.♗d2 ♘c4 22.♗e3 ♖xd3 23.♗xd3 b4 24.♗d5 ♘xd5 25.♗xd5 ♘f8 26.♗d1 ♘f6 27.♗ed2 ♖c4 28.♗f1 ♕e6 29.♗e1 ♖c7 30.♗f2 ♖ec8 31.♗g3 ♖xc2 32.♖xc2 ♖xc2 33.♗xe5 ♖c4 34.♗xc4 ♖xc4 35.♗xf6 gxf6 36.♗c1 ♖h4 37.♗c6 a5 38.♗xa5 ♖d4 39.♗c1 ♖d2 40.♗c4 ♖e2 41.h4 ♘c5 42.a4 bxa3 43.bxa3 ♖a2 44.♗c3 f5 45.f4 ♖f2 46.g3 ♖a2 47.♗e3 ♖xa3 48.♗xa3 ♘xa3



*White to move*

White will win the f5-pawn and obtain a superb outpost for his knight. The fall of a second pawn would be decisive.

49.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5?$  is a mistake because of 49...h5!, which fixes the g3- and h4-pawns on dark squares. They can later be attacked by the bishop and a piece will be tied to their defence. To place a pawn on the opposite colour to that of one's bishop is a general rule, but that can sometimes lead to its loss when exposed, but this will not be the case here. The possibility of creating a passed pawn by g3-g4 would involve the exchange of a pawn even though the material is already greatly reduced and would pose no problem for Black. There could follow 50.  $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}h7$  51.  $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}g6$  and now:

A) 52. g4 hxg4+ 53.  $\mathbb{Q}xg4 \mathbb{Q}b4$  54. h5+  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  55.  $\mathbb{Q}g3 \mathbb{Q}a3$  56.  $\mathbb{Q}e4+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  57.  $\mathbb{Q}g5 \mathbb{Q}e7+$  and White can no longer make any progress;

B) 52.  $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{Q}b4$  53.  $\mathbb{Q}d4 \mathbb{Q}e1$  54. f5+  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  55.  $\mathbb{Q}e2 \mathbb{Q}f2$  56.  $\mathbb{Q}e5 \mathbb{Q}g7$  and once again Black is out of danger.

#### 49.h5!

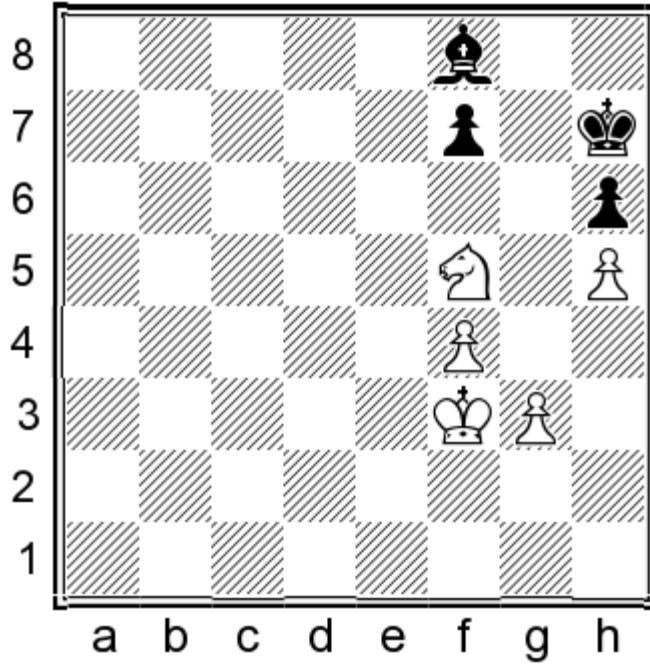
From the f5-square the entrenched knight will attack the newly fixed h6-pawn, while defending the g3-pawn that ensures the safety of the f4-pawn. This ideal situation will allow the white king to freely participate in the play.

The black position is cramped and the piece that has to protect the h6-pawn will no longer be able to move, which will introduce the theme of zugzwang. In the case of a piece exchange the pawn ending would be hopeless.

#### 49... $\mathbb{Q}g7$

The other defence is to place the bishop on f8 in order to centralize the king, for example: 49...f6 50.  $\mathbb{Q}xf5 \mathbb{Q}f8$  51.  $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}f7$  52.  $\mathbb{Q}f3 \mathbb{Q}e8!?$  (after 52... $\mathbb{Q}e6$ , 53.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$  with zugzwang is immediately decisive) 53.  $\mathbb{Q}e4 \mathbb{Q}d8$  54.  $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}d7$  55. g4! – the weakening of the f4-pawn is no longer of any consequence and the white king will infiltrate the opposing camp by using zugzwang.

#### 50. $\mathbb{Q}xf5+ \mathbb{Q}h7$ 51. $\mathbb{Q}g2 \mathbb{Q}f8$ 52. $\mathbb{Q}f3$



The bishop is free to move, which avoids zugzwang for the moment. The winning plan is to first attack the f7-pawn to force a concession.

**52...♝g8**

The king's freedom is only relative since he will have to return to h7 next move.

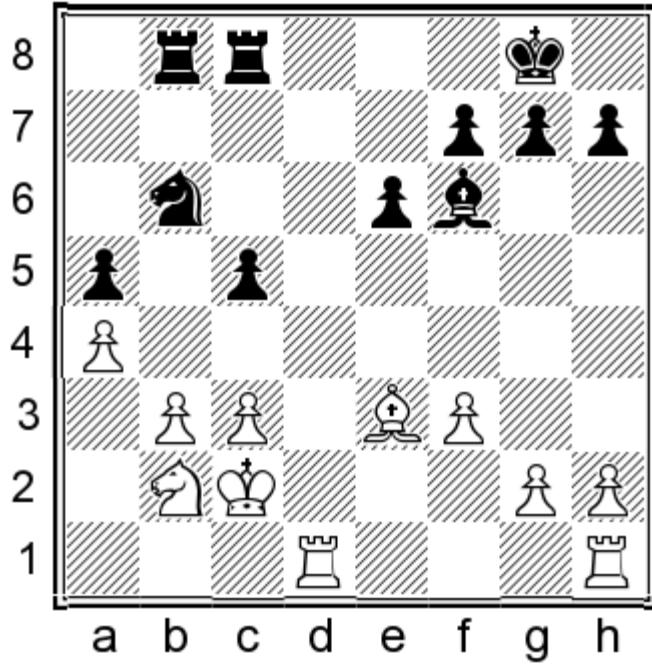
After 52...♝a3 53.♝e4 ♜b4 54.♝e5 ♜c3+ (Black thereby manages to hold the f6-square, but it's not enough) 55.♝d6 ♜b4+ 56.♝d7 ♜f8 (or else 56...♜c3 57.♝e8 f6 58.♝f7 and the f6-pawn will soon fall) 57.♝e8 ♜g8 58.g4 and we have another zugzwang.

**53.♝e4 ♜h7 54.♝e5 ♜g7+**

54...♝h8 55.♝f6 ♜g8 56.g4 does not hold either.

**55.♞xg7 ♜xg7 56.♝f5 ♜f8 57.♝f6**

Black resigned. There could follow 57...♝g8 58.♝e7 ♜g7 59.f5 ♜g8 60.f6.



*White to move*

What plan leads to a slight white advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

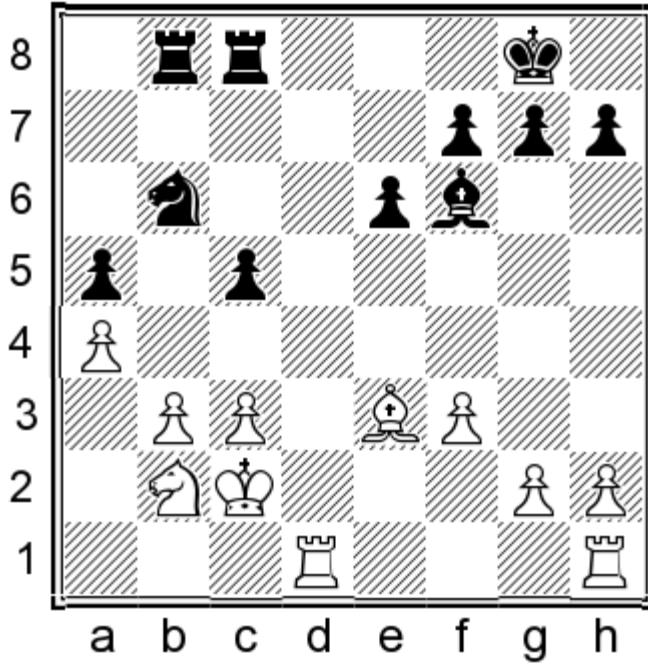
**65**

**Jan Foltys**

**Carlos Skalicka**

Podebrady 1936 (3)

1.e4 c5 2. $\mathbb{Q}$ f3  $\mathbb{Q}$ c6 3.d4 cxd4 4. $\mathbb{Q}$ xd4 d5 5. $\mathbb{Q}$ xc6 bxc6 6.exd5  $\mathbb{W}$ xd5 7. $\mathbb{Q}$ c3  $\mathbb{W}$ xd1+ 8. $\mathbb{Q}$ xd1  $\mathbb{Q}$ f6 9. $\mathbb{Q}$ e2  $\mathbb{Q}$ f5 10. $\mathbb{Q}$ f3  $\mathbb{Q}$ e4 11. $\mathbb{Q}$ xe4  $\mathbb{Q}$ xe4 12. $\mathbb{Q}$ e3 e6 13.f3  $\mathbb{Q}$ f6 14. $\mathbb{Q}$ f2  $\mathbb{Q}$ d5 15. $\mathbb{Q}$ d2  $\mathbb{Q}$ c5 16. $\mathbb{Q}$ d3  $\mathbb{Q}$ d4 17.0-0-0 0-0 18.c3  $\mathbb{Q}$ f6 19. $\mathbb{Q}$ c2 a5 20.a4  $\mathbb{Q}$ fc8 21.b3 c5 22. $\mathbb{Q}$ b2  $\mathbb{Q}$ b6 23. $\mathbb{Q}$ e3  $\mathbb{Q}$ ab8



*White to move*

The black pieces are active and the threat is to advance the c5-pawn, with an opening of lines against the white king and the weak pawns that will appear.

We can also note that the a5- and c5-pawns are isolated on dark squares, the same colour as the white bishop.

A) 24.c4? makes sense strategically as the b3-pawn, although backward on an open file, supports its colleagues on a4 and c4, which each block a black pawn. In addition, the d5-square is taken from the black knight, which allows play on the d-file. White would have some advantage if it wasn't for 24... $\mathbb{Q}xb2!$  25. $\mathbb{Q}xb2 \mathbb{Q}xc4+$  winning a piece;

B) An interesting idea is to play 24. $\mathbb{Q}b1$ ! to anticipate the opening of the b-file. 24...c4? is then a mistake, as after 25. $\mathbb{Q}xc4 \mathbb{Q}xc4$  26.bxc4  $\mathbb{Q}xb1$  27. $\mathbb{Q}xb1$  Black cannot capture on c4 because of the back-rank mate. However, it is not easy to involve the b1-rook in any active plan.

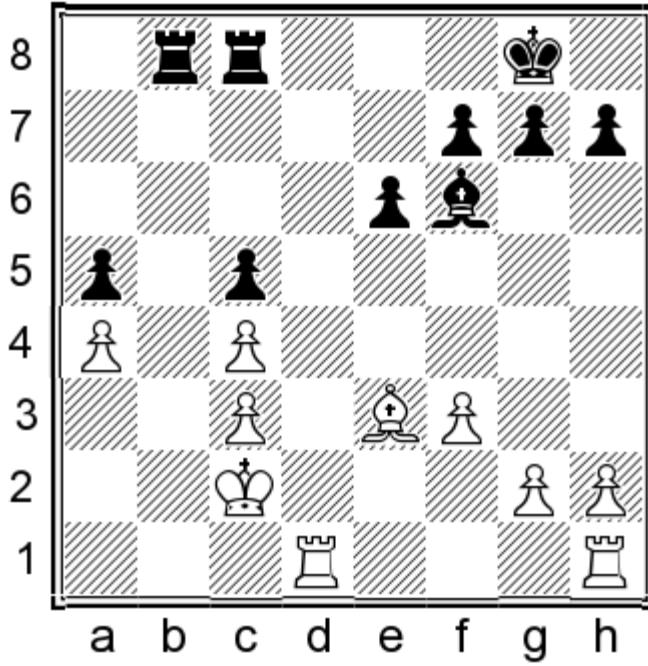
**24. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$**

The c5-pawn is blocked and the a5-pawn attacked.

**24... $\mathbb{Q}xc4?$ !**

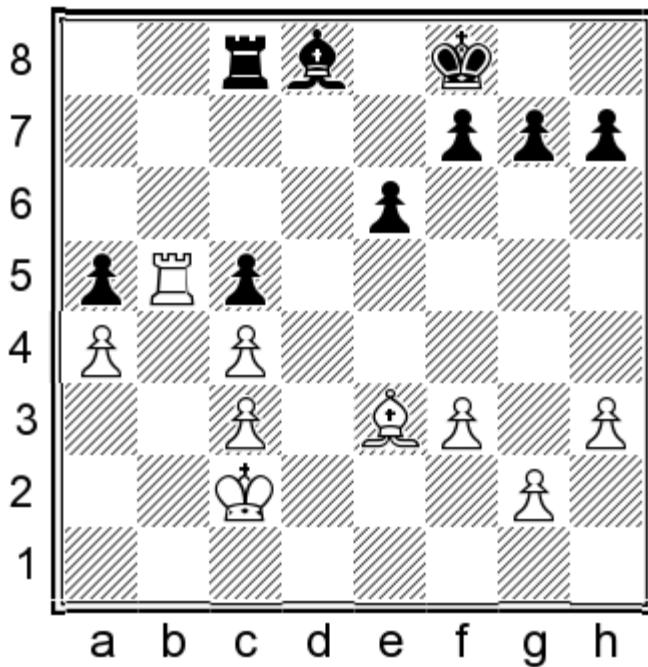
24... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  is the other defensive possibility, and is probably better. White then plays 25. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$  to defend the c3-pawn and keep the rook active (which is why it's better not to play 24. $\mathbb{Q}b1$  before putting the knight on c4). He will then take advantage of his slight pressure on the black queenside pawns to slowly improve his position by gaining space on the kingside. He is a little better.

**25.bxc4**



All the queenside pawns are isolated and the worst-off seem to be the c3- and c4-pawns, which are also doubled. Yet here this structure is favourable for White because he has an outpost for his rook on b5 (this square is not in reach of the black bishop) while the b4-square is inaccessible to the black rooks. The ensuing pressure on the a5- and c5-pawns makes the black position awkward and hinders an effective mobilization of his kingside majority.

25... $\mathbb{B}b6$  26. $\mathbb{B}b1$   $\mathbb{B}bc6$  27. $\mathbb{B}hd1$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  28. $h3$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  29. $\mathbb{B}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  30. $\mathbb{B}db1$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  31. $\mathbb{B}b8$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  32. $\mathbb{B}xc8$   $\mathbb{B}xc8$  33. $\mathbb{B}b5$

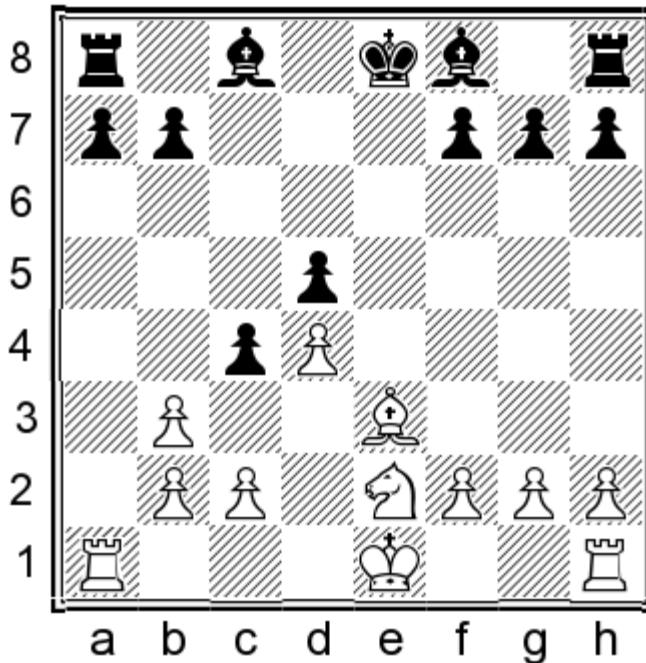


Foltys has reached the ideal position for his plan and will win a pawn.

33... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  34. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$   $\mathbb{B}c6$  35. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  36. $\mathbb{Q}f8$   $g6$  37. $c5$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  38. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{B}a6$  39. $\mathbb{B}b1$   $\mathbb{B}a8$  40. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  41. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{B}b8$  42. $\mathbb{B}xd6+$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  43. $\mathbb{B}a6$   $\mathbb{B}b2$  44. $\mathbb{B}a7+$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  45. $g4$   $\mathbb{B}h2$  46. $\mathbb{B}xf7$   $\mathbb{B}a2$  47. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{B}f2$  48. $\mathbb{B}xh7$   $\mathbb{B}xf3$  49. $\mathbb{B}h6$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  50. $\mathbb{B}xg6$   $\mathbb{B}xh3$  51. $g5$   $\mathbb{B}h8$  52. $\mathbb{B}f6$   $\mathbb{B}b8+$  53. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{B}g8$  54. $g6$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  55. $\mathbb{B}f7$   $\mathbb{B}xg6$  56. $\mathbb{B}d7$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  57. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{B}g8$  58. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{B}c8$  59. $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $e5$

60.c6 ♜e6 61.♗b6 ♜b8+ 62.♔xa5 e4 63.♕d4 ♜c8 64.♗b6 e3 65.c7 ♜e5 66.♕d8 1-0

66



White to move

How can White obtain the advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

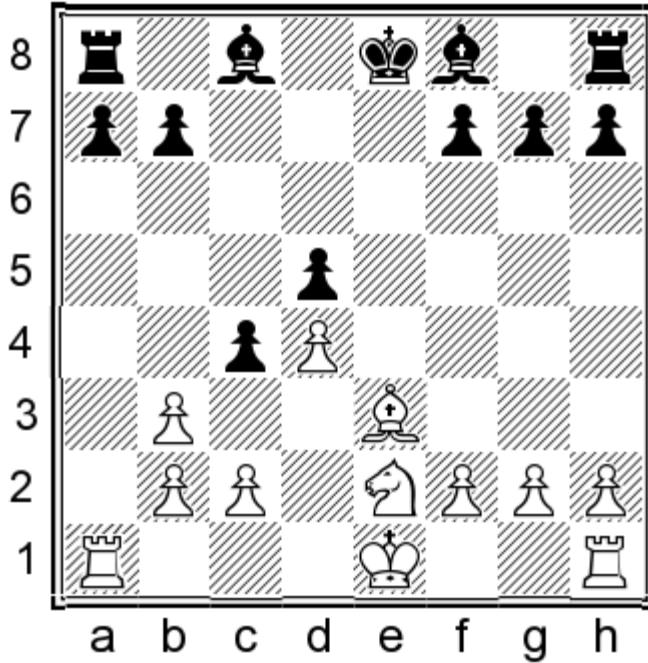
66

Geza Maroczy

Salo Landau

Zandvoort 1936 (2)

1.e4 ♜f6 2.♗c3 d5 3.exd5 ♜xd5 4.♗c4 ♜b6 5.♗b3 c5 6.♘h5 e6 7.d3 ♜c6 8.♗e3 ♜d4 9.♗ge2 ♜xb3 10.axb3 ♜d5 11.♗xd5 ♜xd5 12.♗xd5 exd5 13.d4 c4



*White to move*

Black has excellent long-term chances thanks to his bishop pair but he is currently underdeveloped, which can make the defence of his two advanced pawns on d5 and c4 difficult. Energetic play is therefore required from White.

A) 14.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$  gives nothing because of 14...  $\mathbb{B}b4!$  and after a probable exchange on c3 a balanced opposite-coloured bishops endgame will arise;

B) 14.  $bxc4$   $dxc4$  bets on the passed d4-pawn but frees Black of one of his exposed pawns, while the one that remains, on c4, is more or less safe. One possible continuation is 15.  $d5$  (attacking the a7-pawn) 15...  $a6$  16.  $\mathbb{B}b6$  (blocking the b7-pawn and controlling the d8-square) 16...  $\mathbb{B}f5$  17.  $0-0-0$  18.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  18.  $\mathbb{E}he1$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  when the d6-bishop is an active blockader, the king on d7 is well placed in the centre and Black has a comfortable game.

**14.  $\mathbb{Q}f4!$**

In order to eliminate the black bishop pair before turning to the c4-pawn.

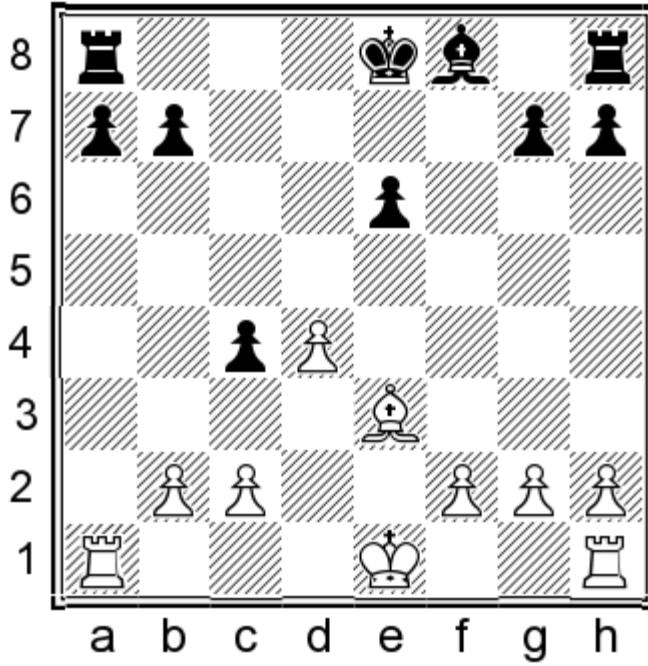
**14...  $\mathbb{Q}e6$**

After 14...  $cxb3$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  White has the advantage and some choice, the best continuation probably being 16.  $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{E}b8$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}xc8$   $\mathbb{E}xc8$  18.  $\mathbb{E}xa7$   $bxc2$  (18...  $\mathbb{E}xc2?$  19.  $\mathbb{E}a8+$ ) 19.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$  and one of the pawns on b7 and c2 will fall when Black is worse.

**15.  $bxc4$   $dxc4$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}xe6$**

16.  $d5$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  17.  $\mathbb{E}xa7$   $\mathbb{E}xa7$  18.  $\mathbb{Q}xa7$   $\mathbb{Q}xc2$  (18...  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  is also good) 19.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}a4$  (closing the a-file while the kingside is undeveloped) 20.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  leads to some white initiative, but Black has the long-term assets of his bishop pair and queenside majority so the position is unclear.

**16...  $fxe6$**



As previously Black would have a good position if he could manage to complete his development while keeping the c4-pawn safe, but this is not possible.

**17.♕a4!**

Once again, when it comes to taking advantage of a lead in development White must stay active.

**17...b5**

17...a5! 18.♖xc4 ♕d6 does not save the pawn, but allows more resistance.

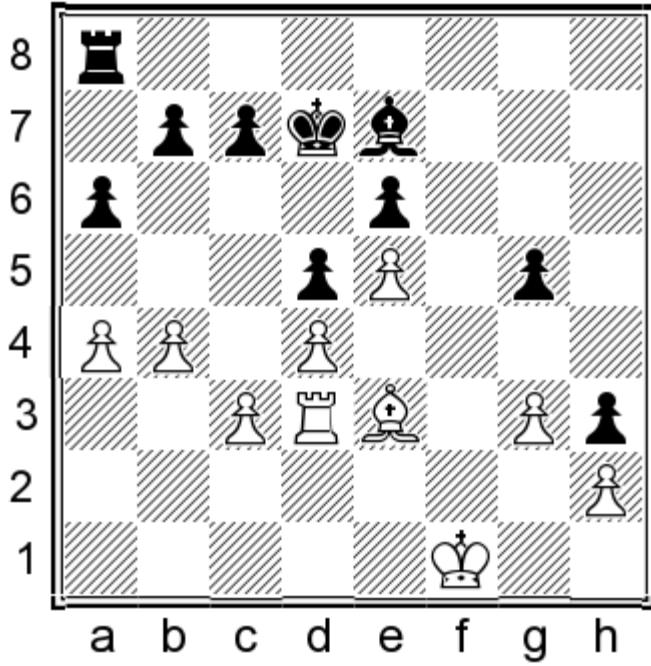
**18.♕a6 ♔d7 19.♔e2**

The a7-pawn is the next target.

**19...♕d6 20.♖ha1 ♕c7**

If 20...♕b8 then 21.♖1a5.

21.♖xa7 ♕xa7 22.♖xa7 ♔c6 23.f4 ♕f8 24.g3 ♕f5 25.♖a8 ♕f7 26.h4 g6 27.♔f3 ♔d5 28.♖a6 ♕f8 29.♖a7 ♔c6 30.♔e4 ♕f5 31.♖a6+ ♔d7 32.♖d2 ♕d5 33.♔a5 ♕xa5 34.♖xa5 ♕h5 35.♔a6 ♕e7 36.♖c6 ♕f6 37.♖c5 h6 38.♖xh5 gxh5 39.c3 1-0



*Black to move*

Which plan gives Black a very large advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

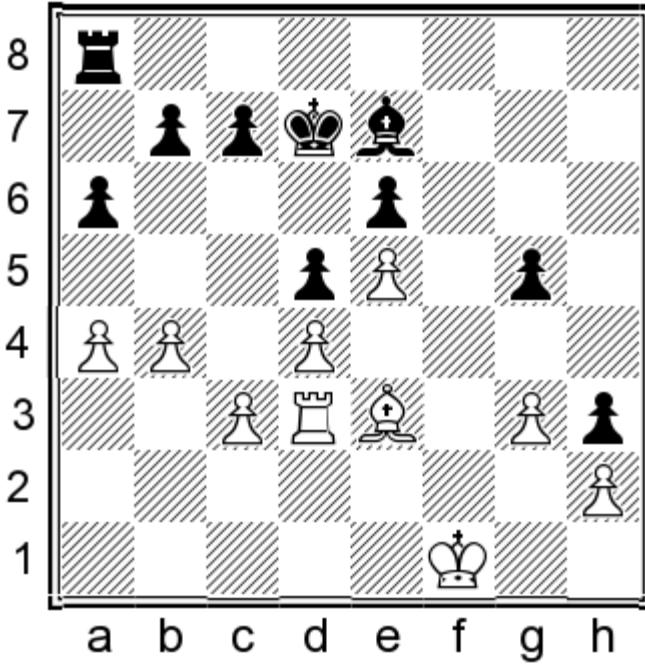
67

**Georgy Lisitsin**

Nikolay Riumin

Moscow ch-URS 1931 (1)

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$  f5 2. e4 fxe4 3.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4. d3 e3 5.  $\mathbb{Q}xe3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  6. d4 d5 7.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  8. f3  $\mathbb{Q}c8$  9. 0-0 g6 10. f4  $\mathbb{Q}g4$  11.  $\mathbb{W}e1$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  12. c3 e6 13.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$  a6 15.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$  h6 16.  $\mathbb{Q}gf3$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}f2$  g5 18.  $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}cxe5$  19. fxe5 h5 20.  $\mathbb{Q}xg4$   $\mathbb{Q}xg4$  21.  $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{W}g7$  22.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  23.  $\mathbb{W}d2$   $\mathbb{W}g8$  24. b4  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  25.  $\mathbb{W}fd1$   $\mathbb{W}g6$  26. a4 h4 27.  $\mathbb{Q}e1$  h3 28. g3  $\mathbb{W}f8$  29.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}xd3$  30.  $\mathbb{W}xd3$   $\mathbb{W}xd3$  31.  $\mathbb{W}xd3$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  32.  $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{W}xf1+$  33.  $\mathbb{Q}xf1$



*Black to move*

White has a space advantage in the centre and several pawns stuck on dark squares, which suggests a potential bad bishop. The advanced queenside pawns are not supported and mainly provide an opportunity for Black to open the game in this sector of the board.

White has two plans that interest us at his disposal, even if it's not his move:

- 1) Play g3-g4 to fix the g5-pawn on a dark square, win the h3-pawn and then go to h7 or h5 with the rook, thus getting an active game. Defending the h3-pawn by placing the rook on h8 would prevent Black from fighting for the advantage;
- 2) Play  $\mathbb{R}d3-d1$  to involve the rook in the play on the queenside, keeping in mind that only Black can decide to open the game there.

Black would like to grab the initiative by ...a6-a5, or ...b7-b6 followed by ...c7-c5. The consolidating move ...g5-g4 also deserves attention. Let's look:

- A) 33...g4 immediately is too slow and after 34. $\mathbb{R}d1$  b6 (or 34...a5 35.b5 c6 36. $\mathbb{R}b1$ ) 35. $\mathbb{R}b1$ , with the idea of 35...c5 36.bxc5 bxc5 37. $\mathbb{R}b7+$ , the white position is solid;
- B) 33...b6 is not convincing either: 34.g4 (or 34. $\mathbb{R}d1$  c5 35.bxc5 bxc5 36. $\mathbb{R}b1$ ) 34...c5 35.bxc5 bxc5 36.dxc5  $\mathbb{R}b8$  37. $\mathbb{R}d2$ , keeping an eye on the g5-pawn and giving White a comfortable game.

### **33...a5! 34.b5**

34.bxa5 offers more resistance, with a choice:

- A) 34... $\mathbb{R}xa5?$  35.g4!  $\mathbb{R}xa4$  36. $\mathbb{R}f2!$  c5 37. $\mathbb{R}xh3$ , the bishop has retreated to f2 to defend the d4-pawn, or possibly the c5-pawn should he later capture on this square. White is under slight pressure but keeps good defensive possibilities;
- B) 34...g4! (a desirable move, of course, but before playing this it is important to see that the a5- and a4-pawns will both be captured anyway, despite the tempo spent on the kingside) 35. $\mathbb{R}d2$   $\mathbb{R}xa5$  36. $\mathbb{R}f2$  (36. $\mathbb{R}a2$  b5 is worse) 36... $\mathbb{R}xa4$  when Black has a pawn more and the c3- and h2-pawns are exposed. He is probably winning.

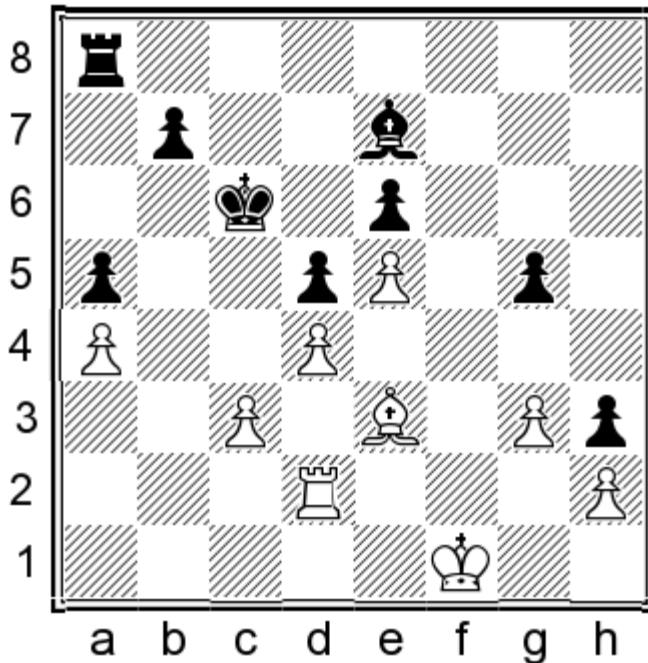
**34...c6!**

Forcing the creation of a passed pawn on the queenside. This time 34...g4? allows a consolidation of the position by 35.♗d1 c6 36.♗b1.

**35.bxc6+**

After 35.♗d1 cxb5 36.axb5 a4 37.♔e2 a3 (here the pawn is both very advanced and safe) 38.♗d3 ♔c7 the b5-pawn will fall; on 39.c4 the clearest is 39...a2! 40.♗a1 ♕a3+ 41.♔e2 dxc4.

**35...♗xc6 36.♗d2**



**36...b5!**

The last move of the manoeuvre started by 33...a5 and which leads to a decisive advantage.

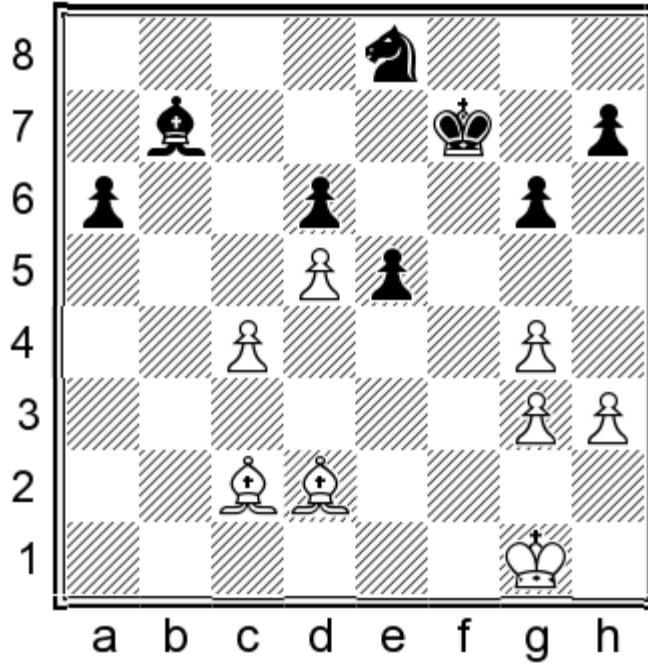
**37.♔e2**

Sacrificing a pawn to prevent the black king from reaching c4 after 37.axb5+ ♔xb5 38.♔e2.

**37...bxa4 38.♗d3 a3 39.c4 dxc4+ 40.♗xc4 ♕b8 41.d5+ exd5+ 42.♗d3**

42.♗xd5? ♕b4+ loses the rook.

**42...♕b3+ 43.♔e2 ♕b2 44.♗d4 ♕xd2+ 45.♗xd2 ♕c5 46.♗a1 d4 0-1**



*White to move*

How can White obtain a large advantage and what is the best defence for Black?

Show/Hide Solution

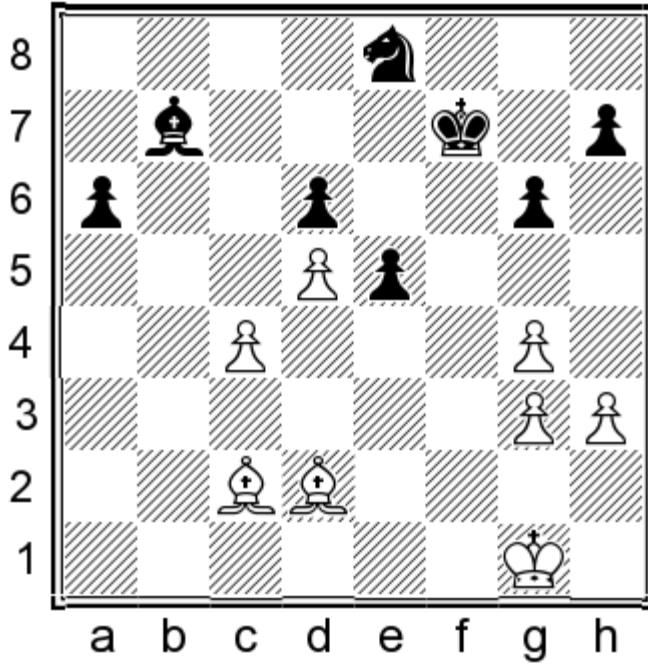
**68**

Vlastimil Hort

Victor Ciocaltea

Budapest 1973 (6)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 c5 3.d5 e5 4. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  d6 5.e4  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  6.g3 0-0 7. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  a6 8.a4  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  9. $\mathbb{Q}ge2$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  10.0-0 g6 11. $\mathbb{Q}h6$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  12. $\mathbb{Q}d2$  f5 13.h3  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  14.a5  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  15.b3 b6 16.axb6  $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  17. $\mathbb{Q}ab1$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  18. $\mathbb{Q}b2$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  19. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  fxe4 20.g4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{Q}fb7$  22. $\mathbb{Q}fb1$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  23. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  24. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  25.b4  $\mathbb{Q}xb4$  26. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$  cxb4 27. $\mathbb{Q}xb4$   $\mathbb{Q}a5$  28. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  29. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$   $\mathbb{Q}xb7$  30. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}xg3$  31.fxg3  $\mathbb{Q}f7$



*White to move*

Black has the better pawn structure, with two passed pawns on a6 and e5, whereas the white majority cannot be exploited.

White, meanwhile, has a space advantage and the bishop pair. The dark-squared bishop is particularly influential as it has no counterpart and can both attack the d6-pawn and block the a6-pawn.

The decisive factor in judging this position is the poor placement of the black pieces that will soon find themselves dominated.

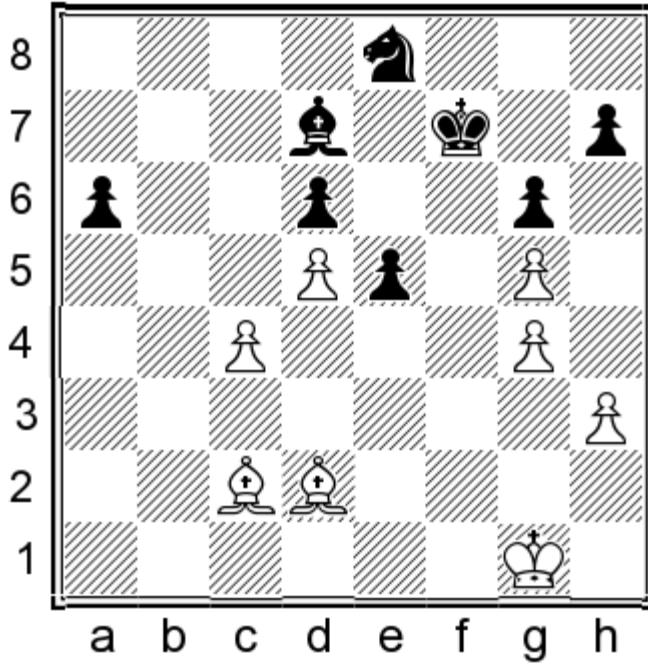
If Black was to move then he could play his knight to f6 and would not have any particular problems.

### 32.g5!

The first step towards confining the knight, which has no future on the kingside because after 32... $\mathbb{Q}g7$  there would follow 33.g4!.

We will see that passive defence offers no hope, so it was interesting to try 32... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ ! here, with the intention of playing ...a6-a5 followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ -a6, or to sacrifice the knight on d5 for two pawns. White cannot prevent both ideas and must choose between 33. $\mathbb{Q}b3$  a5! (and not 33... $\mathbb{Q}a8$ ? 34. $\mathbb{Q}a5$ ) 34. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  and 33. $\mathbb{Q}a5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ ! 34.cxd5  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$ . In both cases it is not clear that the advantage is enough for a win.

32... $\mathbb{Q}c8$  33.g4!  $\mathbb{Q}d7$



White's plan now is to prepare c4-c5 in order to obtain a passed pawn on d5 and win the e5-pawn. The black pieces are free to move, but they cannot undertake anything. The standard method in such situations is to improve your position as much as possible before opening the play, just as Hort will do.

**34.♗f2 ♗e7 35.♗a5 ♗c8 36.♗e3 ♗d7 37.♗b6!**

The bishop supports the advance of the c4-pawn and continues to stop the knight from going to the c7-square.

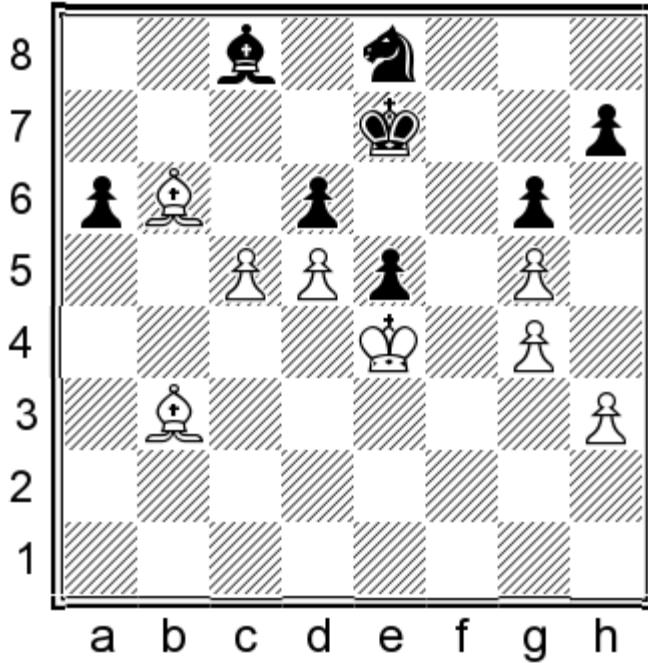
**37...♗c8 38.♗e4**

The king is ready to take the e5-pawn as soon as its support on d6 is gone.

**38...♗d7 39.♗b3!**

When the white pawns have advanced this bishop will go to g8.

**39...♗c8 40.c5**



The white pieces are ideally placed and it's time to force matters. White is winning.

**40...♝d7**

Or else 40...dxc5 41.♛xc5+ ♚d8 (41...♝d6? loses the knight after 42.♝xe5) 42.♝xe5 and neither 42...♝c7 43.♝f6 nor 42...♝d7 43.d6 followed by 44.♝g8 will save the position.

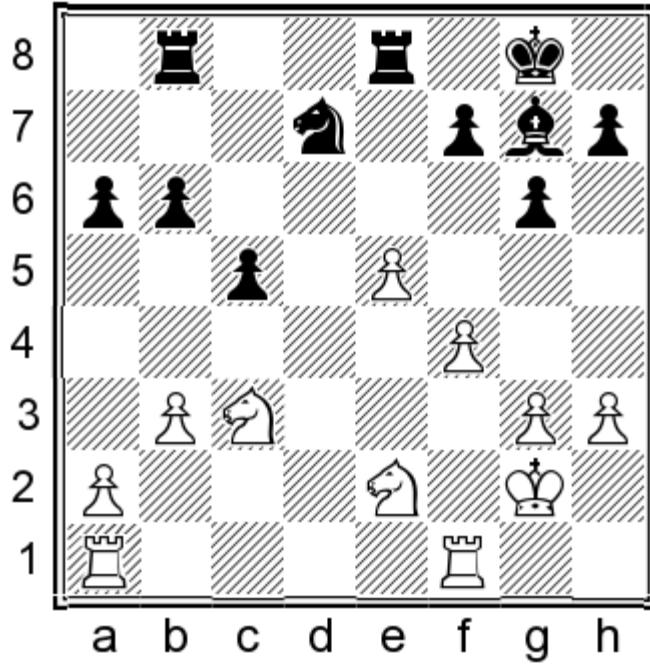
**41.c6!**

41.cxd6+? complicates or lets slip the win:

- A) 41...♝xd6? only defends the e5-pawn in appearance and after 42.♚a5 followed by 43.♝b4+ White wins;
- B) 41...♝xd6+! 42.♝xe5 ♐f7+ 43.♝f4 – the g5-pawn must be defended but after 43...♝d6 Black has got his pieces into play, with some drawing chances.

**41...♝c8 42.♛c4 ♐g7 43.♝d3 ♐e8 44.♝c3**

Black resigned. The white king goes to the a5-square to win the a6-pawn, then the light-squared bishops will be exchanged and the passed pawn will advance.



*White to move*

What are each side's objectives?

Show/Hide Solution

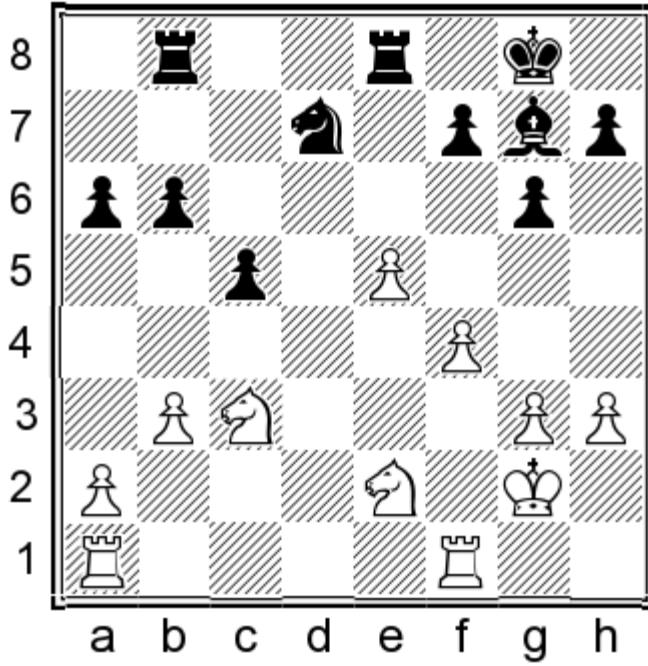
**69**

Mikhail Botvinnik

Vasily Smyslov

Moscow Wch m 1954 (16)

1.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.c4 g6 3.g3  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  0-0 5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  d6 6.e3  $\mathbb{Q}bd7$  7. $\mathbb{Q}ge2$  e5 8.b3  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  9. $\mathbb{Q}a3$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  10.0-0 a6 11.dxe5  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  12.c5 dxc5 13. $\mathbb{Q}xc5$  b6 14. $\mathbb{W}xd8$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  15. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  16.e4  $\mathbb{Q}b7$  17.f4  $\mathbb{Q}eg4$  18.h3 c5 19. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  20.e5  $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xg2$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$



*White to move*

Each side has a pawn majority. White has a large space advantage in the centre thanks to his solidly defended e5-pawn, which in particular hinders the exploitation of the black queenside majority. Black will try to exchange the f7-pawn for the central white pawn by ...f7-f6, and if he manages this under favourable conditions he will probably have a good position. Therefore, at first White's main plan involves preventing this black liberating plan and for that he will control the d-file and play the c3-knight to d5 or e4, according to circumstances. In the longer term he will try to exploit his kingside majority.

**22.Rad1!**

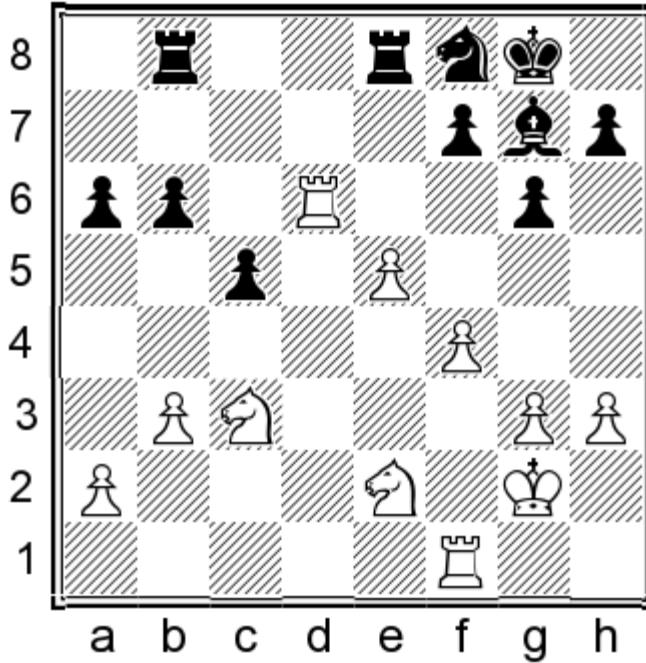
The rook heads for the d6-square while gaining a tempo on the d7-knight. The advance of the black c-pawn has left the d5- and d6-squares in White's hands.

**22...Qf8**

It is necessary to give up some control of the important f6-square. Weaker alternatives:

- A) 22...Rbd8 23.Rd6 with the idea of Rf1-d1;
- B) 22...Rb7 23.Qe4 and the threat of a fork on d6 wins a tempo;
- C) 22...Re7 23.Rd6 planning Qc3-d5.

**23.Rd6!**



Preventing 23...f6, preparing to double rooks on the d-file and putting pressure on the queenside pawns.

### 23...Qe6

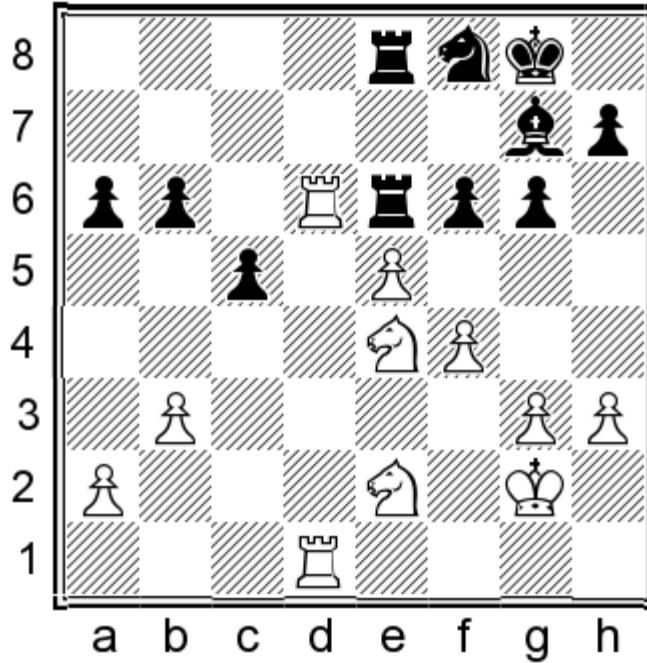
23...Qe6!? tries to advance the f7-pawn. Conditions are not ideal, but there's not much in it after 24.Qfd1:

A) 24...f6 25.Qxe6 Qxe6 26.Qd6 Qf7 27.exf6 Qxf6 28.Qd7+! (28.Qd5? is tempting, but this allows 28...Qd8!, which forces the exchange of rooks and solves all the problems) 28...Qg8 29.Qd5 and if Black wishes to avoid the loss of a pawn after 29...Qg7 30.Qd6 he can play the passive 29...Qd8 with a bad position;

B) 24...Qbe8 with a choice:

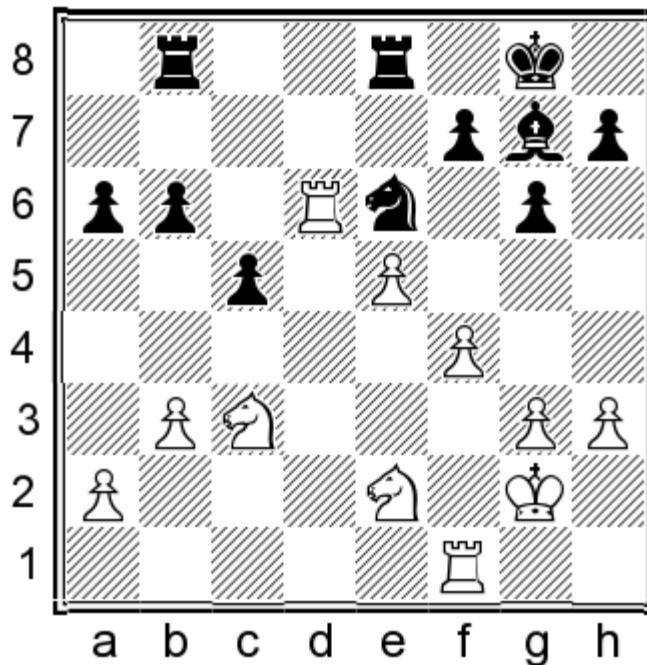
B1) 25.Qa4 f6 26.Qxb6 fxe5 27.Qc4 exf4 28.Qxf4 Qxd6 29.Qxd6 and Black has freed himself a little but his a-pawn is very weak, for example: 29...g5 30.Qd3 Qe2+ 31.Qf3 Qxa2 32.Qxc5 and, despite the many exchanges, White retains a good advantage thanks to his active pieces and the prospect of winning a pawn;

B2) 25.Qe4! f6



*analysis diagram*

26.g4! (the sacrifice of the candidate passed pawn is thematic in order to energize a majority and here it is particularly dangerous) 26...fxe5 (or 26...g5 27.♘c3 with the threat of 28.exf6) 27.f5! gxf5 28.gxf5 ♘xd6 29.♗xd6 ♘b8 30.♘c3 when White will have no trouble regaining his sacrificed pawn, but most of his considerable advantage is down to his domination of the black minor pieces. It might be in Black's interest, after 25.♘e4, to temporarily give up on the idea of ...f7-f6 and play, for example, 25...♗xd6 26.♗xd6 ♘e6, but then he is clearly worse.

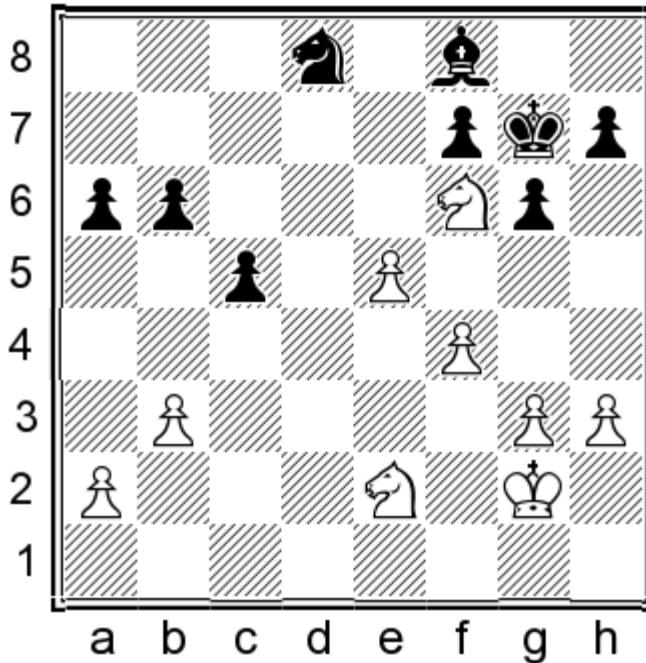


**24.♘e4!**

Durably preventing the ...f7-f6-counter and now White has a large and stable advantage.

After 24.♘d5 ♘ed8! 25.♗xd8+ (with the knight on d5 it is not possible to support the d6-rook by 25.♖fd1) 25...♗xd8 26.♗xb6 (26.♗d1 ♔f8 27.♗ec3 keeps some pressure) 26...♗d2 27.♗f3 ♗xa2 Black has improved his position, but has not yet equalized.

**24...♗ed8 25.♗fd1 ♔f8 26.♗xd8 ♗xd8 27.♗xd8 ♘xd8 28.♗f6+ ♔g7**



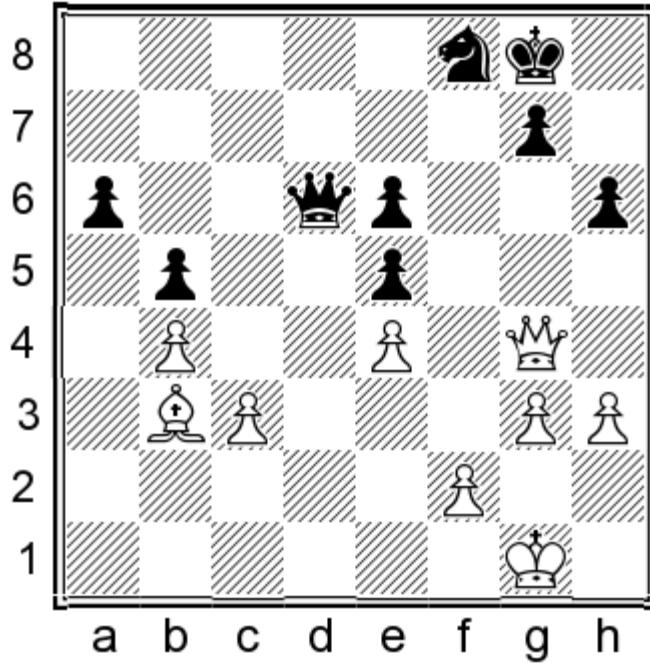
**29.♘d5**

Botvinnik plays to win a pawn. The other way was to improve the position of his pieces by playing, for example, 29.♗f3.

**29...b5 30.♗c7**

White will soon have an extra pawn with a better position and he duly went on to win the endgame.

**30...g5 31.♗f3 gxf4 32.gxf4 c4 33.bxc4 bxc4 34.♘xa6 f6 35.♗c7 fxe5 36.fxe5 ♔g6 37.♗e4 ♔g5 38.a4 ♔h4 39.a5 ♘c6 40.a6 ♔xh3 41.♗b5 c3 42.♗bxc3 ♔g4 43.♗d4 ♘a7 44.♗d5 h5 45.♗f6+ 1-0**



*White to move*

What plan gives White a big advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

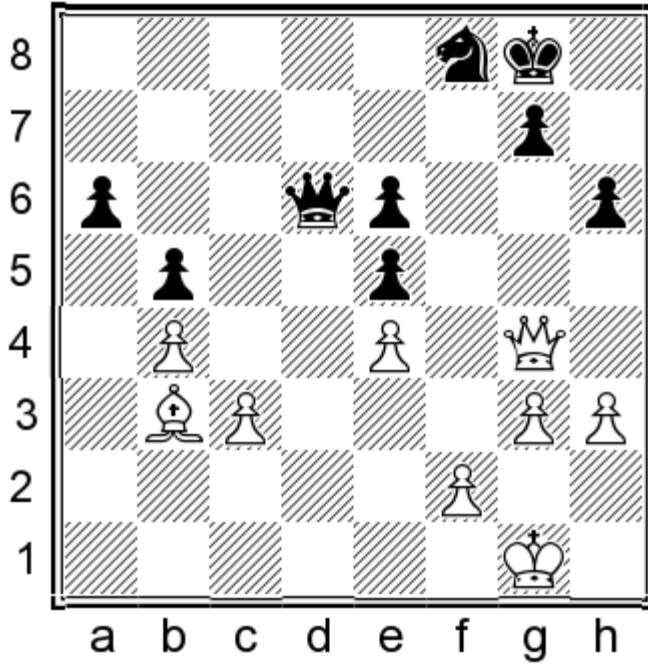
70

Samuel Reshevsky

Vasily Smyslov

Belgrade tt 1970 (3)

1.e4 e5 2.Qf3 Qc6 3.Qb5 a6 4.Qa4 Qf6 5.0-0 Qe7 6.Qe1 b5 7.Qb3 d6 8.c3 0-0 9.h3 Qa5 10.Qc2 c5 11.d4 Qc6  
 12.Qbd2 Qc7 13.dxc5 dxc5 14.Qf1 Qe6 15.Qe3 Qad8 16.Qe2 c4 17.Qf5 Qfe8 18.Qg5 Qd7 19.Qxe7 Qxe7 20.Qg5  
 Qg6 21.g3 h6 22.Qxe6 fxe6 23.Qe3 Qc5 24.Qad1 Qxd1 25.Qxd1 Qd8 26.b4 cxb3 27.Qxd8+ Qxd8 28.axb3 Qd6  
 29.b4 Qd7 30.Qb3 Qf6 31.Qg4 Qxg4 32.Qxg4 Qf8



*White to move*

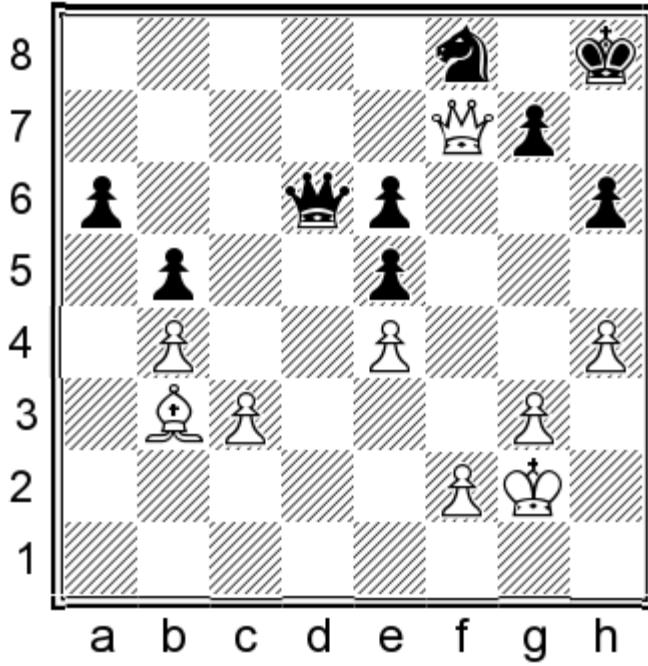
The doubled and isolated e5- and e6-pawns need to be protected by pieces. A typical plan for this kind of position is to put pressure on the weaknesses, to minimize the mobility of the opposing pieces as much as possible, before establishing a more general plan of progression.

**33.♕f5!**

Reshevsky takes advantage of the pin on the e6-pawn to tie down the black queen and knight. As the pawns are also immobilized (33...g6 34.♕f6 does not help), that only leaves the king free to move. Other moves squander most of the advantage.

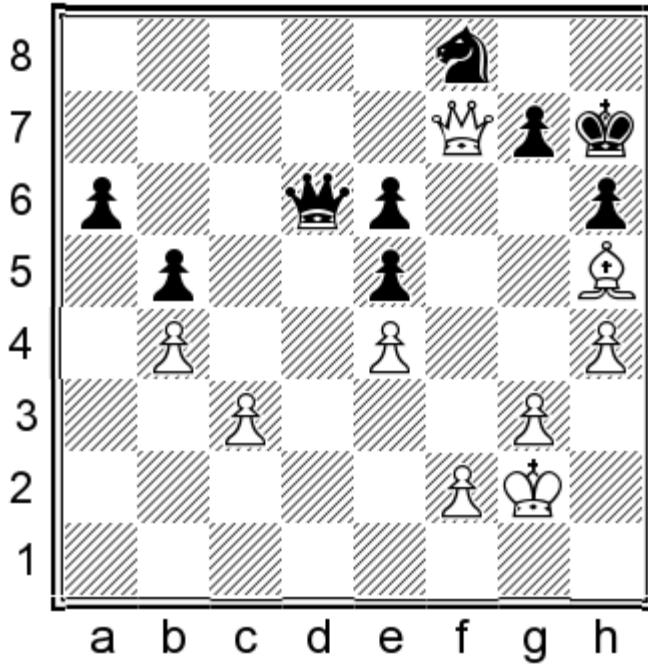
Let us first see 33...♔h8, the critical continuation, and then 33...♗c7, Smyslov's actual choice.

**33...♔h8 34.♕f7!** The king's movements are now limited to the h8- and h7-squares. This means that White will be able to choose which square it should be on at the moment he decides to take decisive action. Thus the zugzwang theme appears. That said, it is not easy to find an effective plan that does not leave too much counterplay, but White does have at least one very strong manoeuvre available. **34...♔h7 35.h4 ♔h8 35...♗d3!?**, which could have been prevented by moving the white king on the previous move, leads to a queen endgame after 36.♕xf8 ♗b1+ 37.♔g2 ♗xb3 38.♕c5! followed by 39.♗xe5. As we shall see, normally White must try hard to get this very favourable position. **36.♔h2! ♔h7 37.♔g2! ♔h8**



*analysis diagram*

White has ‘lost’ a tempo to obtain this king set-up which allows the passage of his bishop to the kingside. His king is as safe as possible while Black’s will be in check should the knight be captured. **38.♘d1! ♖h7** The e6-pawn is less attacked, but this does not really free the knight because after 38...♘d7 39.♗e8+ ♖h7 40.♗h5, with the threat of 41.♗g6#, it must return to f8; after 38...♗xd1 39.♗xf8+ ♖h7 40.♗c5, with the idea of 40...♗h5 41.♗d6, the queen will capture the e5-pawn when White is much better. **39.♗h5**

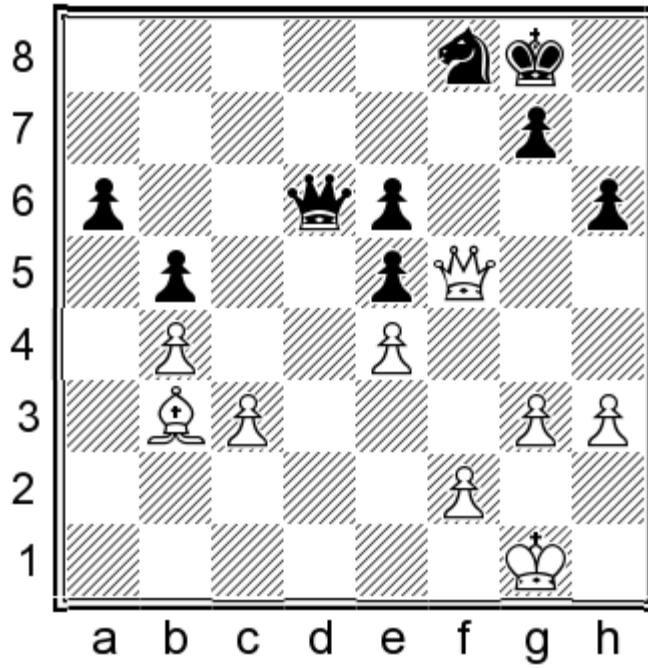


*analysis diagram*

**39...♗d8** A passive defence is no longer enough: 39...♖h8 40.♗e8 ♖h7 41.♗f7 ♖h8 (41...g6 42.♗xg6+! ♗xg6 43.♗f7+) 42.h5 ♖h7 43.♗h2 ♖h8 (43...♗d2 44.♗g6+ ♗xg6 45.hxg6#) 44.♗xe6 ♗xe6 45.♗xf8+ ♖h7 46.♗f5+ and the pawn

endgame is an easy win for White. **40.♕e8** **40.♕b7** is also good. A motivation to keep the queens on the board is to take benefit of the insecure black king. **40...♗xe8** **40...♗d6** transposes into the variation we have just looked at. **41.♗xe8 ♘g8** **42.♗f3!** This preventive defence of the e4-pawn ensures an easy win. **42...♗h7** **43.♗d7!** Better than **43.♗c6?**, which allows **43...♗f6** **44.♗b7 ♗e8** **45.♗xa6 ♗c7** and Black still resists. **43...♗f7** **44.♗c8** The a6- and b5-pawns will drop and Black is losing.

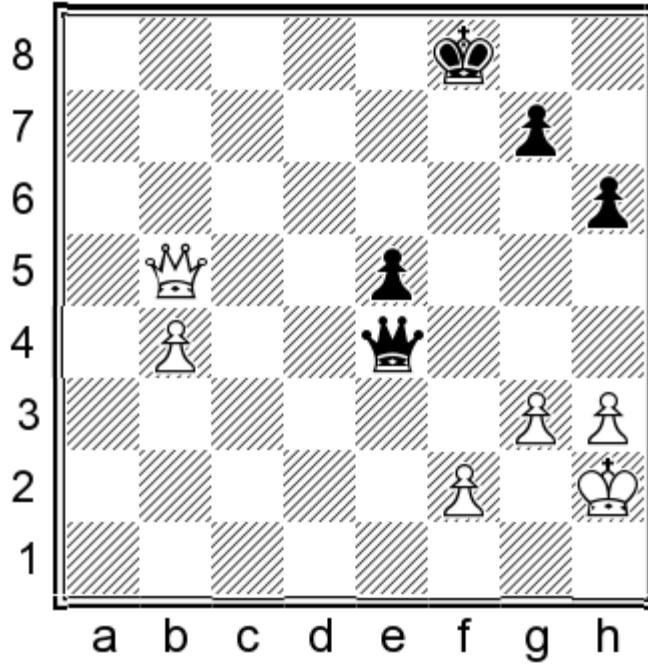
Returning to the game after **33.♗f5!:**



**33...♗c7**

It is often interesting to give a pawn up quickly rather than having to defend it, which can entail certain concessions, if it must subsequently be lost anyway but under worse conditions. Unfortunately, we do not know whether Smyslov was ‘in general’ afraid of the passivity of his position after **33...♗h8** **34.♗f7** or rather of a precise variation. Reshevsky did not say much more either, as far as I know, and, concerning **33.♗f5**, in *Chess Informant* he only says that it’s a good move and that White wins.

**34.♗xe6+ ♗xe6 35.♗e6+ ♘f8 36.♗xa6 ♗xc3 37.♗xb5 ♗e1+ 38.♗g2 ♗xe4+ 39.♗h2**

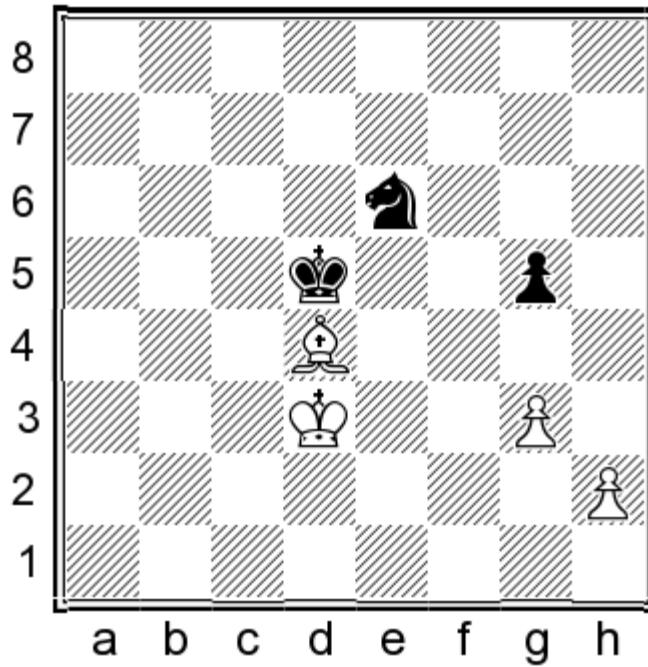


White has a distant passed pawn and his king is safe from checks. Good technique is enough to win.

**39... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  40. $\mathbb{W}c5+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  41. $\mathbb{W}c8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  42. $\mathbb{W}d7+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  43.b5  $\mathbb{W}c2$  44. $\mathbb{W}d5+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  45. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  e4 46. $\mathbb{W}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  47.b6  $\mathbb{W}b3$  48. $\mathbb{W}c5$   $\mathbb{W}b2$  49. $\mathbb{W}c6$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  50.h4 g6 51. $\mathbb{W}c7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  52. $\mathbb{W}h7$   $\mathbb{W}f6$  53. $\mathbb{W}xh6$   $\mathbb{W}f3+$  54. $\mathbb{Q}g1$**

Black resigned.

71



*White to move*

What is White's general plan? Can you find the win?

Show/Hide Solution

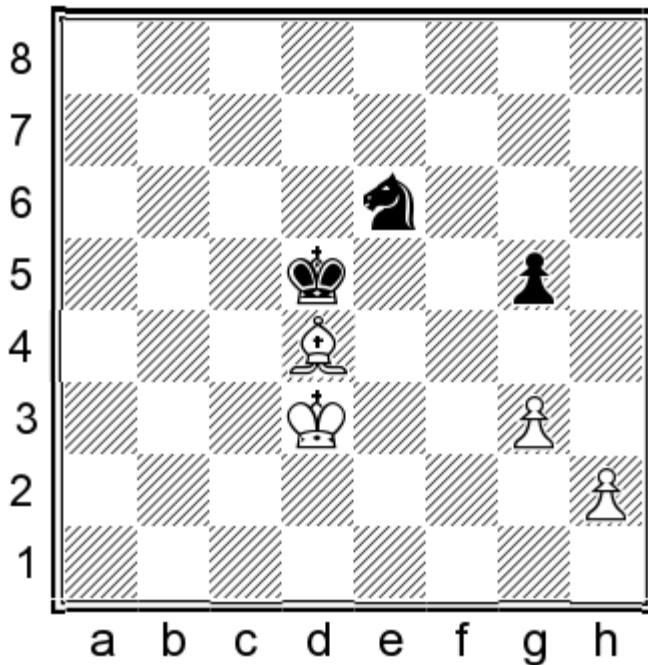
71

Mark Taimanov

Roland Ekström

Stockholm 1983 (3.1)

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.♘f3 c5 4.cxd5 exd5 5.g3 ♘c6 6.♗g2 ♘f6 7.0-0 ♔e7 8.♘c3 0-0 9.♔e3 cxd4 10.♘xd4 ♕e8 11.♕c1 h6 12.♘xc6 bxc6 13.♘a4 ♔d7 14.♘c5 ♔xc5 15.♘xc5 ♖a5 16.♘d4 ♘e4 17.a3 ♖ac8 18.f3 ♘g5 19.♘d3 ♔h3 20.b4 ♖d8 21.♘xa7 ♖e7 22.♘f2 ♖xe2 23.♖xe2 24.a4 ♖b8 25.♖b1 ♖a2 26.a5 ♔xg2 27.♔xg2 ♘e6 28.♔a1 ♖xa1 29.♔xa1 d4 30.a6 ♖a8 31.a7 ♘f8 32.f4 f5 33.♘f3 ♘e7 34.♘e2 ♘d6 35.♘d3 c5 36.♘c4 cxb4 37.♔a6+ ♘d7 38.♘xb4 g5 39.fxg5 hxg5 40.♔a5 ♘d8 41.♖xf5 ♖xa7 42.♘b3 ♖b7+ 43.♘c2 ♘e6 44.♔f7+ ♘c6 45.♖xb7 ♘xb7 46.♘d3 ♘c6 47.♘xd4 ♘d5



White to move

White has a pawn more but material is very limited and it would be enough for the black king to get to the kingside for the position to be drawn. This is why the attacked bishop must move while keeping control of the e5-square. That being said, the general winning plan, which is typical of a struggle between bishop and knight, is to impose tasks on the black pieces (protect the pawn or control an invasion square) and to use zugzwang.

**48.♗f6!**

The attack on the g5-pawn limits the knight's possibilities and a barrier is formed between the black king and pawn.

48.♗b2? ♘d8 49.♔e3 is not good:

A) 49...♗f7? 50.♘f3 ♘e6 51.♘g4 – now the knight is tied to the defence of the pawn and the black king cannot keep control of the f5-square, so there is therefore a zugzwang and the black pawn is lost after 51...♔e7 52.♘f5 ♘f8 53.♘f6;

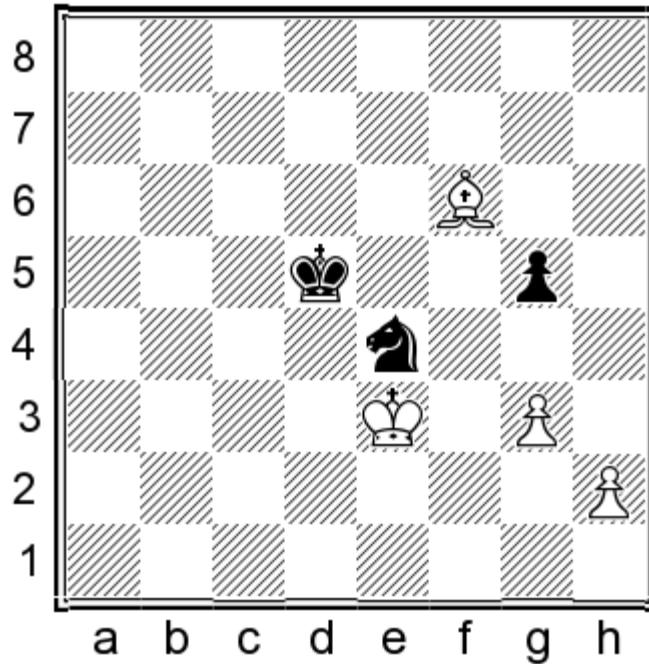
B) 49...♘e6! when the threat of 50...♗f5 stops the white king from getting to the g4-square, thus leaving the g5-pawn safe and preventing White from making any progress.

**48...♝c5+**

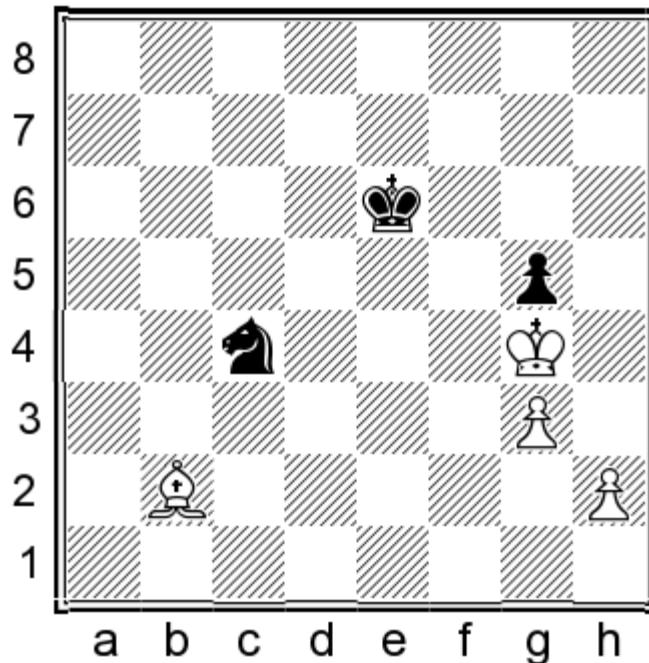
After 48...g4? 49.♔e3 Black is in zugzwang and will have to give way to the white king on e4 or f4.

**49.♔e3 ♝e4!**

The knight is centralized, looking for activity. 49...♝e6? loses the g5-pawn after 50.♗f3.



A natural idea is to retreat the bishop along the long diagonal to maintain control of the e5-square; for example, 50.♗b2 ♘d6 (the king cannot move for the moment) 51.♔f3 ♘e6 52.♗g4 ♘f7? 53.♗g7 wins by zugzwang, but instead of 52...♘f7?, 52...♝c4! gives Black play against the white pawns.



*analysis diagram*

A) 53.♘c3? allows 53...♝e3+ 54.♔xg5 ♝f1 winning a pawn;

B) 53.♘c1? ♝e5+ 54.♔h5 (54.♔xg5 ♝f3+) 54...g4! 55.♔f4 ♝f3 56.♔xg4 ♝xh2+ also draws.

These two variations show us that the knight can advantageously go to e3 or e5, hence:

C) 53.♘d4! ♝d2! (the knight aims for the f1- and f3-squares, whose usefulness we have just seen, and may also return to e4) 54.♘c3 ♝e4 (after 54...♝f1 55.h3 ♔f7 56.♔f3! ♔g6 57.♔f2 the knight will be captured) 55.♔b2 (Black is in zugzwang) 55...♔f7 56.♔f5 ♘d2 57.h3! and the black pawn will fall.

**50.♘d8!?** ♔e5 **51.♘c7+!**

The justification for the previous move. Taimanov uses a tactical finesse to force the opposing king to turn back. After 51.g4? the pawn occupies a square needed by the white king and the chances of a win disappear.

**51...♝d5**

And not 51...♝f5? 52.g4+!, which loses the knight.

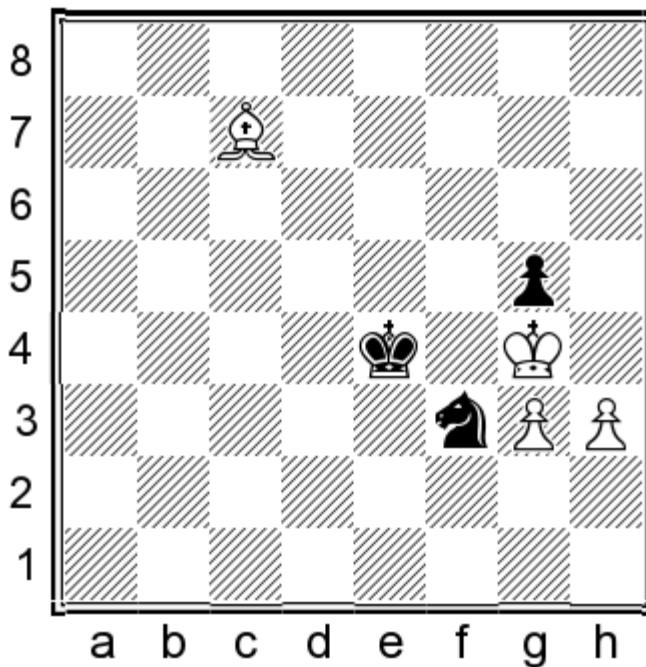
**52.♘d8 ♔e5 53.♘c7+ ♔d5**

A repetition of moves to gain thinking time.

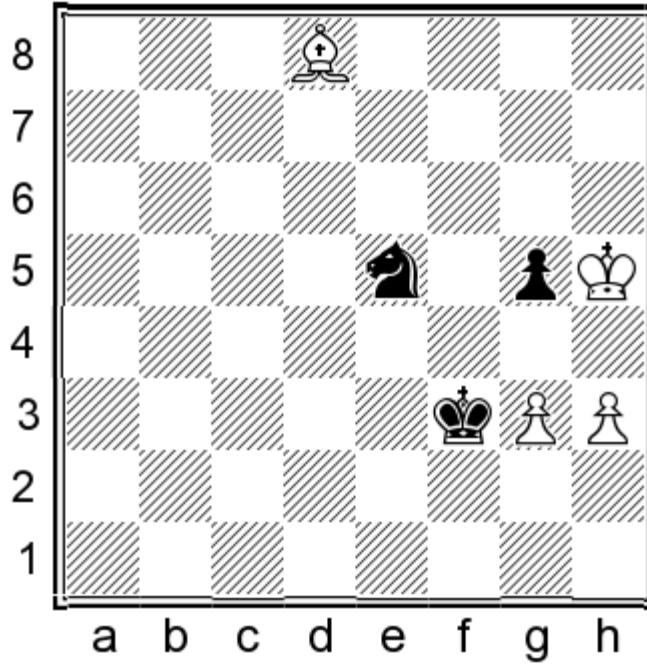
**54.♔f3 ♘d2+!**

After 54...♝f6 55.♘d8 ♔e5 56.♔xf6+ ♔xf6 57.♔g4 ♔g6 58.h3 the black king must give way and the g5-pawn will soon be lost.

**55.♔g4 ♔e4 56.h3 ♘f3**



Black has got the most out of his position and gained some counterplay while his pawn is safe for the moment. White has various winning moves now, but not the tempting 57.♘d8? because of 57...♝e5+! 58.♔h5 (58.♔xg5 ♝f7+) 58...♝f3 and a draw is inevitable:



*analysis diagram*

- A) 59.♕c7 ♔xg3 60.♕xe5+ ♔xh3;
- B) 59.♕xg5 ♔xg3 60.h4 ♔f3;
- C) 59.g4 ♔g2 (and not 59...♔g3? 60.♕c7) 60.♕c7 ♔f3

**57.♕b6!**

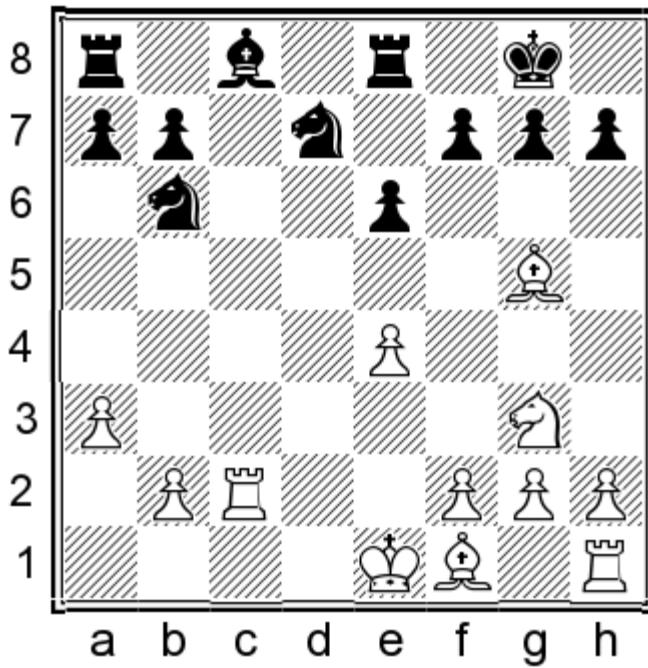
The simplest move, taking the e3- and g1-squares from the black pieces.

**57...♔e5+ 58.♕xg5 ♔f3 59.♕c7**

Black resigned. After 59...♔xg3 the pawn has to be saved by 60.h4 before capturing the pinned knight.

## Show in Quiz Mode

72



*White to move*

How can White gain a large advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

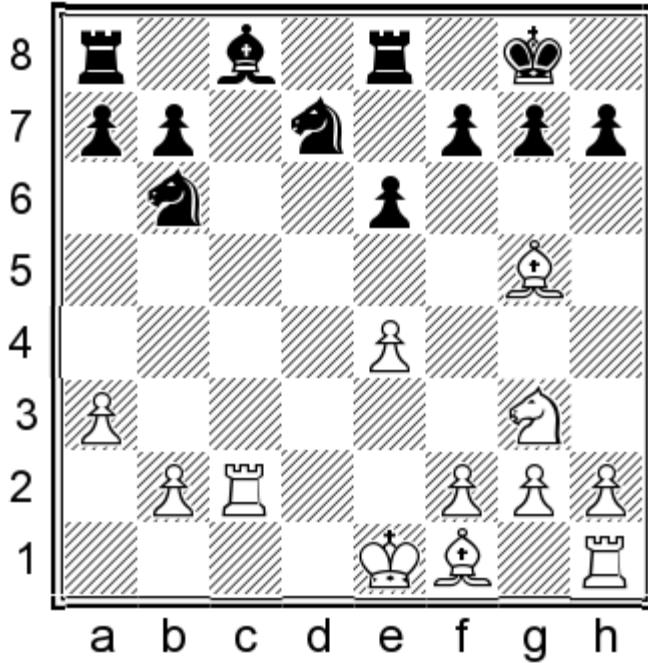
72

Salo Flohr

**Reginald Michell**

Hastings 1933/34 (6)

1.d4 ♜f6 2.c4 e6 3.♘c3 ♜b4 4.♗c2 d5 5.cxd5 ♜xd5 6.e3 0-0 7.♗ge2 c5 8.♕d2 ♜c6 9.a3 ♜xc3 10.♕xc3 ♜bd7 11.dxc5 ♜xc5 12.♗c1 ♜e8 13.♗g3 ♜d5 14.♗d2 ♜xc2 15.♗xc2 ♜f7f6 16.e4 ♜b6 17.♗g5 ♜fd7



*White to move*

Thanks to his pair of bishops White can count on a lasting advantage by developing normally with 18.♗e2 ♛f8 (in order to answer 19.♗c7 with 19...e5 followed by 20...♗e6) 19.0-0 ♘d7, but there is even better...

### 18.♗b5!

The bishop is clearly well placed here, pinning the d7-knight and paralysing the black development, but it will immediately be chased away. The whole question will be how to evaluate the consequences of the ...a7-a6 move.

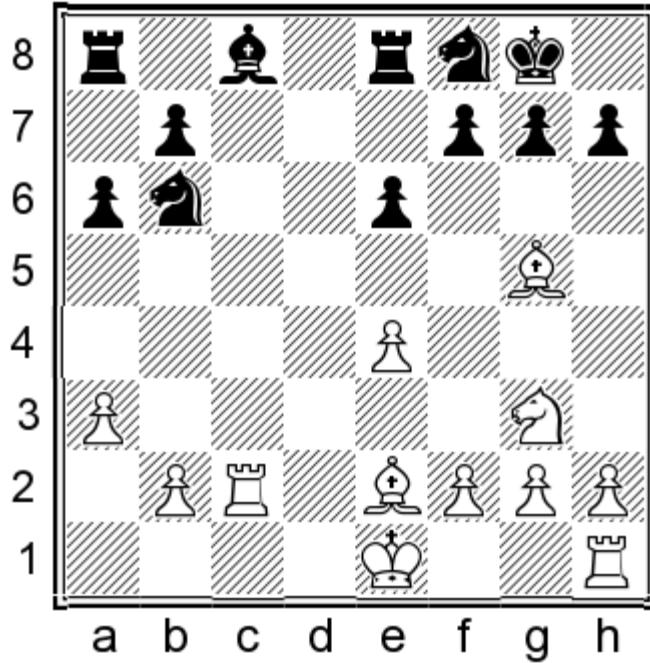
### 18...a6

18...h6 19.♗e3 gives the e8-rook some room, but it does not have any good squares:

- A) 19...♝d8 20.♝d2! – the pin on the knight is renewed and 20...a6? allows 21.♗xb6;
- B) 19...♝e7 20.♝c7! a6 21.♗e2 – this time Black has managed to evict the b5-bishop, but his two knights are immobilized as 21...♝a4 loses to 22.b3 (22...♝ab6? 23.♗xb6);
- C) 19...♝f8 20.0-0 – the d7-knight can now move, but time has been lost and Black is much worse.

### 19.♗e2 ♛f8

After 19...♝e5 there would follow 20.♗e3! with the same idea as in the game.



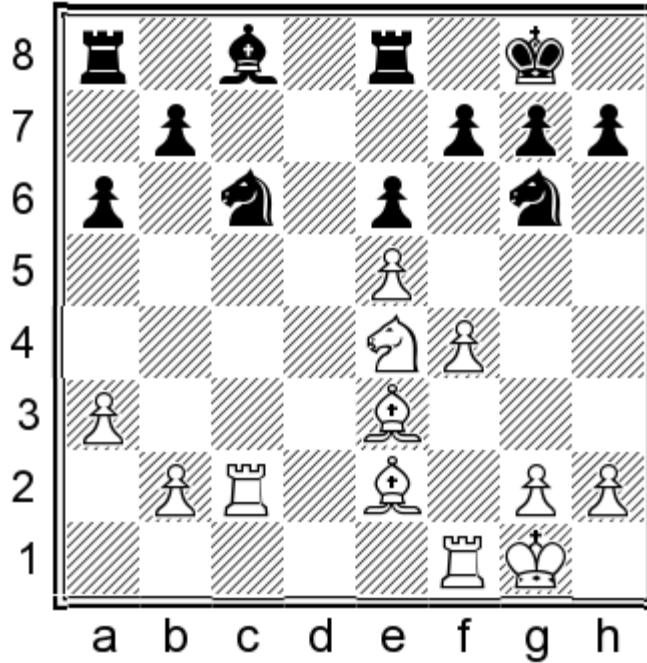
**20.Qe3!**

This is the point of the manoeuvre initiated by 18.Qb5. The b6-knight is no longer defended and must go to d7, which will further delay the black development.

**20...Qbd7 21.0-0 Qb8**

21...e5, to regain some space, is the lesser evil. One idea among others is then 22.Qf5 Qf6 (22...Qe6? 23.Qd6 Qd8 24.Qfc1 loses the bishop) 23.Qd6 Qd8 24.Qfc1 Qxd6 25.Qxc8 Qd8 26.Qxa8 Qxa8 27.f3. White has given up his initiative to exchange the last black bishop and is much better.

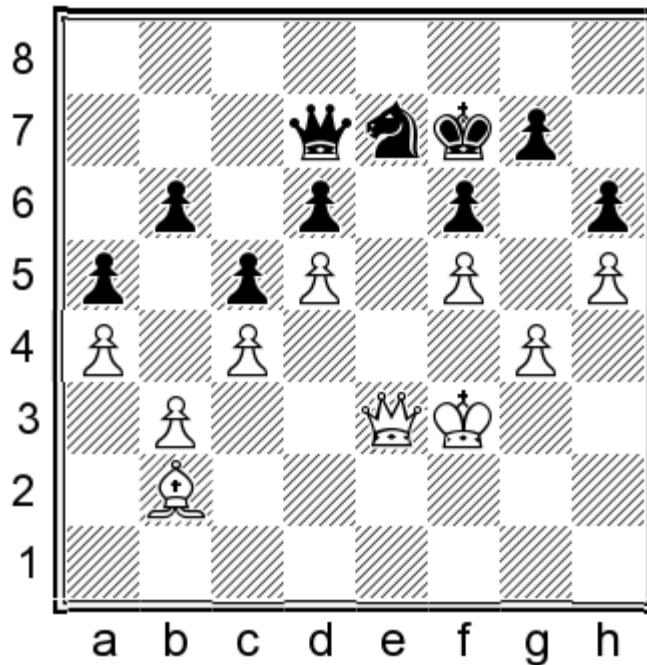
**22.e5 Qc6 23.f4 Qg6 24.Qe4**



With a space advantage, the bishop pair and more active pieces, White is close to winning.

24... $\mathbb{Q}ge7$  25. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  26. $\mathbb{Q}xe3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe3$  27. $\mathbb{B}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}xf1$  28. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  29. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{B}b8$  30. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  31. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$   $\mathbb{B}xb7$  32. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  33. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$   $\mathbb{B}xb2$  34. $\mathbb{B}xa6$   $g6$  35.a4  $\mathbb{B}b4$  36.g3  $\mathbb{B}b2$  37. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $h5$  38.a5  $\mathbb{B}a2$  39. $\mathbb{B}a7$   $\mathbb{B}a1+$  40. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{B}a2+$  41. $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  42.a6  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  43.g4  $hxg4+$  44. $\mathbb{Q}xg4$   $\mathbb{B}xh2$  45. $\mathbb{B}b7$   $\mathbb{B}a2$  46.a7  $\mathbb{Q}g7$  47. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{B}a3+$  48. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $g5$  49.f5  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  50. $\mathbb{B}xf7$   $exf5$  51.e6  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  52. $\mathbb{B}b7$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  53.e7  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  54.e8= $\mathbb{W}+$  1-0

73



White to move

What winning plan do you see for White?

Show/Hide Solution

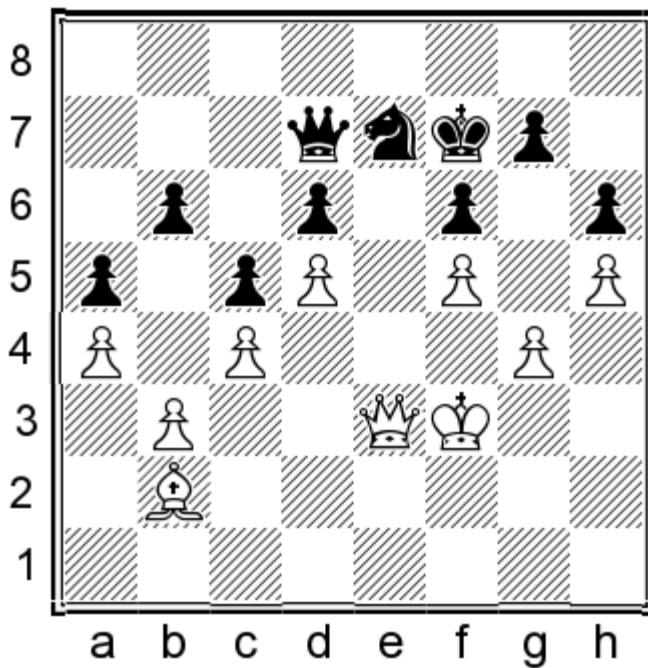
73

Dawid Janowski

Carl Schlechter

Vienna 1898

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘f6 3.♘c3 ♘c6 4.♗e2 ♘b4 5.0-0 ♘xc3 6.dxc3 ♘xe4 7.♘xe5 ♘xe5 8.♗d5 0-0 9.♗xe4 ♗e8 10.♗e1 d6 11.♗f4 ♗g4 12.f3 ♗h5 13.♗d2 ♗g6 14.♗ac1 ♗d7 15.b3 ♗e7 16.c4 ♗ae8 17.♗c3 ♘c6 18.♗d3 ♗xe1+ 19.♗xe1 ♗xe1+ 20.♗xe1 ♗e6 21.♗c3 h6 22.h4 ♗xd3 23.cxd3 f6 24.h5 ♘e7 25.♗f2 ♘f7 26.g4 b6 27.d4 c6 28.♗b4 c5 29.d5 ♗d7 30.♗c3 ♘c8 31.a4 a5 32.♗e4 ♗g8 33.♗g3 ♘e7 34.♗e3 ♘f7 35.♗b2 ♗g8 36.f4 ♘f7 37.f5 ♘e8 38.♗f3 ♘f7



White to move

White has a big space advantage and an excellent bishop which is on the same colour as all the opposing pawns. On the other hand, the black knight is miserable with only four squares at its disposal and no perspectives whatsoever. The position is very closed, however, and White will have to sacrifice material to create a breach. The main idea is the g4-g5 breakthrough, which requires some preparation.

39.♗e6+!

This move is necessary to be able to make any progress.

39...♗xe6

39...♔e8 40.♗e4 ♔d8 avoids the creation of a protected passed pawn on e6 but leaves the white queen in its dominant position. After 41.g5! hxg5 we see the thematic breakthrough occur, and the two distinct plans that it allows:

A) 42.h6! gxh6 43.♗xf6 ♔e8 44.♗g7, clearing the way for the f5-pawn and attacking the h6-pawn, which finishes the game, for example: 44...♗xe6+ 45.dxe6 h5 46.f6 ♘g6 47.♗f5 ♘f8 48.f7+ ♔e7 49.♗f6#;

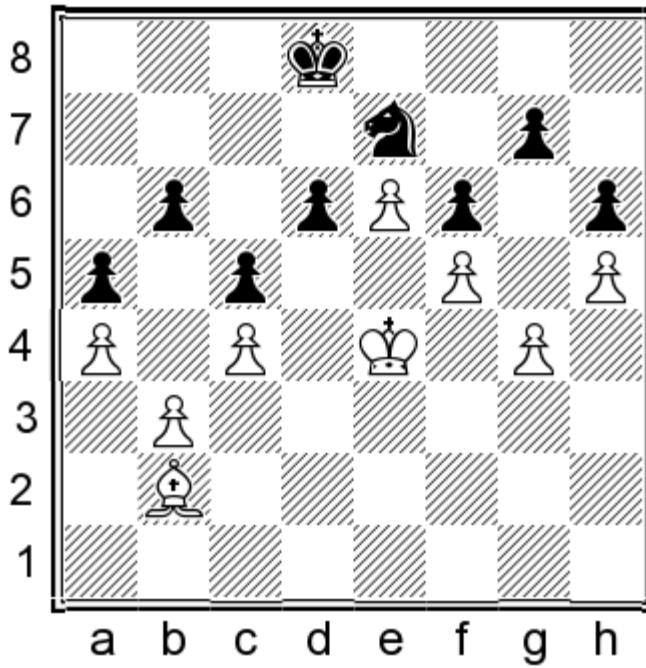
B) 42.♕xf6! gxf6 43.♗xd7+! (43.h6? ♜e8! is not decisive) 43...♗xd7 44.h6 and the pawn will queen.

#### 40.dxe6+!

The goal being to get at least one passed pawn on the kingside, the other recapture would be less appropriate. Moreover, the white king now has an invasion square on d5, which imposes an additional defensive task on the black pieces.

#### 40...♝e8 41.♝e4 ♜d8

41...♝f8 is an important move that prevents a white breakthrough on the kingside. It is then the weakness of the d6-pawn and d5-square, that the black king is moving away from, which becomes decisive: 42.♝c1 ♜e8 43.♝f4 ♜c8 44.♝d5 ♜e7 45.♝c6 and White wins.



#### 42.g5!

The black king heads for the queenside to support the d6-pawn and this breakthrough is again possible.

#### 42...♝g8!

The most stubborn move, which has the disadvantage of giving up control of the d5-square. After 42...hxg5 the two themes that we have already seen would become possible: 43.h6 (or 43.♕xf6 gxf6 44.h6) 43...gxh6 44.♕xf6 ♜e8 45.♕g7 followed by the advance of the f-pawn.

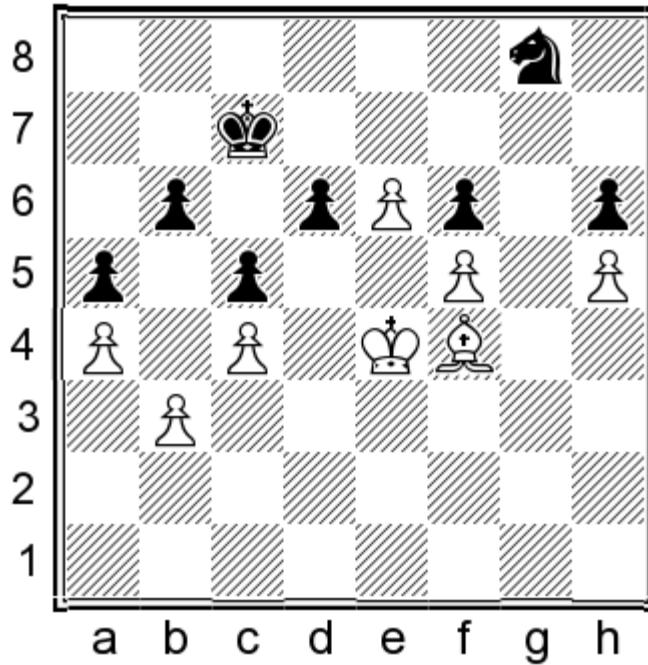
#### 43.gxf6 gxf6

It is tempting to play 43...♝xf6+ to exchange the minor pieces, but this loses trivially to 44.♕xf6+ (otherwise the king cannot enter) 44...gxh6 45.♝d5 ♜c7 46.e7 ♜d7 47.e8=♛+ ♜xe8 48.♝xd6.

#### 44.♝c1 ♜c7 45.♝d2 ♜c6 46.♝f4

The knight is tied to the defence of the h6-pawn and the d6-pawn is under pressure.

46... $\mathbb{Q}c7$



47.e7!

Another decisive breakthrough. 47. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}e7+$  is a waste of time.

47... $\mathbb{Q}d7$

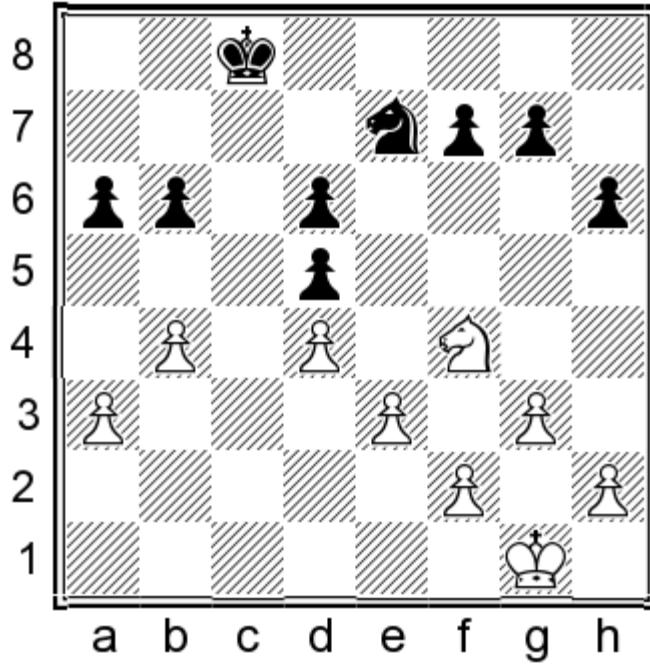
47... $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  48. $\mathbb{Q}xh6 \mathbb{Q}d7$  49. $\mathbb{Q}g7 \mathbb{Q}g8$  50.h6 also loses.

**48.e8=威+  $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  49. $\mathbb{Q}d5 \mathbb{Q}e7+$**

Or otherwise 49... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  50. $\mathbb{Q}xd6 \mathbb{Q}e7+$  51. $\mathbb{Q}xe7 \mathbb{Q}xe7$  52. $\mathbb{Q}c6$ .

**50. $\mathbb{Q}e6$**

Black resigned.



*White to move*

How can White gain a large advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

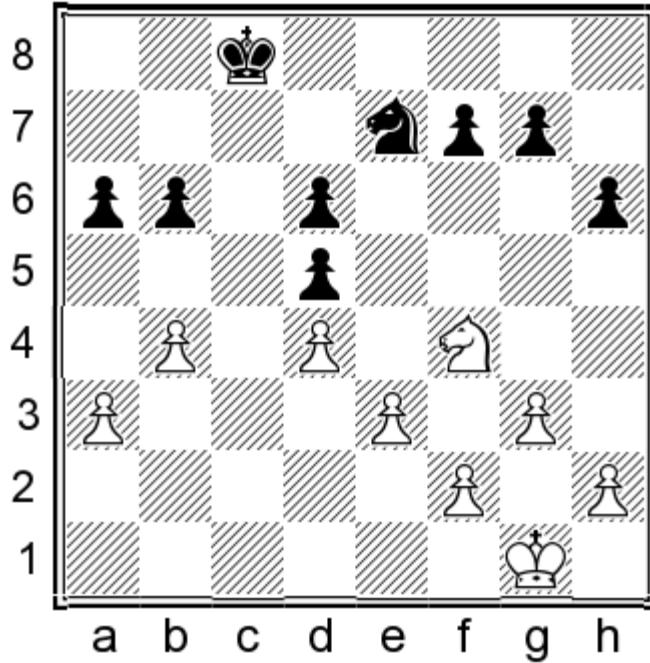
74

Jan Smejkal

Kick Langeweg

Wijk aan Zee 1975 (14)

1.c4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  e6 3.d4 d5 4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}b4+$  5. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  h6 6. $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{W}xf6$  7.cxd5 exd5 8. $\mathbb{W}a4+$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  9.e3 0-0 10. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  a6 11.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  12. $\mathbb{E}fc1$   $\mathbb{Q}d6$  13. $\mathbb{W}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  14. $\mathbb{Q}a4$  b6 15.a3  $\mathbb{Q}c8$  16.b4  $\mathbb{Q}b7$  17. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  18. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}g6$  19. $\mathbb{E}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  20. $\mathbb{E}ac1$   $\mathbb{E}fe8$  21.g3  $\mathbb{Q}g4$  22. $\mathbb{Q}de1$   $\mathbb{W}f5$  23. $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  24. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd1$  25. $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  cxd6 26. $\mathbb{E}xd1$   $\mathbb{E}ec8$  27. $\mathbb{E}dc1$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  28. $\mathbb{E}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  29. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  30. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  31. $\mathbb{E}xc8+$   $\mathbb{E}xc8$  32. $\mathbb{E}xc8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xc8$



*White to move*

White has a better pawn structure and the advantage, but it is not easy for him to break into his opponent's position. Black's main concern is the d5-pawn, which requires protection and thus reduces the mobility of his pieces.

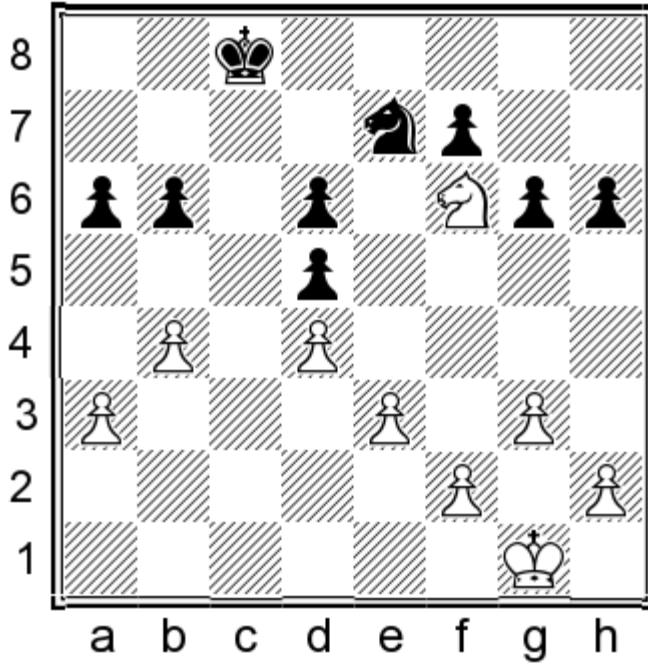
**33.♕h5!**

33.♕g2? g6 loses most of the advantage.

**33...g6!**

After 33...g5? 34.♕f6 ♕c7 35.♕g2 ♕c6 36.a4! Black cannot infiltrate his opponent's position with his king while his kingside pawns will drop.

**34.♕f6**



We now see the realization of White's idea: the black knight, still tied to the defence of the d5-pawn, and the white knight prevent the black king from gaining access to the kingside, where White will seek to create threats. The weakening of the pawn structure by ...g7-g6 will also play a role.

### **34...b5!**

Allowing the manoeuvre ... $\mathbb{Q}c8-c7-c6$  followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}e7-c8-b6-c4$  with a little counterplay.

White intends to continue with g3-g4 so that the h6-pawn remains exposed, as we will see in the rest of the game. Thus 34...h5 can also be considered, but this allows f2-f3 followed by h2-h4 and g3-g4 with the creation of a passed pawn on the h-file.

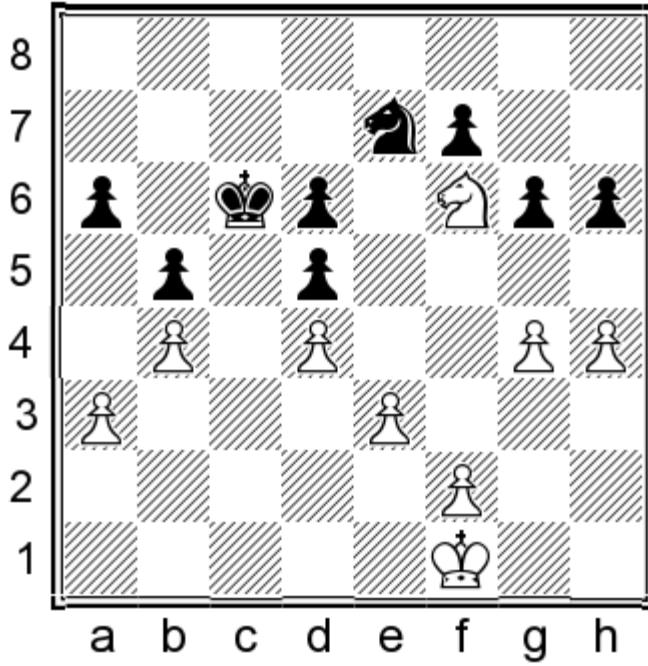
### **35. $\mathbb{Q}f1$**

35.g4 was more direct.

### **35... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 36.g4 $\mathbb{Q}c6$**

After 36...g5 (to deter h2-h4) 37. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  38. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  (38... $\mathbb{Q}g6$  39. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ ) 39.h4 White wins.

### **37.h4**



**37...♝b6?!**

The decision between defending passively or sacrificing material for counterplay is often difficult to take.

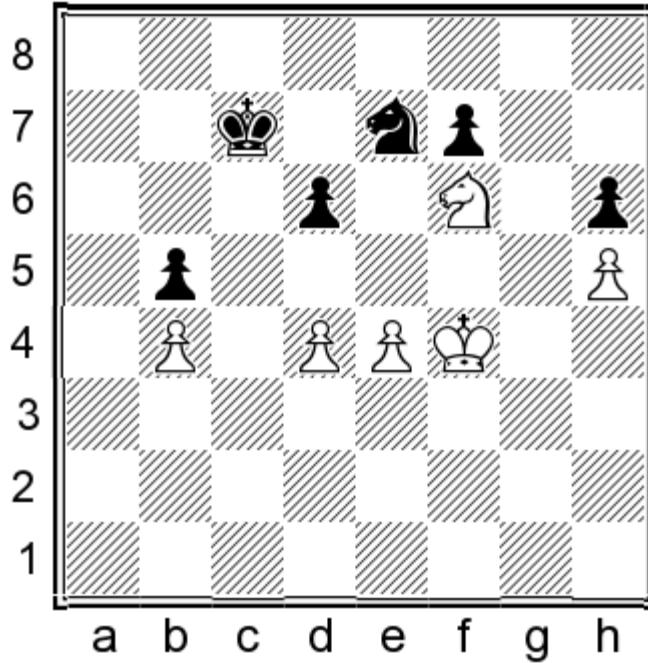
Having made the necessary preparatory moves Langeweg could have played 37...♝c8! 38.♝g8 ♛d7 39.♝xh6 ♜e6 with the idea of ...♝c8-b6-c4 and some saving chances.

**38.♛e1 a5 39.♝d1 axb4 40.axb4 ♜c6 41.♝e2 ♜c7 42.♝f3 ♜c6 43.h5! gxh5!**

After 43...♜c7 44.g5! or 43...g5 44.♝g3 followed by 45.f4 White gets a passed pawn on the h-file and wins easily.

**44.gxh5 ♜c7 45.♝f4 ♜c6?!**

More resistant was 45...♜d8, to stay close to the kingside, and now: 46.f3 (46.♝g4!? ♜g8 47.♝xh6! ♜xh6 48.♝g5 also wins, but in a complicated way) 46...♜c7 47.e4 (the exchange of the d5-pawn, Black's main source of concern up till now, is justified by the opening of lines for the king) 47...dxe4 (47...♜c6 48.e5 dxe5 49.♝xe5 does not hold either as Black is in zugzwang and loses the d5-pawn) 48.fxe4 and now...

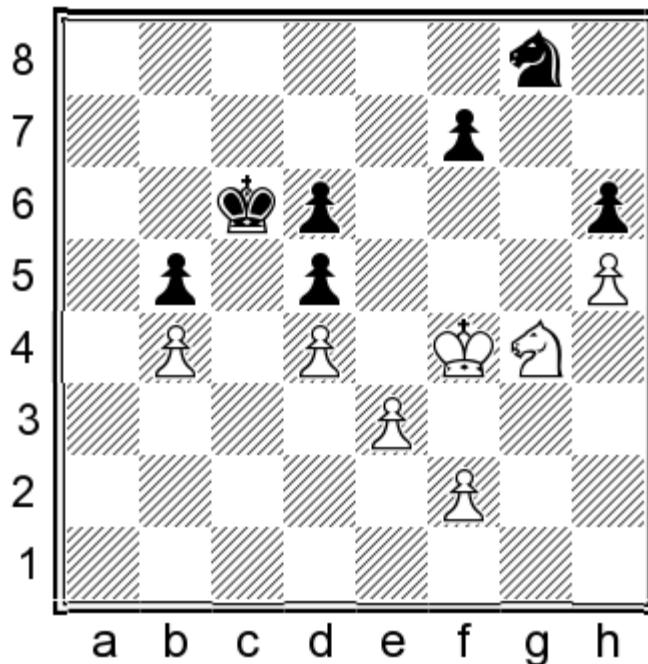


*analysis diagram*

... Black can look for counterplay or wait:

- A) 48... $\mathbb{Q}d8$  49. $d5$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  50. $e5$  (the black king cannot move and the knight defends the g8-square, the white king must therefore be allowed to advance) 50... $dxe5+$  51. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  52. $\mathbb{Q}d6$  – White will win the b5-pawn and the game;
- B) 48... $\mathbb{Q}c6$  49. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{Q}xb4$  50. $\mathbb{Q}xh6$  (both sides have a passed pawn, but White's space advantage means that his is the more advanced) 50... $\mathbb{Q}c6$  51. $\mathbb{Q}f5!$   $b4$  52. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  53. $h6$   $f6$  54. $h7$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  55. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  – the white knight puts pressure on the d6-pawn and the black king cannot easily approach the h7-pawn; the black b-pawn will drop and White will win.

**46.  $\mathbb{Q}g4!$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$**

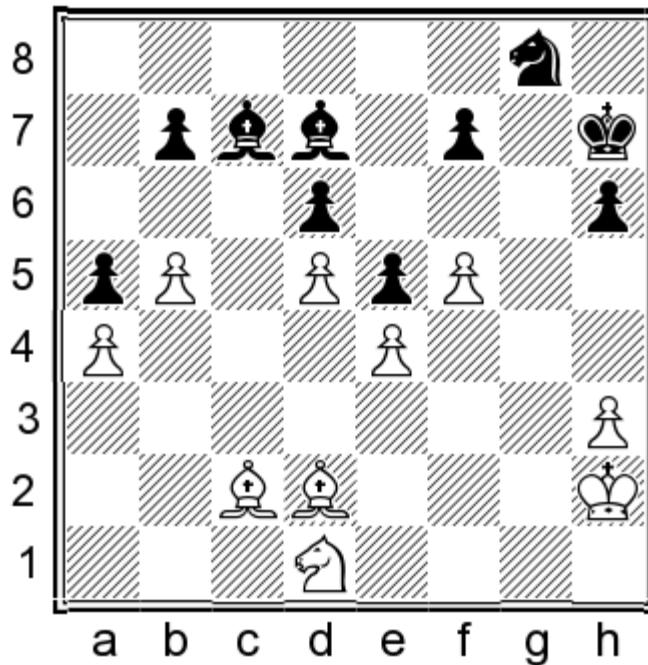


**47. ♜xh6!**

Black resigned.

There could follow, for example: 47... ♜xh6 48. ♜g5 ♜g8 49. h6 ♜xh6 50. ♜xh6 ♜d7 51. ♜g7 ♜e7 52. f3! ♜e6 53. f4 f6 (if 53... ♜e7 54. f5) 54. ♜g6 ♜e7 55. f5 and the f6-pawn is lost.

75



White to move

Can you find the win for White?

Show/Hide Solution

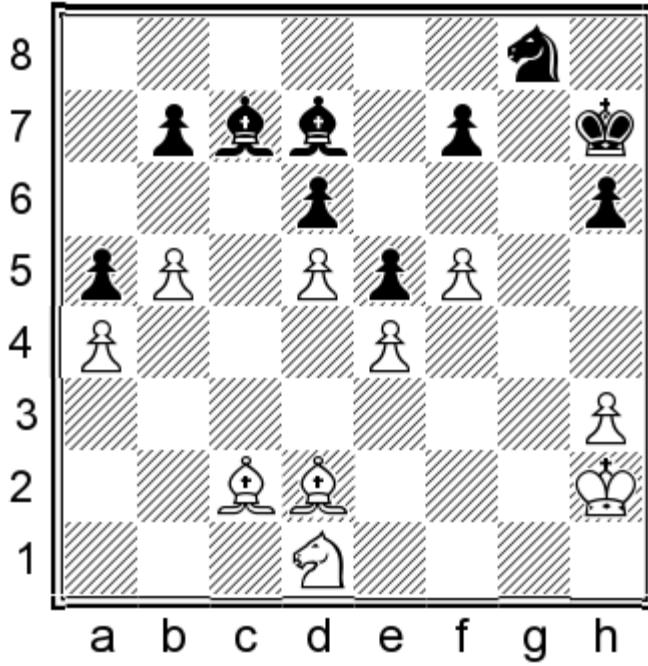
75

Semyon Alapin

Curt von Bardeleben

Vienna 1908 (5)

1.e4 e5 2. ♜f3 ♜c6 3. ♜b5 a6 4. ♜a4 ♜f6 5. ♜e2 ♜e7 6. c3 d6 7. h3 0-0 8. 0-0 ♜d7 9. ♜c2 ♜e8 10. d4 h6 11. d5 ♜b8 12. c4 ♜c8 13. ♜c3 ♜bd7 14. ♜e3 ♜f8 15. ♜h2 g5 16. ♜g1 ♜g6 17. g3 ♜h7 18. f4 gxf4 19. gxf4 ♜g8 20. f5 ♜h4 21. ♜f2 ♜f8 22. ♜d1 ♜d7 23. b4 ♜e7 24. a3 ♜g7 25. ♜f3 ♜xf3+ 26. ♜xf3 ♜e8 27. c5 a5 28. cxd6 cxd6 29. b5 ♜c7 30. ♜d2 ♜c5 31. a4 ♜d7 32. ♜g2 ♜h8 33. ♜dg1 ♜ac8 34. ♜xg8 ♜xg8 35. ♜xg8 ♜xg8 36. ♜e3 ♜c4 37. ♜d3 ♜c7 38. ♜d1 ♜f6 39. ♜c3 ♜d8 40. ♜xc7 ♜xc7



*White to move*

Black has a very cramped position and numerous weaknesses to defend: the a5-, d6- and h6-pawns. However, the game is very closed and he keeps the slight hope of blocking access to his position.

The standard plan for White in this type of situation is to tie the opposing pieces to the defence of their weaknesses, in order to limit their activity, before implementing an active plan.

**41.♘b2 ♘e7 42.♘c4 b6**

Now it is the b6- and d6-pawns that are exposed on the queenside.

**43.♗e3!**

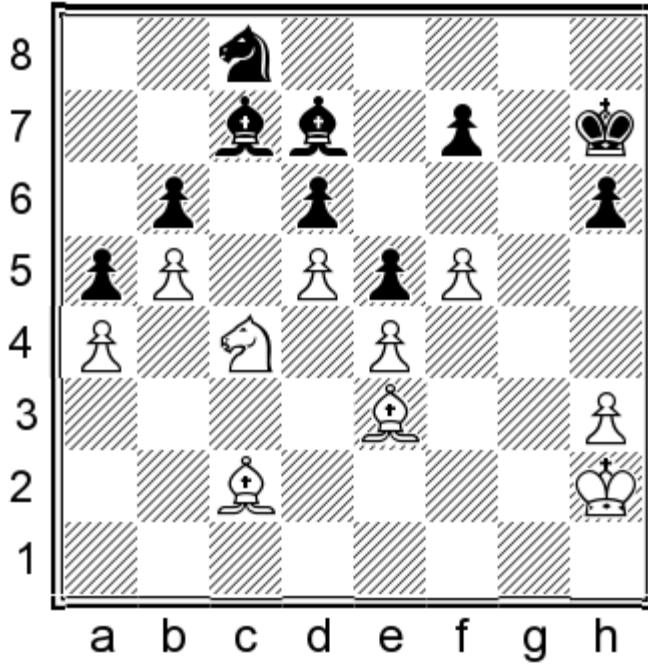
When you have advanced pawns it frequently occurs that a piece sacrifice can be an interesting way to try to promote them, and the line 43.♗xa5 bxa5 44.b6 deserves attention, even if it is insufficient, with the following possibilities:

A) 44...♗xb6 45.♗xb6 ♗e8 46.♘c4 ♗c8 47.♗xa5 ♗b6 48.♗c6! when White keeps his distant passed pawn on a4 and wins without any problems;

B) 44...♗b8 45.♗xa5 ♗g7 46.♘c4 ♗f8 47.a5 ♗c8 – the passed pawns are blocked for the moment but they trap the b8-bishop and White is likely to win;

C) 44...♗d8! (tying the knight to the defence of the b6-pawn) 45.b7 ♗c7 46.♗xa5 ♗g7 when White has still managed to grab the a5-pawn, but the c7-bishop has some freedom of movement now and Black is defending.

**43...♗c8**



Alapin has obtained the maximum possible from his attack on the queenside pawns. The c8-knight is immobilized and even if the other black pieces can still move they are not capable of any activity. The e3-bishop is especially strong and simultaneously puts pressure on the b6- and h6-pawns.

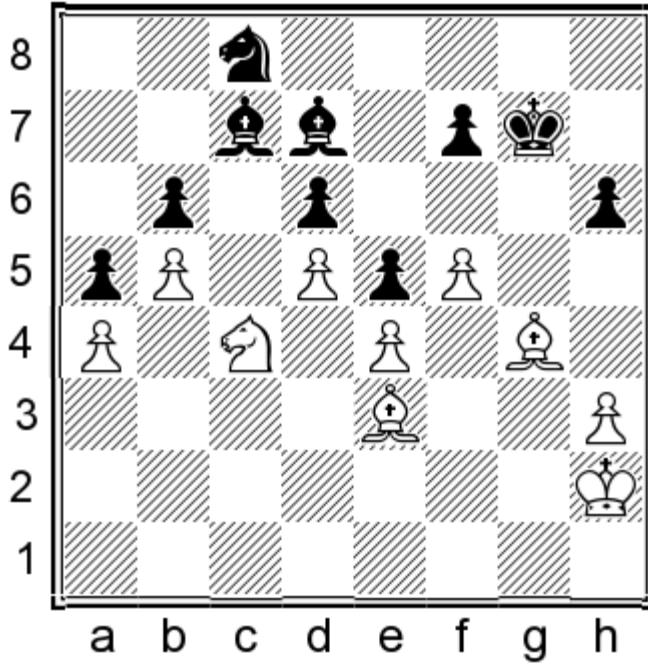
The general plan now is to attack the h6-pawn by advancing the king, and this is effective right away, for example:  
**44.♗g3 ♗g7 45.♔h4 ♗h7 46.♔h5** and now:

A) 46...f6 indirectly defends the h6-pawn as 47.♗xh6? loses the bishop after 47...♗e8+, but the advance of the f-pawn is weakening and White will win as in the game;

B) 46...♗e8 also defends the h6-pawn indirectly, but after 47.♗d1 ♗d8 48.f6! (or else 48.♗g4 with the idea of 49.f6 and Black will have to move his f-pawn anyway) 48...♗d7 49.♗g4 ♗xg4 50.hxg4 ♗xf6 51.♗xb6 White wins easily.

Alapin has noticed a tactical motif to make his light-squared bishop useful before bringing his king into play.

**44.♗d1 ♗g7 45.♗g4!**



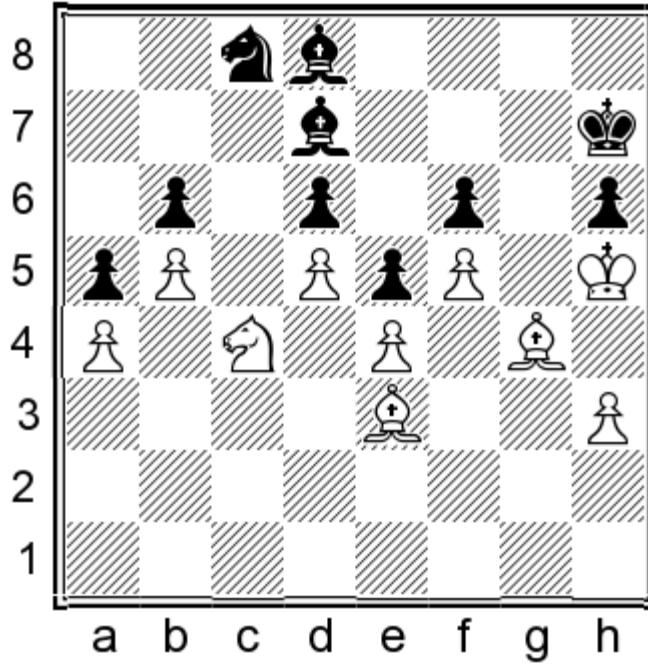
The threat is 46.f6+ to win the d7-bishop or the c8-knight (after 45... $\mathbb{Q}e8$ ). Blocking the f5-pawn with the king loses the h6-pawn and 45...f6 weakens the g6-square, which gives White a clear win: 46. $\mathbb{Q}h5$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  47. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  48. $\mathbb{Q}h4$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  49. $\mathbb{Q}g6$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  50. $\mathbb{Q}h5$  Now the g6-bishop protects the king from checks and so the h6-pawn will be captured next move.

#### 45... $\mathbb{Q}h7$

The only move to avoid immediate problems, but the situation is getting worse and the d7-bishop, like the king, can no longer move because of the possibility of f5-f6. Only the c7-bishop is still mobile and it can only go to two squares: c7 and d8. The white king would now like to go to h4, and this could be done simply by 46. $\mathbb{Q}g2!$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  47. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  48. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ . The actual manoeuvre in the game is a little longer, but does not spoil anything.

#### 46. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 47. $\mathbb{Q}f3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 48. $\mathbb{Q}f2$ $\mathbb{Q}d8$ 49. $\mathbb{Q}g3$ $\mathbb{Q}c7$ 50. $\mathbb{Q}h4$ $\mathbb{Q}d8+$ 51. $\mathbb{Q}h5$ f6

Von Bardeleben has postponed this weakening move as long as possible, but it is now the only way to defend the h6-pawn (52. $\mathbb{Q}xh6?$   $\mathbb{Q}e8+$ ).



**52.♔h4**

The plan is to place the light-squared bishop on g6 and the king on h5, as we have already seen.

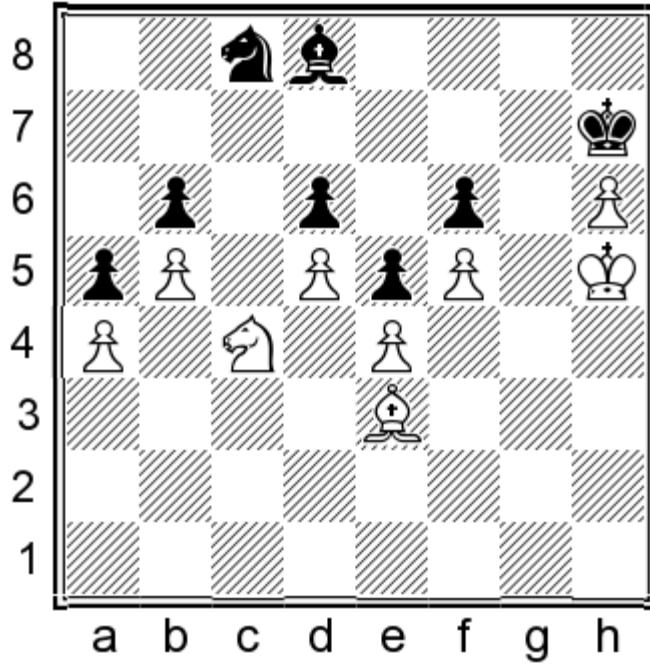
**52...♝e8**

There is no longer any way to save the h6-pawn so Black tries to ease his cramped position with a piece exchange.

**53.♞h5 ♞xh5 54.♝xh5 ♜g7 55.♞xh6+ ♔f7 56.♜e3!**

Back to e3 to target the b6-pawn.

**56...♝g7 57.h4 ♜c7 58.♝g4 ♔h7 59.h5 ♜d8 60.h6 ♜c7 61.♝h5 ♜d8**



White has an extra pawn and the black king is immobilized, but it is still necessary to find a way through. Now the plan is to attack the f6-pawn with the bishop on h4 and the knight on g4.

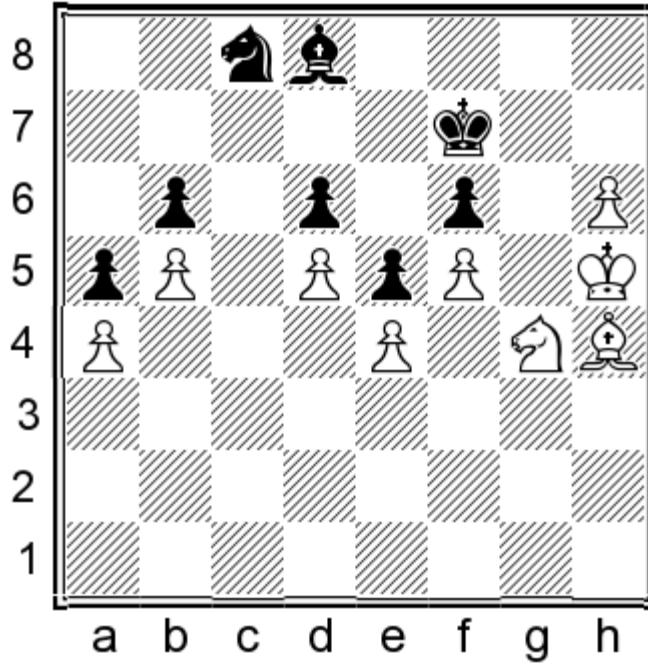
**62.♕f2 ♕c7 63.♕h4 ♕d8 64.♗e3 ♕g8**

The black knight is no longer obliged to protect the b6-pawn, but 64...♝e7 allows 65.♕xf6.

**65.♘g4!**

65.♘g6 is also enough, but it's less clear: 65...♝e7+ 66.♕xf6 ♝xd5+ 67.♔e6 (67.♔g6? ♘f4#) 67...♝f4+ 68.♕xd6 ♘xh4 69.♘c4 and White wins.

**65...♝f7**



**66.h7!**

Sacrificing the passed pawn to capture the f6-pawn and break into the opponent's position.

**66...♝g7 67.♞xf6+! ♚xf6 68.♞xf6 ♜h8**

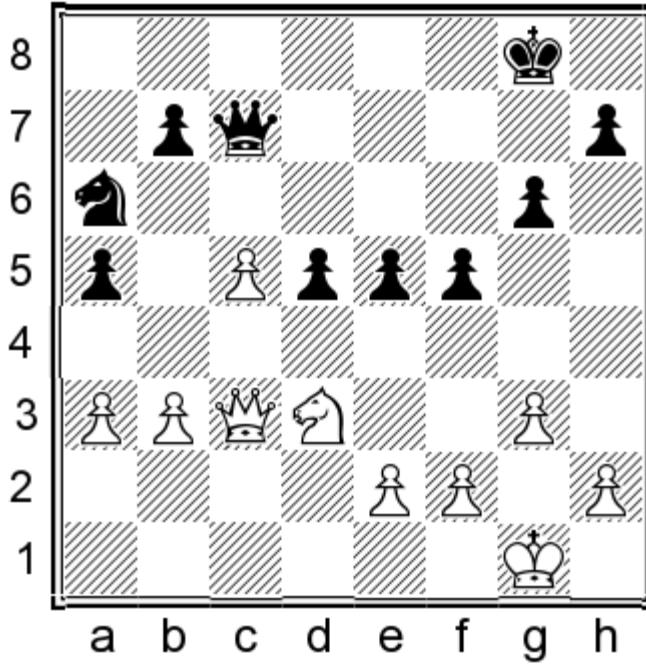
68...♝e7 69.♝e8+ ♜xh7 70.♞xd6 is hopeless.

**69.♜h6 ♜e7 70.♝e8 ♜g6!?**

A final joke: the capture of the knight would lead to stalemate.

**71.♞xd6**

72.♞f7# cannot be avoided and so Black resigned.



*White to move*

What do you think of 27.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$

and 27.  $\mathbb{K}xe5$  ?

After 27. b4 axb4 28. axb4 what do you think of 28...d4 29.  $\mathbb{Q}c4+$  and also 28...e4 29.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  ?

Show/Hide Solution

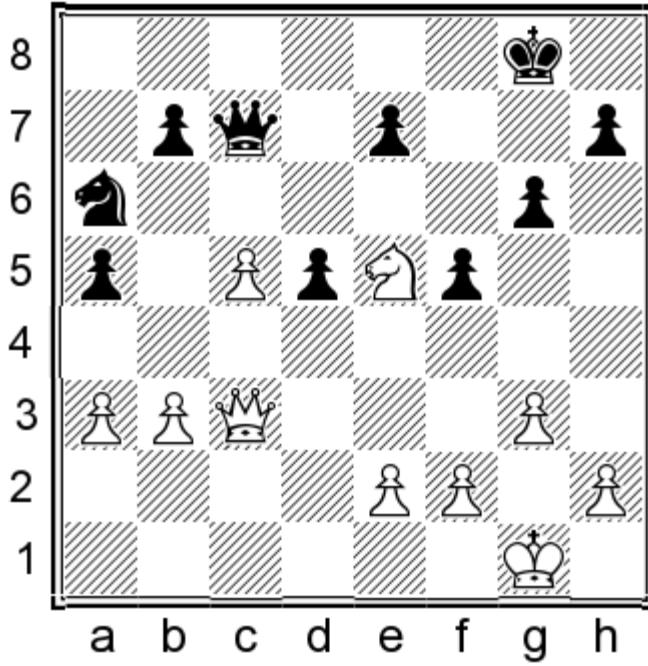
76

Lajos Portisch

Wolfgang Uhlmann

Stockholm izt 1962 (19)

1.c4 f5 2.d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3.g3 g6 4. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  5. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  0-0 6.b3 d6 7. $\mathbb{Q}b2$  a5 8.0-0 c6 9. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}a6$  10.a3  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  11. $\mathbb{Q}bd2$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  12.c5  $\mathbb{Q}h8$  13. $\mathbb{Q}ac1$   $\mathbb{Q}ae8$  14. $\mathbb{Q}c4$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  15. $\mathbb{Q}fd1$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  16. $\mathbb{Q}fd2$   $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  17. $\mathbb{Q}xd2$  dxc5 18.dxc5  $\mathbb{Q}xb2$  19. $\mathbb{Q}xb2+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  20. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  21. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}xd1+$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  23. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  24. $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  25. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  cxd5



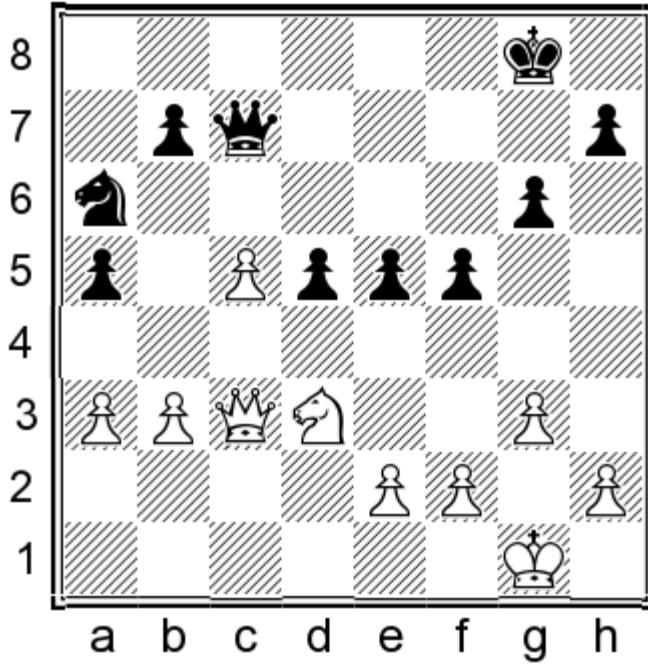
The black central majority is blocked and White has some attacking possibilities against the king, particularly involving the advance of the h-pawn, as well as a mobile queenside majority. The combined exploitation of these two advantages gives him excellent winning chances, but first of all the c5-pawn must be defended, which leads to tactical complications.

After 26.b4? axb4 27.axb4 the only way to loosen the grip is to play 27... $\mathbb{Q}xb4!$  when after 28. $\mathbb{W}xb4 \mathbb{W}xe5$  29. $\mathbb{W}xb7$  there are two possibilities:

- A) 29... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  30. $\mathbb{W}b5$  White has a dangerous passed pawn, but it is difficult to support its advance without allowing a perpetual check. He is probably a bit better;
- B) 29... $\mathbb{W}xe2!$  30. $\mathbb{W}xd5+$  and now after 30... $\mathbb{Q}g7?$  31.c6 Black is in great danger because the passed pawn advances while the white queen protects the king from checks. Nevertheless, 30...e6! 31. $\mathbb{W}a8+ \mathbb{Q}f7$  is excellent, as when White plays c5-c6 the long diagonal will be cut and the prospects of a perpetual check will appear. Black has every chance of drawing.

## 26. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$ e5!

A normal practical reaction to try to alter the course of the game. White is probably winning after this move, but he will have to play accurately. Passive defence was no better, for example: 26... $\mathbb{W}d8$  (defending the a5- and d5-pawns) 27.b4 axb4 28.axb4  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  29. $\mathbb{W}e5 \mathbb{W}d7$  (the white pawn majority is blocked) 30.h4!, with the ideas of  $\mathbb{Q}d3-f4$  and h4-h5 followed by capturing on g6 or advancing to h6, depending on the circumstances, and it is very doubtful that Black can save himself.



*White to move*

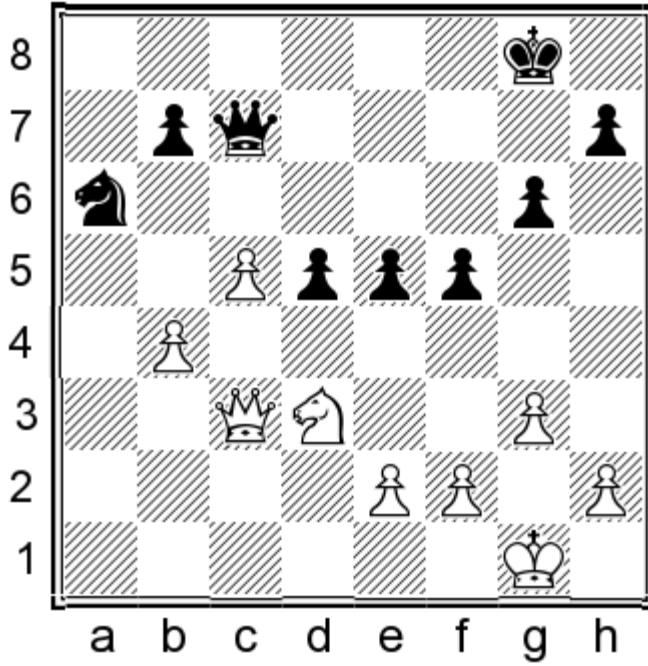
**27.b4!**

Correctly judging that the black centre is fragile Portisch does not destroy it right away.

A) 27.Qxe5? Qxe5 28.Qxe5 Qxc5 only gives equality. White has given up his majority as well as, with the exchange of queens, his chances to attack the black king, and we do not see anything happening to the newly isolated pawn on d5;

B) 27.Qxe5 Qxc5! (by offering the exchange of queens Black gains a little time to regroup; 27...Qxc5 28.Qd3 gives the white pieces lots of activity after 28...b6 29.Qf4 or 28...Qe6 29.Qf6) 28.Qd2! Qc7 29.Qg5 Qd6 30.Qf3 – White has gained nothing concrete, but keeps pressure on his opponent's king. He is a little better.

**27...axb4 28.axb4**



The main threat is 29.b5, so Black is forced to weaken his pawn centre.

**28...e4**

Or else 28...d4 29.♕c4+ ♔f7! (29...♔g7? loses after 30.b5 ♕b8 31.f4) and now:

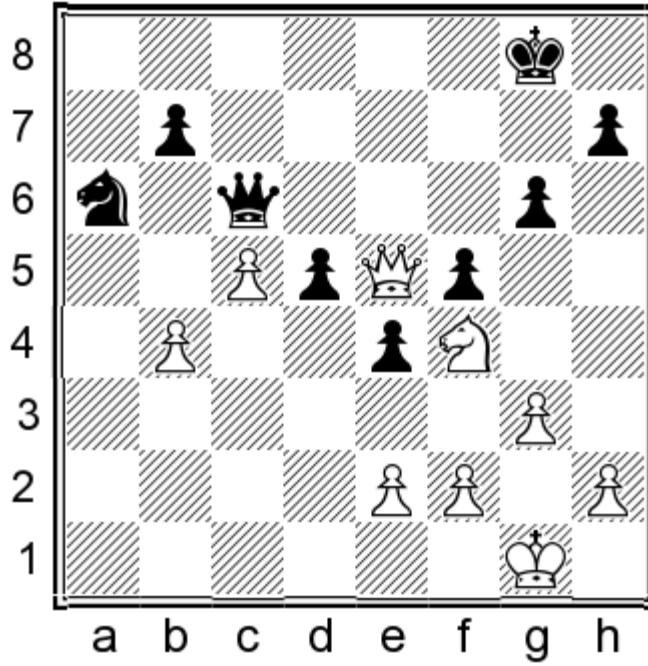
A) 30.♕xf7+? (30.♕xe5? ♕xc4 31.♕xc4 ♔f7 32.♕d6+ ♔e6 33.♕xb7 ♕xb4 followed by 34...♔d5 is safe for Black) 30...♔xf7 31.b5! (31.♕xe5+? ♔e6 32.♕c4 ♔d5 33.♕a5 ♕xb4 34.♕xb7 ♔a6 leads to a draw) 31...♗b8 32.♕xe5+ ♔e6 33.c6! (White will succeed in winning a pawn without the help of his king) 33...bxc6 34.bxc6 ♔d6 35.♕f7+ ♔xc6 36.♕g5 h6 37.♕f3 (threatening to both capture on d4 and play 38.♕h4) 37...♗d7 38.♕xd4+ ♔d5 when Black is worse, but not necessarily lost. In these variations we see the disadvantage of a queen exchange: not only is the black king no longer in any danger, but in addition it quickly gets to the centre;

B) 30.♕b5! (threatening to play 31.c6 and take the e5-pawn) 30...e4 31.♕e5 and, as in our initial position, it is the threats on both wings that will decide matters, for example: 31...♔d5 32.♕e8+ ♔g7 33.♕e7+ ♔g8 34.♕d7 ♕f7 35.♕d8+ ♔g7 36.♕e5 ♕c7 37.♕xd4

**29.♘f4 ♕c6**

Covering the d5- and e6-squares while keeping an eye on the c5-pawn to prevent 30.b5.

**30.♕e5**

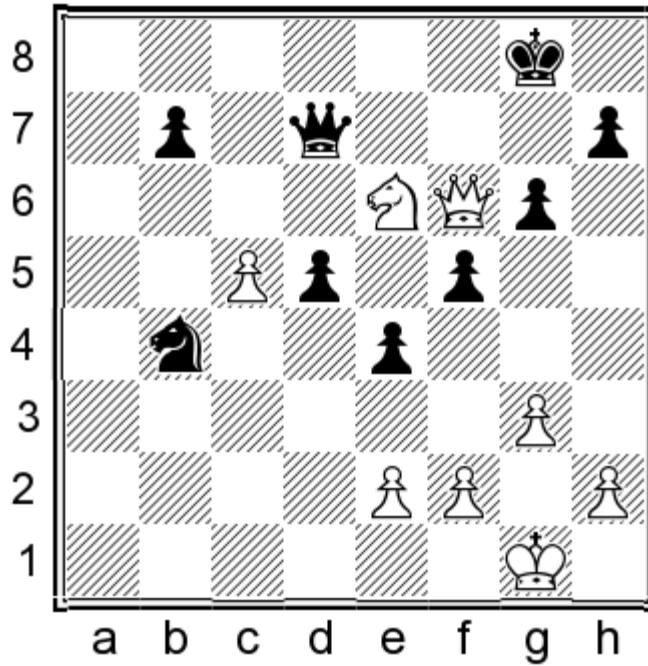


A typically lost queen and knight position: Black cannot handle the white majority and defend the b7- and d5-pawns while at the same time protecting his king. White does not even need the standard attacking plan involving the advance of the h-pawn.

**30...♝xb4**

After 30...♝c7 (protecting the e6-square) 31.♔e7 the black pieces are on their best squares and cannot move, so White wins easily after 31...d4 32.b5! ♝xb5 33.♝e6.

**31.♝e6 ♜d7 32.♝f6**

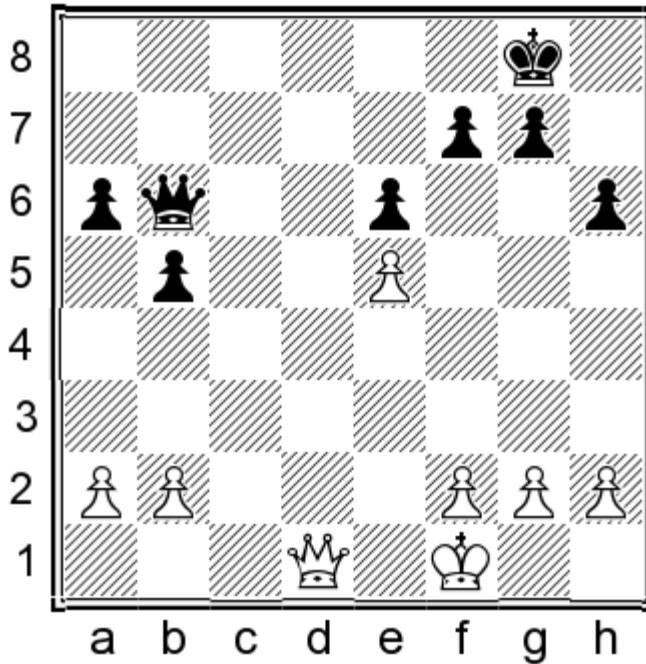


**32...h6**

Or else 32... $\mathbb{W}f7$  33. $\mathbb{W}d8+$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  34. $\mathbb{W}xf8\#$ .

33. $\mathbb{W}xg6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  34. $\mathbb{W}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  35. $\mathbb{W}f8+$   $\mathbb{Q}h7$  36. $\mathbb{W}xf5+$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  37. $\mathbb{W}g6+$  1-0

77



Black to move

What do you think of this position? What is Black's best plan? Give the variations that you think are useful.

Show/Hide Solution

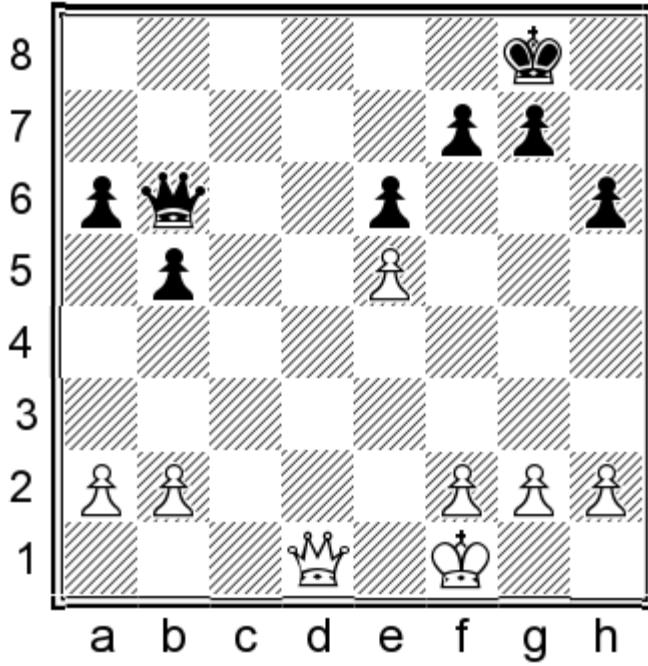
77

Frank Marshall

Geza Maroczy

Ostend 1905 (5)

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  4. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5.e3  $\mathbb{Q}bd7$  6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  dxc4 7. $\mathbb{Q}xc4$  a6 8. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  0-0 9.0-0 c5 10. $\mathbb{W}e2$  b5 11. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  12. $\mathbb{B}ad1$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  13. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{B}fd8$  14. $\mathbb{Q}f4$   $\mathbb{W}b6$  15. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{B}ac8$  16. $\mathbb{Q}g5$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  17. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  18. $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  cxd4 19.exd4  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  20. $\mathbb{W}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  21.dxe5  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{Q}d2$  23. $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}xf1$  24. $\mathbb{Q}xd8$   $\mathbb{B}xd8$  25. $\mathbb{Q}xf1$  h6 26. $\mathbb{W}c2$   $\mathbb{B}xd1+$  27. $\mathbb{W}xd1$



*Black to move*

The e5-pawn is exposed and requires protection from the queen or possibly the f-pawn, but then the f2-f4 advance would cause new weaknesses to appear.

Before calculating we can say that Black has the initiative and that his general plan is to first attack the e5-pawn and then, without wasting time on moving his king, to attempt to provoke some concessions (a passive queen or weaknesses in the pawn structure). A more precise evaluation of the position cannot be established without the help of calculation.

**27... $\mathbb{Q}c5!$**

While the queen is centralized, the pressure on the e5-pawn begins before White can get himself organized.

27... $\mathbb{Q}c7?$  28. $\mathbb{Q}d4$  allows the white queen to exert more influence.

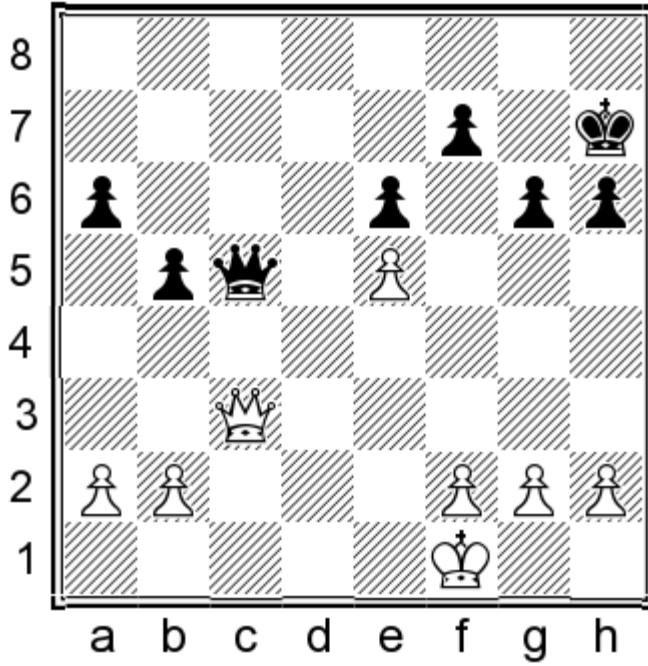
**28. $\mathbb{Q}d8+$**

A) 28. $\mathbb{Q}e2?$   $\mathbb{Q}c1+$  and

B) 28. $\mathbb{Q}e1?$   $\mathbb{Q}c4+$  both lose a pawn;

C) It's the same for 28.b3!? $\mathbb{Q}xe5$ , but this time it is the 'problem' pawn that is captured and resistance is still possible. Besides, this is probably the best defence, and we will see that Marshall lost by trying to cling on to material equality.

**28... $\mathbb{Q}h7$  29. $\mathbb{Q}d3+$  g6 30. $\mathbb{Q}c3$**



All the pawns are thus defended for the time being. They remain no less vulnerable, however, and the white king is still exposed to checks.

**30...Qd5!**

Attacking the a2-pawn and threatening 31...Qd1+ to decentralize the white queen.

**31.a3**

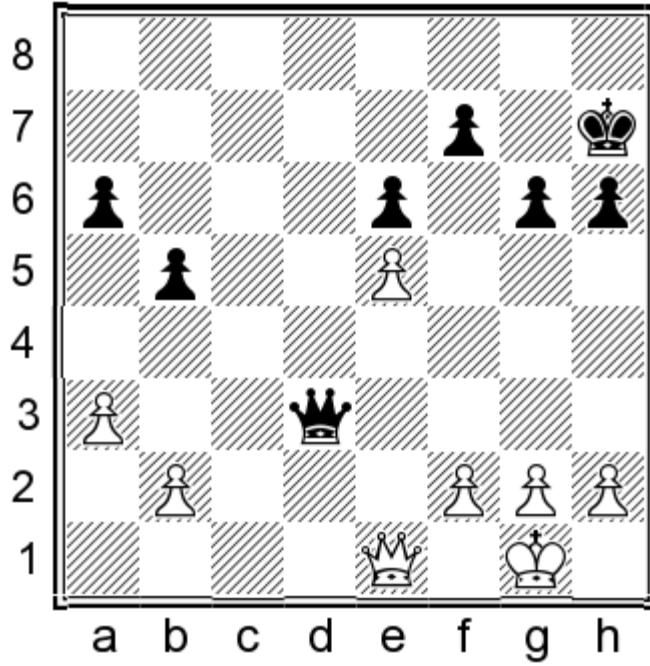
After 31.b3 Qd1+ 32.Qe1 Qd3+! (forcing the king back and thus obliging the white queen to monitor the back rank) 33.Qg1 (33.Qe2 loses the a2-pawn after 33...Qb1+) 33...Qc2! 34.Qa1 b4 followed by ...a6-a5, ...g6-g5, ...Qh7-g6-f5 and the advance of the g- and h-pawns, Black will win the e5-pawn with a strategically superior position.

**31...Qd1+ 32.Qe1 Qd3+!**

An important intermediate move: after 32...Qc2 33.Qc3! White can defend.

**33.Qg1**

Or 33.Qe2 Qb1+ and the b2-pawn drops.



**33... $\mathbb{W}c2!$  34. $\mathbb{W}a1$**

This is the only way to protect all the pawns. 34.b4  $\mathbb{W}b2$  35. $\mathbb{W}e3?$  allows a back-rank mate.

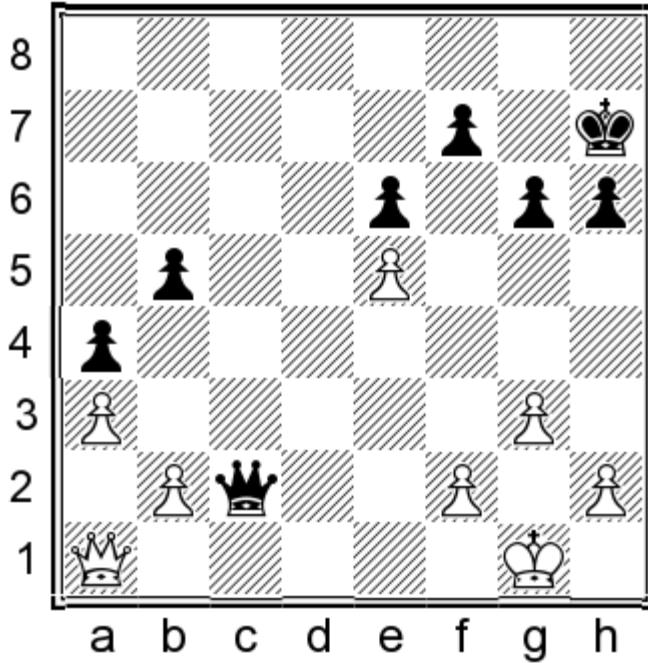
**34...a5!**

Preventing 35.b4 and further confining the white queen.

**35.g3**

After 35.b4 axb4 36.axb4  $\mathbb{W}e4!$  Black will take the b4-pawn and obtain a passed pawn while keeping his pressure on the e5-pawn.

**35...a4!**



**36.f4?**

Marshall fatally opens his kingside to hold the e5-pawn. It was better to abandon it to its fate and leave the pawn structure as it stands to still be able to hope for a favourable outcome.

**36...♝g8!?**

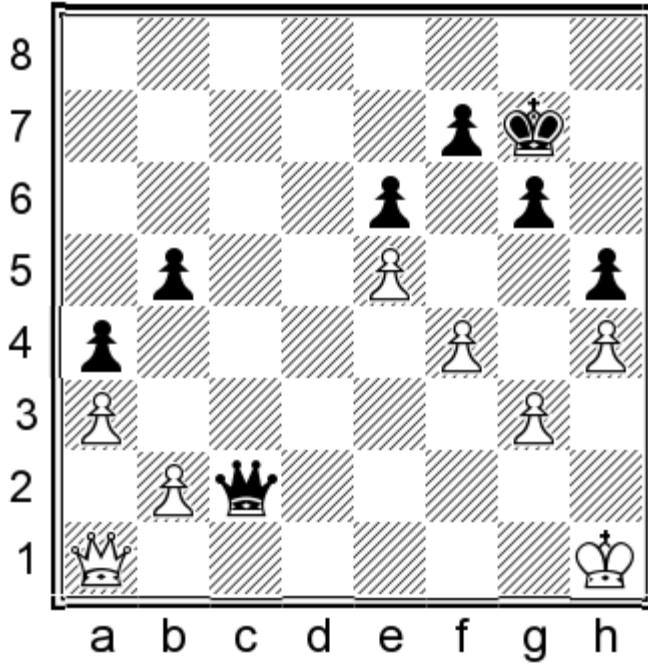
This waiting move highlights the fact that White is in zugzwang. 36...h5 was more direct.

**37.h3**

Creating new weaknesses, but 37.♝h1 h5 38.♝g1 ♝g7! (to advance the h-pawn when the white king is on h1) 39.♝h1 h4! 40.gxh4 (or 40.♝g1 h3 41.♝f1 ♜xb2) 40...♜e4+ 41.♝g1 ♜xf4 does not save White either.

**37...h5 38.h4 ♝g7 39.♝h1**

- A) On 39.♝f1, 39...♜h2! threatens 40...♜xg3 and 40...♜h1+ while keeping an eye on the b2-pawn;
- B) After 39.♝a2 ♜d1+ the white queen is ‘stalemated’ and Black wins easily, often by using zugzwang, for example:
  - B1) 40.♝f2 ♜h1! and now 41.b4 ♜h2+ or 41.♝e3 ♜g2;
  - B2) 40.♝g2 ♜e2+ 41.♝g1 ♜f3 42.♝h2 ♜f2+ 43.♝h3 ♜g1 (threatening 44...♜h1#) 44.b4 axb3 45.♝b2 ♜h1+



**39... $\mathbb{W}f2!$  40. $\mathbb{W}g1$   $\mathbb{W}xb2$  41. $\mathbb{W}c5$  b4! 42.f5**

After 42. $\mathbb{W}e7$  the simplest is 42... $\mathbb{W}c1+$  43. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{W}d2+$ , covering the d8-square, followed by the advance of the b-pawn.

**42...exf5 43.e6 bxa3 44.exf7  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  45. $\mathbb{W}c7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  46. $\mathbb{W}c6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  47. $\mathbb{W}xa4$**

There is no perpetual check.

**47...a2 48. $\mathbb{W}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  49. $\mathbb{W}d7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  50. $\mathbb{W}c6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  51. $\mathbb{W}c5+$   $\mathbb{W}d4$**

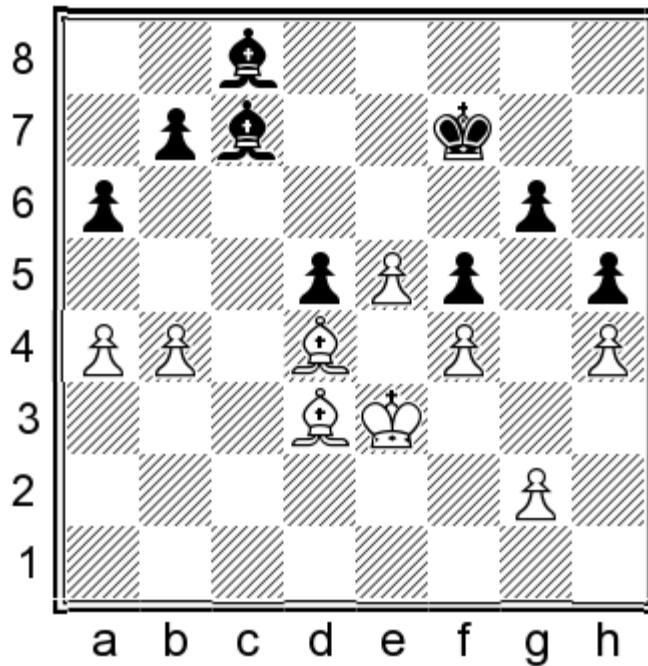
Sacrificing the a-pawn to enter a winning pawn endgame.

**52. $\mathbb{W}a3+$   $\mathbb{W}d3$**

White resigned. There could follow 53. $\mathbb{W}xa2$   $\mathbb{W}f1+$  54. $\mathbb{Q}h2$   $\mathbb{W}f2+$  55. $\mathbb{W}xf2+$   $\mathbb{Q}xf2$  56. $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{Q}g1$ .

Show in Quiz Mode

78



White to move

Can you find the win for White?

Show/Hide Solution

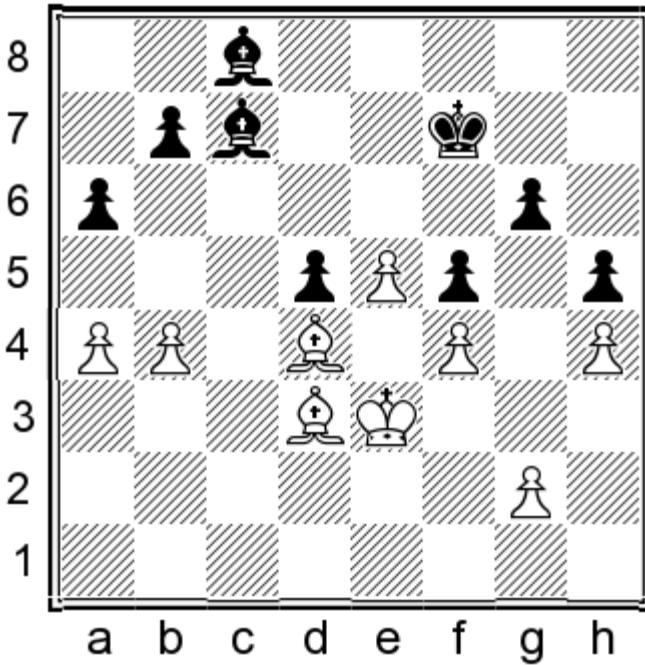
78

Carl Schlechter

Heinrich Wolf

Vienna 1905 (6)

1.d4 d5 2.Qf3 Qf6 3.c4 c6 4.e3 e6 5.Qc3 Qbd7 6.Qd3 Qd6 7.0-0 0-0 8.e4 dxec4 9.Qxc4 e5 10.Qe1 h6 11.h3 Qe8 12.dxe5 Qxe5 13.Qxe5 Qxe5 14.Wxd8 Qxd8 15.f4 Qc7 16.e5 Qd5 17.Qxd5 cxd5 18.Qd3 Qd7 19.Qe3 f5 20.Qd4 Qe6 21.Qf2 Qf7 22.Qac1 Qdc8 23.Qe3 Qa5 24.Qg1 Qxc1 25.Qxc1 a6 26.a3 Qc8 27.Qxc8 Qxc8 28.b4 Qc7 29.a4 g6 30.h4 h5



*White to move*

Black lacks space and has exposed pawns on d5 and, to a lesser extent, on g6.

A normal plan for White is to open the game to try to infiltrate the queenside, but this is not easy to achieve.

A) Let us first analyse the useful waiting move 31.g3. A good defence is 31...a5! (31...b6 is also good) and now:

A1) 32.b5 b6 33.♗b2 ♗e6 34.♗a3 ♗b7 35.♗d4 ♗d8 36.♗e2 ♗e7 (or 36...♗c7 37.♗f3 ♗d8) 37.♗xe7 ♗xe7 38.♗f3 ♗e6 39.♗g2 ♗a8 and White can make no more progress;

A2) 32.bxa5 ♗xa5 33.♗b5 ♗e1 Opening the game has left the white kingside pawns vulnerable and the draw is clear, for example: 34.♗f3 ♗e7 35.♗c5+ ♗d8 and Black prepares ...♗c8-d7 while retaining control of the e8-square.

B) A direct attempt to open the game by 31.b5 also gives nothing after 31...axb5 and whichever way White recaptures we get variations similar to the ones we have just seen.

### 31.a5!

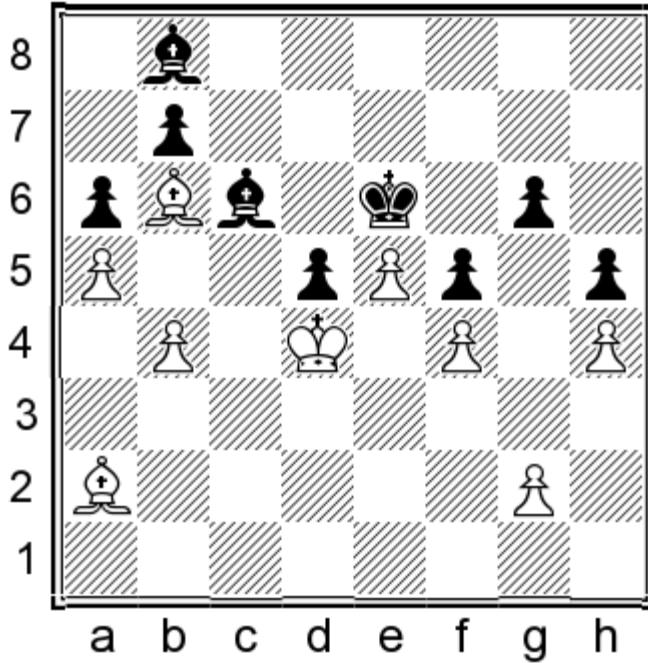
Schlechter turns to another plan which is typical of endgames with a space advantage: further restrict the mobility of the opponent's pieces until zugzwang comes into play. To start with, the b7-pawn is fixed and then White will attack the d5-pawn twice, which will paralyse the light-squared bishop and the king. It is important to already see the total zugzwang, that is to say the immobilization or exchange of the second black bishop, without which the position would remain too closed to hope for a win.

### 31...♗d8!

Wolf wishes to preserve this bishop under good conditions and prepares to answer ♗d4-b6 with ...♗d8-e7. The attack on the h4-pawn gains a tempo, but Black will not be able to take advantage of this.

31...♗d7 32.♗b6! makes it possible to clearly see the realization of White's plan:

A) 32...♗b8 (the bishop can no longer move) 33.♗c2 ♗c6 34.♗b3 ♗e7 35.♗d4 ♗e6 36.♗a2



*analysis diagram*

Black is in zugzwang and loses the d5-pawn;

B) 32... $\mathbb{Q}xb6$  33. $a xb6$  with the threat of 34. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$  and now there are three possibilities:

B1) 33... $\mathbb{Q}c6$  34. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  35. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  36. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  37. $\mathbb{Q}a2$  and again it's zugzwang;

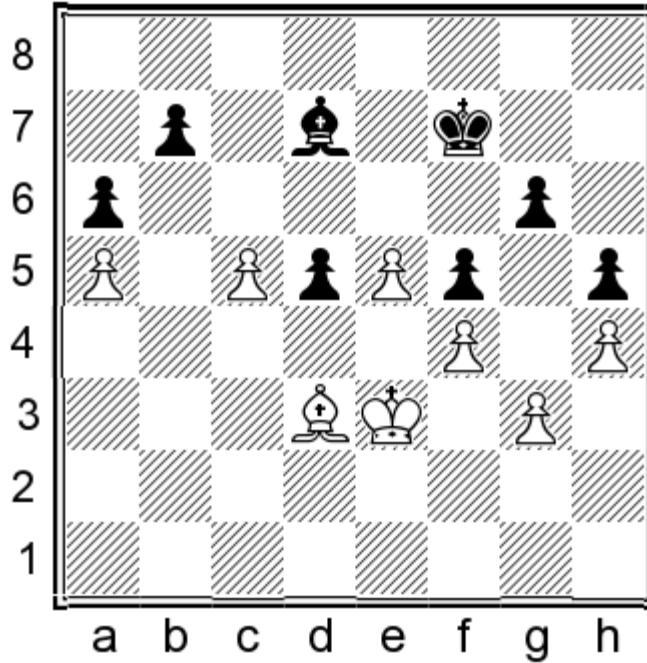
B2) 33... $\mathbb{Q}b5$  34. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$   $axb5$  35. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  36. $\mathbb{Q}c5$  and White wins;

B3) 33... $\mathbb{Q}a4!$ ? also allows White an easy win, but sets an interesting trap: 34. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$  (this is not mandatory) 34... $\mathbb{Q}c6$  35. $b5?$  (35. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  is the simplest) 35... $d4+!$  36. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}xg2$  – now the a6-bishop is trapped and can neither capture the b7-pawn nor be captured, so the position is drawn.

**32.g3  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  33. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  34. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}xc5+$**

After 34... $\mathbb{Q}d8$  35. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  36. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}b5$  37. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  38. $\mathbb{Q}a2!$  the d8-bishop has to move and will be shut in again: 38... $\mathbb{Q}c7$  39. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  40. $\mathbb{Q}b3$  with another zugzwang.

**35.bxc5**

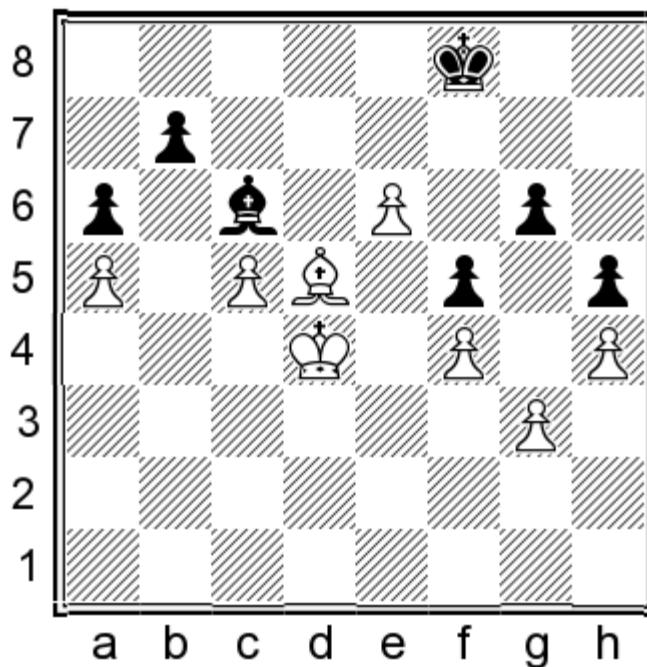


The dark-squared bishops have been exchanged, but the c5-square that allowed the white king to infiltrate the opposing camp is now occupied and a little vigilance is required to avoid a total closure of the position.

### 35... $\mathbb{Q}a4$

The bishop goes to the b3-square to defend the d5-pawn while maintaining freedom of movement, but the queenside will find itself deserted.

- A) 35... $\mathbb{Q}b5$  allows a decisive breakthrough: 36. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$   $axb5$  37.c6!  $bcx6$  38.a6;
- B) Passive defence is not without interest: 35... $\mathbb{Q}c6$  36. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  37. $\mathbb{Q}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}b5$  38. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  39. $\mathbb{Q}a2$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  40. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  41.e6  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  and the d5-pawn has fallen, but a way to progress still needs to be found...



## *analysis diagram*

B1) After 42. $\mathbb{Q}xc6?$   $bx $c6$$  the inconvenience caused by the pawn being on c5, rather than b4, appears and there is no more win: 43.e7+!? (43. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  leads nowhere) 43... $\mathbb{Q}e8!$  (and not 43... $\mathbb{Q}xe7?$  44. $\mathbb{Q}e5$  and the black king must give way) 44. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  and Black holds on;

B2) 42. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  43. $\mathbb{Q}c4$  is a good way to win. If now 43... $\mathbb{Q}b5$  then there is again 44. $\mathbb{Q}xb5$   $axb5$  45.c6!  $bx $c6$$  46.a6, and on another bishop move, for example 43... $\mathbb{Q}a4$ , the breakthrough 44.c6! is decisive: 44... $bx $c6$$  45. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$  gives White two passed pawns, while 44... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  45. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$  leads to zugzwang.

**36. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  37. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}b3$  38.c6!**

The most direct win, but not the only one. One other possibility is 38. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c4$  39. $\mathbb{Q}d1$   $\mathbb{Q}a2$  40. $\mathbb{Q}a4$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  41.c6  $bx $c6$$  42. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  43. $\mathbb{Q}b7$  (or 43. $\mathbb{Q}e8$  to first take the g6-pawn) 43... $\mathbb{Q}c4$  44. $\mathbb{Q}c5$  and a black pawn drops due to the zugzwang.

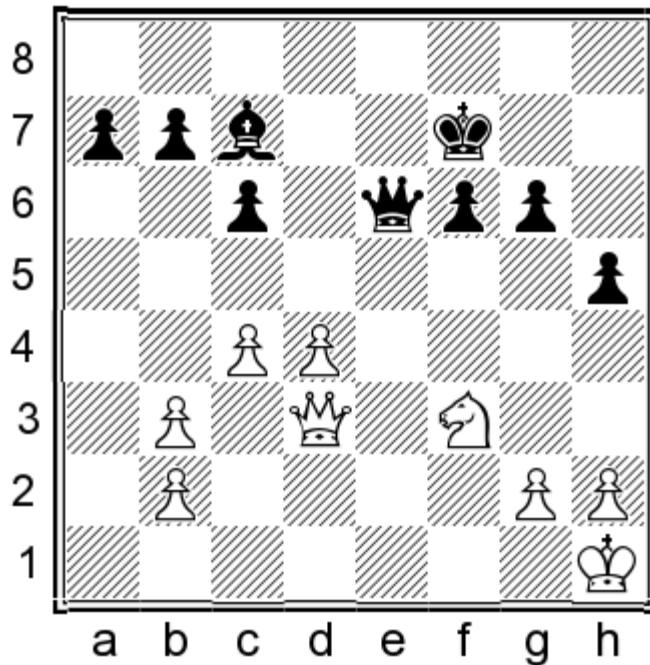
**38... $bx $c6$$**  39. $\mathbb{Q}xa6$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  40. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  41. $\mathbb{Q}d3$

The two passed white pawns are decisive.

**41... $\mathbb{Q}b7$  42.a6+  $\mathbb{Q}a7$  43.e6 d4 44. $\mathbb{Q}c4$**

Black resigned.

79

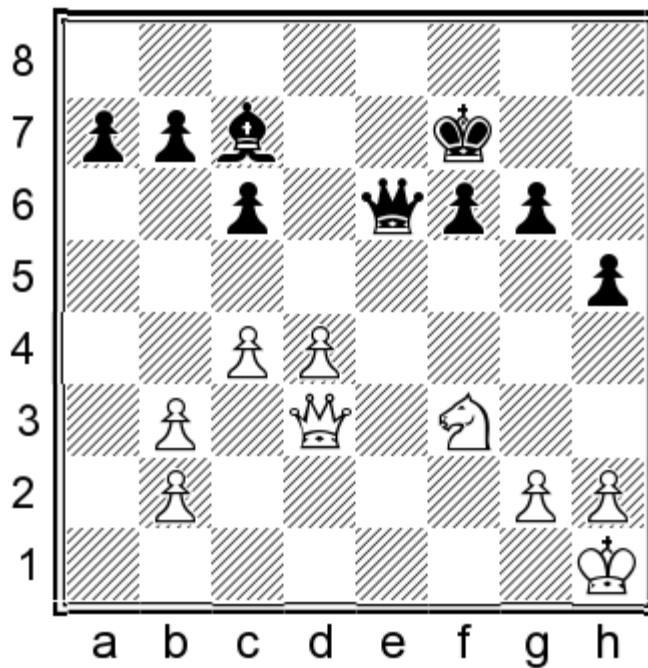


*Black to move*

What plan leads to a large black advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗c3 ♘f6 4.♗b5 ♘b4 5.0-0 0-0 6.d3 d6 7.♗g5 ♘e7 8.♗h4 c6 9.♗c4 ♖h8 10.f4 exf4 11.♗xf6 gxf6 12.♗xf4 ♘g6 13.♗xg6+ fxg6 14.♗b3 ♗e7 15.♗e2 ♘a5 16.c3 ♘d7 17.♗g3 ♘c7 18.♗f2 ♘g7 19.♗e2 ♗ae8 20.♗af1 ♘e6 21.♗c2 ♘b6 22.d4 ♘c7 23.♗h1 h5 24.♗e1 ♗f7 25.♗fe2 ♘xb3 26.axb3 ♗d7 27.♗f1 ♗e7 28.♗d3 ♗fe8 29.♗d2 d5 30.exd5 ♗xe2 31.♗xe2 ♗xe2 32.♗xd5 33.♗e7+ ♗f7 34.♗e4 ♗d7 35.♗f3 ♘f7 36.c4 ♗e6 37.♗d3



*Black to move*

Black has a better pawn structure and the presence of majorities is rather favourable for the bishop, which can play on both wings. The b2- and d4-pawns are on dark squares and can be attacked by the bishop since the d4-d5 thrust will usually be weakening and playing b3-b4 followed by b2-b3 would only displace the weakness.

The queen and knight pairing, known for its good cooperation, cannot make itself felt just yet, but Black must nevertheless look after the safety of his king.

**37...♝f4!**

Lasker gets ready to play 38...♛e3. If White refuses the exchange, the black queen will be very active, but if he accepts it will emphasize the flaws in his pawn structure. The offside situation of the white king plays an important role in this decision. Let's see some possible continuations:

- A) There is not enough time to bring the king closer, as after 38.♔g1 ♛e3+ 39.♗xe3 ♘xe3+ 40.♔f1 ♘c1 the b2-pawn is lost;
- B) 38.d5 cxd5 39.cxd5 ♛e3 40.♗xe3 ♘xe3 is even worse because the d5-pawn will soon be attacked by the black king;
- C) 38.♗d1 ♛e3 (38...♛e4!?) deserves attention and allows Black to advance his majority despite the presence of queens thanks to the excellent centralization of his pieces) 39.d5! is an interesting idea that avoids the creation of an isolated pawn on d5, because after 39...cxd5? 40.♗xd5+! ♔g7 41.♗xb7+ ♔h6 42.g3 Black has nothing more than a perpetual

check at his disposal. Instead of 39...cxd5, 39... $\mathbb{W}c1!$  40. $\mathbb{W}xc1$   $\mathbb{Q}xc1$  is the normal way to pursue the plan, but White can now obtain counterplay against the opposing pawns by 41.dxc6 bxc6 42. $\mathbb{Q}d4$ , even if this should not be enough to save him, for example: 42...c5 43. $\mathbb{Q}b5$  a6 44. $\mathbb{Q}d6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  45. $\mathbb{Q}e4$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  and the bishop has been diverted from its attack on the b2-pawn, but the black king is active and this should be decisive.

### 38.g3 $\mathbb{W}e3!$ 39. $\mathbb{W}c3!?$

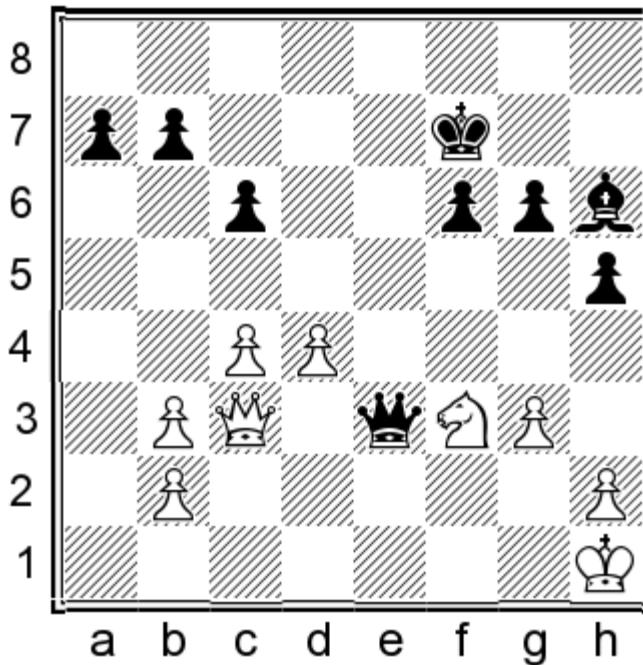
White cannot avoid the queen exchange, but ‘proposes’ to modify the pawn structure.

### 39... $\mathbb{Q}h6$

After 39... $\mathbb{W}xc3?$  40.bxc3  $\mathbb{Q}c1$  White has a choice:

- A) 41. $\mathbb{Q}g1?$   $\mathbb{Q}d2$  42. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  a5! (threatening 43...b5 followed by the advance of the a-pawn) 43.c5  $\mathbb{Q}e6$  44. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  (after 44.c4  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  45.d5  $\mathbb{Q}e3$  the c5-pawn drops) 44... $\mathbb{Q}f5$  and now after 45. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  g5 the white king will be pushed back, while after 45.d5 an instructive variation illustrates the difficulties of having a knight close to the edge: 45...cxd5! (45... $\mathbb{Q}e3$  is simpler, but does not win just yet) 46. $\mathbb{Q}d4+$   $\mathbb{Q}e4$  47. $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}d3$  48. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  49. $\mathbb{Q}xb7$   $\mathbb{Q}c2$  50.c6  $\mathbb{Q}e5$  51. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$   $\mathbb{Q}c7!$  52.b4 (or 52. $\mathbb{Q}b7$  d4) 52... $\mathbb{Q}c3$  53. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}xb4$  54. $\mathbb{Q}b7$   $\mathbb{Q}b5$  followed by 55... $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  and the knight is trapped and lost;
- B) 41.d5! cxd5 42.cxd5 b5 (with the idea of advancing the a-pawn) 43. $\mathbb{Q}d4$  a6 44.c4 (this is double-edged, but if this pawn stays on c3 its defence will tie the knight down and the d5-pawn is vulnerable) 44...bxc4 45.bxc4 Black has the advantage because he can get a passed pawn on both wings, which is a nightmare for the knight, but it’s not yet finished and the situation is far from clear. Note that 45...a5? without preparation allows the fork 46. $\mathbb{Q}b3$ .

Back to the position after 39... $\mathbb{Q}h6$ .



Black did not manage to exchange queens, but that’s not a problem because his pieces are now so active that he can attack the white king directly. After 40.d5, to try to open lines and look for a perpetual check, the black threat appears: 40... $\mathbb{W}e2$  41. $\mathbb{Q}g1$  (or else 41.dxc6  $\mathbb{Q}e3$  42. $\mathbb{Q}g1$   $\mathbb{W}f2$  43. $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{W}f3\#$ ) 41... $\mathbb{W}e4+$  42. $\mathbb{W}f3$  (after 42. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  43. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  g5 followed by 44...g4 the knight is lost) 42...cxd5 43.cxd5  $\mathbb{W}xf3+$  44. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$   $\mathbb{Q}c1$  with a decisive advantage.

### 40.c5!?

Tylor is probably preparing to answer 40... $\mathbb{W}e2$  by 41. $\mathbb{W}c4+$   $\mathbb{W}xc4$  42.bxc4. Black’s task is not so simple then and after

42... $\mathbb{Q}e3$  43.b4! (preparing d4-d5) 43... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  44. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  g5 (44... $\mathbb{Q}f5$  45.d5! promises nothing good) 45. $\mathbb{Q}f1$  g4 46. $\mathbb{Q}e2!$  the king arrives just in time to save the d4-pawn and the game. Instead of 42... $\mathbb{Q}e3$ , 42...a5! is very strong, threatening 43...a4 followed by 44... $\mathbb{Q}c1$ , with two possibilities:

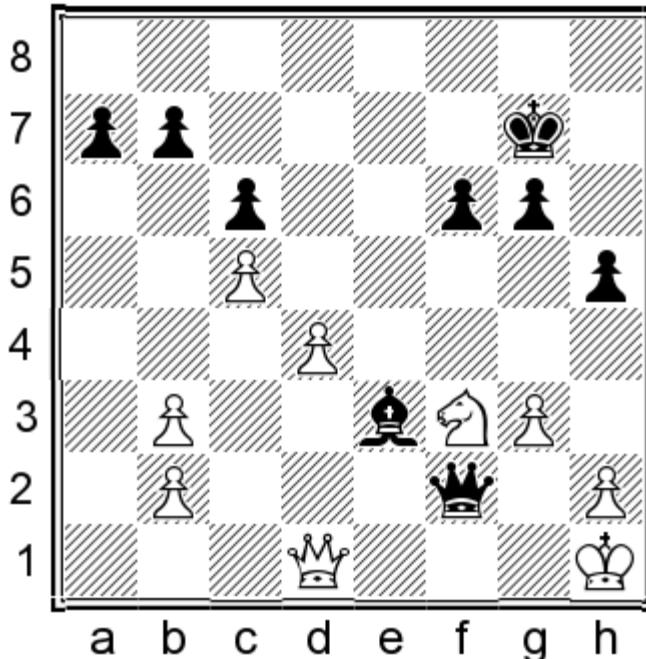
A) 43. $\mathbb{Q}g1$  (on e2 the knight controls the c1-square and defends the d4-pawn without being exposed to an attack from the g6-pawn) 43... $\mathbb{Q}e3$  44. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  g5! 45. $\mathbb{Q}g2$  g4! After having barred the opposing king Black will decisively bring his own one into play;

B) 43.b3  $\mathbb{Q}e3$  44. $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}e6$  45. $\mathbb{Q}f1$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  with a winning advantage once again.

#### 40... $\mathbb{Q}f2!$

This leads to a clear and speedy win. The fact that the queen goes to f2 rather than e2 offers White an additional defence, but it is insufficient.

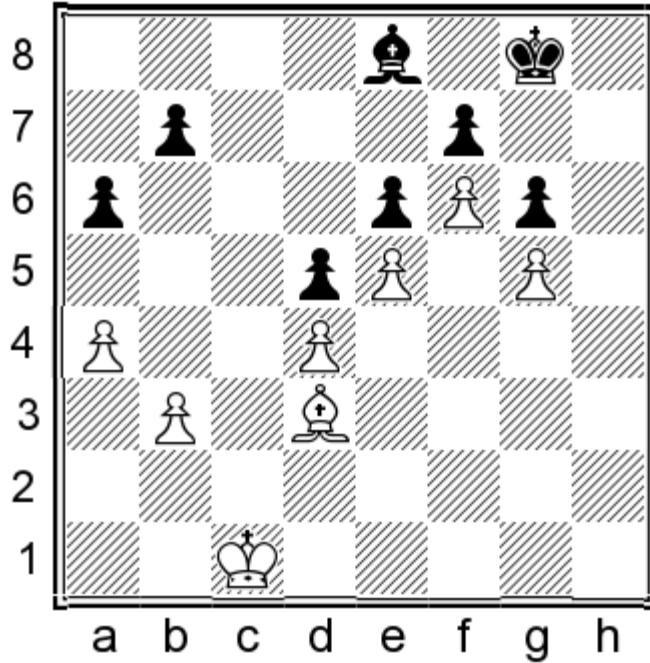
41. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  42. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}e3$  43. $\mathbb{Q}d1$



White has thus managed to avoid an immediate catastrophe, but none of his pieces can move without causing damage.

43...a5 44.b4 axb4 45.b3  $\mathbb{Q}h6$

White resigned.



*Black to move*

How does White win after 28... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  ?

And after 28...a5 ?

Show/Hide Solution

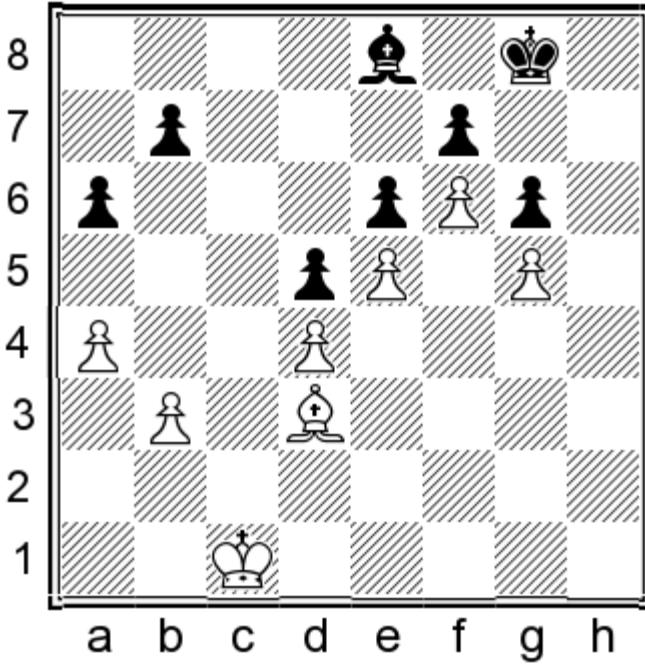
**80**

**Yakov Estrin**

**Alexey Ivashin**

Soviet Union cr 1947

1.e4 e6 2.d4 d5 3. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  4.e5 c5 5. $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  6. $\mathbb{Q}b5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd2+$  7. $\mathbb{W}xd2$   $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  8. $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  cxd4 9. $\mathbb{W}xd4$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  10. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  11. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{W}a5+$  12.c3  $\mathbb{W}a4$  13. $\mathbb{W}xa4$   $\mathbb{Q}xa4$  14. $\mathbb{Q}d2$  0-0 15. $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  16.f4  $\mathbb{Q}xd4$  17.cxd4  $\mathbb{E}fc8$  18.g4  $\mathbb{E}c7$  19.f5  $\mathbb{E}ac8$  20.b3  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  21.f6 g6 22.g5 a6 23.a4  $\mathbb{E}c3$  24. $\mathbb{E}ac1$   $\mathbb{E}xc1$  25. $\mathbb{E}xc1$   $\mathbb{E}xc1$  26. $\mathbb{Q}xc1$  h6 27.h4 hxg5 28.hxg5



*Black to move*

White has a big space advantage and a good bishop against a bad bishop. This indicates that zugzwang, together with the possibility of sacrificing the bishop on g6 to create an advanced passed pawn, may subsequently play a role. His chances of winning depend directly on the possibility of his king penetrating the queenside and, if allowed, he will play a4-a5.

Let's first see an attempt to quickly get the black king to the queenside: 28... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  29.a5! (ensuring a path for the white king via the b4-square) 29... $\mathbb{Q}b5$  30. $\mathbb{Q}c2!$  (after 30. $\mathbb{Q}xb5?$  axb5 31. $\mathbb{Q}b2$  b4! there is no way through and the position is drawn) 30... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  31. $\mathbb{Q}b2$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  32. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}e8!$  (32... $\mathbb{Q}c7?$  allows 33. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$ ) 33. $\mathbb{Q}b4$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  34. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  35.b4 (35. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  gives nothing) 35... $\mathbb{Q}c7$  36. $\mathbb{Q}b1!$  (to progress the bishop must now 'lose' a tempo while continuing to target the g6-pawn in order to tie down its black counterpart) 36... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  37. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  38. $\mathbb{Q}c2!$  when the king must give up control of the d6-square or allow 38... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  39. $\mathbb{Q}a4+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  40. $\mathbb{Q}xe8$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  41. $\mathbb{Q}b6$ .

**28...a5!**

Threatening 29...b6 to totally close the position.

**29.b4!**

After 29. $\mathbb{Q}b5?$  the simplest is 29... $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  30.axb5 b6 and the white king can no longer pass.

**29...axb4**

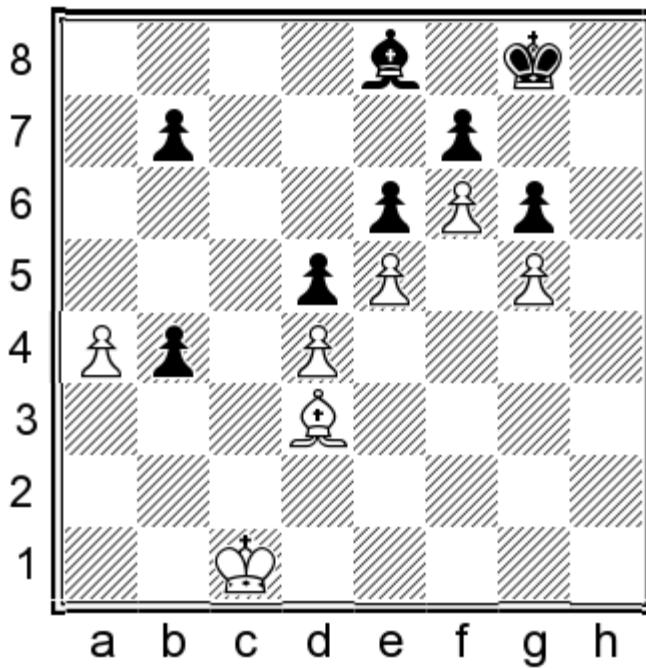
A) 29... $\mathbb{Q}xa4?$  loses after 30.bxa5 followed by an invasion with the white king;

B) If Black tries to keep the position closed by 29...b6 then after 30.bxa5! bxa5 31. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  32. $\mathbb{Q}c2$  it is zugzwang and Black must make a concession:

B1) After 32... $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  33.axb5  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  34. $\mathbb{Q}b3$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  35. $\mathbb{Q}a4$  the a5-pawn drops and the game is lost;

B2) 32... $\mathbb{Q}g8!?$  33. $\mathbb{Q}xe8$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  34. $\mathbb{Q}c6!$  (even with an extra piece White needs to use his king to win, and the only way to make sure it enters is to sacrifice the bishop on d5) 34... $\mathbb{Q}g8$  (the black king is imprisoned) 35. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  36. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$

37.♔f4 ♔f8 38.♕xd5! exd5 39.e6! fxe6 40.♗e5 ♔f7 41.♗d6 and White wins.



### 30.♗c2!

Very accurate. After 30.a5? ♕a4! the black bishop is ideally placed, controlling the b3- and b5-squares, which are now prohibited to the white king and bishop, respectively. The exchange of bishops must now be offered by 31.♗c2! (31.♗b2 ♔f8 32.♗c2 forces the exchange of bishops, which from a practical point of view removes the chance of Black going wrong) and now:

A) 31...♗b5? 32.♗b2 ♗c4 33.♗a4! ♔f8 34.♗d7 ♗g8 35.♗c8 ♕a6 36.♗b3 ♔f8 The win is now easily obtained by 37.♗d7!, which keeps the black king offside, whereas 37.♗xb4? leads to interesting complications: 37...♗e8 (the white bishop is trapped) 38.♗c5 b6+! (on 38...♗d8?, both 39.♗d6 and 39.♗xe6 win) 39.axb6 ♕xc8 40.♗c6 ♔d8 41.b7 ♔xb7 42.♗xb7 ♔d7 43.♗b6 ♔d8! (a diagonal opposition...) 44.♗c6 ♔c8! (... which leads to a vertical opposition) 45.♗d6 ♔d8 with a draw;

B) 31...♕xc2! 32.♗xc2 ♔f8 33.♗b3 ♗e8 34.♗xb4 ♔d7 35.♗b5 ♗c7 36.♗c5 (as we saw at the beginning and will soon see again, the presence of bishops would allow a win by zugzwang while now the position is drawn) 36...♗d7 37.♗b6 ♗c8 38.a6 bxa6 39.♗xa6 ♗c7 40.♗a7 ♗c8 41.♗b6 ♗b8 and the white king cannot pass.

### 30...♗c6

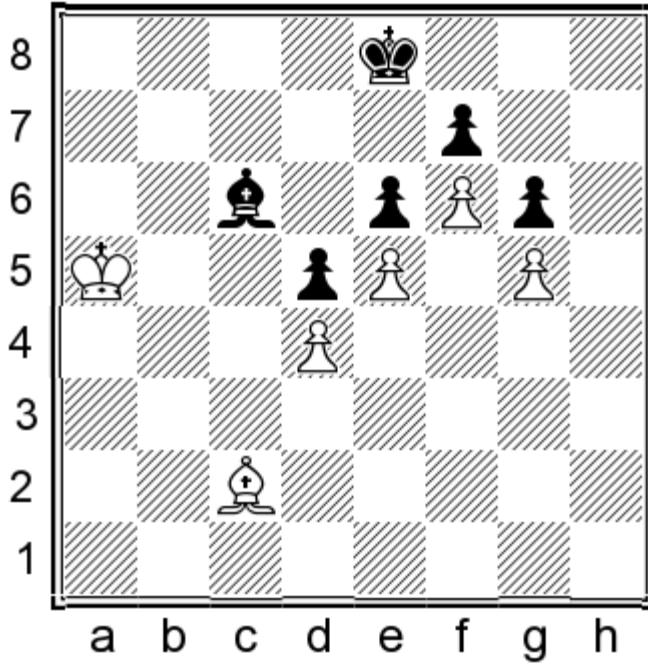
30...b6! 31.♗b2 ♗c6 transposes into the game continuation.

### 31.♗b2

31.a5! limits Black's defensive choice as his king must come to assist the b7-pawn.

### 31...b6 32.♗b3 ♔f8 33.♗xb4 ♗e8 34.a5

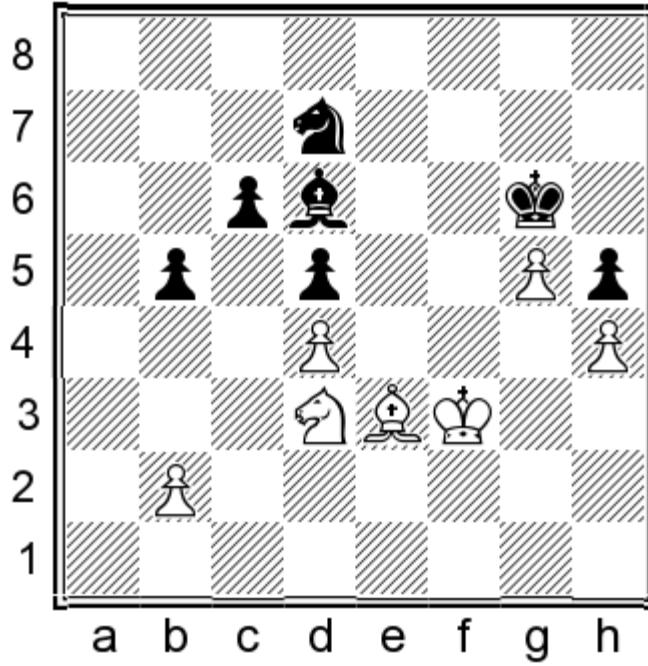
Black resigned. As this was a correspondence game it is possible that Estrin sent 'conditional moves' with his last move, that is to say moves that he intended to play depending on Black's reply. After 34...bxa5+ 35.♗xa5...



*analysis diagram*

... Black has the choice between adopting a passive defence or attempting to stop the white king from approaching:

- A) 35... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  36. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  37. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  38. $\mathbb{Q}d6$   $\mathbb{Q}b5$  (giving up his defence of the e6-pawn; 38... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  39. $\mathbb{Q}xg6!$   $f\text{x}g6$  40. $f7+$  and 38... $\mathbb{Q}c8$  39. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  40. $\mathbb{Q}c7$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  41. $\mathbb{Q}xg6!$   $f\text{x}g6$  42. $f7+$  does not hold either) 39. $\mathbb{Q}xg6$   $\mathbb{Q}e2$  (after 39... $f\text{x}g6$  40. $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  the white pawns are too strong) and now the simplest is 40. $\mathbb{Q}xf7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  41. $g6+$ ;
- B) 35... $\mathbb{Q}d8$  36. $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  37. $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  38. $\mathbb{Q}d3!$  (zugzwang) 38... $\mathbb{Q}d7$  (38... $\mathbb{Q}d8$  39. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ ) 39. $\mathbb{Q}b5+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  40. $\mathbb{Q}xe8$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  41. $\mathbb{Q}c6!$  (a diagonal opposition...) 41... $\mathbb{Q}d8$  42. $\mathbb{Q}d6!$  (... leading to a vertical opposition, this time in White's favour) 42... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  43. $\mathbb{Q}c7$  when the f7-pawn will fall.



*White to move*

What do you think of 39.♘f4+

and 39.♗f4 ?

Show/Hide Solution

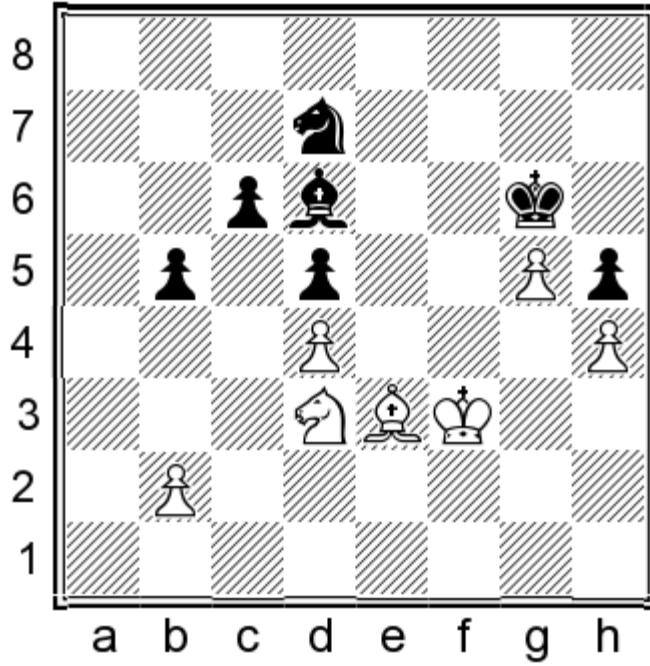
**81**

Geza Maroczy

Isidor Gunsberg

Monaco 1904 (1)

1.e4 e5 2.♘f3 ♘c6 3.♗b5 a6 4.♗a4 ♘f6 5.0-0 ♘xe4 6.d4 b5 7.♗b3 d5 8.dxe5 ♘e6 9.c3 ♘c5 10.a4 ♘b8 11.axb5 axb5 12.♗bd2 0-0 13.♗c2 f5 14.exf6 ♘xf6 15.♗b3 ♘b6 16.♗fd4 ♘xd4 17.cxd4 ♖d7 18.♗f4 ♘f5 19.♗c1 ♘xc2 20.♗xc2 ♖bc8 21.♗c1 c6 22.♗e1 ♖fe8 23.♗ce2 ♖xe2 24.♗xe2 ♖e8 25.♗xe8+ ♖xe8 26.h3 ♖e6 27.♖e3 ♖xe3 28.♗xe3 ♘f7 29.g4 ♘d7 30.f4 ♘f6 31.♗c1 ♘c7 32.♗d3 ♘d6 33.♗g2 ♘d7 34.f5 g6 35.fxg6+ ♖xg6 36.h4 ♘f6 37.♗f3 h5 38.g5 ♘d7

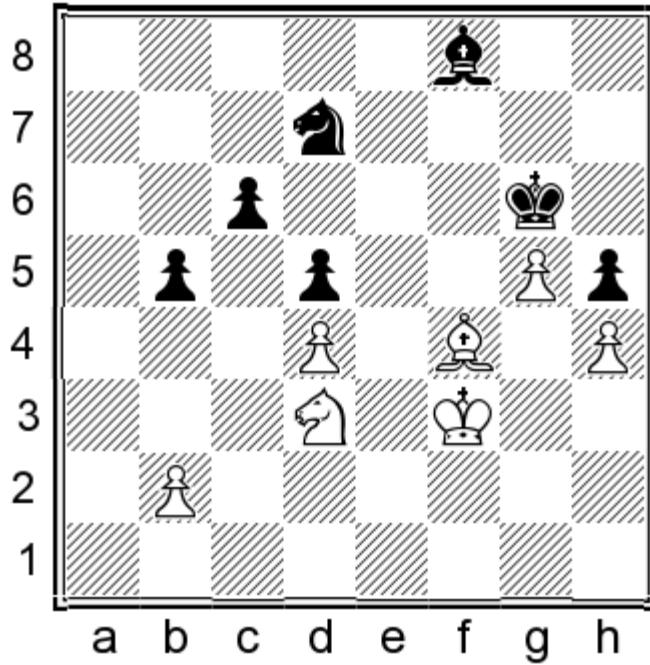


*White to move*

39.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  is very favourable for White, possibly winning and certainly complicated. 39.  $\mathbb{Q}f4+!$  is winning, with a little technique.

White has a protected passed pawn on the kingside while the opposing majority on the other wing is immobilized for the moment. In Black's favour he has a good bishop against a bad bishop and the d4- and b2-pawns are isolated.

On 39.  $\mathbb{Q}f4$  the proposed exchange of bishops cannot be accepted and White will subsequently try to get the f4-square for his knight without allowing its exchange. After 39...  $\mathbb{Q}f8!$  we have a choice:



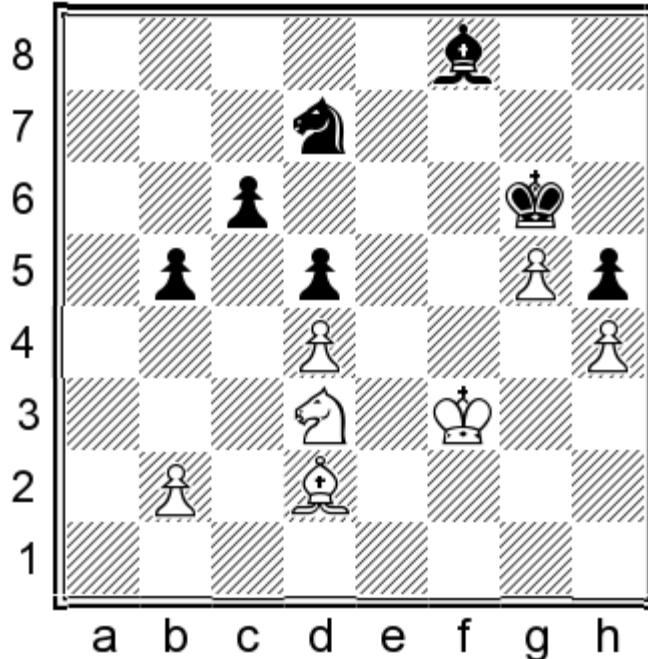
*analysis diagram*

A) 40.♗g3 ♖f5 41.♗f4 ♗g7! 42.♗f2 c5! with a further two possibilities:

A1) 43.dxc5 ♜e5+ 44.♗g3 (44.♗e3 d4+) 44...♝c6 45.♗xh5 (45.b3? loses after 45...♝e5 46.♗e3 ♗e4 47.♗c1 ♜e7 and the pin on the white knight is fatal) 45...♝xb2 46.♗f3 b4 gives Black good counterplay thanks to his distant passed pawn;

A2) 43.♗xh5! ♖xd4 44.♖xd4 cxd4 45.♗g3+ ♗g6 46.♗f4 ♜c5 47.h5+ ♗f7 White has made a lot of progress on the kingside but has to deal with the d4-pawn, and apparently he cannot win. Let's look at an illustrative line: 48.♗f5 ♜e6+ 49.♗e5 (49.♗g4 d3) 49...♝xg5 50.♗xd4 b4 51.♗xd5 ♜h7 52.♗c4 ♜f6 53.h6 ♗g6 54.♗xb4 ♗xh6 and the black king can return to defend quickly enough.

B) 40.♗d2! and now:



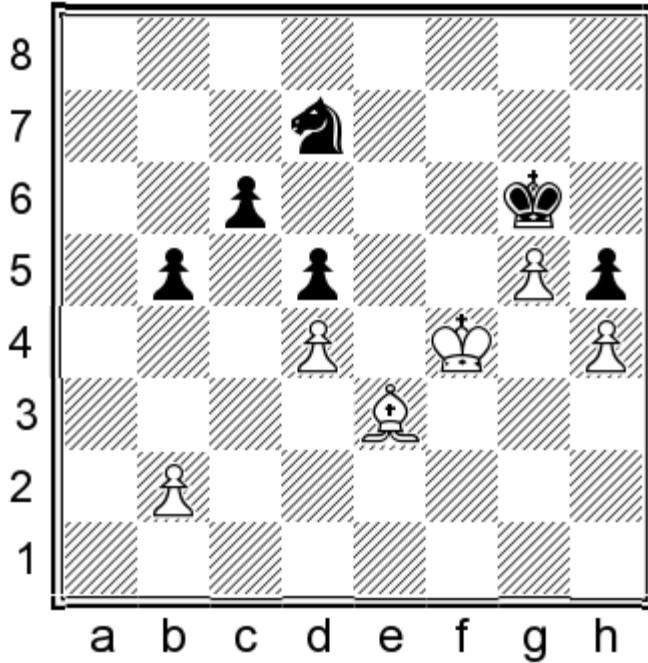
*analysis diagram*

B1) 40...♝f5 41.♗f4 ♗g7 42.♗e3 c5 43.♗xh5 ♖xd4 is the variation we've just seen, but here the white bishop is on e3 rather than f2 and thus defends the g5-pawn, which is decisive after 44.♗g3+ ♗g6 45.h5+!, while if 44...♝e5 45.♗xd4+ ♗xd4 (to keep a healthy pawn structure; 45...cxd4 46.h5 is complicated, but losing) then 46.♗f4! stops the black king from returning and the white pawns are the most dangerous;

B2) 40...♝d6! 41.♗b4! (41.♗f4+, as in the game, is less good because of 41...♝xf4 42.♗xf4 c5! 43.dxc5 ♜xc5 and 44.♗e5? allows 44...♝d3+) 41...♝c7! 42.♗f4+ ♗f7! (42...♝xf4? 43.♗xf4 is a worse version of the game, and 42...♝f5?! 43.♗xh5 ♗b6 allows the white knight to return by 44.♗g3+ ♗g6 45.♗e2) 43.♗xh5 ♗b6 44.♗e3! (44.♗c3 b4! is weaker) 44...♝e5! 45.b3 ♗g6 46.♗e1 must win.

These variations are complex and it is better to play:

**39.♗f4+! ♗xf4 40.♗xf4**



White's idea is to penetrate the opposing position with his king on one of the squares e5 or f5. The two black pieces control these squares, but are tied down by this task. As there is no useful pawn move to make (if 40...b4 then 41.b3) Black is in zugzwang and will have to give ground. On 40... $\mathbb{Q}b6$ , in order to answer 41. $\mathbb{Q}e5$  with a fork on c4, there would follow 41.b3  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  42. $\mathbb{Q}f2$  and the deadline was only delayed. This coming penetration of the king into the black camp, coupled with an advantage on both wings (the devalued and exposed black majority and the protected passed g5-pawn), points to a decisive advantage. It may happen that a resource allows Black to draw such a position, but this would be exceptional and in our game there will only be some technical difficulties to overcome.

**40... $\mathbb{Q}f7$**

40... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  41. $\mathbb{Q}e5$  resists less.

**41. $\mathbb{Q}f5$**

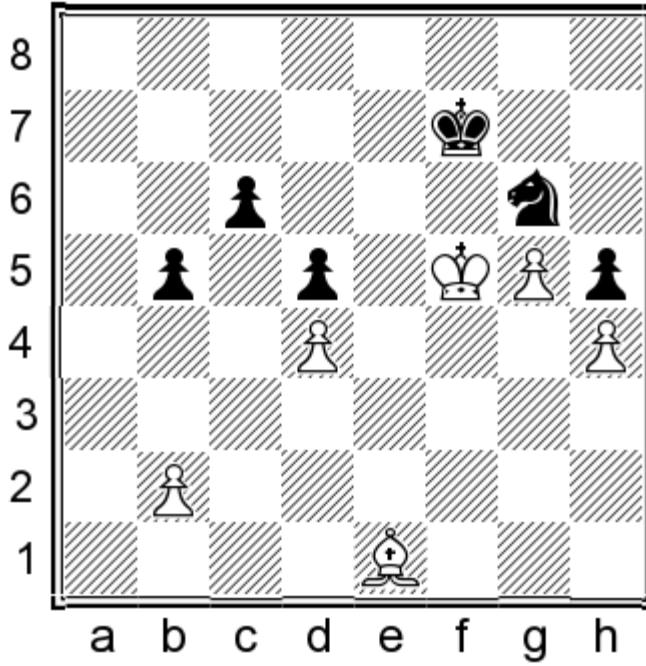
This is not only possible but immediately necessary to avoid the manoeuvre ... $\mathbb{Q}f7-e6$  followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}d7-f8-g6$ , which would consolidate the position.

**41... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  42. $\mathbb{Q}f2$**

And not 42. $\mathbb{Q}e5$ ?  $\mathbb{Q}g6+$ .

**42... $\mathbb{Q}g6$  43. $\mathbb{Q}e1$**

After 43. $\mathbb{Q}g3$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  44. $\mathbb{Q}e5$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  it is still necessary to find a way through. With the bishop on e1 White will be able to give a check on b4 in this variation. That said, the f4-square is controlled less and this will cause some complications.



**43...♞f8**

After 43...♝g7 44.♝e6 (the preparatory move 44.b3 is simpler in view of the variations that will follow) 44...♝f4+ 45.♝d6 ♞d3 the white advantage is decisive, but the win is not automatic:

A) 46.♚c3? is a tempting move, with the idea of responding to 46...b4 with 47.♚d2 to indirectly defend the b2-pawn, but let's continue this variation a little: 47...b3 48.♚c3 ♜f2! (threatening 49...♞d1) 49.♚b4 ♜d1 50.♚a3 ♜f7 51.♝xc6 ♜e6 and if 52.g6, then 52...♞e3 and Black escapes;

B) 46.♚d2! ♜xb2 (on 46...b4, with the idea of further advancing this pawn, 47.b3! wins easily) 47.♝xc6 ♜c4 and now 48.♚c1! prevents the knight from going to e3 and the b4-pawn from advancing, finishing the game, while, on the other hand, 48.♚f4? b4 49.♝xd5 b3 50.♚c1 b2 only leads to a draw.

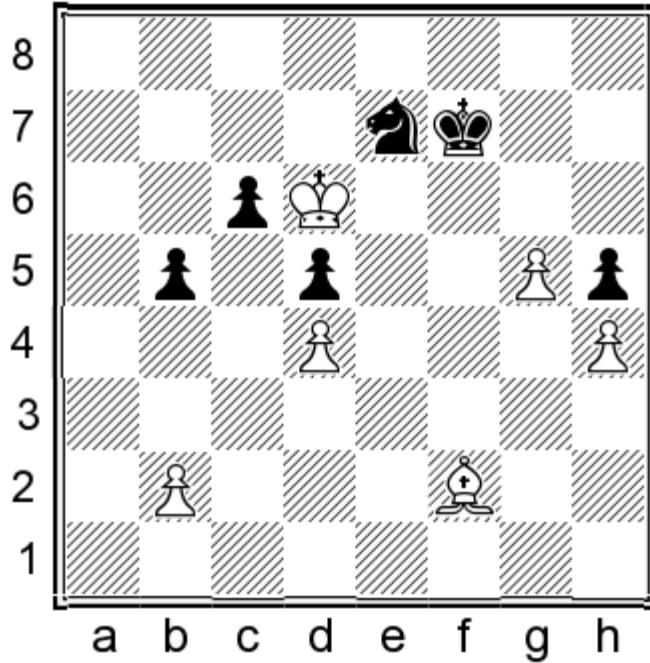
**44.♝e5 ♜g6+**

44...♝e7 45.♚b4+ ♜f7 46.♝xf8 ♜xf8 47.♝d6 is hopeless.

**45.♝d6 ♜e7**

Protecting the c6-pawn and hoping for some counterplay with 46...♝f5+.

**46.♚f2**



Defending the d4- and h4-pawns. As the knight cannot move, the black king will have to give way.

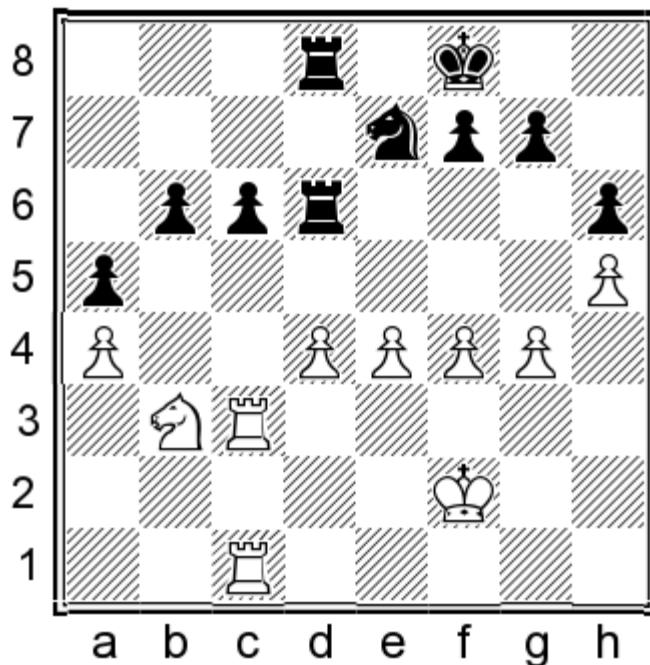
**46...b4**

Black may be hoping to play 47...b3 to get some saving chances, but the pawn will immediately be blocked.

46... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  47. $\mathbb{Q}e6$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  48. $\mathbb{Q}f6$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  (or 48... $\mathbb{Q}g8+$  49. $\mathbb{Q}g6$ ) 49.g6  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  50.g7+  $\mathbb{Q}e8$  51. $\mathbb{Q}e3$  is not really any better.

**47.b3! 1-0**

82



*White to move*

Which plan gives White a very big advantage? A win, I would say.

Show/Hide Solution

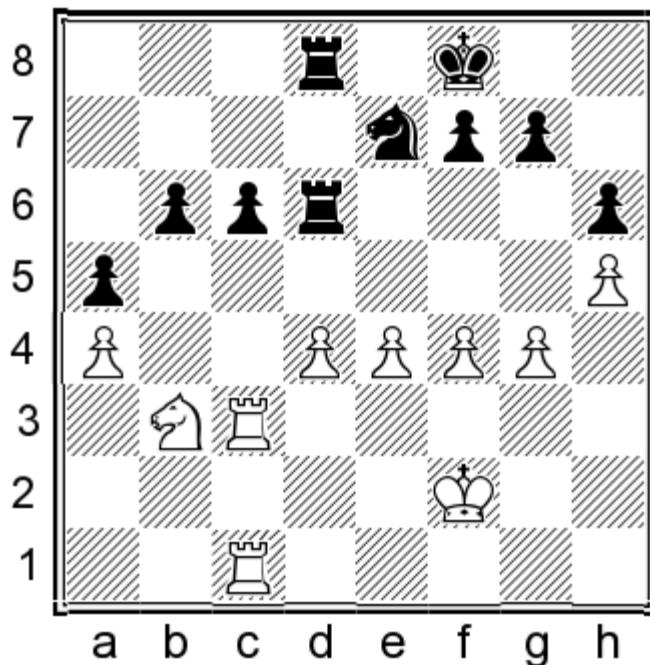
82

Efim Bogoljubow

Rudolf Spielmann

Semmering m 1932 (8)

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.♘c3 ♘f6 4.♗g5 ♘e7 5.e3 0-0 6.♘f3 ♘e4 7.♘xe7 ♗xe7 8.cxd5 ♘xc3 9.bxc3 exd5 10.♗b3 ♖d8 11.c4 ♘c6 12.cxd5 ♗b4+ 13.♗d2 ♗xb3 14.♗xb3 ♘b4 15.♖c1 ♘xd5 16.e4 ♗e8 17.f3 c6 18.♗f2 ♘e7 19.g4 b6 20.h4 ♘e6 21.♗c4 ♘xc4 22.♖xc4 ♖ad8 23.a4 a5 24.♖c3 ♖d6 25.h5 h6 26.♖hc1 ♖ed8 27.f4 ♘f8

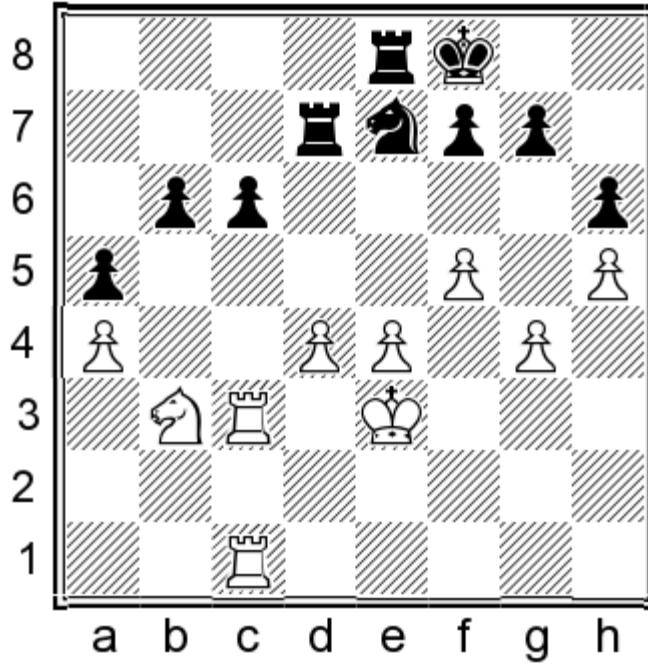


*White to move*

White has a great space advantage, without his pawns being vulnerable, and his position is promising. Nevertheless, the pressure on the d4-pawn is awkward and it is not so easy for him to make progress.

He can advance his kingside pawns in various ways and one interesting idea is to look out for the right moment to sacrifice the exchange on c6. In this regard the two opponents also arrived at this position in the sixth game of the same match. It is in itself a curiosity to see so many untheoretical moves repeated, but it is even more so considering the difficulties Black faces.

This previous game continued with 28.f5 ♖d7 29.♗e3 ♗e8



*analysis diagram*

30.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6!$   $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  31.  $\mathbb{Q}xc6$  (there is no doubt that there is sufficient compensation for the exchange) 31...  $\mathbb{Q}b8$  32.  $d5$   $b5!$  (an essential move that avoids a blockade of the majority by 33.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$ , opens lines for the rooks and creates a passed pawn) 33.  $\mathbb{Q}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}dd8$  34.  $axb5$   $\mathbb{Q}xb5$  35.  $\mathbb{Q}d4$   $\mathbb{Q}bb8$  36.  $d6$   $\mathbb{Q}bc8$  37.  $\mathbb{Q}b6$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  38.  $e5$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  39.  $\mathbb{Q}c6$   $a4$  40.  $e6$   $fxe6$  41.  $fxe6$   $a3$  42.  $e7$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  43.  $\mathbb{Q}a6$   $\mathbb{Q}xd6+$  44.  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$   $\mathbb{Q}a8$  45.  $\mathbb{Q}d8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8+$  46.  $exd8=\mathbb{W}+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  47.  $\mathbb{Q}e5$  and a draw was agreed. The knight must block the black passed pawn and no progress is possible without it. The entire game was still globally in White's favour.

## 28. $d5!$

A thematic pawn sacrifice to mobilize a pawn majority, and the only move that gives a big advantage.

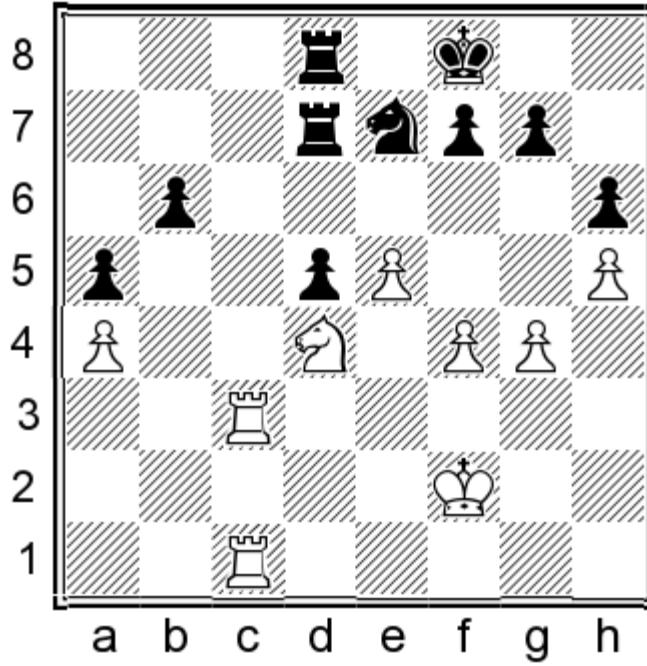
## 28... $cxd5$

- A) After 28...  $\mathbb{Q}c8$  29.  $\mathbb{Q}d4!$   $c5$  30.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$  the white majority, with two extra pawns, is mobile while the black one is blocked;
- B) 28...  $c5$  29.  $\mathbb{Q}d2$   $\mathbb{Q}c8$  30.  $\mathbb{Q}c4$  is similar. In both cases Black is lost.

## 29. $e5!$ $\mathbb{Q}d7$

29...  $d4?$  would avoid the problems that follow, but here it loses a piece to 30.  $exd6$   $dxc3$  31.  $dxe7+$ .

## 30. $\mathbb{Q}d4!$



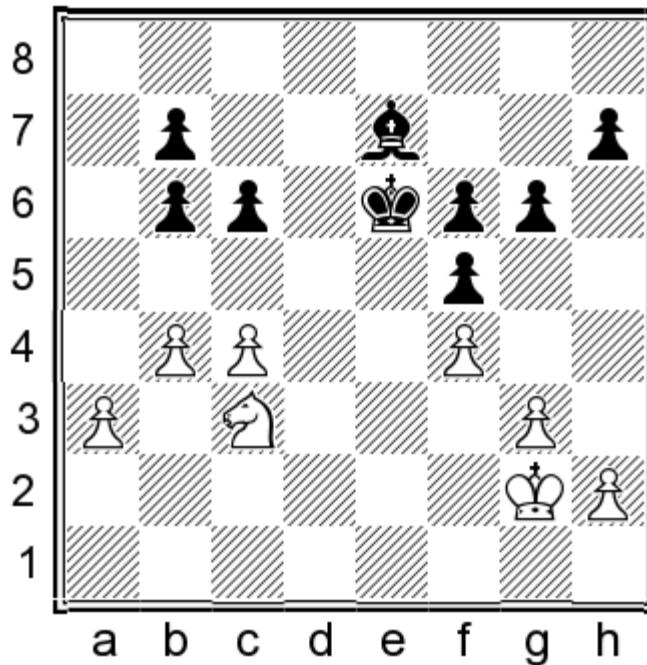
The white knight occupies a dominant and stable position and blockades the d5-pawn, which greatly hinders all the black pieces except the king. The white majority is mobile and dangerous while the b6-pawn cannot advance. White is much better on both wings.

**30...♝b8 31.f5 ♝dd8 32.♝1c2 ♝e8 33.♛e3 ♝bc8**

After 33...♛c8 the best is 34.♛d3! so that the king stays close to the d4-square, the e5-pawn being protected by the attack on the black knight.

(continuation and solution 88)

83



*Black to move*

What plan leads to a large black advantage?

Show/Hide Solution

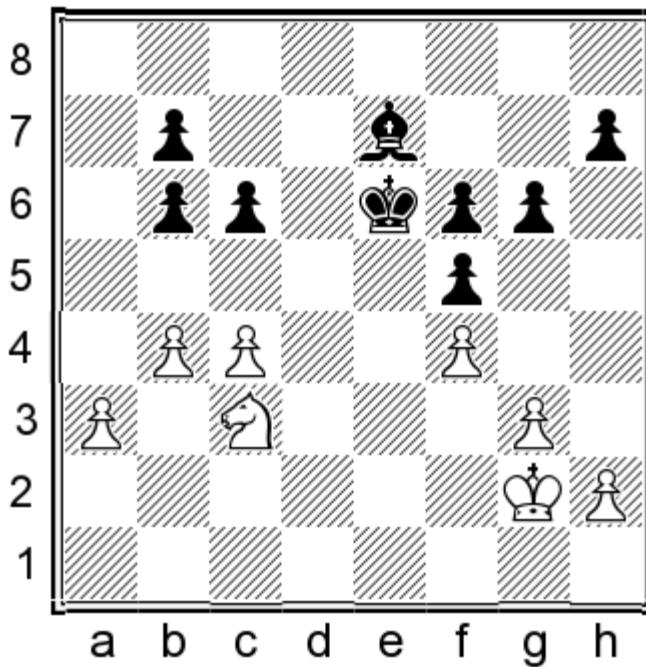
**83**

**Vladimir Antonov** 2380

**Rustem Dautov** 2380

Berlin 1986 (5)

1.e4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  2.e5  $\mathbb{Q}d5$  3.d4 d6 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  5. $\mathbb{Q}e2$  c6 6.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  7. $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  dx $e$ 5 8.dxe5 e6 9. $\mathbb{W}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  10.c4  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  11. $\mathbb{Q}g4$   $\mathbb{W}c7$  12.f4  $\mathbb{Q}f5$  13. $\mathbb{Q}h1$  0-0-0 14. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  ex $f$ 5 15. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}b4$  16. $\mathbb{Q}a4$   $\mathbb{Q}b6$  17.a3  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  18. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  19. $\mathbb{Q}e3$   $\mathbb{W}d3$  20. $\mathbb{Q}xb6$   $\mathbb{W}xe2$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xe2$  ax $b$ 6 22. $\mathbb{Q}ad1$  g6 23. $\mathbb{Q}c3$  f6 24.e6  $\mathbb{Q}xd1$  25. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  26.g3  $\mathbb{Q}xd1+$  27. $\mathbb{Q}xd1$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  28.b4  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  29. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe6$  30. $\mathbb{Q}g2$



*Black to move*

Black has an extra pawn and his task is to create a breach to penetrate the opposing position.

**30...b5!**

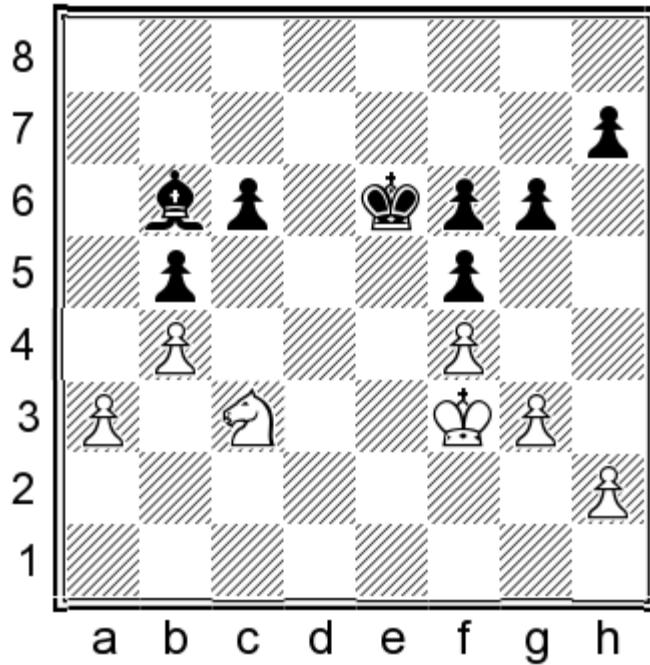
The breakthrough initiated by this move must be executed immediately to take advantage of the remoteness of the white king. 30...c5? 31.b5 only helps White.

**31.cxb5**

Another defence is 31.c5?!  $\mathbb{Q}d8$  32. $\mathbb{Q}f3$  (32.a4? bxa4 33. $\mathbb{Q}xa4$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  allows a decisive incursion by the black king) 32...b6 with two possibilities:

A) If 33. $\mathbb{Q}e3$  bxc5 34.bxc5  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  (the attack on the knight that controls the d5-square is decisive) 35. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  (35. $\mathbb{Q}e2$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  is hopeless) 35... $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  36. $\mathbb{Q}xc3$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  37. $\mathbb{Q}b4$  g5 the c5-pawn falls and the game is lost;

B) 33.cxb6 ♜xb6 and now:



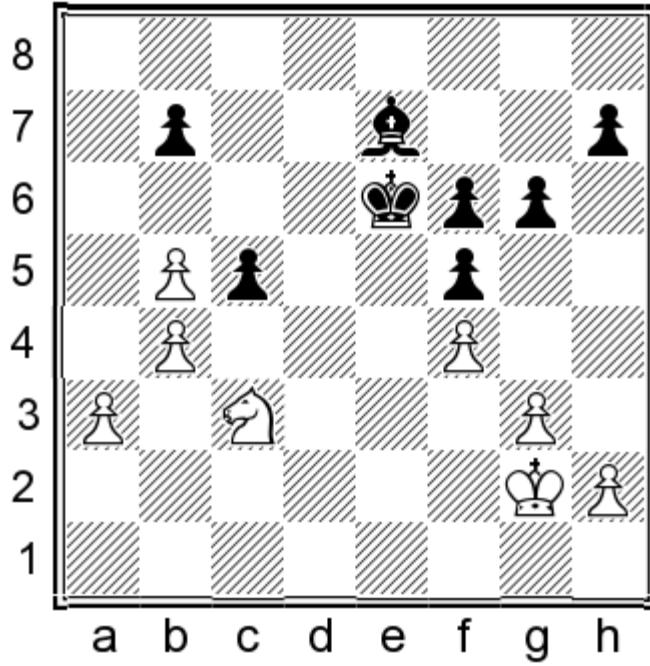
*analysis diagram*

B1) 34.a4 bxa4 35.♗xa4 ♜d4! (the knight is dominated) 36.♔e2 ♜d5 37.♔d3 g5 (the white king has arrived just in time to block its counterpart, but now the two white pieces are immobilized and Black will create a zugzwang by correctly exhausting all the pawn moves) 38.h3 gxf4 39.gxf4 h6! 40.h4 h5 (mission accomplished) 41.♗c3+ ♜xc3 42.♗xc3 ♜e4 and Black is winning, as after 43.♗c4 ♜xf4 44.♗c5 ♜g4 45.♗xc6 f4 46.b5 f3 a queen ending will occur in which he will have two extra pawns;

B2) 34.♔e2 ♜d4! 35.♗b1 (after 35.♗d1 ♜d5 36.♗d3 g5 the two white pieces are again stuck and White will lose to a zugzwang, as we have just seen; 35.♗d3 ♜xc3 36.♗xc3 ♜d5 37.♗d3 g5 is similar) 35...♜d5 36.♗d3 g5 37.♗d2 ♜b2! 38.♗b1 gxf4 39.gxf4 ♜c1! and Black wins by a combined attack on the a3- and f4-pawns, for example: 40.♗c3+ ♜d6 41.♗e2 ♜xa3 42.♗c3 c5! and the bishop cannot be trapped.

**31...c5!**

31...cxb5? is a bad idea that gives some winning chances after 32.♗xb5?! ♜d5, but much less after 32.♗f3!.



Now we see that 30...b5! was played to attract a white pawn to the b5-square in order to block the b4-pawn and force an opening of lines.

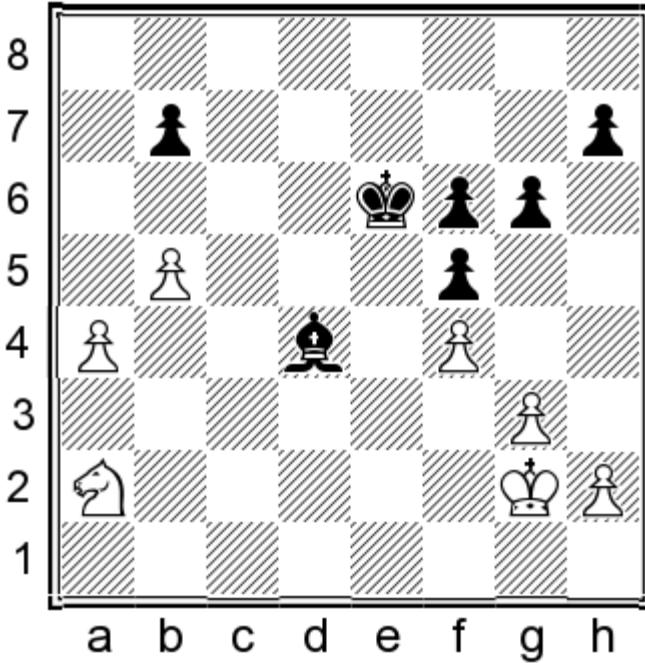
**32.bxc5 ♕xc5**

The activation of the bishop reveals an important defect in the white position: the kingside pawns are situated on dark squares and are therefore vulnerable to an attack from the bishop.

**33.a4 ♕d4!**

Chasing the knight away to allow the king to enter.

**34.♕a2**



**34...♝b6!**

The natural move 34...♝d5? is a serious mistake that allows White to exchange all the queenside pawns by 35.a5! ♜c4 36.a6 bxa6 37.bxa6 ♜b5 38.♝c1 ♜xa6 and the game is drawn.

**35.♝c3 ♜a5**

Better was 35...♝d6! 36.♝f3 ♜c5 37.♝e2 and now not 37...♝b4? 38.♝d5+, which gives White some counterplay, but rather 37...♞c4!, to drive the knight back before continuing the attack on the queenside pawns (38.♝d2? ♜a5!).

**36.♝e2?**

36.♝d1! is the toughest, and Black must then play 36...♝b6! 37.♝c3 ♜d6! to adopt the advantageous line that we have just seen; the bishop's jaunt to a5 will then only have been a waste of time without consequences. Instead of 36...♝b6, 36...♝d5? gives the white pieces some activity after 37.♝e3+ ♜c5 38.♝f3 ♜d8 (or even 38...♝b4 39.♝d5+) 39.♝e2 ♜b4 40.♝d3 ♜xa4 41.♝c4. The black king is confined and to make progress it is now necessary to involve the bishop by playing, for example, 41...♝b6 42.♝d5 ♜g1 with some winning chances.

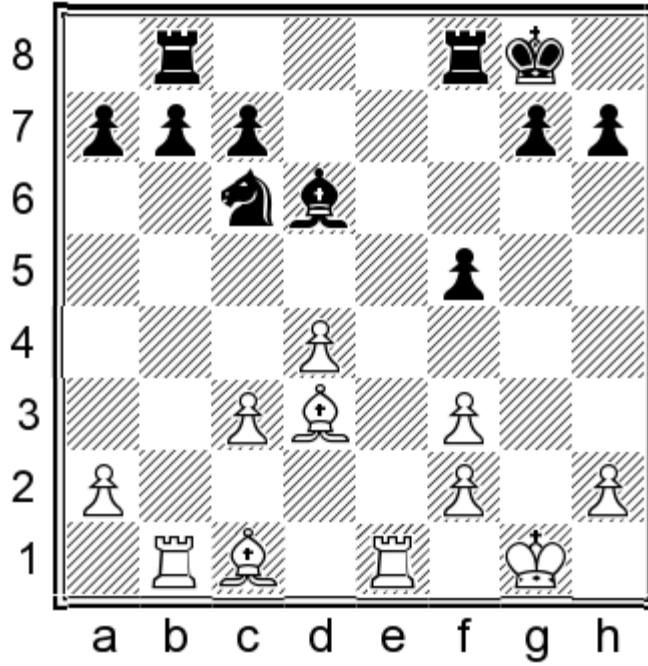
**36...♝d5 37.♝f2 ♜c5 38.♝f3?**

It is more interesting to hasten to the queenside to try to respond to a possible ...♝xa4 by ♜c4, even if after 38.♝e3 ♜c4!, probably followed by 39...♝b6+, all the white pawns are exposed and the chances of salvation are meagre.

**38...♝b4**

Black is now clearly winning.

**39.♝d4 ♜xa4 40.g4 ♜c3 41.♝e2 fxg4+ 42.♝xg4 ♜b2 0-1**



*White to move*

What is the point of 17.  $\mathbb{Q}b5$ ? What do you think of Black's various replies?

Show/Hide Solution

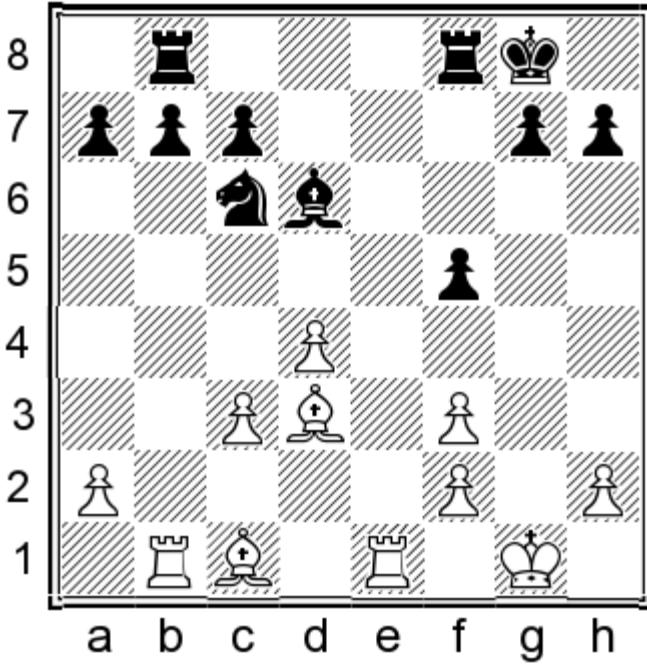
**84**

**Geza Maroczy**

**Harry Nelson Pillsbury**

Monaco 1902 (1)

1.e4 e5 2. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3. $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  d6 4. $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  5.d4 d5 6. $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  7.0-0  $\mathbb{Q}c6$  8. $\mathbb{Q}e1$   $\mathbb{Q}g4$  9.c3 f5 10.c4 0-0 11.cxd5  $\mathbb{W}xd5$  12. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}xc3$  13.bxc3  $\mathbb{Q}xf3$  14. $\mathbb{W}xf3$   $\mathbb{W}xf3$  15.gxf3  $\mathbb{Q}d6$  16. $\mathbb{Q}b1$   $\mathbb{E}ab8$



*White to move*

White has a badly damaged pawn structure but with good central control thanks to the c3- and d4-pawns. He has the bishop pair in a fairly open position, which gives him good chances to get the initiative. The f5-pawn is exposed and some squares have been weakened by its advance.

A normal plan for Black is to play ... $\mathbb{Q}c6-e7-g6$  with the prospect of going to h4 or f4 depending on circumstances. White can mobilize his pawn centre by 17. $\mathbb{B}b2$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  18.c4  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  19.c5  $\mathbb{B}f4$  20.d5 and now one possibility is 20...b6 to destroy the white duo; chances are equal.

**17. $\mathbb{B}b5!$**

The black pawns can limit the action of one of the white bishops, but not both. By attacking the f5-pawn Maroczy tries to determine the pawn structure in order to then choose his plan.

**17...f4**

Making the pawn safe and restraining the activity of the c1-bishop but exposing the light squares and conceding the e4-square to the d3-bishop, from where it will have an eye on both wings.

A) After 17...g6?! 18. $\mathbb{B}h6$  the two white bishops become very active, for example:

A1) 18... $\mathbb{Q}f6$ ? 19. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  20. $\mathbb{Q}xb7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xb7$  21. $\mathbb{Q}e8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xf8!$  (without the following combination it would be necessary to win the exchange by 22. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ ) 22... $\mathbb{Q}b8$  23. $\mathbb{Q}e7+!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  24. $\mathbb{Q}xf6#$ ;

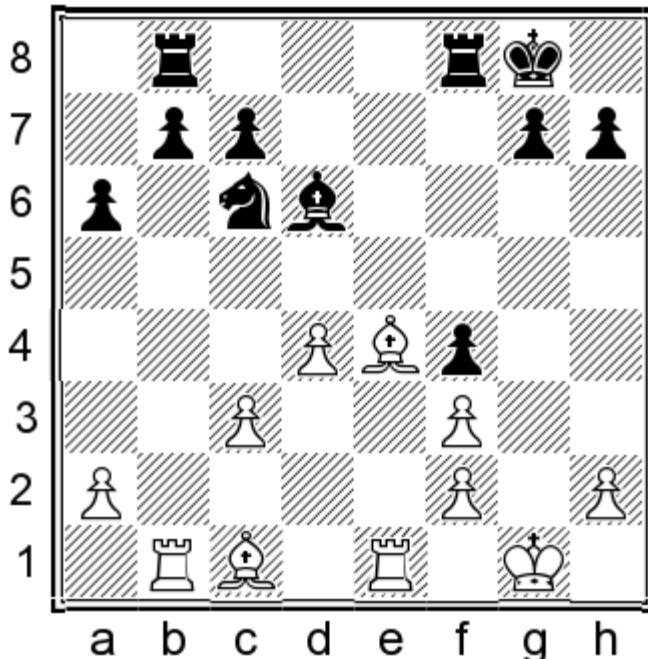
A2) 18... $\mathbb{Q}fd8$  19. $\mathbb{Q}c4+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  and now 20. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  allows 20... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ , but 20. $\mathbb{Q}f7!$  (intending 21. $\mathbb{Q}g5$ ) is strong, with a lasting initiative.

B) A solid defence is 17... $\mathbb{Q}e7!$ , sacrificing the f5-pawn to eliminate the white bishop pair. After 18. $\mathbb{Q}g5$  a6! (in order to free the b8-rook) 19. $\mathbb{Q}a5$   $\mathbb{Q}be8$  20. $\mathbb{Q}b1+?$   $\mathbb{Q}b8$  21. $\mathbb{Q}xe7$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  22. $\mathbb{Q}xf5$  White has an extra pawn, though his structure is in bad shape, and his bishop will be stable and influential on the e4-square; the presence of rooks with the opposite-coloured bishops gives him some chances to gain the initiative and he is very slightly better.

**18. $\mathbb{Q}e4$  a6!**

The b5-rook can act on both wings and it is desirable to force it to make a choice. 18... $\mathbb{Q}d8$  takes the pressure off d4 and allows the advance of the opposing central pawns.

### 19. $\mathbb{E}b1$



Black is clearly under pressure. An attempt to break free is to play ... $\mathbb{Q}c6-a5$  followed by ...b7-b5, but this is not easy to achieve:

- A) 19... $\mathbb{Q}a5?$  immediately does not achieve its purpose because after 20.c4! neither 20... $\mathbb{Q}xc4?$  21. $\mathbb{Q}d5+$  nor 20...b5? 21.c5  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  22. $\mathbb{Q}d5+$  are playable;
- B) 19...g6 20. $\mathbb{Q}d2!$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  21. $\mathbb{Q}d5!$  and again 21... $\mathbb{Q}a5?$  fails to 22.c4! as after 22...c6 23. $\mathbb{Q}xa5$  cxd5 24.c5 the black bishop is lost, and 21... $\mathbb{Q}f5?$  is no good either because of 22. $\mathbb{Q}xc6$ ;
- C) 19... $\mathbb{Q}h8!?$  quickly puts the king on a safe dark square (to play 20... $\mathbb{Q}a5$ ), but has the disadvantage of decentralizing it. This seems to be the best move, even though after 20.a4  $\mathbb{Q}a5$  21. $\mathbb{Q}d3$  White prevents the ...b7-b5 thrust and keeps the initiative.

### 19... $\mathbb{E}fe8?$

A blunder.

### 20. $\mathbb{Q}d2?$

20. $\mathbb{E}xb7!$  wins, as after 20... $\mathbb{E}xb7$  21. $\mathbb{Q}d5+!$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  (or 21... $\mathbb{Q}e6$  22. $\mathbb{E}xe6!$ ) 22. $\mathbb{E}xe8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  23. $\mathbb{Q}xc6+$  White has an extra bishop.

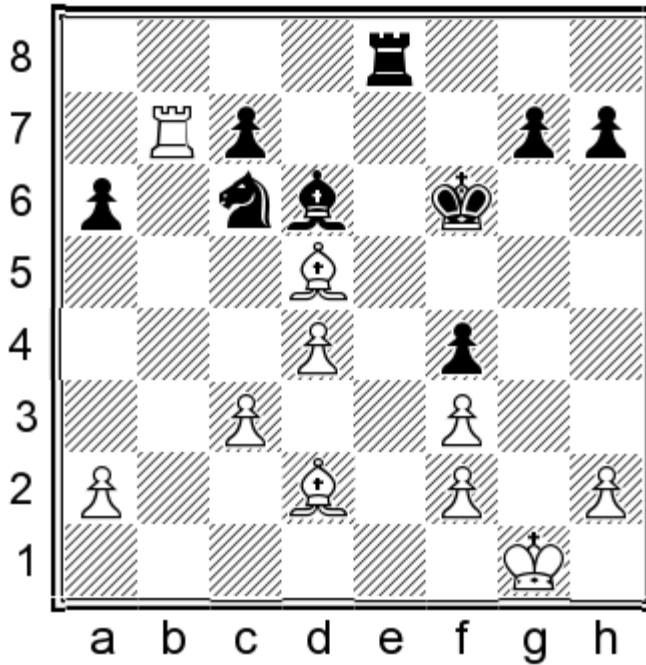
### 20... $\mathbb{Q}f7?$

20... $\mathbb{Q}d8?$  allows 21. $\mathbb{Q}xh7+$ , but 20... $\mathbb{Q}h8!$  with the idea of ...g7-g6 followed by the centralization of the king avoids the loss of a pawn.

### 21. $\mathbb{Q}d5+ \mathbb{Q}f6$

21... $\mathbb{Q}f8$  22. $\mathbb{E}xe8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xe8?$  loses after 23. $\mathbb{E}xb7$  or 23. $\mathbb{Q}xc6+$ .

**22. $\mathbb{E}xe8$   $\mathbb{E}xe8$  23. $\mathbb{E}xb7$**



**23... $\mathbb{Q}e7$**

A) 23... $\mathbb{E}e2$  24. $\mathbb{E}b2$   $\mathbb{Q}a3$  25. $\mathbb{Q}f1!$  does not save Black;

B) 23... $\mathbb{Q}a5!$  is the most resistant, with ideas of ... $\mathbb{E}e8-e2$  or ...c7-c6, possibly followed by ... $\mathbb{Q}a5-c4$ , and now:

B1) 24. $\mathbb{E}b2$  c6 25. $\mathbb{Q}b3!$  (25. $\mathbb{Q}e4?!$  allows 25... $\mathbb{Q}c4$  which leads to a position with opposite-coloured bishops) 25... $\mathbb{Q}xb3$  and 26.axb3! leaves White with his extra pawn, but without a sure win as the bishop pair is missing, while 26. $\mathbb{E}xb3?$   $\mathbb{E}e2$  27. $\mathbb{E}b2$   $\mathbb{Q}a3!$  28. $\mathbb{E}c2$   $\mathbb{Q}c1!$  29. $\mathbb{E}xc1$   $\mathbb{E}xd2$  gives nothing;

B2) 24. $\mathbb{E}b1!$   $\mathbb{E}e2$  25. $\mathbb{Q}e1$  c6 26. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$  (after 26. $\mathbb{Q}g8?!$  – to continue to defend the a2-pawn – 26... $\mathbb{E}e8!$  it is necessary to give up the bishop pair by 27. $\mathbb{Q}b3$  as 27. $\mathbb{Q}xh7?!$  g6! gives Black a good game thanks to the unfortunate position of the h7-bishop) 26... $\mathbb{Q}c7$  (26... $\mathbb{E}xa2$  27. $\mathbb{E}b6$  is no improvement) 27. $\mathbb{E}a1!$ , with the idea of winning the a6-pawn by 28. $\mathbb{Q}d3$ , is very bad for Black.

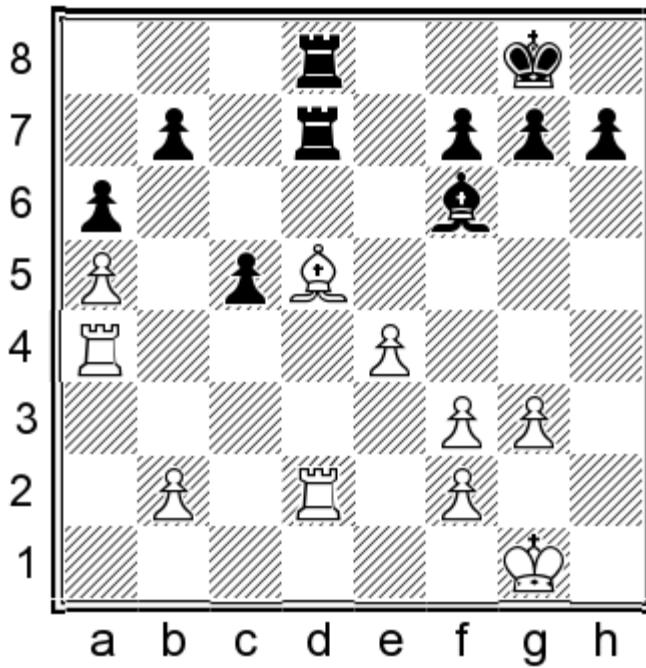
**24. $\mathbb{Q}e4$**

The advantage is decisive.

**24... $\mathbb{Q}f5$  25. $\mathbb{E}a7$   $\mathbb{E}b8$  26. $\mathbb{E}xa6$  g5 27.c4  $\mathbb{E}b6$  28. $\mathbb{E}xb6$  cxb6 29. $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}h4$  30.h3 h5 31.c5 bxc5 32.dxc5+  $\mathbb{Q}e5$  33.c6 1-0**

Show in Quiz Mode

85



White to move

What general plan do you see for White and how would you implement it?

Show/Hide Solution

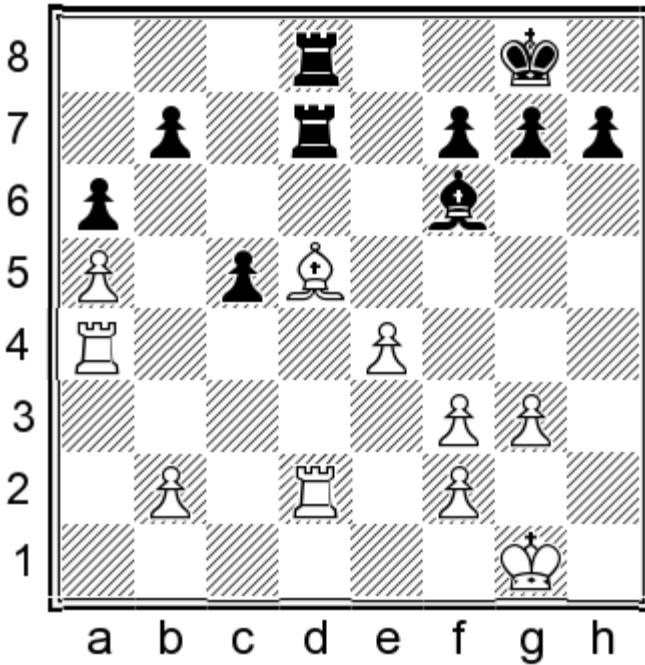
85

Amos Burn

Wilhelm Steinitz

Cologne 1898 (5)

1.d4 d5 2.c4 e6 3.Qc3 Qf6 4.Qf3 dxcc4 5.e3 a6 6.a4 c5 7.Qxc4 Qc6 8.0-0 Qd7 9.Qe2 Qb6 10.Qd1 Qd8 11.d5 exd5 12.Qxd5 Qe7 13.e4 Qd4 14.Qc4 Qxf3+ 15.gxf3 0-0 16.Qf4 Qh5 17.Qg3 Qxg3 18.hxg3 Qf6 19.Qd2 Qb4 20.a5 Qxc4 21.Qxc4 Qc6 22.Qd5 Qd7 23.Qa4 Qxa4 24.Qxa4 Qfd8



*White to move*

In opposite-coloured bishops positions the problem of where to place the pawns is complex: on the opposing bishop's colour (a6, b7 and f7) they are objects of attack and on the other colour (c5 as well as, later in the game, f6 and h6) they leave squares with no defence.

White has active pieces and a mobile majority. His first task is to attack the exposed black pawns in order to make the opposing pieces passive or to create new weaknesses. At the moment the e4-pawn serves to defend the d5-bishop and so the majority will only be advanced later on.

**25.♘c4! ♖e7**

A) 25...♗d4? 26.b4 is no good, as 26...♘c7? loses to 27.♗xd4;

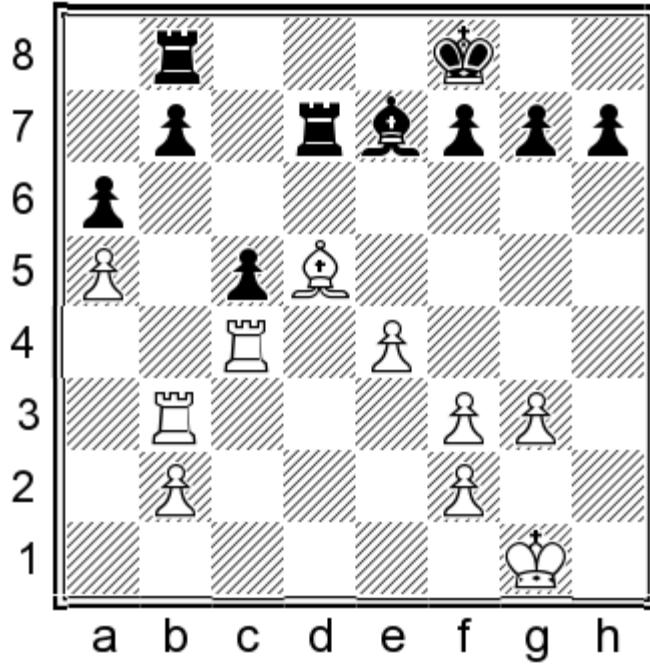
B) An interesting defence is 25...♘c7 (the bishop keeps the b2-pawn attacked to hinder the ♘d2-d3-b3 manoeuvre that we will see in the game) 26.♗dc2 ♗dc8 27.b4 ♗d8!? (with the intention of taking on b4; on 27...♗e7 28.f4 ♗d6 there is 29.e5) 28.♗xc5 ♗xc5 29.bxc5 (it is better to avoid exchanging all the rooks) 29...♗e7 when the c5-pawn cannot be defended and the a5-pawn is exposed; Black would like to exchange all the queenside pawns even if this means not recovering the sacrificed pawn. There could follow:

B1) 30.♗xb7 ♗xc5 31.♗a2 ♗d8 32.♗xa6 ♗xa5 33.♗d2 ♗b6 34.♗c4 ♗a7 when the f7-pawn is well protected and Black has excellent drawing chances;

B2) 30.♗b2! ♗c7! (30...♗xc5? 31.♗xb7 ♗f8 is too passive and 30...♗xc5? 31.♗xb7 ♗f8 loses to 32.♗b8+) 31.c6! (with the idea of winning the a6-pawn to obtain a passed pawn; 31.♗xb7 ♗xc5 is worse) 31...bxc6 32.♗b8+ ♗f8 33.♗c4 ♗a7 34.f4! (after 34.♗c8 g6! – playing the king to g7 would solve many problems – 35.♗xc6 ♗b4 Black achieves his goal) 34...g6 35.f5! and White is much better, as 35...♔g7? loses to 36.f6+.

All these variations are only illustrative of the possibilities after 25...♗c7 but they clearly show the nature of the play and the defensive difficulties.

**26.♗d3! ♗f8 27.♗b3! ♗b8**



The very simple last three white moves have tied the black pieces to the defence of their pawns and thus reduced their mobility.

### **28.♔f1 f6**

Allowing the king to head for the queenside, but further weakening the light squares. It was probably best to leave the pawn on f7; in this case White can place his king on c4 (as in the game) before this time advancing his central pawns.

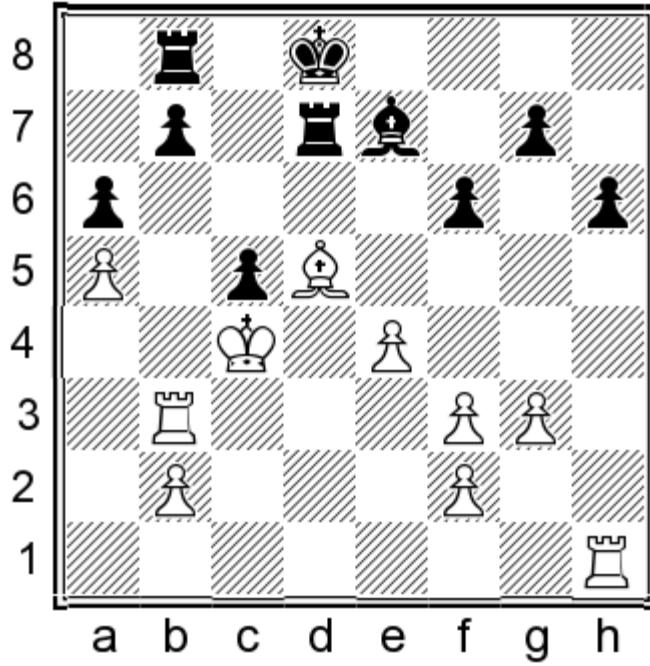
### **29.♗e2 ♜c7**

And not 29...♗e8? 30.♗c6.

### **30.♗d3 ♔e8 31.♗c1!**

Now it is the h7-pawn that is targeted.

### **31...♗d8 32.♗c4 ♜d7 33.♗h1! h6**



The g6-square is no longer covered by a pawn and becomes an invasion point for the white pieces, especially the king.

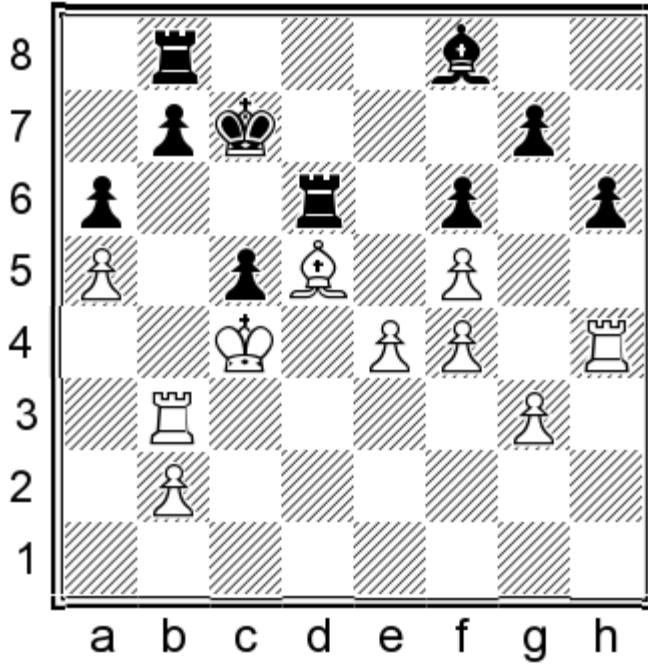
**34.f4 ♔c7 35.f5!**

The e4-pawn defends the d5-bishop, which closes the d-file to the black rooks. The e4-e5 breakthrough will occur later, prepared by f2-f4.

**35...♜dd8 36.♜h4**

The pressure on the g7-pawn after ♜h4-g4 should not bother Black, but perhaps the rook might go to g6 with a view to playing e4-e5.

**36...♝f8 37.f4 ♜d6!?**



**38.†c3!**

After 38.†xc5 b6+ 39.†c4 bxa5 Black stays worse, but he has active pieces and the possibility of advancing his a5-pawn.

**38...b5**

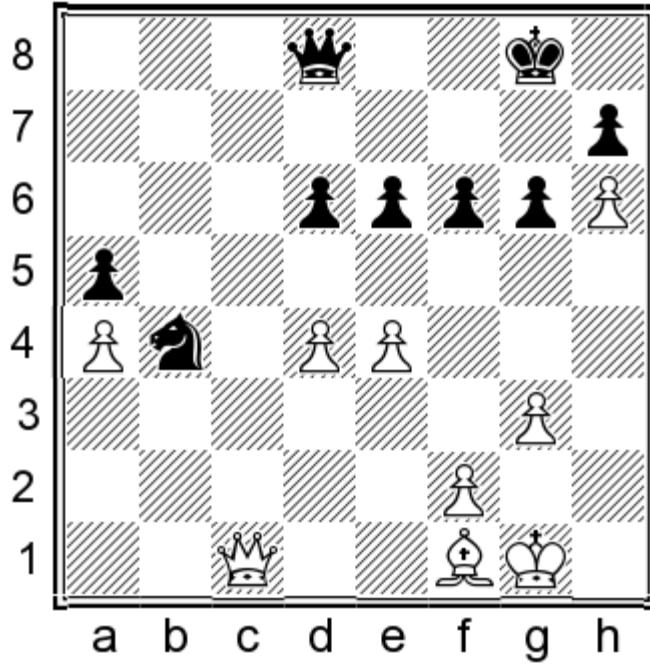
The weakness on b7 is eliminated but another will appear on a6. The exchange of a pair of rooks relieves the defence a little.

**39.axb6+ ♜dxb6 40.¤xb6 ♜xb6 41.¤h1!**

With the idea of ¤h1-a1 to put pressure on the a6-pawn and prevent the black rook from infiltrating on the a-file.

**41...¤e7 42.b3 ♜d6 43.¤a1 ♜b6**

(continuation and solution 89)



*White to move*

What do you think of 35.d5

and also 35.e5 ?

Show/Hide Solution

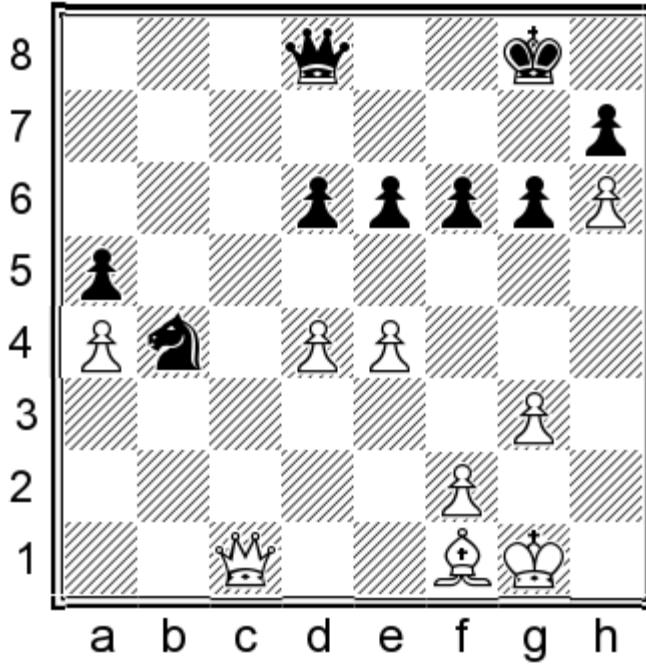
**86**

**Ljubomir Ljubojevic** 2600

**Georgi Tringov** 2485

Lucerne ol 1982 (3)

1.e4 c5 2.♘c3 ♘c6 3.g3 g6 4.♗g2 ♗g7 5.d3 d6 6.♗e3 ♖b8 7.♖d2 b5 8.♗ge2 b4 9.♘d1 ♘d4 10.0-0 e6 11.♘c1 ♘e7 12.c3 bxc3 13.bxc3 ♘dc6 14.♗h6 0-0 15.♗xg7 ♗xg7 16.♘e3 ♗b7 17.♘b3 a5 18.a4 ♗a6 19.♖fb1 ♖b6 20.h4 ♘e5 21.d4 ♘c4 22.♖e1 cxd4 23.cxd4 ♘xe3 24.♖xe3 ♖fc8 25.♗h2 ♘c6 26.♘c5 ♖a7 27.♖xb8 ♘xb8 28.♘xa6 ♘xa6 29.h5 ♖e7 30.h6+ ♘g8 31.♖c1 ♖xc1 32.♖d8 33.♗f1 ♘b4 34.♗g1 f6



*White to move*

The a5-, e6- and h7-pawns in the black camp are exposed, as is the king, which is to say the seventh and eighth ranks as well. The knight has a stable outpost but is offside and cannot easily move. The black queen has a heavy defensive load to shoulder and is also not very free.

A) 35.e5? is an important strategic concession that allows the knight to return to the game via the d5-square. It is a very dangerous move, but before deciding whether it is strong it is necessary to check that the opening of lines leads to tangible results, which is not the case:

A1) After 35... $\mathbb{Q}f7?$  36.exd6! (ensuring that the queen infiltrates the opposing camp) 36... $\mathbb{W}xd6$  37. $\mathbb{W}c8$  (threatening 38. $\mathbb{W}h8$ ) 37... $\mathbb{W}f8$  38. $\mathbb{W}c7+$  the a5-pawn drops and the game is lost;

A2) 35...dxe5! 36.dxe5 with the possibilities:

A2a) 36... $\mathbb{Q}d5?$  37. $\mathbb{W}c6!$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  38. $\mathbb{W}b7+$  and Black is struggling after 38... $\mathbb{Q}e7$  39.exf6!  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  40. $\mathbb{W}f3+$   $\mathbb{Q}f5$  41.g4 as after 38... $\mathbb{W}c7$  39. $\mathbb{W}a8$  keeping the material balance by 39... $\mathbb{W}c1$  40. $\mathbb{W}xa5$   $\mathbb{W}xh6$  is possible but the distant passed white pawn is really too strong;

A2b) 36...fxe5 37. $\mathbb{W}c3!$  (if 37. $\mathbb{W}c5?$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  38. $\mathbb{W}a7$   $\mathbb{Q}e7!$  holds on) 37... $\mathbb{Q}d5$  (or 37... $\mathbb{W}b8$  38. $\mathbb{W}c5!$ ) 38. $\mathbb{W}xe5$   $\mathbb{W}f6$  39. $\mathbb{W}b8+$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  40. $\mathbb{W}a7$   $\mathbb{W}xh6$  41. $\mathbb{W}xa5$  and once again the white passed pawn will decide the outcome;

A2c) 36... $\mathbb{Q}f7!$  37.exf6 (37. $\mathbb{W}c5$   $\mathbb{Q}d5$  38. $\mathbb{W}a7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  39.exf6  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  gives nothing; we have seen this same position with the queen on b7 when the check on f3 was strong) and now 37... $\mathbb{W}xf6?$  38. $\mathbb{W}c7+$  and 37... $\mathbb{Q}xf6?$  38. $\mathbb{W}f4+$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  39. $\mathbb{W}e5$  are hopeless, while 37... $\mathbb{Q}d5!$  38. $\mathbb{W}c5$   $\mathbb{W}c7!$  (but not 38... $\mathbb{Q}xf6?$  39. $\mathbb{W}a7+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  40. $\mathbb{W}b5$  nor 38... $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  39. $\mathbb{W}d4+!$  e5 40. $\mathbb{W}h4+!$  g5 41. $\mathbb{W}e4$  and there are too many weaknesses in the black camp) keeps a solid position which is only slightly worse.

B) 35. $\mathbb{W}c4!$  is an excellent move based on a tactic:

B1) 35...d5? 36. $\mathbb{W}c5$  (with the idea of 37. $\mathbb{W}a7$ ) is losing, for example: 36...dxe4 37. $\mathbb{W}a7$   $\mathbb{W}f8$  38. $\mathbb{W}d7$  and White will win the e6-pawn (38... $\mathbb{W}f7$  39. $\mathbb{W}c8+$ ) and the game;

B2) 35... $\mathbb{Q}f7$  36. $\mathbb{W}b5$  (36.d5 e5 transposes into the game) 36... $\mathbb{W}c7$  37. $\mathbb{Q}c4!$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  (37...d5! is preferable, even if after 38.exd5 exd5 39. $\mathbb{Q}xd5+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  40. $\mathbb{W}xd5+$  the queen ending is hopeless because of the pawn less and the weaknesses

needing defence) 38.♗xe6! and without this tactic, which I mentioned above, White would be at a dead end, whereas he is in actual fact winning because 38...♗xe6 loses the queen to 39.♔e8+ ♔e7 40.d5+.

### 35.d5!

This fine strategic move creates a strong square on e6 for the bishop and thus puts pressure on the black kingside. This is in addition to the assets we have already discussed on the other wing, and, without any analysis, we can say that White has a big advantage.

### 35...e5

Stronger than 35...exd5 36.exd5, which opens the e-file, for example: 36...♗f7 (36...♗xd5? 37.♘c4 loses the knight) 37.♔e3 ♔e7 38.♗b6 and the a5-pawn is lost.

### 36.♗c4

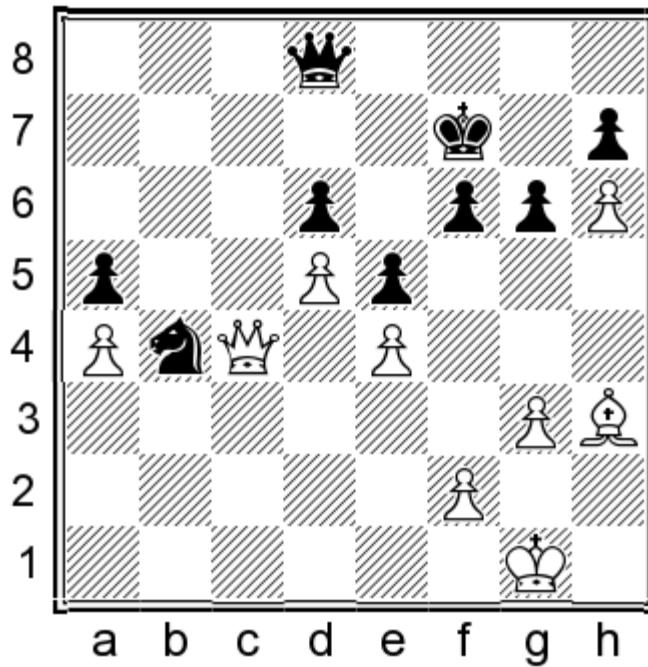
36.♘h3!? allows the knight to be repositioned, but after 36...♗d3 (36...♗f7 should transpose into the game) 37.♗c6! ♗c5 38.♘c8! the possibility of playing ♗c6-a8-a7 poses Black problems.

### 36...♗f7

Defending the e8-square, which makes it possible to answer 37.♗b5 with 37...♗c7.

Less good was 36...♗d7? 37.♗b5! (37.♘h2 followed by 38.♘h3 looks like the game) 37...♗d8 (or 37...♗xb5 38.axb5 and the pawn will queen) 38.♗b7 ♗f8 and now 39.♗c7!, which eyes the a5- and d6-pawns and prevents 39...♗c2, is the clearest win.

### 37.♘h3



An ideal position to illustrate play on both wings and the knight's difficulties to participate in the play while it is tied to its outpost.

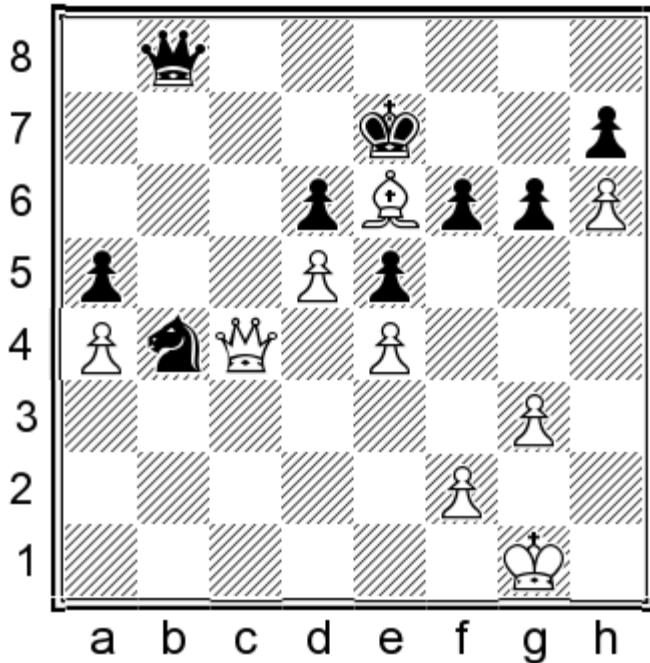
### 37...♗b8 38.♗e6+ ♔e7?

38... $\mathbb{Q}f8$ ! avoids immediate disaster and retains some practical chances, but it is probably too late to save the game.

Let's look at an illustrative line:

**39. $\mathbb{Q}h2$**  Protecting the king from checks before playing f2-f4; 39. $\mathbb{Q}g2$ , more natural, is also good; we will see a difference between the two king positions in our main variation, but the game could develop otherwise. **39... $\mathbb{W}b7$ !** **40. $\mathbb{W}c3$ !** 40.f4?  $\mathbb{W}a6$ ! 41. $\mathbb{W}c7$   $\mathbb{W}e2+$  leads to a draw. **40... $\mathbb{W}b8$ !** (he c7- and c8-squares have to be controlled and any king move allows 41. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ !). **41.f4!** After this move Black is going to have trouble with the safety of his king, but in return he will gain some possibilities of giving a perpetual check. **41... $\mathbb{Q}a6$ !** There is no point thinking of keeping the material balance any more. **42.fxe5  $\mathbb{Q}c5$ !** 42...fxe5 43. $\mathbb{W}f3+$  and 42...dxe5 43. $\mathbb{W}c6$  are losing. **43.exd6  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$  44. $\mathbb{W}d4$ !** Attacking the knight that covers the f6-pawn. **44... $\mathbb{W}b1$  44... $\mathbb{W}b4$  45. $\mathbb{W}xb4$  axb4 46.a5  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  47.a6  $\mathbb{Q}b5$  48.d6!** prevents the advance of the black passed pawn. **45. $\mathbb{W}c4$ !  $\mathbb{Q}xd6$  45... $\mathbb{W}b2+$  46. $\mathbb{Q}h3$   $\mathbb{Q}g5+$  47. $\mathbb{Q}g4$  gives nothing. **46. $\mathbb{W}c7$**  and White wins. If the white king was on g2 (see the beginning of the commentary) 46... $\mathbb{W}e4+$  would draw.**

It is clear that correctly calculating such a variation would be difficult for anyone. The point is to show the different themes in the position.



**39. $\mathbb{Q}g8$ !**

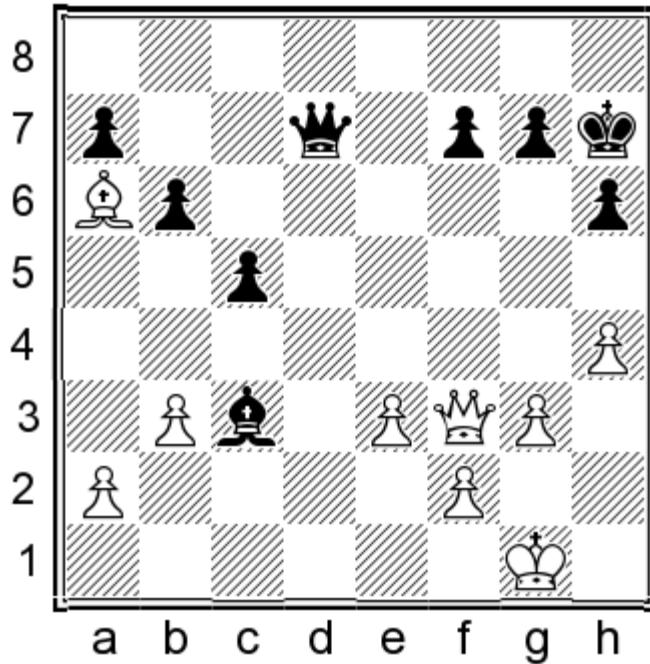
A nice sacrifice that concludes the game.

**39...f5**

After 39... $\mathbb{W}xg8$  White will capture the d6-pawn and then queen his own d-pawn. Tringov indicates a long but simple variation: 40. $\mathbb{W}c7+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  41. $\mathbb{W}c8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  42. $\mathbb{W}d7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  43. $\mathbb{W}xd6+$   $\mathbb{Q}e8$  44. $\mathbb{W}b8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  45. $\mathbb{W}c7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  46. $\mathbb{W}c8+$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$  47. $\mathbb{W}d7+$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$  48.d6 with a white win; there could follow 48... $\mathbb{W}f7$  49. $\mathbb{W}c8+$   $\mathbb{W}e8$  50.d7.

**40. $\mathbb{Q}xh7$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  41.exf5  $\mathbb{W}h8$  42.fxg6**

Black resigned.



*White to move*

What do you think of the position? What is the best white move? What can you say about the various black defences?

Show/Hide Solution

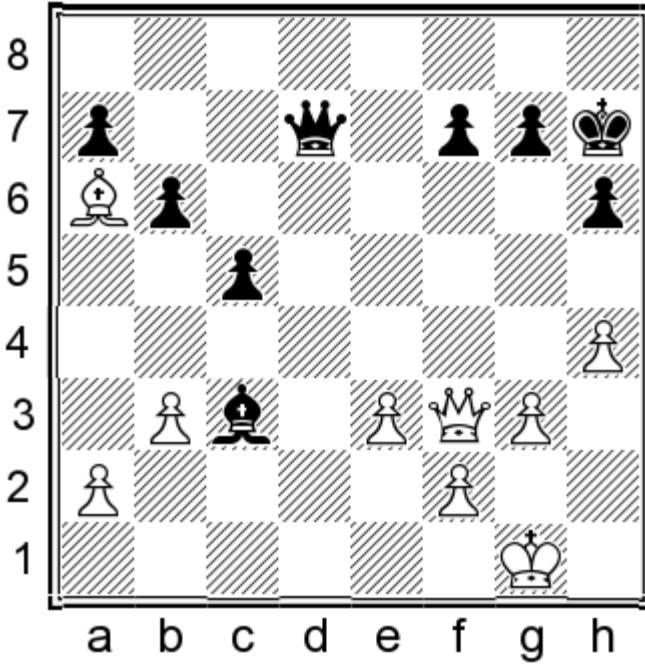
87

Ulf Andersson 2590

Nana Ioseliani 2300

Rio de Janeiro 1985 (7)

1.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$  d5 2. d4  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  3. c4 e6 4.  $\mathbb{Q}c3$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}g5$  h6 6.  $\mathbb{Q}xf6$   $\mathbb{Q}xf6$  7.  $\mathbb{Q}c1$  0-0 8. e3 b6 9.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$   $\mathbb{Q}b7$  10. 0-0 dxc4 11.  $\mathbb{Q}xc4$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}e2$  c5 13.  $\mathbb{Q}fd1$   $\mathbb{Q}e7$  14.  $\mathbb{Q}a6$   $\mathbb{Q}c6$  15. d5 exd5 16.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}ad8$  18.  $\mathbb{Q}cd1$   $\mathbb{Q}e5$  19.  $\mathbb{Q}xe5$   $\mathbb{Q}xe5$  20. b3  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  21.  $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  22.  $\mathbb{Q}xd8+$   $\mathbb{Q}xd8$  23.  $\mathbb{Q}h5$   $\mathbb{Q}f6$  24. g3  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  25. h4  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  26.  $\mathbb{Q}f3$   $\mathbb{Q}c3$



*White to move*

Due to the opposite-coloured bishops White can attack the black king, in particular on the b1-h7 diagonal and on the eighth rank. The f7-pawn is weak, but its advance would extend the a2-g8 diagonal for the white pieces.

The white pawn majority is difficult to mobilize without allowing counterplay and the black one has no prospects.

In the immediate future Black would like to play ...g7-g6 followed by ... $\hat{Q}$ h7-g7 to keep the king safe while protecting the f7-pawn.

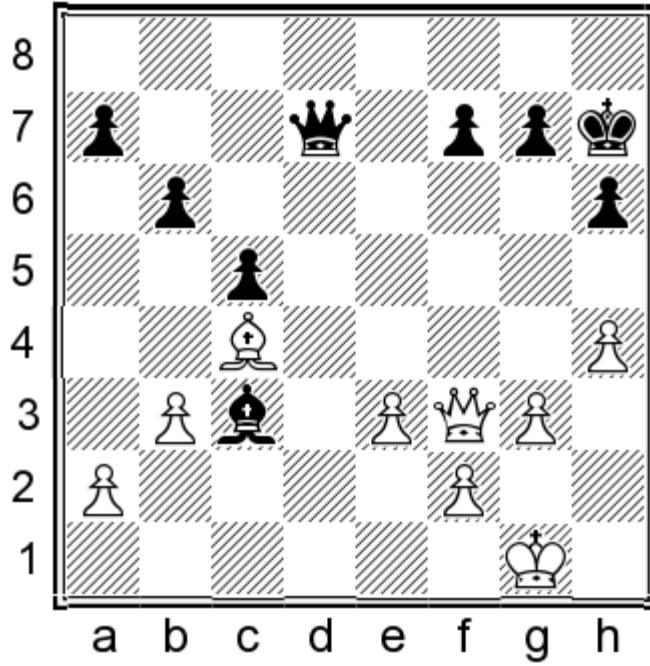
**27. $\hat{Q}$ c4!**

This prevents 27...g6 while placing the bishop on an ideal square.

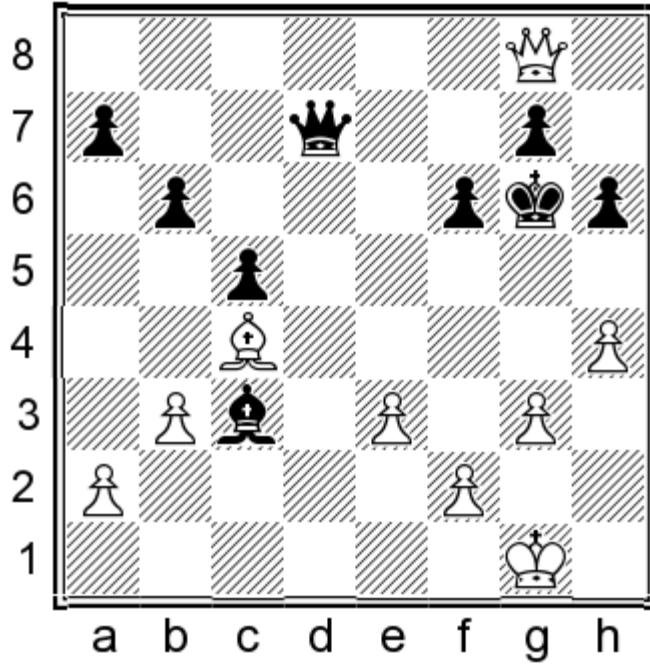
The strategically desirable move 27.h5, to increase the pressure on the light squares, allows 27...g5!. The king will then go to f8 and either the bishop will go to g7 or the queen to d6, should the h6-pawn need defending. To make progress, White would have to advance his e- and f-pawns, which would expose his king.

The f7-pawn is important for the safety of the king and also to prevent the e3-pawn from becoming passed, which is why, after 28.hxg6+, Black must avoid playing 28...fxg6? and prefer 28... $\hat{Q}$ xg6! with the idea of ... $\hat{Q}$ g6-g7-f8 and a solid position.

Let's look at the three possible ways to defend the f7-pawn: 27...f6, 27... $\hat{Q}$ f6 and 27... $\hat{Q}$ g8 (the game continuation).

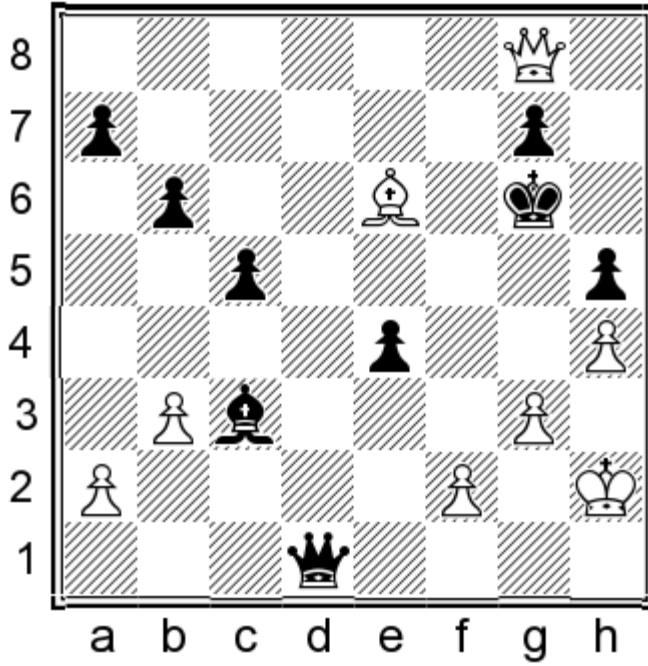


A) 27...f6? All the pawns are now safe on dark squares, but not the king: the a2-g8 diagonal and the g6-square have both been weakened. 28.♔a8 28.h5 is also possible. 28...♗g6 29.♗g8



*analysis diagram*

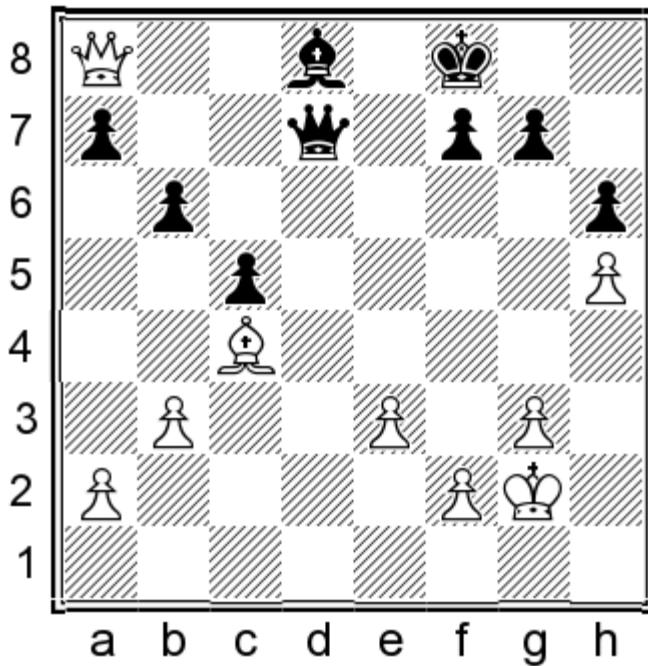
One threat is 30.♕e6 and in the end Black must put a pawn back onto a light square at the risk of losing it to avoid being mated. 29...h5 After 29...f5 30.♕e6 ♔e7 31.♗c8! the f5-pawn is lost, as 31...♗f6? 32.♗e8+ leads to mate. White is winning. 30.e4! f5! To avoid ♕c4-e6-f5+ followed by ♗g8-h8#. 31.♕e6 ♖d1+ 32.♔h2! The king is safe from checks here. 32...fxe4



*analysis diagram*

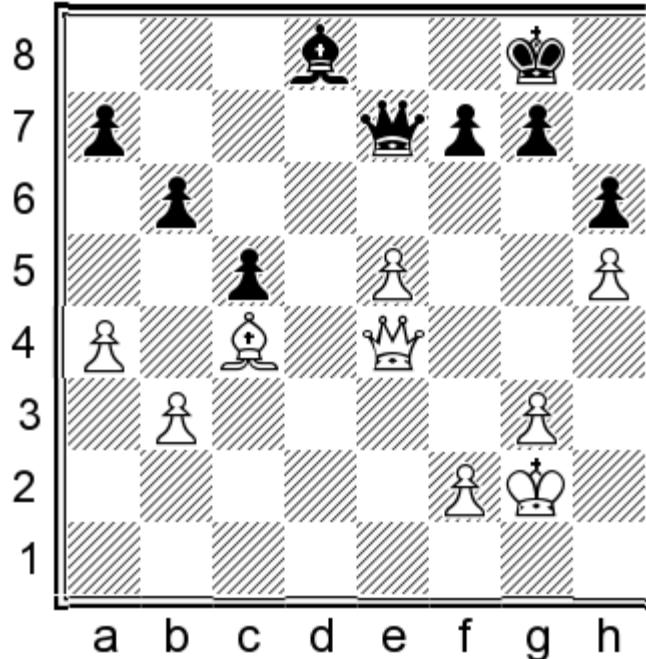
33.  $\mathbb{W}e8+$ ! Keeping the possibility of going to h8. After 33.  $\mathbb{W}f7+?$   $\mathbb{Q}h6$  34.  $\mathbb{W}f4+!$  (34.  $\mathbb{Q}f5?$   $\mathbb{W}d6!$ ) 34...  $\mathbb{Q}h7$  35.  $\mathbb{Q}f5+$   $g6$  36.  $\mathbb{Q}xe4$   $\mathbb{W}d7$  37.  $\mathbb{W}g5$   $\mathbb{W}e6$  38.  $\mathbb{W}xh5+ \mathbb{Q}g7$  39.  $\mathbb{W}e2$  White is a pawn up and is much better, but not winning as his threats against the black king have disappeared. 33...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  Or 33...  $\mathbb{Q}h6$  34.  $\mathbb{Q}f5$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  35.  $\mathbb{W}h8\#$ . 34.  $\mathbb{Q}g8$   $\mathbb{W}d6$  35.  $\mathbb{W}f7+ \mathbb{Q}e5$  36.  $\mathbb{W}f4+ \mathbb{Q}d4$  37.  $\mathbb{W}xd6\#$ ;

B) 27...  $\mathbb{Q}f6$  With the intention of blocking a check on the eighth rank with the bishop. The queen is well placed on the seventh rank, defending both the a7- and f7-pawns. The disadvantage of this defence lies in the passivity of the bishop and the impossibility of quickly advancing the g7-pawn that defends it. 28.  $h5!$   $\mathbb{Q}g8$  29.  $\mathbb{W}a8+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  A concession, as the bishop loses even more mobility, but 29...  $\mathbb{Q}h7?$  30.  $\mathbb{W}f8!$   $\mathbb{W}e7$  31.  $\mathbb{W}xe7!$   $\mathbb{Q}xe7$  32.  $\mathbb{W}xf7$  wins for White who has two extra pawns in his majority to add to the confinement of the black king. 30.  $\mathbb{Q}g2$   $\mathbb{Q}f8$



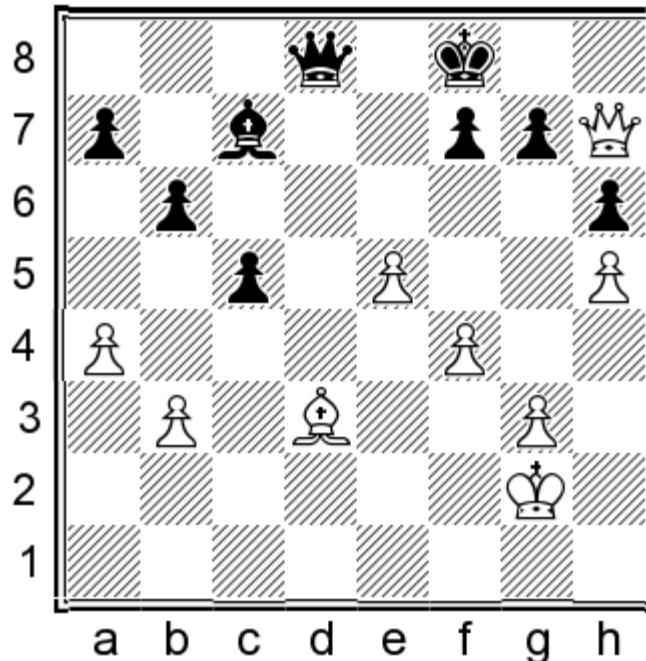
*analysis diagram*

**31.a4!** White has plenty of time for useful preparatory moves even though they may later prove irrelevant. The a4-pawn prevents a possible ...b6-b5 and allows the bishop to go to b5. **31...♝g8 32.e4 ♘f8 33.e5 ♘g8 34.♗e4** With the threat of 35.e6. **34...♛e7! 34...♝h8?** 35.♗d3 ♘g8 36.♗h7+ ♘f8 37.♗h8+ ♘e7 38.♗b5! followed by a check on e8 and 34...♝f8? 35.♗h7 ♘c7 36.♗h8+ ♘e7 37.♗xg7 are both losing.



*analysis diagram*

**35.f4!** A clear win is obtained by preparing the invasion of the queen on h7, but, at the moment, 35.♗d3 ♘f8 36.♗h7? allows 36...♛xe5. Therefore White first protects the e5-pawn, considering that he is able to cope with this slight weakening of his royal position; 35.e6? fxe6 36.♗xe6+ is inconclusive. **35...♝c7 36.♗d3! ♘f8 37.♗h7 ♛d8**



*analysis diagram*

**38.♗b5!** With the threat of 39.♕h8+ ♔e7 40.♕xg7. The black queen cannot seek to give a perpetual check, for his king would be mated after ♕h7-h8+ followed by ♕h8-e8. White is winning.

Returning to the game after 27.♗c4:

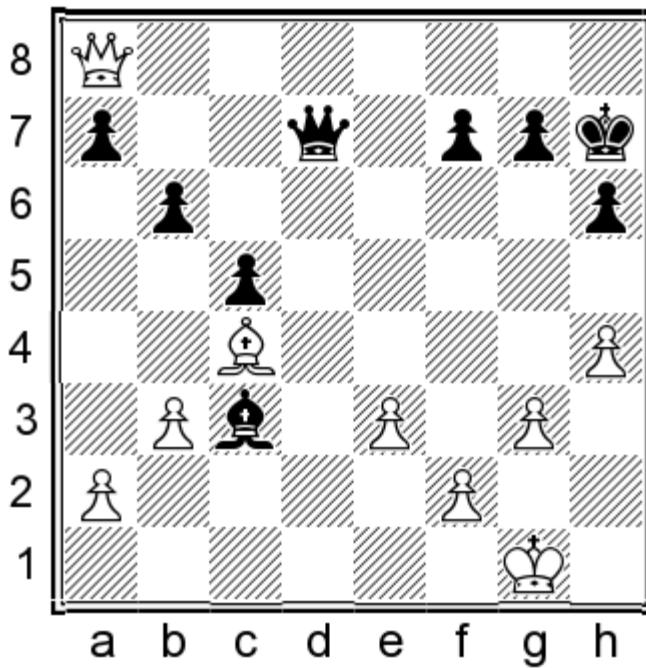
**27...♝g8**

The king might possibly escape to the centre and the bishop keeps its freedom, but the f7-pawn remains vulnerable.

**28.♕a8+!**

28.h5! is also good, as after 28...♔f8 29.♕a8+ ♔e7 30.a4! (with the idea of 31.♗b5 followed by 32.♕e8+) Black has problems with the f7-pawn, those on the queenside and the safety of his king; he is much worse. Instead of 28...♔f8, 28...♗f6 transposes into variation B (27...♗f6 28.h5 ♔g8).

**28...♚h7**



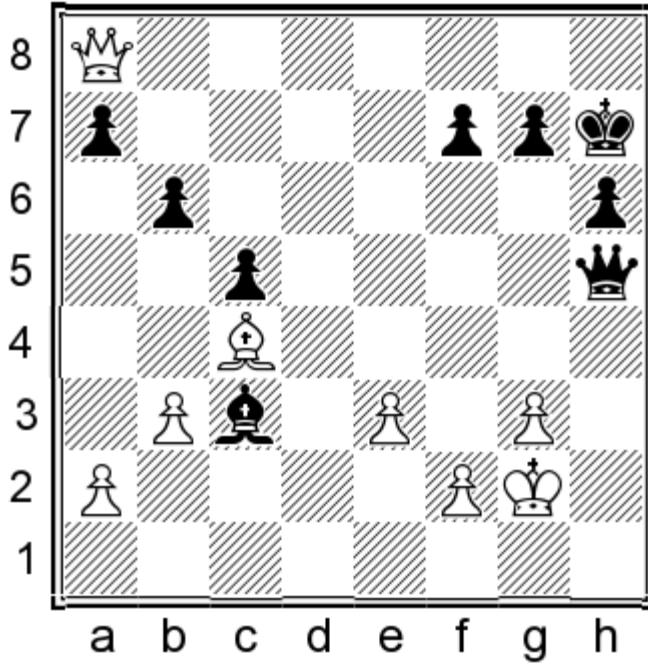
**29.h5!**

This is the normal move to apply pressure to the light squares, but it requires precise calculation as the h5-pawn is hanging.

29.♕f8 ♔g6! gives nothing.

**29...♕f5**

A) 29...♕d1+ 30.♗g2 ♕xh5 and now:



*analysis diagram*

A1) 31.  $\mathbb{W}e8!$  (threatening 32.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  and 32.  $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ ) 31...  $\mathbb{W}e5!$  32.  $\mathbb{W}xf7$  (threatening 33.  $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ ; Black must continue to control the e8-square to prevent 33.  $\mathbb{W}g8+$   $\mathbb{K}g6$  34.  $\mathbb{W}e8+!$   $\mathbb{K}h7$  35.  $\mathbb{W}g8+$ ) 32...  $\mathbb{W}b8$  33.  $e4$  and the attack on the black king in conjunction with the advance of the e-pawn gives White the win;

A2) 31.  $\mathbb{W}xa7$   $\mathbb{W}f5!$  (with the idea of 32...  $\mathbb{Q}e1$ ) 32.  $\mathbb{W}xf7!$   $\mathbb{W}xf7$  33.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  does not seem to be sufficient for the win. A good defensive plan is to then play ... $g7-g6$  followed by ... $h6-h5$  and ... $\mathbb{Q}h7-g7$  while attacking the kingside pawns with the bishop to force the white king to defend them or else encourage them to move onto light squares.

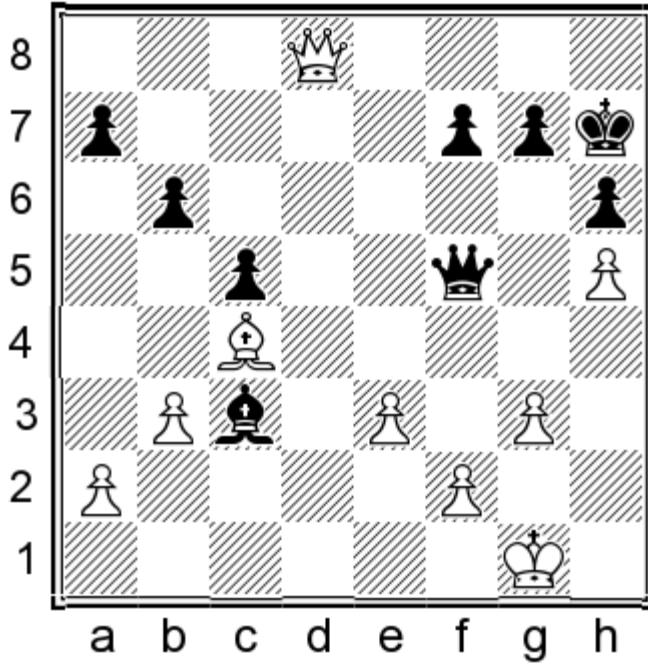
B) 29...  $g5$  allows 30.  $\mathbb{W}f8$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  31.  $\mathbb{W}xf7$   $\mathbb{W}xf7$  32.  $\mathbb{Q}xf7$  and the free e- and f-pawns are decisive;

C) 29...  $\mathbb{W}e7!$  hinders 30.  $\mathbb{W}f8$ . White has the choice between 30.  $\mathbb{Q}d3+$ , to create a passed e-pawn, and 30.  $\mathbb{W}d5$  to continue to put pressure on the f7-pawn. In both cases he has excellent winning chances.

### 30. $\mathbb{W}d8!$

Threatening 31.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$ .

30.  $\mathbb{W}e8?$  allows 30...  $\mathbb{Q}e1!$  31.  $f4$  (or 31.  $f3$   $\mathbb{W}xf3$ ) 31...  $\mathbb{W}c2$  and the position is drawn.



**30...♝f6**

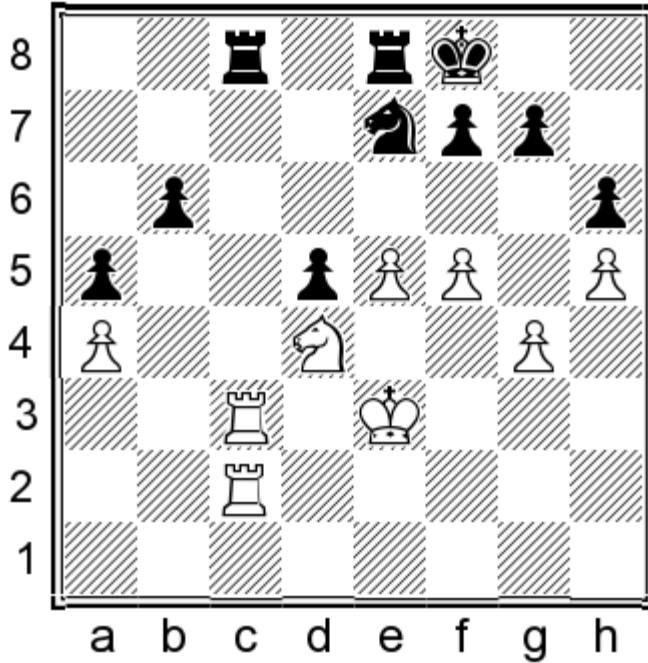
Black thus loses the ability to play his bishop to e1 and 31.♕e8! will be decisive.

- A) 30...♗xh5? loses the bishop after 31.♗d3+, but even without this tactic 31.♗d7 should be enough to win the game;
- B) 30...♗b1+!? sets an instructive trap: 31.♔h2! (31.♔g2!? ♗e4+ 32.♔h2 ♗f6! 33.♗d7 ♗e7 34.♗xe7 ♗xe7 35.♗xf7 leads to a winning endgame, mostly due to the confinement of the black king) 31...♗xa2 and now the natural move 32.♗d3+? does not work because of 32...g6 33.hxg6+ ♔g7 34.♔g2 ♔e1 and the f2-pawn is not defensible, which indicates (this is a general rule that did not show itself too much in this game) that the initiative can quickly change sides in opposite-coloured bishops positions. Instead of 32.♗d3+ White wins by 32.♗d3+ ♔g8 33.♗f5! (defending the f2-pawn and threatening to capture on f7) 33...♝f6 34.♗g2 ♗d2 35.♗d5.

**31.♕e8!**

The light squares are no longer defensible.

**31...♗xh5 32.♗xf7 ♗d1+ 33.♔g2 h5 34.♗g8+ ♔h6 35.♗h8+ 1-0**



*White to move*

How does White win?

Show/Hide Solution

**88**

**Efim Bogoljubow**

**Rudolf Spielmann**

Semmering m 1932 (8)

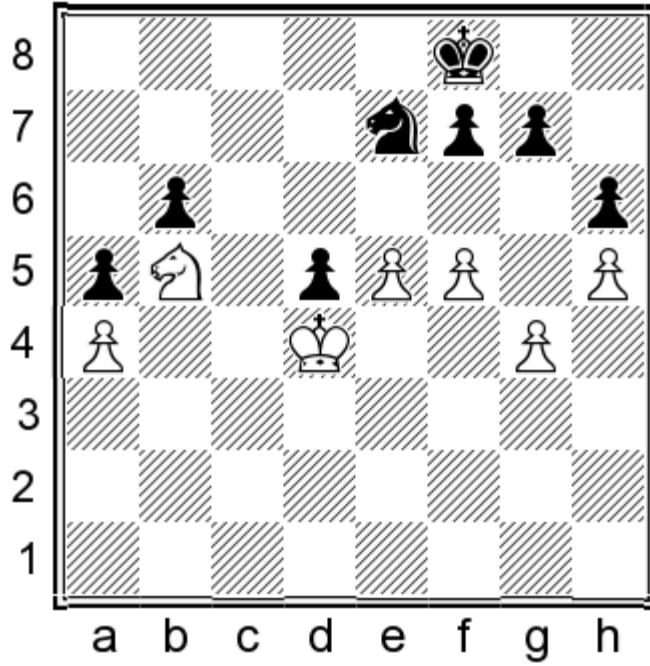
White is winning despite the missing pawn, but he must still play precisely.

**34.♘b5?**

A mistake that allows Black to save himself by sacrificing the knight on f5.

A) 34.♗xc8 ♘xc8 (and not 34...♗xc8? 35.f6!) 35.♗d3 was decisive, even if there was still a little work to do;

B) 34.♗c7 ♗xc7 35.♗c7 ♗c8 36.♗xc8+! (36.♗b7 is also good) 36...♘xc8 37.♘b5 ♘e7 38.♘d4 also wins and we will examine this instructive variation in detail.

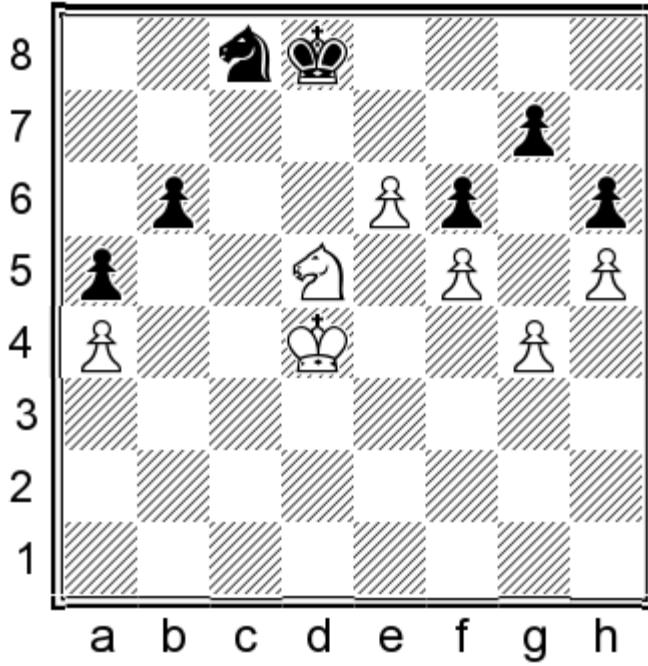


### *analysis diagram*

The knight is a short-range piece that suffers when it is confined. The d5-pawn will soon be lost and White's large space advantage on the kingside allows a breakthrough involving g4-g5 followed by f5-f6 (or possibly f5-f6 first), which will play an important role. Let's look:

B1) 38... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  39. $\mathbb{Q}c7+$   $\mathbb{Q}d7$  40. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  (40... $\mathbb{Q}c6+$  41. $\mathbb{Q}e4$  loses the b6-pawn, and 40... $\mathbb{Q}c8$  allows 41.g5! hxg5 42.f6! gxf6 43.h6) 41. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  f6 (on 41... $\mathbb{Q}c7$ , 42.g5 leads to the breakthrough that we have just seen, and 42.e6 is also suitable) 42.e6+  $\mathbb{Q}c7$  43.e7!  $\mathbb{Q}d7$  44.e8=+= $\mathbb{Q}xe8$  45. $\mathbb{Q}c6$  and the two black pawns will drop;

B2) 38...f6 (allowing a protected passed pawn to appear on e6 in order to reduce the risk of a breakthrough) 39.e6 (39.exf6 gxf6 40. $\mathbb{Q}c7$  is also good) 39... $\mathbb{Q}e8$  40. $\mathbb{Q}c7+$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  41. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}c8!$  (41... $\mathbb{Q}xd5$  42. $\mathbb{Q}xd5$   $\mathbb{Q}c7$  43.e7! offers less resistance).



### *analysis diagram*

It is sometimes said that knight endgames are played like pawn endgames, which is due to the fact that a knight cannot move and at the same time keep control of a square. Here is a good example: the black knight is tied to the defence of the b6-pawn and White will win thanks to a triangulation which is typical of pawn endgames.

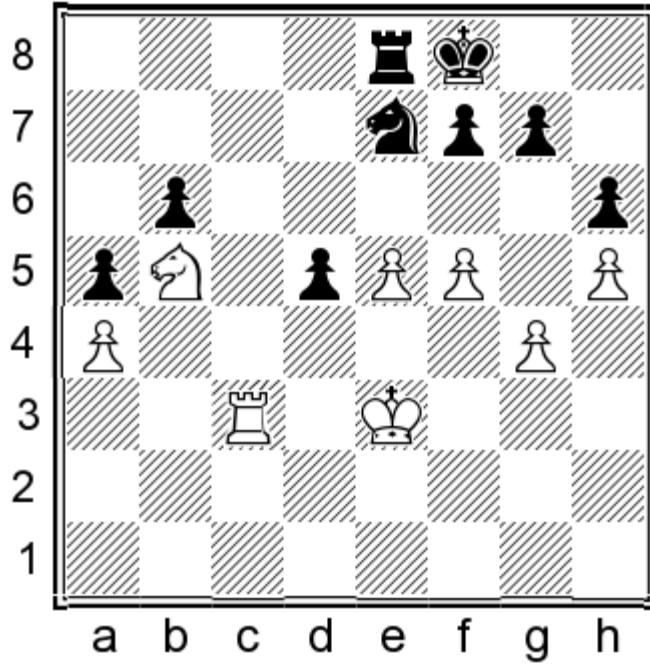
Let us see the variations:

B2a) 42.♘c3? ♜c7 43.♗d5 ♜e7+ leads nowhere;

B2b) 42.♘c3! (or 42.♗d3!) initiates the decisive triangulation manoeuvre 42...♔e8 43.♗d3! ♜d8 44.♗d4! ♔e8 and after having pushed the black king back to e8 White wins, for example: 45.♘c3 ♜e7 (or 45...♜d8 46.♗d5 ♜c7 47.♗b5+ ♜b7 48.♗d6+) 46.♘c4 ♜d8 47.♗d5 ♜c8 48.♗b5;

B2c) 42.♘c4, with the same idea, allows 42...♗d6+! and it is necessary to repeat moves with 43.♗d4! ♜c8 (43...b5 44.♗c5!) before taking the right path, because the immediate 43.♘c3? b5! gives Black counterchances unnecessarily.

**34.♗b5? ♜xc3 35.♗xc3**



**35...Qxf5!**

Having an extra pawn increases the opportunities to sacrifice material.

**36.gxf5 Qxe5+ 37.Qf4 Qe4+ 38.Qg3 Qxa4**

Safer was 38...Qe7 to prevent the king from being confined and possibly attack the white pawns.

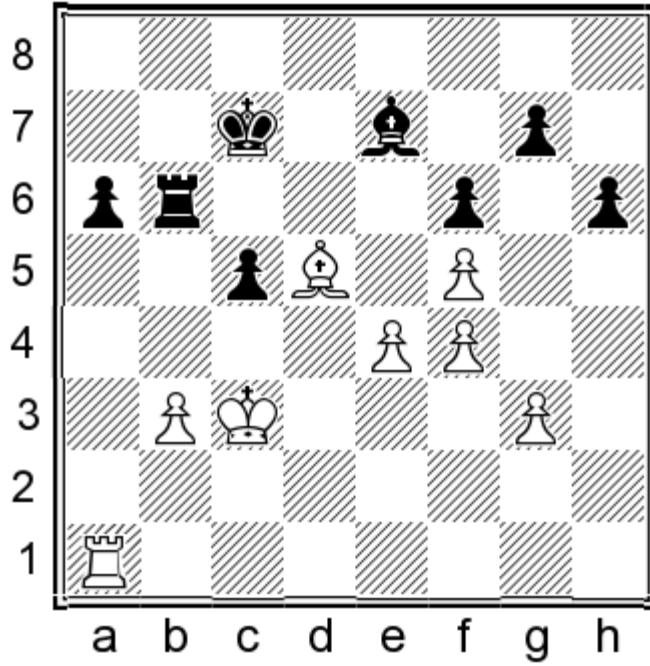
**39.f6**

39.Qc7! f6 40.Qd6! with the threat of 41.Qf7+ Qg8 42.Qe7 followed by 43.Qe8+ and 44.Qf7 requires precise defence: 40...Ra3+! 41.Qf4 Ra4+ 42.Qe3 Rh4! and Black will take the h5-pawn just in time to save the game.

**39...Qc4**

39...gxf6 is also good.

**40.Qe3 Qe4 41.Qc3 Qc4 1/2-1/2**



*White to move*

Leaving the e4-e5 push aside for the moment, what plan does White have at his disposal in order to progress?

Show/Hide Solution

**89**

**Amos Burn**

**Wilhelm Steinitz**

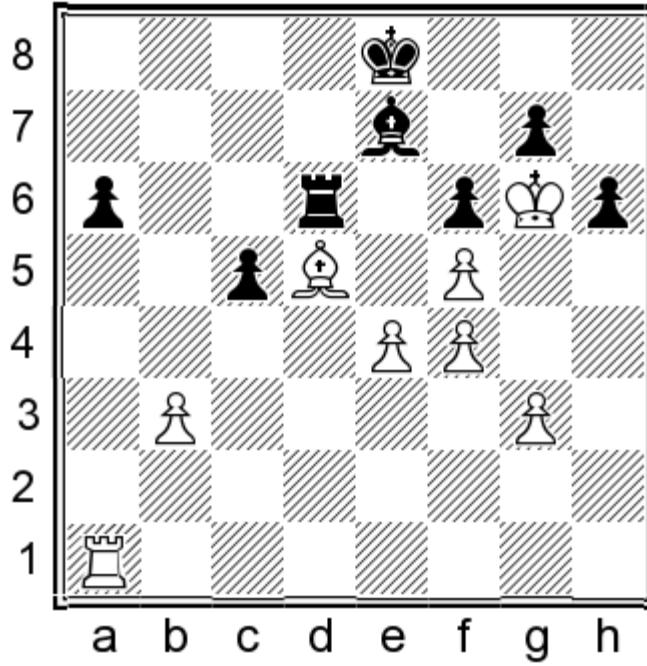
Cologne 1898 (5)

**44.♗d3!**

The king heads for g6. The e4- and f5-pawns consolidate the position of the white bishop while the g3- and f4-pawns limit the scope of the black bishop. To maintain his grip Burn delays the execution of his main plan, advancing the e-pawn, as long as he sees another way to make progress. This is a typical way of dealing with a position where the opponent lacks counterplay.

44.e5 fxe5 45.fxe5 ♜g5 is also interesting, but gives the black bishop some room to breathe.

**44.♗d3! ♜b8 45.♗e2 ♜d6 46.♗f3 ♜c8 47.♗g4 ♜d8 48.♗h5 ♜e8 49.♗g6**



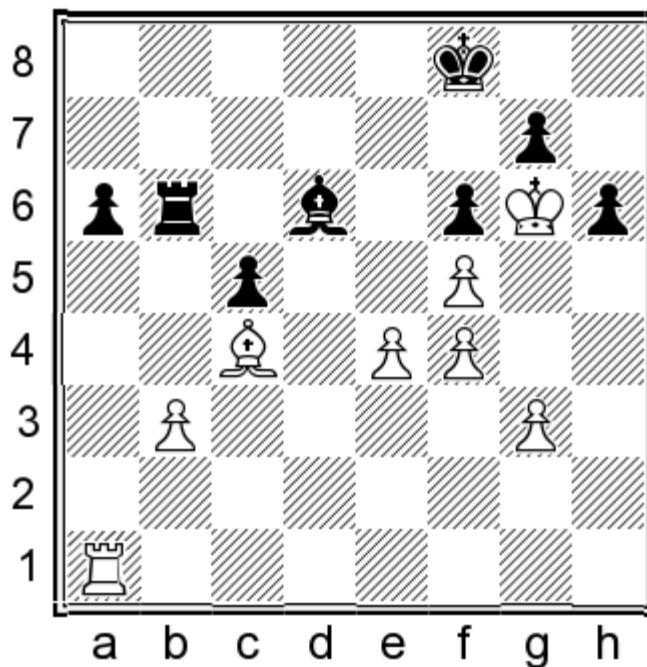
Black must protect the g7- and c5-pawns and prevent the a6-pawn from being taken without an exchange of rooks. He must also keep an eye on the consequences of the e4-e5 breakthrough and prevent an invasion of the opposing king or rook. All these obligations imposed on the black pieces reduce their mobility and the zugzwang motif will appear.

**49...Qf8**

49...Qf8 50.Qc4 Qb6 clearly loses, even after the exchange of rooks: 51.Qxa6!? Qxa6 52.Qxa6 Qe7 53.Qb5! Black is in zugzwang and will lose the f7-square, the g7-pawn and the game.

**50.Qa5 Qb6 51.Qc4 Qd6 52.Qa1**

52.Qxa6? Qxb3, with counterplay against the kingside pawns, and 52.Qxa6? Qxa6 both let the win slip away.



**52...♝e7**

The b6-rook is on its best square, watching the a6- and b3-pawns, and the king cannot move, so Black plays with his bishop.

52...♝c7! was more resistant, with the idea of answering 53.♜d1 by 53...♜d6 and to keep this defensive possibility by maintaining the bishop on the c7- and b8-squares. The win is then achieved by forcing the bishop to go to e7, for example: 53.♜a3! (threatening 54.♝xa6) 53...♜d6! 54.♜a5! (54.♝xa6? c4) 54...♝e7 (the only move) 55.♜a1 ♜d6 56.♜d1 as in the game.

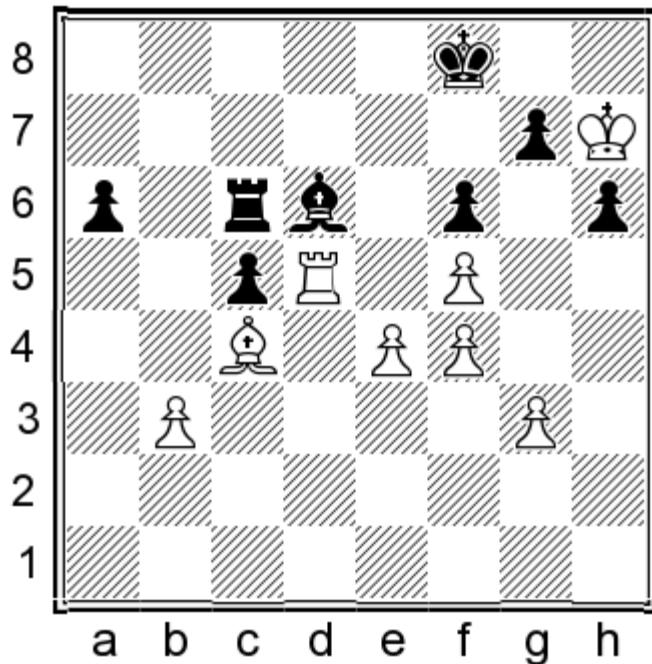
**53.♝h7!**

Burn waits for the bishop to be on d6 before seizing the d-file and plans to push e4-e5 without allowing ...f6xe5 to be check.

**53...♜d6 54.♜d1! ♜c6**

54...♝e7 55.♜d7 ♜d6 56.♜a7 does not save Black who must also protect the eighth rank now.

**55.♜d5**



Threatening 56.e5.

**55...h5!**

This is both a trap and a search for counterplay on the dark squares.

**56.♝g6!**

And not 56.e5? fxe5 57.fxe5 ♜xe5 with the threat of 58...♜h6#.

**56...a5**

Or else 56...h4!? 57.gxh4 ♜xf4 58.♕d7 ♜h6 59.h5 with the idea of 60.♕f7+ ♜e8 61.♕xg7 and White wins.

**57.♕xh5 ♜b6 58.e5**

Finally!

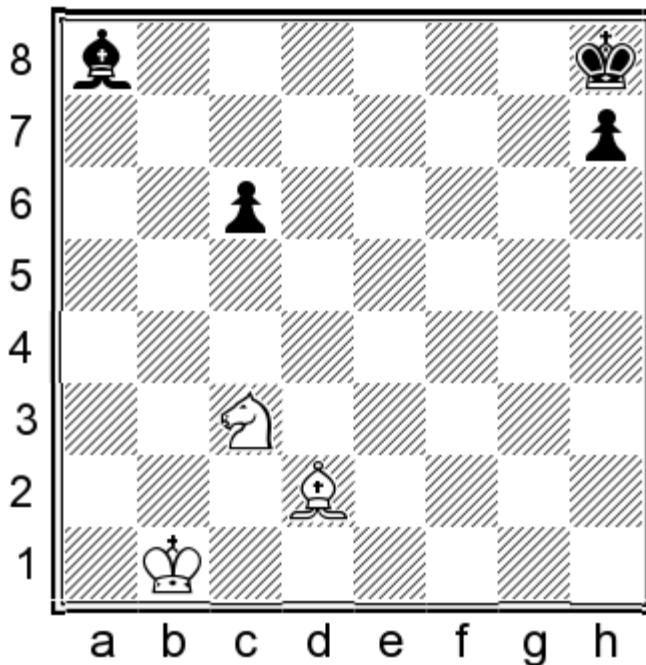
**58...fxe5 59.fxe5 ♜e7 60.♕d7 ♜b8 61.♕a7 ♜d8 62.♕xa5 ♜d2 63.♕a8+ ♜d8 64.♕a7 ♜d1 65.f6 gxf6 66.exf6 ♜d8**

66...♜xf6 67.♕f7+

**67.g4 ♜g1 68.g5 ♜g3 69.♕g6 ♜e8 70.♕b5+ ♜f8 71.♕f7+ ♜g8 72.♕c4**

Black resigned.

**90**



*White to move*

White to play and win.

What strategic themes will appear in the Solution? You can also solve the study if you wish...

Show/Hide Solution

**90**

**Study by Alexey Troitsky**

‘Shakhmatny Listok’ 1929

There is often a surprising move in the solution to a study. This is not the case in this classic, where the only surprise, although it is sizeable, is that White is actually winning in the initial position.

The strategic themes that we will observe, emphasized by the reduced material on the board, are the blockade (for the two pawns), the confinement of a piece (for the bishop and the black king), an attack in the presence of opposite-

coloured bishops and play on just one colour complex. We can probably find other themes or name these differently.

The white pieces are far away from the black king and the presence of the a8-bishop should normally ensure a draw... except that there are still two, unfortunately placed, pawns.

The win is achieved by trapping the black bishop or king.

After 1.  $\mathbb{Q}e4$  (with the idea of 2.  $\mathbb{Q}c5$ ) 1... c5!, Black gives his bishop some breathing space and gains time by attacking the knight, thus preventing 2.  $\mathbb{Q}h6$ .

### 1. $\mathbb{Q}h6!$

Black now has the choice between releasing his bishop by 1... c5 or his king by 1...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$ . Let us see these two possibilities in order.

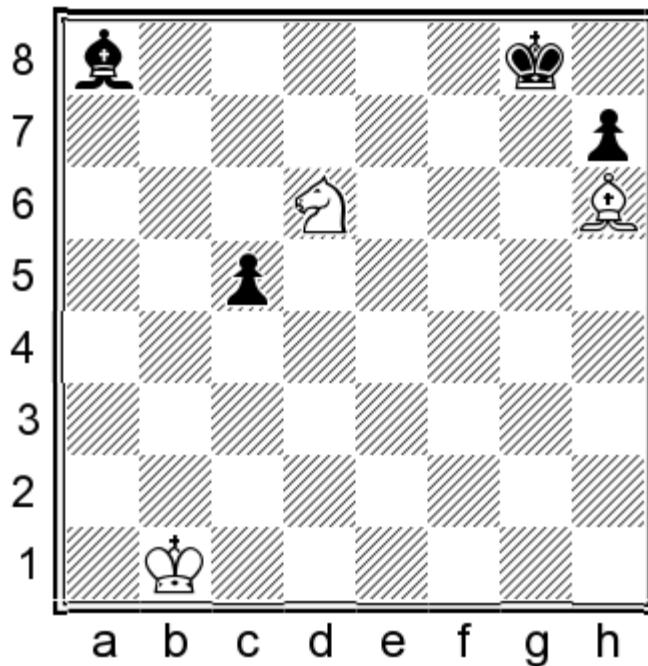
#### A) 1... c5

Threat: 2...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$  followed by 3...  $\mathbb{Q}f7$ .

#### 2. $\mathbb{Q}b5!$

The e4-square is controlled by the black bishop, but a new route opens for the knight.

#### 2... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}d6$ !



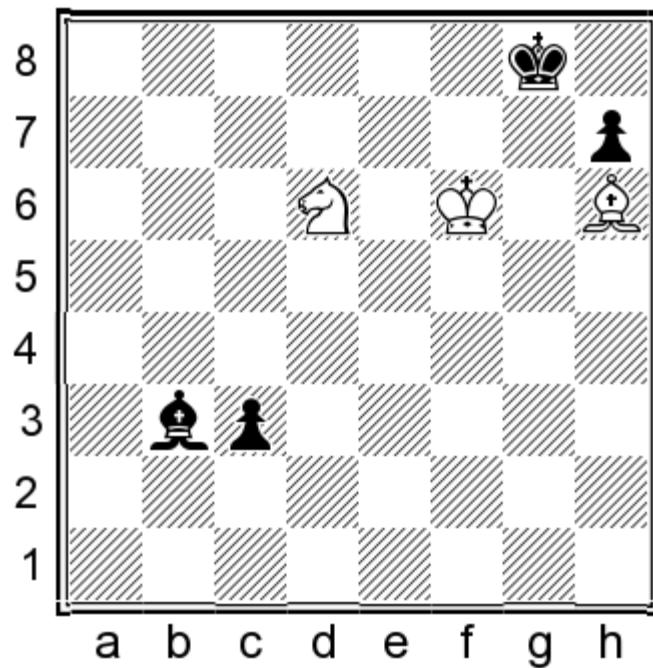
The white minor pieces, aided by the h7-pawn, have locked the black king in a prison and we can note that they are both on dark squares, that is to say, safe from being attacked by the opposing bishop. Play on one colour complex is often a direct consequence of the presence of opposite-coloured bishops. It now remains to be seen whether the participation of the white king will allow White to create mate threats or not.

#### 3... $\mathbb{Q}d5$

Black is preparing to push the c-pawn to create a diversion.

4.  $\hat{Q}c2$  c4 5.  $\hat{Q}c3$   $\hat{Q}f7!$

5...  $\hat{Q}e6?$  6.  $\hat{Q}d4$   $\hat{Q}f7$  7.  $\hat{Q}e5$  c3 8.  $\hat{Q}f6$   $\hat{Q}b3$  and the black bishop cannot stop the knight from going to e7:



*analysis diagram*

9.  $\hat{Q}f5$  c2 10.  $\hat{Q}e7+$   $\hat{Q}h8$  11.  $\hat{Q}g7\#$

6.  $\hat{Q}d4$   $\hat{Q}e6$

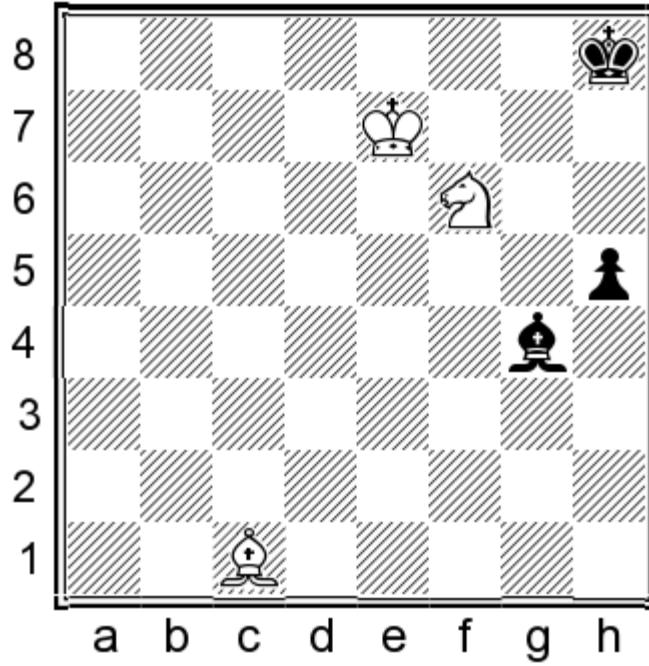
This is an attempt to keep the bishop on the h3-c8 diagonal and hinder the knight from getting to e7 via c8 or f5.

7.  $\hat{Q}e5$

To make progress, the king must give up its attack on the c4-pawn, which frees the black bishop.

7...  $\hat{Q}h3$

The bishop gets out of the way of an attack from the knight, which will soon be on f6. Weaker is 7...  $\hat{Q}g4?!$  8.  $\hat{Q}f6$  c3 9.  $\hat{Q}e7$  c2 10.  $\hat{Q}e8$  c1=  $\hat{Q}$  11.  $\hat{Q}f6+!$  (11.  $\hat{Q}xc1?$  h5 allows the king to escape) 11...  $\hat{Q}h8$  12.  $\hat{Q}xc1$  (the g4-bishop is hanging) 12... h5...



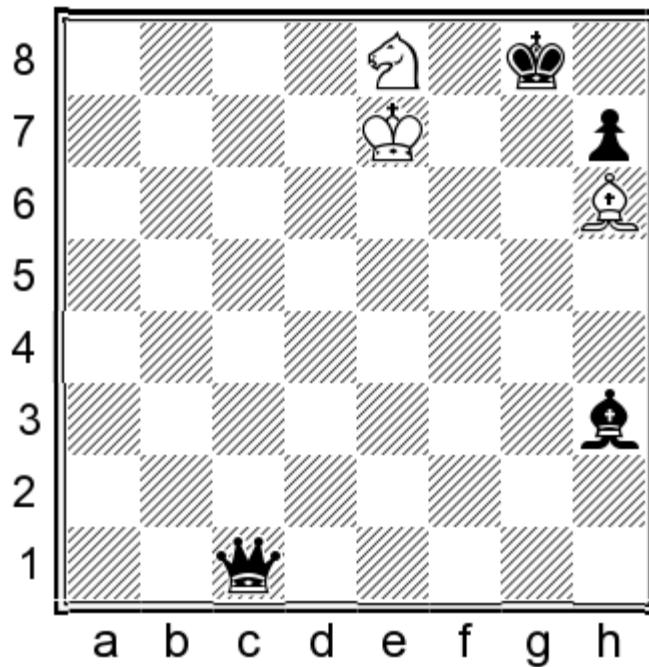
*analysis diagram*

... and White again closes the cage, just in time: 13. $\mathbb{Q}h6!$  (or 13. $\mathbb{Q}f8!$ ) leads to mate after 14. $\mathbb{Q}f8$  followed by 15. $\mathbb{Q}g7$ ; once again the action takes place on the dark squares.

**8. $\mathbb{Q}f6$**

And not 8. $\mathbb{Q}xc4?$   $\mathbb{Q}f7$ .

**8...c3 9. $\mathbb{Q}e7$  c2 10. $\mathbb{Q}e8$  c1=**



## 11. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ !

11.  $\mathbb{Q}xc1?$   $h5$  12.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  13.  $\mathbb{Q}xh5+$  allows Black to draw in a surprising way by 13...  $\mathbb{Q}g8!$  to prevent the white king from approaching and the bishop from permanently settling on h6 (14.  $\mathbb{Q}h6 \mathbb{Q}h7$ ), while 14.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}g7$  leads nowhere. Instead of 13...  $\mathbb{Q}g8$ , 13...  $\mathbb{Q}g7?$  allows the fork 14.  $\mathbb{Q}f4+$  and 13...  $\mathbb{Q}h7?$  leads to mate after 14.  $\mathbb{Q}f7$  (controlling the g6-square), for example: 14...  $\mathbb{Q}f1$  15.  $\mathbb{Q}f6+$   $\mathbb{Q}h8$  16.  $\mathbb{Q}h6 \mathbb{Q}c4+$  17.  $\mathbb{Q}f8$  (we have already seen this pattern) followed by 18.  $\mathbb{Q}g7#$ .

## 11... $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 12. $\mathbb{Q}xc1$

Threatening 12.  $\mathbb{Q}h6$ .

## 12... $\mathbb{Q}g7$ 13. $\mathbb{Q}h5+$ $\mathbb{Q}g8$

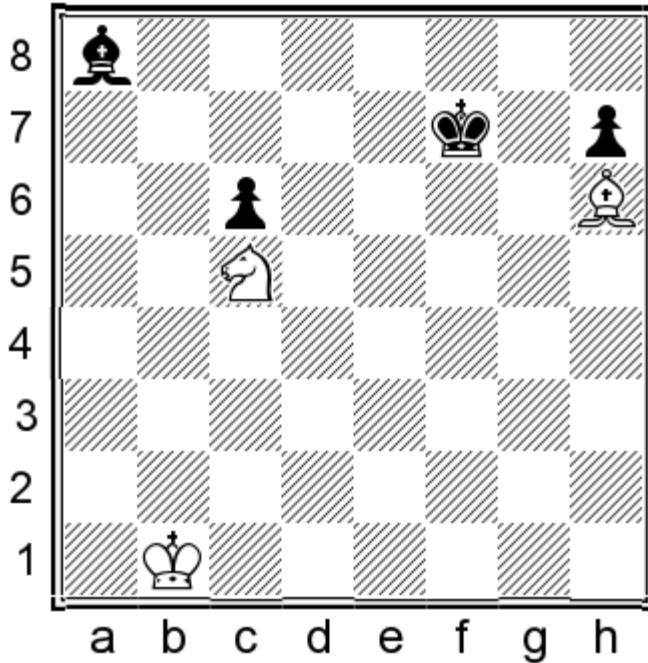
13...  $\mathbb{Q}g6$  again comes up against 14.  $\mathbb{Q}f4+$ . The bishop is misplaced on h3, but it could not go anywhere else.

## 14. $\mathbb{Q}h6 \mathbb{Q}f1$ 15. $\mathbb{Q}f6+$ $\mathbb{Q}h8$ 16. $\mathbb{Q}f8 \mathbb{Q}c4$ 17. $\mathbb{Q}g7#$

### B) 1... $\mathbb{Q}g8$ 2. $\mathbb{Q}e4!$

Threatening 3.  $\mathbb{Q}d6$ , which wins as in the previous variation.

## 2... $\mathbb{Q}f7$ 3. $\mathbb{Q}c5!$



The black king is free and White's only hope lies with the confinement of  $\mathbb{Q}a8$ .

## 3... $\mathbb{Q}g6!$

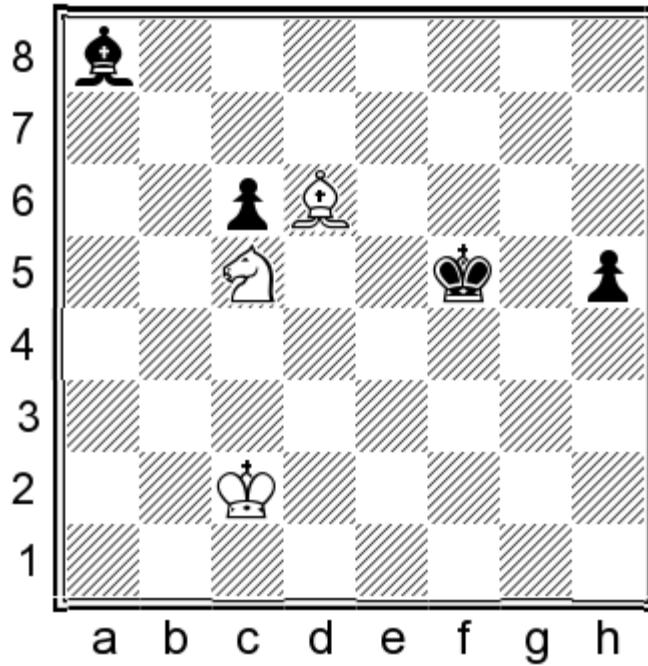
Black will advance the h-pawn to create a diversion in the hope of loosening the grip on the queenside.

After 3...  $\mathbb{Q}e7$  4.  $\mathbb{Q}f4!$   $\mathbb{Q}d8$  5.  $\mathbb{Q}c2 \mathbb{Q}c8$  the white minor pieces form a barrier against the black king, who cannot rescue his bishop from an attack by the opposing king. Now the simplest is to play 6.  $\mathbb{Q}d3$  and go and take the h-pawn first. Black can play his bishop to b7 but will then have to put it back in the corner.

**4.♗f8 h5 5.♕c2 ♔f5**

The king must be involved. After 5...h4 6.♗d3 h3 7.♗d6 ♔f5 8.♗e3 ♔g4 9.♗f2 ♔h4 10.♗f3 the black king must back off and the h-pawn is lost.

**6.♗d6!**



A first, vertical, barrier is put in place to prevent the black king from getting through.

**6...♔g4 7.♗d2 ♔f3 8.♗e1 ♔g2**

To block the white king and support the advance of the h-pawn.

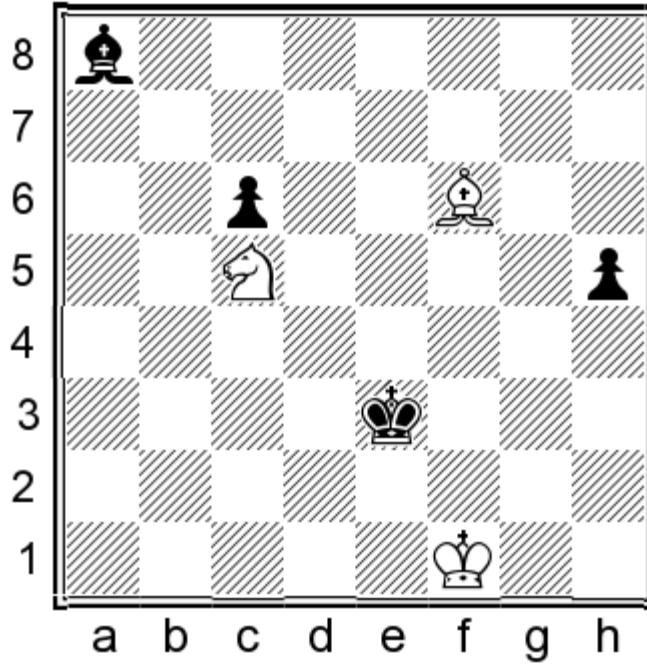
**9.♗e7! ♔f3**

After 9...♔g1 10.♗e2 ♔g2 11.♗f6, the white king can go to f1 or f3.

**10.♗f1 ♔e3**

Black has succeeded with the first part of his plan: in exchange for the impending loss of the h-pawn his king will be able to head for the queenside.

**11.♗f6!**



Prohibiting the black king's access to the queenside via the d4-square and forming a second barrier, this time horizontal, which may, however, be bypassed by using the a-file.

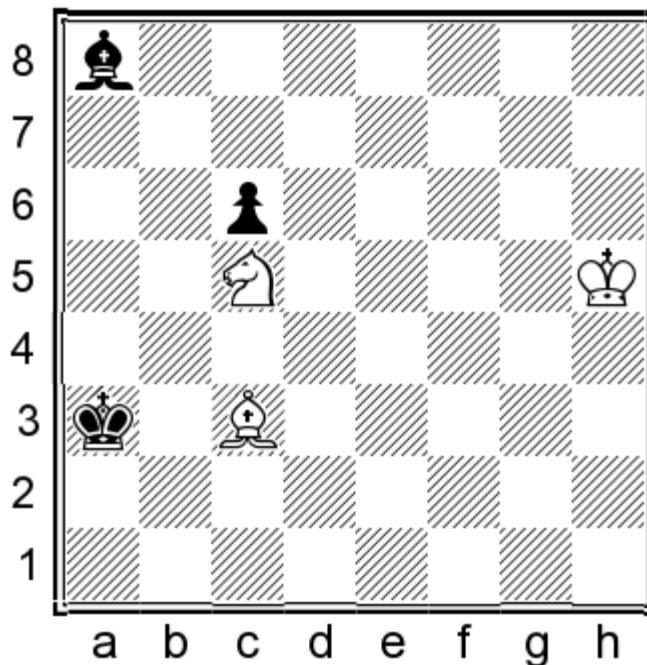
**11...♝d2**

After 11...♝f3 12.♝e5, the white king will head for the h-pawn.

**12.♝g2 ♜c2 13.♝g3 ♜b1 14.♝h4 ♜a2 15.♝xh5 ♜a3**

Threatening 16...♝b4.

**16.♝c3!**



A third and last barrier is formed, this time definitely stopping the march of the black king towards the a8-bishop, which will soon be captured by the white king.

# Index of themes

(numbers refer to solution numbers)

- Pawn majorities 8, 10, 15, 20, 21, 28, 33, 34, 43, 45, 52, 54, 56, 58, 59, 62, 69, 76, 79, 82, 85, 87, 88, 89
- Passed pawn 19, 20, 23, 28, 29, 34, 37, 39, 44, 63, 67, 68, 73, 81
- Isolated pawn 18, 19, 27, 36, 40, 51, 55, 63, 64, 65, 70, 74, 78
- Bishop against knight 7, 20, 26, 27, 30, 33, 49, 53, 58, 61, 64, 70, 71, 73, 79, 81, 83, 86
- Opposite-coloured bishops 6, 10, 19, 32, 50, 85, 87, 88, 90
- Bishop against same-coloured bishop 65, 67, 78, 80
- Knight versus knight 4, 55, 63, 74, 76, 82, 88
- Bishop pair 2, 18, 24, 35, 42, 43, 47, 51, 68, 72, 84
- Major pieces only 9, 48, 60, 77
- Space advantage 12, 18, 21, 23, 26, 36, 40, 42, 52, 56, 58, 62, 68, 69, 73, 75, 78, 80, 81, 82, 84, 86, 88
- Exchange of queens 4, 11, 27, 46, 73, 76, 79
- Piece exchanges (except for queens) 6, 9, 13, 18, 24, 25, 31, 42, 43, 44, 51, 55, 58, 59, 61, 65, 66, 78, 81
- Exchange sacrifice 5, 26, 29, 63
- Creating a weakness 2, 3, 7, 8, 15, 36, 47, 50, 62, 66, 72, 74, 84
- Tying the opposing pieces to a defensive task 10, 14, 16, 19, 25, 31, 52, 57, 59, 64, 70, 71, 72, 74, 75, 77, 78, 82, 85, 87, 89
- Preventing the opposing play 1, 6, 7, 19, 21, 27, 30, 34, 37, 43, 45, 48, 52, 68, 69, 70, 71, 72, 74, 75
- Weaknesses left by the advance of pawns 1, 4, 5, 13, 14, 15, 31, 34, 38, 46, 48, 49, 60, 61, 65, 66, 67, 69, 76, 77, 79, 83, 85, 86, 89
- Play on both wings 20, 31, 42, 48, 51, 55, 62, 75, 76, 89
- Play on one colour (except for opposite-coloured bishops) 11, 17, 18, 29, 33, 35, 43, 51, 61
- Breakthrough 3, 24, 33, 34, 39, 42, 53, 54, 55, 67, 73, 81, 82, 83
- Blockade 28, 33, 34, 37, 38, 39, 53, 55, 63, 64, 65, 82, 88, 90
- Offside piece 10, 12, 14, 19, 36, 37, 42, 45, 63, 66, 72, 74, 86, 90
- Zugzwang 64, 70, 71, 75, 78, 80, 81, 83, 88, 89

# **Index of players**

(numbers refer to pages)

## **A**

Alapin 178

Alekhine 78, 123, 145

Andersson 41, 205

Antonov 196

## **B**

Barcza 112

Bertok 49, 135

Biyiasas 84, 138

Bogoljubow 195, 209

Bolbochan 26

Boleslavsky 39

Bondarevsky 95

Bönsch 54

Botvinnik 166

Burn 52, 201, 211

## **C**

Capablanca 97

Carls 67

Ciocaltea 164

## **D**

Dautov 196

Donner 25

Dubinin 34

Dückstein 56

## **E**

Ekström 170

Ernst 72, 136

Estrin 190

Euwe 46, 67

## **F**

Filip 43

Flohr 28, 173

Foltys 160

## G

Geller 49, 82, 91, 100, 108, 135

Gligoric 59, 108

Golombek 123, 145

Grünberg 54

Grünfeld 85

Guimard 26, 32

Gulko 41

Gunsberg 192

## H

Hermann 30

Horowitz 36

Hort 37, 73, 103, 162

## I

Ioseliani 205

Ivashin 190

## J

Janowski 174

## K

Kalnitschew 44

Kan 33

Karpov 103

Kashdan 36

Keres 46, 50

Kholmov 110, 141

Köhnlein 99

Kortchnoi 125, 133

Kottnauer 159

Kramer 100

Kurajica 73

## L

Landau 28, 162

Langeweg 176

Larsen 37

Lasker 188

Laurine 50

Levenfish 34, 76

Levin 57

Lilienthal 131, 146

Lisitsin 163

Ljubojevic 203

## M

Mackenzie 47

Makogonov 105

Maroczy 162, 183, 192, 199

Marshall 183

Michell 173

Mokry 93

Müller 117

## O

Olafsson 79

## P

Parma 128

Penrose 60

Petrosian 69, 79

Piazzini 32

Pillsbury 199

Pilnik 82

Polugaevsky 84, 91, 114, 138

Portisch 87, 120, 133, 181

Prandstetter 93

## R

Ragozin 76

Reshevsky 57, 168

Riumin 33, 163

Rubinstein 52

## S

Sanguinetti 63  
Schlechter 99, 174, 185

Schmid 87

Seirawan 65

Serper 116, 144

Short 65

Skalicka 160

Smejkal 59, 117, 128, 159, 176

Smyslov 25, 56, 72, 95, 131, 136, 146, 166, 168

Sørensen 116, 144

Sosonko 30

Spassky 60, 69

Spielmann 85, 195, 209

Ståhlberg 97

Stein 63, 120

Steinitz 47, 201, 211

Sternér 39

Suetin 110, 141

Szabo 43

## T

Taimanov 170

Tringov 203

Troitsky 213

Tsvetkov 112

Tylor 188

## U

Uhlmann 181

## V

Vajda 78

Van den Doel 44

Van der Sterren 125

Von Bardeleben 178

## W

Wolf 185

## Y

Yudovich 105

**Z**

Zaitsev 114